SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
## Content

1. **ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model** .................................................... 5

2. **Before You Start** .................................................................................................. 8
   2.1 Prerequisites ........................................................................................................ 8
   2.2 Constraints ......................................................................................................... 8

3. **Getting Started** ................................................................................................... 12
   3.1 Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario ........................................... 12
   3.2 Developing an OData Service for Simple List Reporting ................................. 13
     Defining the Data Model with CDS ....................................................................... 15
     Creating an OData Service ..................................................................................... 22
     Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App ......................................... 34

4. **Concepts** ............................................................................................................. 42
   4.1 Data Modeling and Behavior .............................................................................. 45
     Query ..................................................................................................................... 46
     Business Object .................................................................................................... 54
   4.2 Business Service ................................................................................................ 192
     Business Object Projection ................................................................................... 194
     Service Definition ................................................................................................. 201
     Service Binding .................................................................................................... 204
   4.3 Service Consumption........................................................................................... 206
   4.4 Runtime Frameworks .......................................................................................... 207
   4.5 Entity Manipulation Language (EML) ............................................................... 209

5. **Develop** .............................................................................................................. 214
   5.1 Developing Read-Only List Reporting Apps ..................................................... 216
     Determining the Data Model for the Read-Only Scenario ................................... 218
     Implementing Associations for Existing CDS Views ........................................... 223
     Changing UI Field Labels and Descriptions ...................................................... 226
     Displaying Text for Unreadable Elements ......................................................... 228
     Providing Value Help for the Selection Fields .................................................... 231
     Adding Search Capabilities .................................................................................. 234
   5.2 Developing Managed Transactional Apps .......................................................... 237
     Reference Business Scenario ............................................................................... 241
     Developing a Ready-to-Run Business Object ...................................................... 246
     Developing Business Logic ................................................................................... 268
     Developing a Projection Layer for Flexible Service Consumption ...................... 323
1 ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

The ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model (in short RAP) defines the architecture for efficient end-to-end development of intrinsically SAP HANA-optimized OData services (such as Fiori apps) in SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment [page 1034] or Application Server ABAP. It supports the development of all types of Fiori applications as well as publishing Web APIs. It is based on technologies and frameworks such as Core Data Services (CDS) for defining semantically rich data models and a service model infrastructure for creating OData [page 1031] services with bindings to an OData protocol and ABAP-based application services for custom logic and SAPUI5-based user interfaces – as shown in the figure below.

Architecture Overview

- Design Time [page 42]

Target Audience

ABAP developers who want to provide (OData) services within the scope of ABAP RESTful application programming model.
Validity of Documentation

This documentation refers to the range of functions that have been shipped as part of delivery of the application server for

- SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment

**Note**
To highlight the specifics for SAP Cloud Platform releases, the icon is used.

Classification of ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model within the Evolution of ABAP Programming Model

This image is interactive. Hover over each area for a description.

The **ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model** is the evolutionary successor of the **ABAP Programming Model for SAP Fiori**. It is generally available to customers and partners within **SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment** starting with release 1808 and within **ABAP Platform** starting with release 7.54 SP00 (1909 FPS00).

For more information about the evolution of the ABAP programming model, read this blog on the community portal.

Contents

- Before You Start... [page 8]
- Getting Started [page 12]
- Concepts [page 42]
2 Before You Start...

... check the Prerequisites [page 8] and Constraints [page 8]

2.1 Prerequisites

SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment

You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.

More on this: Getting Global Account

Development Environment (IDE)

- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT).
  SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/.
- You have access to and a user account for the relevant space in SAP Cloud Platform Cloud Foundry.
  More on this:
    -
    -

Authorizations

To create development artifacts described in this guide, you need the developer authorization profile for the ABAP Environment.

Knowledge

Basic knowledge of

- ABAP Core Data Services (CDS)
- ABAP Objects.

2.2 Constraints

The current version of the ABAP RESTful application programming model still has some constraints when ...
Working with OData V4 Web APIs

It is not possible to release an OData V4 Web API.

Using Parameters in CDS Views

CDS Views with parameters do not work properly in Fiori Elements UI services. The filter value is not sent to the backend.

Using a Consumption Model with two Namespaces

The OData Client Proxy doesn’t support two namespaces.

Where Clause in CDS Projection Views

In transactional operations, including the transactional `READ`, the where clause in projection views is not respected. Applications must ensure that the instances that are created, updated, or read via the projection conform to the where clause.

Developing Services with Implementation Type Managed

When working with the managed implementation type the following constraints are given:

- **Numbering:** Late numbering is not supported.
- **Actions:** Instance factory actions are not supported for the managed implementation type.
- You cannot use primary key values that are longer than 117 characters.
- You cannot use ABAP dictionary structures as importing or exporting action parameter.

Using the Fiori Elements App Preview

The Fiori Elements App preview does not support the navigation to the object page of nested subentities, which means to more than one child entity. This also affects the create functionality for nested subentities. The create button is only displayed for the root and one child entity of a business object when accessing the preview via the root.

To test UI features or the create functionality for nested subentities, you can test the OData service with the Web IDE and configure the application to enable navigation to any number of child entities.

Alternatively, you can access the preview via the parent entity of the nested subentity that you want to test.

Example

You want to test the create functionality of the subentity `BookingSupplement` in the `Travel` business object, which is the second child entity in the hierarchy. Instead of starting the preview in the service binding via the root entity `Travel` or the composition `Travel-to_Booking`, access the preview via the child entity `Booking` or the composition `Booking-to_BookSupplement` to see the complete feature scope of the nested subentity `BookingSupplement`. 
Using the Service Consumption Model

- Even though you can delete all generated artifacts except for the generated service definition, it is recommended not to do so as it corrupts the service consumption model. If you edit or delete a generated artifact, then the form editor for the service consumption model does not open and an error is displayed. Also, if you delete any of the generated artifacts, you cannot delete a service consumption model object. You need to recreate the deleted artifact for the form editor and object deletion to work.
- For a service entity set, the remote OData service may have support only for one CRUD operation, for example, READ. Currently, code snippets are displayed for all the operations even if the support is provided only for one operation.

Updating the Service Binding after Using abapGit

Service Binding does not get updated using abapGit if ALL of the following conditions are applied:

- New Service Definitions are added to Service Binding in the source system.
- Service Definitions are created in target system using abapGit pull.
- Service Binding update is also part of the same abapGit pull.

In such a user flow, the user must follow the below mentioned steps:

1. After the abapGit pull, activate all the service definitions.
2. Again apply the abapGit pull OR manually add the activated Service Definitions in the service binding.

Using Determinations and Validations

When using determinations and validations, the following constraints are given:

- The trigger operation update for determinations and validations on save is only supported in combination with the trigger operation create.
- The trigger operation delete is of limited use, unless the instances of entities are identified by semantic keys.
- It is not possible to assign a determination or validation for a descendent entity to a determine action, if the determination or validation has the trigger operation delete.
If a determination on save changes another BO that has already been finalized, determinations on save in the changed BO are not executed.

It is not possible to execute determine actions inside implementations of determinations and validations.

**Augmentation**

In case the augment requests operations on non-original instances (which are not part of the original request), the runtime attempts to lock these automatically. For a proper response, it is the responsibility of the augment exit to use the "relating by" syntax to relate these non-original instances to original instances. Then, the runtime will map lock failures on non-original instances back to failure of the corresponding related instances.

If the non-original instances require authorization (not covered by the original instances), it is the responsibility of the augment to check it.

**Draft-Enabled Business Objects**

- You cannot refer to a new instance that was created by a static factory action by using the %CID_REF in OData. This is also true for the EDIT action.
- There can be locking conflicts for the active provider if an instance which was activated is locked again in the same transaction. This is because the durable lock of the active instance remains after the activation of a draft instance.
- The generic feature and authorization control for draft operations (such as no EDIT on draft instances) is not merged into consumer hints for OData.

**Unmanaged Business Objects with Draft**

There are features that can be defined in the behavior definition of an unmanaged business object and thus used on active instances, but not on draft instances:

- You cannot execute the following operations on draft instances:
  - Functions
  - Create-Enabled Associations
  - Instance Factory Actions
  - Direct Creates on Child Instances
- You cannot use primary key values that are longer than 117 characters.
- You cannot use ABAP dictionary structures as importing or exporting action parameter.
- Late numbering is not supported.
- There is no uniqueness check for draft instances.
- The aggregated admin data fields are not updated automatically when a draft instance is saved.
- Associations that use NOT in the binding condition cannot be draft-enabled.
- There is no support for transactional draft-enabled associations leading from draft to active instances.
3  Getting Started

This Getting Started section provides you with the fundamental basics of development with the ABAP RESTful Programming Model.

For demonstration and learning purposes we provide the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario which simulates an application used by a travel agency for booking flights. The first thing to do is therefore to import the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario in your ADT to get sample data: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].

The getting started guide helps you to create a complete application based on the existing data model from the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario with the most basic features: Developing an OData Service for Simple List Reporting [page 13].

3.1  Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario

The ABAP Flight Scenario contains demo content that you can import into your development environment. The ABAP Flight Reference Scenario helps you to get started with development in the context of the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model. It contains demo content that you can play around with and use to build your own sample applications.

Sample Data

First of all, the reference scenario contains data. You can use database tables that are filled with travel data including master data items, such as customer, flights, airports, or booking supplements. The structure of the complete data model allows you to build simple but also more complex services. In this way, it is easy to follow the steps in the development guides while building your own application based on the same database tables as in the given examples.

For an overview of the available database tables, see ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 984]. They are available in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_LEGACY. This package also includes a data generator with which you can fill the database tables.

Sample Services

The development guides for the ABAP RESTful Application Programming model are based on the sample data from the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario. That means that you can compare the documentation with the productive code that was used to build the documentation scenario. In addition, the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario also includes a demo package with the development objects that are created during the course of the development guides. That means, the whole demo scenario can be downloaded and tested. You obtain full demo services with code built by following conventions and best practices and you can use and reuse the delivered objects for your development.

The following demo scenarios are available for you:

- Developing Read-Only List Reporting Apps [page 216] in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_READONLY
Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348] in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_UNMANAGED
Developing Managed Transactional Apps [page 237] in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_MANAGED
Developing Transactional Apps with Draft Capabilities [page 449] in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_DRAFT

Legacy Coding

The reference scenario also includes legacy coding. This legacy coding is based on function modules and exemplifies legacy applications that you can include in your new ABAP code. Above all, the legacy coding is relevant for the development guide, that explains how to build a new service on the basis of an existing application. It illustrates how you build an application with the unmanaged implementation type. The legacy coding that is used in this scenario is available in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_LEGACY.

Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario from GitHub

You can download the complete ABAP Flight Reference Scenario for the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model from GitHub.

https://github.com/SAP-samples/abap-platform-refscen-flight/tree/Cloud-Platform

The steps to include the development objects in your ADT are described in the README.md file.

→ Remember

The namespace /DMO/ is reserved for the demo content. Apart from the downloaded ABAP Flight Scenario, do not use the namespace /DMO/ and do not create any development objects in the downloaded packages. You can access the development objects in /DMO/ from your own namespace.

3.2 Developing an OData Service for Simple List Reporting

The following guide describes the basic development tasks to create a simple list reporting app based on a query.

Introduction

The following sections serve as an introductory guide for the development of an OData service based on the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model. It forms the basic building block for more elaborate scenarios with extended read-only features or transactional processing.

An OData service makes it possible to create and consume queryable and interoperable RESTful APIs. A SAP Fiori Elements application consumes OData services like this, but it also possible for other Web clients to make use of an OData service that is created with the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model.
This programming model provides a framework that facilitates your application development. All included technologies, such as Core Data (CDS) or business services, are usable and accessible with ABAP Development Tools (ADT), providing easy access to the necessary infrastructure.

The following guide starts from a data model assuming that database tables already exist. It uses the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario (in short Flight Scenario), which provides example data comprising travel information with flight data. For a detailed description of the database tables that are used in this scenario, refer to ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 984]

You are guided step-by-step through the new application model in three consecutive building blocks:

- Defining the Data Model with CDS [page 15]
- Creating an OData Service [page 22]
- Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34]

You start by implementing a CDS view as a new data model layer using a data source that is already provided. You also use basic CDS annotations to manifest semantics for the data model. The next step is to create an OData service by defining and binding a service based on the corresponding CDS view. As soon as the OData service is published in the local system repository, it is ready to be consumed using an OData client, such as a SAP Fiori app. Finally, you learn how to use UI annotations as a UI technology independent semantic description of the user interface layout.

The result of this Getting Started guide is a consumable OData Service, which can be easily used to set up a Fiori Elements travel booking app, from which you can derive information about flight connections. Navigation properties are added to this application to receive more information about bookings, customers, and agencies in the other scenarios in the Develop [page 214] section. These other development guides also cover extended read-only and transactional features, whereas the Getting Started guide only deals with the most basic read-only features for setting up an OData Service. The scenarios in the Develop section assume that you understood the steps that are described in the following guide.
i Note

Via ABAPGit you can import the service including the related development objects into your development
environment for comparison and reuse. You find the service in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_READONLY. The
suffix for development objects in this development guide is _R. Be aware that the development objects
might contain more than explained in the Getting Started guide. This is because the Getting Started
scenario is enhanced in the first development guide Developing Read-Only List Reporting Apps [page 216]
which uses this same demo objects.

For information about downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, see Downloading the ABAP Flight
Reference Scenario [page 12].

Prerequisites

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- ☑ You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.
- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT).
  SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the
- To recreate the demo scenario, the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario must be available in your ABAP system.
  You can download the complete reference scenario from GitHub: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference
  Scenario [page 12].

Objectives

By the end of this Getting Started section, you will be able to:

- Create a data definition and define a CDS view
- Implement an ABAP CDS view based on an existing database table
- Define an OData service and expose a CDS view for this service
- Bind the OData service against a protocol and publish it locally
- Use semantics annotations in CDS
- Understand some basic UI annotations in CDS

3.2.1 Defining the Data Model with CDS

The data model for an OData service must be defined in CDS.

This introductory programming guide uses example data from the Flight Reference Scenario. The Getting
Started scenario uses the database table /dm0/connection. It provides information about airline and
connection numbers, flight times, and data related to planes.
In the CDS layer we use and manipulate data that is persisted in the database. To make data available in the ABAP application server, CDS views use SQL queries to project persisted data to the ABAP layer. This is necessary to create an OData service to make the data ready to be consumed. More information about CDS:

To define a data model based on the ABAP CDS view concept, you first need to create a data definition as the relevant ABAP Repository object using a wizard in ABAP Development Tools.

**Task 1: Creating a Data Definition for a CDS View [page 16]**

In the second step, you implement an elementary CDS view from scratch by defining a simple query for flights based on a single data source from the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario.

**Task 2: Implementing the CDS View as a Data Model [page 18]**

In the final task of this section, you have the option of using the test environment to verify the output (a results set) of the CDS view you have just implemented.

**Task 3: Verifying the Results Set in the Data Preview Tool [page 21]**

### 3.2.1.1  Creating a Data Definition for a CDS View

Use the data definition wizard to create the relevant development object for a CDS view.

**Context**

For our simple read-only scenario, we want to define data that is exposed by an OData service to make it available for an OData client. For this purpose, you create a development object to define an ABAP CDS entity (for example, a CDS view). The data definition provides you with the appropriate development object for the CDS view, which is included in ABAP development tools and directly accesses the standard ABAP functions.

**Procedure**

1. Launch the ABAP Development Tools.
2. In your ABAP project, select the package node in which you want to store the development objects for the Getting Started scenario.
3. Open the context menu and choose New Other ABAP Repository Object Core Data Services Data Definition to launch the creation wizard for a data definition.
4. In addition to the Project and Package, which are already specified depending on the package you selected, enter the Name (while respecting your namespace) and a Description for the data definition you want to create.

**Note**

The maximum length for the name of a data definition is 30 characters.
5. Choose Next.
6. Assign a transport request.
7. Choose Finish or choose next to select a template for the data definition.

Choosing finish directly provides you with the correct template.

Results

In the selected package, the ABAP back-end system creates an inactive version of a data definition and stores it in the ABAP Repository. As a result, the data definition editor is opened. The generated source code already provides you with the necessary view annotations and adds a placeholder for the name of the data source for query definition. The name for the actual CDS view is predefined on the basis of the name for the data definition, but can be changed in the data definition editor.
Next Steps

Now that you have created a data definition, you can implement the CDS view as a data model for your OData service.

3.2.1.2 Implementing the CDS View as a Data Model

Use a predefined database table as the data source for a CDS view.

Prerequisites

- You have created the data definition artifact in ABAP Development Tools.
- The database table /dmo/connection is available for you.

Context

In this step, you implement an interface view as a new data model using a predefined data source.

Procedure

1. If you have not yet already done so, open the new data definition in the editor.
2. Specify the name of the CDS view: /DMO/I_Connection_R. The data definition editor already provides a suggestion for the name using the name that you specified for the data definition in the creation wizard. However, these names do not have to be the same. You can overwrite it in the define statement.
3. In the SELECT statement, enter the predefined database table /dmo/connection as a data source and define an optional alias name for the data source.
An alias is useful especially when you use multiple data sources or whenever the name of the data source is not descriptive or too long.

... select from /dmo/connection as Connection{

4. Add the fields of /dmo/connection to the SELECT list and assign alias names to each item field as follows:

{  
  Connection.carrier_id      as AirlineID,
  Connection.connection_id   as ConnectionID,
  Connection.airport_from_id as DepartureAirport,
  Connection.airport_to_id   as DestinationAirport,
  Connection.departure_time  as DepartureTime,
  Connection.arrival_time    as ArrivalTime,
  Connection.distance        as Distance,
  Connection.distance_unit   as DistanceUnit
}

→ Tip
Whenever you insert table fields or view elements in the SELECT list, you can make use of the content assist function in the data definition editor (CTRL + SPACE).

5. To document the key semantics of the new data model, define the AirlineID and ConnectionID elements as KEY elements in the current CDS view:

key connection.carrier_id     as AirlineID,
key connection.connection_id  as ConnectionID,

6. Click the activation button 🏷 or use the shortcut Ctrl + F3 to activate the data definition.

   To check the syntax before activation, click ✓ or use the shortcut Ctrl + F2.

---

Results

The resulting source code for the CDS view is the following:

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Connection'
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  {  
      key Connection.carrier_id     as AirlineID,
      key Connection.connection_id  as ConnectionID,
      Connection.airport_from_id   as DepartureAirport,
      Connection.airport_to_id     as DestinationAirport,
```
The source code above is used to define a quite simple CDS view named `/DMO/I_Connection_R`. This view is implemented using a query that performs a `SELECT` statement, where the database table `/dmo/connection` is used as the data source. The select list includes a set of fields that are relevant for the scenario. The `KEY` elements in the selection list are used to define the key field semantics of the CDS view.

When the data definition source is activated, the entity of the CDS view `/DMO/I_Connection_R` is created in ABAP Dictionary.

**Next Steps**

Mark the element `Distance` as semantically related to the element `DistanceUnit`.

### 3.2.1.2.1 Relating Semantically Dependent Elements

Use the `@Semantics` annotation to relate the quantity element to its unit of measure element.

**Context**

The CDS view `/DMO/I_Connection_R` that you created contains elements that are heavily dependent on each other semantically, namely `Distance` and `DistanceUnit`. In CDS, you can use semantic annotations to standardize semantics that have an impact on the consumer side for these elements. In general, elements that need to be marked as having semantic content to guarantee that they are handled correctly are elements that contain the following:

- **Amounts of money**
  These elements need a reference to the currency related to this element.

- **Amounts of measures**
  These elements need a reference to the unit of measure related to this element.

If you create annotations that define a link to the unit for the amounts, the amounts and their units are always handled as being dependent on each other in the OData service. On UIs in particular, amounts are displayed with the correct decimals with regard to their unit.

In the CDS view `/DMO/I_Connection_R`, you therefore need to proceed as described in the following to always display the distance together with the distance unit.
Procedure

1. Open the CDS view /DMO/_Connection_R.
2. Define the relationship between amount and unit of measure with the annotation
   ```
   @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: '<ElementRef> on Distance and reference the element DistanceUnit.
   
   @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: 'DistanceUnit'
   Connection.distance        as Distance,
   Connection.distance_unit   as DistanceUnit
   ```
3. Activate the CDS view.

Results

If you expose the CDS view to an OData service, the elements are always handled as being semantically related to each other. This means that they are given the OData annotation sap:unit and sap:semantics in the OData metadata document. On UIs in particular, the elements are always displayed as being attached to each other.

Related Information

Semantics Annotations [page 804]

3.2.1.3 Verifying the Results Set in the Data Preview Tool

Use the data preview tool to check the elements in the CDS view.

Prerequisites

The data definition has correct syntax and has been activated.

Context

You have created a data definition and implemented a CDS view with data from the database table /dmo/ connection. Now you have the option of launching the test environment (in the data preview tool), which enables you to verify that the persisted data from the database is now displayed in the CDS view.
Procedure

In the data definition editor, position the cursor somewhere in the CDS source code. Open the context menu and choose Open With Data Preview or use the shortcut F8.

Results

The CDS view does not require any parameters, which means the data preview displays the results set of the data selection query directly.

![Results sets in the data preview tool](image)

**Note**
You can sort the entries by element by clicking the column header.

### 3.2.2 Creating an OData Service

Business service artifacts enable the publishing of an OData service using ABAP Development Tools.

In the previous step, you defined a data model based on the persisted data source /dmo/connection in the data definition /DMO/I_Connection_R. You can now use this data model and expose it for an OData service. The OData service makes it possible for UI technologies to query data and consume it. The following steps are necessary to include the CDS view in an OData service.

To define a service, you first need to create a service definition as the relevant ABAP Repository object using a wizard.
Task 1: Creating a Service Definition [page 23]

The next step is to define the scope of the OData service by exposing the relevant CDS views (including their metadata and their behavior).

Task 2: Exposing a CDS View for an OData Service [page 25]

To define the type and category of the OData service, you need to create a service binding as the relevant ABAP Repository object. There is also a wizard available for this.

Task 3: Creating a Service Binding [page 26]

In the next step, you use the form-based editor of the service binding to publish the service locally.

Task 4: Publishing the OData Service Locally [page 28]

You have the option of checking the resulting OData service by viewing its metadata. The service binding offers a simple solution for this.

Task 5: Verifying the OData Metadata [page 30]

You can also take a look at how the UI of a Fiori Elements of the OData service looks like with the preview tool of the service binding.

Task 6: Previewing the Resulting UI Service [page 32]

3.2.2.1 Creating a Service Definition

Use the service definition wizard to create the relevant development object that defines the scope of the OData service.

Context

The service definition is a projection of the models and related behavior that you want to expose. In a service definition, you define the OData service to determine which CDS entities are part of the service. This service is then exposed either as a UI service or a Web API by a service binding artifact. A service definition can be integrated in various protocols without any reimplementation.

Procedure

1. In your ABAP project, select the relevant package node in the Project Explorer.
2. Open the context menu and choose New Other ABAP Repository Object Business Services Service Definition to launch the creation wizard.
3. In addition to the Project and Package, which are already specified depending on the package you selected, enter the Name and a Description for the service definition you want to create.
Note
The maximum length for the name of a service definition is 30 characters.

Wizard page when creating a service definition

4. Choose Next.
5. Assign a transport request.

Results

The ABAP back-end system creates an inactive version of a service definition and stores it in the ABAP Repository.

In the Project Explorer, the new service definition is added to the Business Services folder of the corresponding package node. As a result, the service definition editor is opened:

Next Steps

Now that you have created a service definition, you can choose one or more CDS entities to be exposed in the service.
3.2.2.2 Exposing a CDS View for an OData Service

Assign the scope of the OData service.

Prerequisites

You have created the service definition artifact in ABAP Development Tools.

Context

In the service definition editor, you determine the CDS entities that you want to expose in an OData service.

Procedure

1. If you have not yet already done so, open the new service definition in the editor.
   The name of the service is already specified in accordance with the name you gave in the service definition wizard. It cannot be changed to a different name.
2. Specify the name of each CDS entity that you want to expose for the service. For the getting started read-only scenario, there is only one CDS view to be exposed: `/DMO/I_Connection_R`
3. Optionally, you can assign an alias for the CDS view.
   An alias is useful, especially when you use multiple CDS views or whenever the name of the CDS view is not descriptive or too long.
4. Click the activation button or use the shortcut Ctrl + F3 to activate the service definition.
   To check the syntax before activation, click or use the shortcut Ctrl + F2.

Results

The resulting source code for the service definition is as follows:

```
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: SD for Managing Flights'
```
define service /DMO/FLIGHT_R {
    expose /DMO/I_Connection_R as Connection;
}

The source code above is used to define a service definition named /DMO/FLIGHT_R. It exposes the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R to be included in the service.

**Next Steps**

Now that the service exists, you can determine the binding type and category for the service using a service binding.

### 3.2.2.3 Creating a Service Binding

Use the service binding wizard to create the relevant development object to bind the service to a protocol and, if necessary, to an OData client.

**Prerequisites**

You have defined a service and exposed CDS entities that are included in the service.

**Context**

A service binding implements the protocol that is used for the OData service. It uses a service definition that projects the data models and their related behaviors to the service.

**Procedure**

1. In your ABAP project, select the relevant package node in the *Project Explorer*.
2. Open the context menu and choose `New > Other ABAP Repository Object > Business Services > Service Binding` to launch the creation wizard.
3. In addition to the *Project* and *Package*, which are already specified depending on the package you selected, enter the *Name* and a *Description* for the service binding you want to create.

---

**Note**

The maximum length for the name of a service binding is 26 characters.
4. Select the Binding Type **ODATA V2 - UI**.

**Note**

The available categories are UI and Web API. A UI-based OData service can be consumed by any SAP UI5 application. An OData service with Web API binding is exposed as an API.

This scenario is aimed at creating a UI service with OData V2.

5. Search for the **Service Definition** that you want to use as a base for your service binding: /DMO/FLIGHT_R.

![Wizard page when creating a service binding](image)

6. Choose *Next*.
7. Assign a transport request.
8. Choose *Finish*.

**Results**

The ABAP back end creates a service binding and stores it in the ABAP Repository.
In the Project Explorer, the new service binding is added to the Business Services folder of the corresponding package node. As a result, the service binding form editor is opened and you can verify the information you have entered.

As soon as you have created the service binding for a service, the service is registered in your local system. It is not yet active.

**Next Steps**

Activate the service binding to make it ready for consumption.

**Related Information**

Creating Service Binding [page 975]

**3.2.2.4 Publishing the OData Service Locally**

To make the service ready for consumption, use the activation button in the service binding form editor.

**Prerequisites**

You have created the service binding and specified the binding type and category.
**Context**

To make the service available and consumable by an OData client you have to activate the service.

**Procedure**

1. If you have not already done so, open the new service binding in the form editor.
   
   The binding type and category are already defined and cannot be changed once the service binding is created. You can verify the type and category in the general information section in the form editor. As soon as you have specified the binding for the service, it is ready for publishing. The service is then available for consumption.

2. Choose the **Activate** button in the form editor.

   ![Service Binding: /DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2](image)

   The **Activate** button in the tool bar of ADT is not applicable to publish the service. You have to use the **Activate** button in the form editor.

**Results**

The OData service `/DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2` is published locally, which means that it is activated in SAP Gateway. The service is bound to the protocol OData V2 for the category UI. This means it can now be consumed by a SAPUI5 application.
The binding type and service information is displayed in the service binding form editor

On the left side of the form editor, the service list with the version and the service definition is filled. The right side of the form editor shows the service details. It provides a URL to view the metadata of the service and lists the entity sets that are exposed for the service. The service contains the entities that you have exposed in the service definition. The service binding editor shows the names that you assigned as alias.

Related Information

Using Service Binding Editor for OData V2 Service [page 978]

3.2.2.5 Verifying the OData Metadata

Use the URI in the service binding form editor to check the metadata document of the published OData service.

Prerequisites

You have published an OData service using a service binding.

Context

In the previous steps we defined an OData service and published it. It is now ready for to be consumed by an HTTP protocol. To verify the data that the OData service exposes, the service offers a metadata document in which all relevant service elements are listed.
**Procedure**

1. If you have not already done so, open the service binding for the relevant service.
2. To open the service document of the OData service, choose the link to the service URL (/sap/opu/odata/sap/DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2) that is provided in the form editor for the relevant line in the service details section.

   A browser opens that displays the service document.
3. Add /$metadata to the URI to view the metadata of the OData service.

   .../sap/opu/odata/DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2/$metadata

   The metadata document displays the relevant information that the OData service provides for an OData client in a CSDL (Common Schema Definition Language).

   **i Note**

   As labels are language dependent, they are only displayed if the language of the browser and the maintained data elements are in the same language, or if a fallback language matches the browser configurations.

---

**OData metadata**

Depending on your browser and the xml format you choose, the layout of the metadata might differ.

For the described scenario, the following OData annotations are relevant:

- **EntityType**: Introduces a CDS entity that is exposed for the service. 
  - **sap: label**: Provides a semantic description for the entity type. It retrieves the description that was entered in the wizard for the data definition as no other label is defined.
  - **Name**: Specifies the name of the OData entity. It uses the name of the CDS entity and attaches **Type**. If an alias is used in the service definition, it uses the alias.
  - **Key**: Introduces the OData properties that are specified as keys for the OData entities. If the service is based on CDS entities, it uses the keys of the CDS entities.
**Property**: Introduces an OData property that is exposed in the service. If the service is based on a CDS entity, it uses the elements of the CDS view as properties.

**sap: label**: Provides a more informative description than just the name of the property. It retrieves the field label text of the data element if the CDS element is not labeled differently.

**Name**: Specifies the name of the OData property. The service uses the name of the CDS elements. It retrieves the alias if there is one.

**sap: quickinfo**: Provides a semantic description for the property. It retrieves the description of the data element that is used in the database table `/dmo/connection` if no other description is defined.

**sap: unit**: Specifies that the respective OData property describes an amount whose unit is provided with the referenced property. In this case, as we have defined it in CDS with a semantics annotation, the property `DistanceUnit` provides the unit for the `Distance`. `sap: semantics` `DistanceUnit` only contains currency codes. This information is taken from the data element that is used for the database table `/dmo/connection`, which is stored in ABAP Dictionary.

---

**Note**

The information that is taken from the data elements can be checked in the data definition. Click a CDS element in the data definition and press [F2]. A pop-up opens and you can navigate to all the underlying elements, displaying the semantic information for the respective OData property.

---

**Next Steps**

To check the output of a **SAP Fiori UI** you can preview the app with the previewing functionality of the service binding.

### 3.2.2.6 Previewing the Resulting UI Service

Use the preview function in the service binding to check how the UI of a Fiori application looks like.

**Prerequisites**

You have published an OData service using a service binding.

**Context**

The published OData service is ready to be consumed by an HTTP protocol. You can set up a Fiori application based on this service. The service binding artifact offers a tool which you can use to preview a simple list reporting Fiori application.
Procedure

1. If you have not yet already done so, open the service binding for the relevant service.
2. To open the Fiori Elements app preview in the service information section, select the relevant entity set (Connection) and choose the Preview button.

4. Enter your user name and password for the relevant system. You now have access to the system and the Fiori Elements app UI is displayed. The columns of the elements that you have in the CDS views appear. The app does not show any data yet.
5. To display data in the list report, first select the items that you want to display by clicking the configuration button and choosing the elements from the column section.
   You need to select at least one element, otherwise you get an error message when retrieving the data.
6. Choose Go to display the data of the items you selected.

Results

The Fiori Elements App preview opens in your browser. You see the connection data that you implemented in the CDS view. The following image displays the list report when selected all available fields.
3.2.3 Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App

UI annotations can be used in CDS to configure the look of the user interface of a Fiori App.

To define annotations that concern the UI, we use CDS annotations. CDS offers the option of defining a universal setup for the presentation and order of items in the CDS layer. This is independent of the UI technology or application device, which benefits the reuse of one OData service for multiple applications. The application developer does not have to configure the setting for every application, but can reuse the settings that were defined in the back end.

**Note**

You can use metadata extensions to separate the metadata specified by @UI or other UI related annotations from the actual data definition in the CDS view. See

You are introduced to necessary and useful UI annotations that define the presentation of your data in a UI service.

**Task:** Defining UI Annotations [page 35].

The task addresses different components of the user interface separately.

In the section List Items [page 35] CDS offers the option to define a universal setup for the presentation and order of the business data. You will learn how to order and label the columns of your list report.

The second section List Report Header [page 37] deals with the items in the list report header.

The section Object Page [page 38] describes the configuration of an object page and its items.
Tip
You can always check the influence of the UI annotations on the UI with the preview option in the service binding form editor.

3.2.3.1 Defining UI Annotations

The presentation and order of the CDS elements in a SAP Fiori Elements user interface is configured in CDS with annotations.

Context

You have created an OData service and published it locally. The UI can now be set up with UI annotations in the CDS layer to define a UI layout independent from the application or the user device. You can always check the influence of UI annotations by using the preview function in the service binding artifact.

List Items

Context

Using the following annotations, you specify which of the elements appear in the list report when starting the app. In addition to their order, you can also rename them if you want to display them with a name other than the name specified in the CDS entity. The columns that are shown in the UI are then predefined and you can retrieve data by choosing GO without determining the columns to be displayed.

Procedure

1. Open the CDS view for which you want to determine the list report. In our case: /DMO/I_Connection_R.
2. For the headline of the list, use the annotation @UI.headerInfo:typeNamePlural: 'name'.
   This annotation is an entity annotation because it concerns the whole entity rather than a specific element.

   @AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
   @EndUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Connection'
   @UI.headerInfo.typeNamePlural: 'Connections'
   define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R

3. Specify a position for each element that you want to show in the list report with the annotation
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: decfloat } ].
**iNote**

The value’s number does not represent an absolute measure and works as a relative value to the positions of the other elements instead. Hence, the elements are arranged in ascending order with regard to the annotation value.

```plaintext
... define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
   as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
   
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 10 } ]
   key     Connection.carrier_id      as AirlineID,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 20 } ]
   key     Connection.connection_id   as ConnectionID,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 30 } ]
   Connection.airport_from_id as DepartureAirport,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 40 } ]
   Connection.airport_to_id   as DestinationAirport,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 50 } ]
   Connection.departure_time  as DepartureTime,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 60 } ]
   Connection.arrival_time    as ArrivalTime,
   @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: 'DistanceUnit'
   Connection.distance        as Distance,    //** secondary information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
   Connection.distance_unit   as DistanceUnit    //** secondary information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
}

4. You can display the elements with a name other than the name specified in CDS by labeling them with the annotation @UI.lineItem.label: label. In particular, you can label element with names containing spaces. The label is displayed in the column header of the list report.

```plaintext
... define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
   as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
   
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 10, label: 'Airline'} ]
   key     Connection.carrier_id      as AirlineID,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 20, label:'Connection Number' } ]
   key     Connection.connection_id   as ConnectionID,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 30 , label: 'Departure Airport Code'} ]
   Connection.airport_from_id as DepartureAirport,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 40 , label: 'Destination Airport Code'} ]
   Connection.airport_to_id   as DestinationAirport,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 50 , label: 'Departure Time'} ]
   Connection.departure_time  as DepartureTime,
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 60 , label: 'Arrival Time' } ]
   Connection.arrival_time    as ArrivalTime,
   @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: 'DistanceUnit'
   Connection.distance        as Distance,    //** secondary information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
   Connection.distance_unit   as DistanceUnit    //** secondary information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
}```
Results

The source code specifies which of the elements of the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R are displayed in the list report and in which order. In addition, the list report is given the title Connections. When starting the app, you do not have to select columns in the settings since they are already displayed. Press the GO button to retrieve data.

List report after UI configuration in the data definition

List Report Header

Context

The following annotations specify the items that are shown in the list report header.

You can define a header for the list report or you can implement selection fields on top of the list report to filter for a specific item. One selection field always refers to one element, but you can have more than one selection field in a single list report header.

Procedure

To include selection fields for the key elements in the header, use the annotation @UI.selectionField.position:decfloat on the respective elements.

i Note

The value’s number does not represent an absolute measure and works as a relative value to the positions of the other selection fields instead. Hence, the selection fields are arranged in ascending order with regard to the annotation value.

```json
... @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 30 , label: 'Departure Airport Code'} ]
```
Results

The selection field annotation is used on the key elements of the CDS view to create a selection field in the header on the list report. Using these selection fields, you can filter for specific list items.

Object Page

Context

Whereas the list report gives a general overview of the list items, the object page shows more detailed information about a single list item. You navigate to the object page by clicking the item in the list report.

Procedure

1. `/DMO/I_Connection_R` using the annotation `@UI.headerInfo.typeName: 'name'`.  

`@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Flight'
@UI.headerInfo.typeName: 'Connection'
define view /DMO/I_Connection_R
...`
2. Create a standard facet for the object page with the annotation `@UI.facet.purpose: #STANDARD`. This annotation must be in the element section.

A facet is a type of section in the object page. It can contain diagrams or other information in a discrete part of the user interface.

```plaintext
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  { @UI.facet: [ { purpose: #STANDARD } ] }
```

3. Specify the type of the facet. In our case, the object page displays the detailed information of one list item. Use the annotation `@UI.facet.type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE`.

```plaintext
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  { @UI.facet: [ { purpose: #STANDARD,
                   type:     #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE } ] }
```

4. Specify a name for the object page facet header. Use the annotation `@UI.facet.label: 'name'`.

```plaintext
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  { @UI.facet: [ { purpose: #STANDARD,
                   type:     #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
                   label:    'Connection' } ] }
```

5. To define the position of the facet, use the annotation `@UI.facet.position: decfloat`.

```plaintext
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  { @UI.facet: [ { purpose: #STANDARD,
                   type:     #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
                   label:    'Connection',
                   position: 10 } ] }
```

An object page of a type identification reference is created. You can now define the elements that are displayed in the object page.

6. Specify the position and the label for each element that you want to show in the object page. Use the annotations `@UI.identification.position: 'decfloat'` and `@UI.identification.label: 'name'` on each element.

```plaintext
{ ...
    @UI: { identification:[ { position: 10, label: 'Airline' } ] }
    key    Connection.carrier_id      as AirlineID,
    @UI: { identification:[ { position: 20, label: 'Connection Number' } ] }
    key    Connection.connection_id   as ConnectionID,
    @UI: { identification:[ { position: 30, label: 'Departure Airport Code' } ] }
    @UI.selectionField: [ { position: 10 } ]
    key    Connection.airport_from_id as DepartureAirport,
    @UI: { identification:[ { position: 40, label: 'Destination Airport Code' } ] }
    @UI.selectionField: [ { position: 20 } ]
... }
```
Connection.airport_to_id   as DestinationAirport,
  @UI: { identification:[ { position: 50, label: 'Departure Time' } ] } }
Connection.departure_time  as DepartureTime,
  @UI: { identification:[ { position: 60, label: 'Arrival Time' } ] } }
Connection.arrival_time    as ArrivalTime,
  @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: 'DistanceUnit'
  @UI: { identification:[ { position: 70, label: 'Distance' } ] } }
Connection.distance        as Distance,      //** secondary
information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
Connection.distance_unit   as DistanceUnit  //** secondary
information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
}

The following image displays the object page after clicking the connection item JL 407.

Object page with identification reference

7. Activate the CDS view.

Results

The resulting source code, including all annotations that are relevant for the UI in the data definition, is as follows:

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Connection'
@UI.headerInfo: { typeName: 'Connection',
  typeNamePlural: 'Connections' }
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
```
as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
{
  @UI.facet: [
    { id: 'Connection',
      purpose:  #STANDARD,
      type:  #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
      label:  'Connection' }
  ]
  @UI.lineItem: [
    { position: 10, label: 'Airline' }
  ]
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 10, label: 'Airline' }
  ]}
  key Connection.carrier_id  as AirlineID,
  @UI.lineItem: [
    { position: 20, label: 'Connection Number' }
  ]
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 20, label: 'Connection Number' }
  ]}
  key Connection.connection_id as ConnectionID,
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 30, label: 'Departure Airport Code' }
  ]}
  @UI.lineItem: [
    { position: 40, label: 'Destination Airport Code' }
  ]
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 40, label: 'Destination Airport Code' }
  ]}
  @UI.selectionField: [
    { position: 10 }
  ]
  Connection.airport_from_id  as DepartureAirport,
  @UI.lineItem: [
    { position: 40, label: 'Departure Time' }
  ]
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 40, label: 'Departure Time' }
  ]}
  @UI.selectionField: [
    { position: 20 }
  ]
  Connection.airport_to_id  as DestinationAirport,
  @UI.lineItem: [
    { position: 50, label: 'Arrival Time' }
  ]
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 50, label: 'Arrival Time' }
  ]}
  Connection.departure_time  as DepartureTime,
  @UI: { identification:[
    { position: 60, label: 'Distance' }
  ]}
  @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: 'DistanceUnit'
  Connection.distance  as Distance,  //** secondary
  information, not to be displayed on list report entry page
  Connection.distance_unit  as DistanceUnit  //** information is
  given with element Distance via semantic connection
}
4 Concepts

The content in Concepts provides background information about the ABAP RESTful Programming Model and helps you to understand the concepts behind it.

The ABAP RESTful Programming Model has unified the development of OData services [page 1032] with ABAP. It is based on three pillars that facilitate your development.

- **Tools:** The approach to integrate all implementation tasks in one development environment optimizes the development flow and offers an end-to-end experience in one tool environment. New development artifacts support the application developer to develop in a standardized way.

- **Language:** The ABAP language has been aligned and extended to support the development with the ABAP RESTful Programming Model, together with CDS. The application developer uses typed APIs for standard implementation tasks and benefits from auto-completion, element information, and static code checks.

- **Frameworks:** Powerful frameworks represent another important pillar of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model. They assume standard implementation tasks with options for the application developer to use dedicated code exits for application-specific business logic.

Learn how these pillars are incorporated into the architecture of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model in the following topics.

**Design Time**

The following diagram structures the development of an OData service from a design time perspective. In other words, it displays the major development artifacts that you have to deal with during the creation of an OData service with the ABAP RESTful Programming Model. The diagram takes a bottom-up approach that resembles the development flow. The main development tasks can be categorized in three layers, data modeling and behavior, business services provisioning and service consumption.

Hover over the building blocks and get more information and click to find out detailed information about the components.
Runtime

The following diagram provides a runtime perspective of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model. Runtime objects are necessary components to run an application. This runtime stack is illustrated in a top-down approach. An OData client sends a request, which is then passed to the generic runtime frameworks. These frameworks prepare a consumable request for ABAP code and dispatch it to the relevant business logic component. The request is executed by the business object [page 1019] (BO) when data is modified or by the query [page 1033] if data is only read from the data source.

Hover over the building blocks to get more information and click to navigate to more detailed information about the components.
UI service [page 207]
- Web API [page 207]
- Runtime Frameworks [page 207]
- Business Object [page 54]
- Query [page 46]
- Entity Manipulation Language (EML) [page 209]

A more detailed description is available for the following concepts:

- Data Modeling and Behavior [page 45]
  - Business Object [page 54]
  - Business Object Projection [page 194]
  - Query [page 46]
4.1 Data Modeling and Behavior

The layer of data modeling and behavior deals with data and the corresponding business logic.

Data Model

The data model [page 1025] comprises the description of the different entities involved in a business scenario, for example travel and booking, and their relationships, for example the parent-child relationship between travel and booking. The ABAP RESTful Programming Model uses CDS [page 1022] to define and organize the data model. CDS provides a framework for defining and consuming semantic data models. These data models have a physical representation in the database in the form of database views which are automatically created based on a CDS data model. Every real-world entity is represented by one CDS entity [page 1023]. View building capabilities allow you to define application-specific characteristics in the data model. That means, CDS entities are the fundamental building blocks for your application. When using the CDS entity for a data selection, the data access is executed by the SQL-view, which is defined in the CDS entity.

Depending on the use case, data models support transactional access or query access to the database. Thus, data models are used in business objects [page 1019] or queries [page 1033] respectively.

The following diagram gives you an overview of the data model that is used in the development guides of this documentation. Every block refers to one database table view and the respective CDS entity. The blue boxes represent a Travel business object, with its child entities Booking and Booking Supplement. The white boxes represent the entities that are not part of the business object, but support with value helps or text associations. For read-only access to the database, that is simple data retrieval, the data model is used for the query.
Data Model Used in the Development Guides of this Documentation

**Behavior**

The behavior describes what can be done with the data model, for example if the data can be updated.

In transactional scenarios, the business object behavior defines which operations and what characteristics belong to a business object. For read-only scenarios, the behavior of the data model is defined by the query capabilities, for example if the data is filterable.

Learn more about the business object and the query in the following topics.

*Business Object [page 54]*

*Query [page 46]*

### 4.1.1 Query

A query is the connecting interface for read-only access to the database in OData services [page 1032]. It is used for list reports or analytical reports to process data.

As the non-transactional counterpart of a business object [page 1019], it consists of a data model [page 1025], generic and modeled query capabilities and a runtime. This threefold division is known from the BO concept. However, a query provides only read access to the database. Its runtime never modifies data, but only executes structured data retrieval, for example for filtering.
Data Model

The data model for a query is provided with CDS entities [page 1022]. They structure and group database fields to execute query capabilities on them. The SQL select to retrieve data from the database is generically integrated in the CDS view.

A query operates on a loose combination of CDS entities. Each entity represents a real-world artifact and contains the relevant information about it. For example, the information of Flight Connections or Airports is manifested in CDS entities. The entities are not strictly structured. Their connections, which are modeled with associations [page 1018], only provide a functional relationship. In other words, only if data from other entities is needed for a certain functionality is the association necessary. In contrast to BO compositions [page 1022], there is no existential relationship for such associations.

**i Note**

Associations with custom entity as source or target support only attribute bindings (A1 = A2 and B1 = B2), but no:
- OR, NOT
- Other operators than ‘=’
- Using something else than CDS elements as operands (e.g. no literals or variables)

**Example**

When providing text for ID elements, you need an association to a text providing CDS entity to get the text from there. The association is only relevant to get information from the text provider. There is no other structural relationship.

In case of Flight Connections, an association is created to get the information about the long text of the airport ID in the Airport entity and the full name of the airline in the Carrier entity.

![Loose Combination of CDS Entities with Associations for Query Capabilities](image)

**Query Capabilities**

Query capabilities provide read access to the database and process data to structure them for a certain output. In contrast to BO behavior [page 1020], the capabilities do not need to be defined in a separate artifact. Some of the query capabilities which result from OData query options are generically available and applicable. The query framework provides the SQL statement to retrieve the structured data for these capabilities, for example in filtering.

Other capabilities are explicitly modeled by the developer in the source code of the CDS entity. These capabilities depend on associated CDS entities. The application developer has to define this dependency in the
CDS entity. In this case, CDS annotations [page 1023] indicate which CDS entity or element is involved, as it is the case for text or value help provisioning. Most of the explicitly modeled capabilities are based on the query of associated CDS entities.

The following table lists the available query capabilities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generally Applicable Capabilities</th>
<th>Explicitly Modeled Capabilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paging</td>
<td>search</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorting</td>
<td>value help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filtering</td>
<td>aggregation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counting</td>
<td>text provisioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column selections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All of these features do not modify data on the database but process data to structure them for a certain output.

**Query Runtime**

The runtime of a query is usually managed by the query framework (SADL [page 1034]). The framework takes into account all query capabilities that are mentioned previously. The application developer does not have to deal with the construction of the SQL statement to retrieve data from a database table. The data model for the managed runtime is provided in CDS entity [page 1023].

There is also the option to handle the query manually. We speak of an unmanaged query [page 1038] in this case. An unmanaged query can be used, for example, if the data source of a query is not a database table. That means, the framework cannot provide the SQL statement to access the database. Instead, the application developer needs to implement every query capability to retrieve the data matching the OData request. For the unmanaged implementation type, the data model is manifested in a CDS custom entity. In contrast to CDS views, CDS custom entities [page 1023] do not provide an SQL SELECT for the data retrieval from the database. A query implementation class [page 1033] must be implemented to execute the data retrieval.

The following diagram exemplifies the runtime of a managed and an unmanaged query.
4.1.1.1 Query Runtime Implementation

Managed Query

The default case for a query is the managed implementation type. In this case, the orchestration framework manages the data access to the database. Query capabilities, which result from OData query options ($orderby, $top,$skip ...) are considered, as well as possible authorizations, which are derived from attached access control. The framework creates an SQL statement for the query that is executed based on the definition in the CDS source code, the query capabilities and the authorizations. For the runtime of the managed query, the application developer does not have to implement anything. The application development tasks are limited to defining the data model and the related access controls during the design time.

The following diagram illustrates the runtime of a query.
Access controls are not illustrated in the preceding diagram. If authorizations are modeled with access controls, they would automatically be evaluated.

**Managed Query - Runtime**

An OData request with the query option `$filter` reaches an OData service [page 1032]. Once transformed into an ABAP consumable object, the orchestration framework triggers the query to be executed. Then, the query framework creates the SQL statement to select the required data from the database. In this case, the query framework extends the SQL statement with a where clause to only select the data sets that match the filter condition. In case, access controls are involved, the query framework also evaluates the involved authorizations.

For a detailed runtime diagram, see Query Runtime [page 53].

**Unmanaged Query**

The unmanaged implementation type for a query is used when the standard SQL push-down by the query framework is not sufficient or not usable at all.

Use cases for unmanaged queries are
• the data source for an OData request is not a database table, but, for example another OData service, which is reached by an OData client proxy,
• performance optimization with application specific handling,
• using AMDPs with some query push-down parameters in the SQL script implementation,
• forwarding the call to the analytical engines, or
• enrichment of query result data on property or row level, for example when splitting rows for intermediate sums or condensing the filter result.

The unmanaged query is protocol agnostic. That means, like managed queries, it can be reused for multiple scenarios.

The following diagram illustrates the runtime of an unmanaged query.

![Unmanaged Query - Runtime Diagram](image)

**Explanation**

The data model for an unmanaged query must be defined in a CDS custom entity [page 1023]. A custom entity defines the structure of the data returned by the query. This is done using CDS syntax in a CDS data definition (DDLS). A CDS custom entity does not have an SQL view to select data from a database. Instead, the custom entity specifies an ABAP class that implements the query. The entity annotation `@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy: 'ABAP:<Query_Impl_Class>'` is used to reference the query implementation class [page 1033] in the data definition of the CDS custom query. This annotation is evaluated when the unmanaged query is executed whereby the query implementation class is called to perform the query.

Since no SQL artifact is generated for custom entities and the query is implemented in ABAP, custom entities cannot be used in ABAP SQL or in SQL joins in data definitions [page 1025].

The syntax of a CDS custom entity is the following:

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'EndUserText'
@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy: 'ABAP:<Query_Impl_Class>'
[define] [root] custom entity CustomEntityName
    with parameters
        ParamName: dtype [, ...] 
    
    [element_annot]
```
A CDS custom entity can have parameters, elements and associations. Like in CDS views, it lists the elements that are used in the data model. For each element, the data type must be specified as it cannot be retrieved from an underlying database representation.

A custom entity can be an entity in a business object, for example a root, a parent, or a child entity using root and composition relationships. Custom entities may also be used as targets in the definition of associations and define associations as a source.

A custom entity cannot be used in ABAP SQL SELECT executions as they to not have a database representation. In particular, you cannot use elements of an associated custom entity in the element list of the source CDS entity.

Unmanaged queries are implemented in ABAP classes. The query implementation class implements a predefined ABAP interface (IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER) to ensure that the required basic OData support is enabled. The interface has a select method which imports an interface instance for the request data and one for the response data.

Access control needs to be implemented manually in the query implementation class to ensure that only those records are returned the user is allowed to access. You cannot use an access control object for a custom entity.

In contrast to the managed query, the application developer has to take care for every supported query option in the query implementation class, including possible authorizations that are also implemented in the query implementation class.

Example

An example on how to use a CDS custom entity and implement an unmanaged query with the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER in a query implementation class is given in Implementing an Unmanaged Query [page 672].

The use case of an unmanaged query in combination with the client proxy is explained in the develop scenario Developing a UI Service with Access to a Remote Service [page 539].

For more information about the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER, see Unmanaged Query API [page 948].

Note

Custom Entities cannot be projected in CDS projection views.

For a detailed runtime diagram, see Query Runtime [page 53].
4.1.1.1 Query Runtime

In RAP, a query is the non-transactional read operation to retrieve data directly from the database. The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents’ activities when an OData GET (GET ENTITYSET) request is sent.
4.1.2 Business Object

Introduction

A business object (BO) is a common term to represent a real-world artifact in enterprise application development such as the Product, the Travel, or the SalesOrder. In general, a business object contains several nodes such as Items and ScheduleLines and common transactional operations such as for creating, updating and deleting business data. An additional application-specific operation in the SalesOrder business object might be, for example, an Approve action allowing the user to approve the sales order. All changing operations for all application-related business objects form the transactional behavior in an application scenario.

When going to implement an application scenario based on business objects, we may distinguish between the external, consumer-related representation of a business object and the internal, provider-related perspective:

- The external perspective hides the intrinsic complexity of business objects. Developers who want to create a service on top of the existing business objects for role-based UIs do not need to know in detail on which parts of technical artifacts the business objects are composed of or how runtime implementations are orchestrated internally. The same also applies to all developers who need to implement a consumer on top of the business object's APIs.
- The internal perspective exposes the implementation details and the complexity of business objects. This perspective is required for application developers who want to provide new or extend existing business objects for the industries, the globalization and partners.

From a formal point of view, a business object is characterized by
Structure of a Business Object

From a structural point of view, a business object consists of a hierarchical tree of nodes (SalesOrder, Items, ScheduleLines) where the nodes are linked by special kinds of associations, namely by compositions. A composition is a specialized association that defines a whole-part relationship. A composite part only exists together with its parent entity (whole).

Each node of this composition tree is an element that is modeled with a CDS entity and arranged along a composition path. As depicted in the diagram below, a sequence of compositions connecting entities with each other, builds up a composition tree of an individual business object.

The root entity is of particular importance in a composition tree: The root entity serves as a representation of the business object and defines the top node within a hierarchy in a business object’s structure. This is considered in the source code of the CDS data definition with the keyword ROOT.

The root entity serves as the source of a composition which is defined using the keyword COMPOSITION in the corresponding data definition. The target of this composition defines a direct child entity. On the other hand, CDS entities that represent child nodes of the business object’s composition tree, must define an association to their compositional parent or root entity. This relationship is expressed by the keyword ASSOCIATION TO PARENT. A to-parent association in ABAP CDS is a specialized association which can be defined to model the child-parent relationship between two CDS entities.

In a nutshell: both, a sequence of compositions and to-parent associations between entities define the structure of a business object with a root entity on top of the composition tree.

All entities - except the root entity - that represent a node of the business object structure serve as a:

- Parent entity - if it represents a node in a business object’s structure that is directly connected to another node when moving towards the root.
- Child entity - if it represents a node in a business object’s structure that is directly connected to another node (parent node) when moving away from the root.
- Leaf entity - if it represents a node in a business object’s structure without any child nodes. A leaf entity is a CDS entity, which is the target of a composition (a child entity node) but does not contain a composition definition.
Behavior of a Business Object

To specify the business object’s behavior, the behavior definition as the corresponding development object is used. A business object behavior definition (behavior definition for short) is an ABAP Repository object that describes the behavior of a business object in the context of the ABAP RESTful application programming model. A behavior definition is defined using the Behavior Definition Language (BDL).

A behavior definition always refers to a CDS data model. As shown in the figure below, a behavior definition relies directly on the CDS root entity. One behavior definition refers exactly to one root entity and one CDS root entity has at most one behavior definition (a 0..1 cardinality), which also handles all included child entities that are included in the composition tree. The implementation of a behavior definition can be done in a single ABAP class (behavior pool) or can be split between an arbitrary set of ABAP classes (behavior pools). The application developer can assign any number of behavior pools to a behavior definition (1..N cardinality).
A behavior specifies the operations and field properties of an individual business object in the ABAP RESTful programming model. It includes a behavior characteristic and a set of operations for each entity of the business object’s composition tree.
**Behavior Characteristic**

Behavior characteristic is that part of the business object’s behavior that specifies general properties of an entity such as:

- ETag [page 161]
- Draft handling [page 60]
- Feature control [page 1028]
- Numbering [page 91]
- Authorizations.

Apart from draft capabilities, these characteristics can be defined for each entity separately.

**Operations**

Each entity of a business object can offer a set of operations. They can cause business data changes that are performed within a transactional life cycle of the business object. As depicted in the diagram below, these modify operations include the standard operations create(), update() and delete() as well as lock implementations and application-specific operations with a dedicated input and output structure which are called actions. Another kind of operations are the read operations: they do not change any business data in the
context of a business object behavior. Read operations include read, read by association, and functions (that are similar to actions, however, without causing any side effects).

For more information, see

- Create Operation [page 130]
- Update Operation [page 132]
- Delete Operation [page 134]
- Actions [page 138]
- Locking [page 161]

**Business Object’s Runtime**

The business object runtime mainly consists of two parts:

The first part is the **interaction phase**, in which a consumer calls the business object operations to change data and read instances with or without the transactional changes. The business object runtime keeps the changes in its internal **transactional buffer** which represents the state of the instance data. This transactional buffer is always required for a business object. After all changes were performed, the data can be persisted. This is realized with the **save sequence**.
For each operation the transactional runtime is described in detail in the respective runtime diagrams:

- Create Operation [page 130]
- Update Operation [page 132]
- Delete Operation [page 134]

The save sequence has the same structure for each operation. For more information, see Save Sequence [page 150].

4.1.2.1 Behavior Characteristics

4.1.2.1.1 Draft

You can draft-enable a business object to automatically persist transactional data in the backend. This approach supports stateless communication for your applications.

Modern cloud-ready apps require a stateless communication pattern, for example to leverage cloud capabilities like elasticity and scalability. Thus, there is no fixed backend session resource along a business
transaction for each user and the incoming requests can be dispatched to different backend resources, which supports load balancing. On the other hand, apps are stateful from the end-user perspective. Business data that is entered by the end user needs to be locked, validated, and enriched via ABAP business logic on backend side.

The draft concept fills the gap between a stateless communication pattern and a stateful application by applying REST principles:

- The draft represents the state and stores the transactional changes on the database in shadow tables. It is an addressable resource, the exact copy of the active data that is currently being edited.
- Between two backend roundtrips, there is no running ABAP session waiting for the next roundtrip. The execution might even be performed on different backend servers.

Draft-enabled applications allow the end user to store changed data in the backend and continue at a later point in time or from a different device, even if the application terminates unexpectedly. This kind of scenario needs to support a stateless communication and requires a replacement for the temporary in-memory version of the business entity that is created or edited. This temporary version is kept on a separate database table and is known as draft data. Drafts are isolated in their own persistence and do not influence existing business logic until activated.

**Draft and Active Data**

In general, the draft implies the following advantages for your application:

- **Save & Continue:**
  A draft allows you to stop processing and saving of business data at any time and to continue processing later on, no matter if the data is in a consistent state or not.

- **Staging:**
  The draft works like a staging area so that business data is isolated during processing and can finally be activated, that is, saved to the active database.

- **Device Switch:**
  As the draft persists the state of processing, it can be resumed with any device. For instance, you can edit data on a laptop and continue from a mobile device.

- **Collaboration:**
  With this release, only the exclusive draft is supported. This means that only the user who has created the draft is able to process and activate it. A shared draft, however, allows dispatching the ownership of the draft to a different user. Finally, the collaborative draft allows editing the same draft instance by multiple users at the same time.
State Handling

Applications usually have a transactional state that buffers all changes of a current transaction until it is committed by the application user. If the buffer state is consistent, the commit is accepted, if not, the whole transaction is rejected. This all-or-nothing-approach prevents inconsistent data on the database table.

For smaller applications, sending the whole transactional state to the backend is unproblematic. The state can be managed completely on the frontend side. We speak of frontend state handling in that case. However, in case of complex backend-located business logic (especially legacy code), configuration, and data volume, transferring everything to the frontend layer does not work for performance, maintenance, and security reasons. Thus, backend state handling (draft) is required.

Basic Principles

- The main business logic is implemented on the active entity, for example with actions or feature control. This behavior can be applied to draft entities in the same manner.
- There can be only up to one draft instance for each active instance at the same time.
- The primary key value of a draft and the corresponding active instance is the same.

Exclusive Draft

There are several approaches how draft instances that are created by different users can be accessed. The current version of the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model only supports the exclusive draft. A draft exclusively belongs to the user that created the draft. Only this user is able to see and process the draft instance.

The exclusive draft goes hand in hand with the exclusive lock. As soon as a user starts working on a draft, it sets an exclusive lock. It is locked for other users. The exclusiveness is maintained for a defined period of time. After that period, the draft goes into an optimistic lock phase. In this phase, the draft can either be resumed by the same user or discarded, if other users take over the exclusive draft handling. For more information, see Locking in Draft Scenarios [page 167]

Draft in the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Draft is an option that you can use for application development with both, the managed and unmanaged implementation type and also with mixed scenarios, for example, managed with unmanaged save. In all scenarios, the draft is managed. That means, it is handled by the RAP runtime framework. You, as an application developer, do not need to care about how draft data is written to the draft database table. This is done for you. Of course, adding draft capabilities to your business object might imply changes in your business logic also for the processing of active data that you are responsible of. In addition, RAP also offers implementation exits for cases in which you need business service-specific draft capabilities that impact the draft handling.
Restrictions

Draft-Enabled Business Objects

- You cannot refer to a new instance that was created by a static factory action by using the %CID_REF in OData. This is also true for the EDIT action.
- There can be locking conflicts for the active provider if an instance which was activated is locked again in the same transaction. This is because the durable lock of the active instance remains after the activation of a draft instance.
- The generic feature and authorization control for draft operations (such as no EDIT on draft instances) is not merged into consumer hints for OData.

Unmanaged Business Objects with Draft

There are features that can be defined in the behavior definition of an unmanaged business object and thus used on active instances, but not on draft instances:

- You cannot execute the following operations on draft instances:
  - Functions
  - Create-Enabled Associations
  - Instance Factory Actions
  - Direct Creates on Child Instances
- You cannot use primary key values that are longer than 117 characters.
- You cannot use ABAP dictionary structures as importing or exporting action parameter.
- Late numbering is not supported.
- There is no uniqueness check for draft instances.
- The aggregated admin data fields are not updated automatically when a draft instance is saved.
- Associations that use NOT in the binding condition cannot be draft-enabled.
- There is no support for transactional draft-enabled associations leading from draft to active instances.

4.1.2.1.1 Draft Design Time

Given the fact that the runtime of a draft business object differs significantly from a non-draft business object, it comes with no surprise that there are also quite some differences with regard to the design time of a draft business object.

The addition with draft in the behavior definition defines a draft business object. As soon as the business object is draft-enabled with this syntax element, you have various other options to use draft capabilities on certain actions and operations. For more information, see Draft Business Object [page 64].

As draft instances are stored independently of active instances, a separate database table, the draft table, must be created. This draft table must be explicitly stated in the behavior definition and can be generated from there. For more information, see Draft Database Table [page 65].

To control the state of the active BO data, you use the total ETag, which must also be defined in the behavior definition. For more information, see Total ETag [page 66].
To enable that an association retrieves active data if it is followed from an active instance and draft data if it is followed from a draft source instance, the associations must be draft-enabled. For more information, see Draft-Enabled Associations [page 69].

### 4.1.2.1.1.1 Draft Business Object

The draft capability for a draft business object is defined in the behavior definition.

You can build draft business objects from scratch, or you can draft-enable existing business objects with both implementation types managed or unmanaged. The draft-indicating syntax element with draft is added at the top of the behavior definition as it does not belong to a certain entity of the BO, but concerns the whole BO. You cannot implement draft capabilities for single BO entities.

**Behavior Definition Syntax**

```plaintext
[implementation] unmanaged|managed|abstract [in class class_name unique];
with draft;
define behavior for CDSEntityName [alias AliasName]
...
```

In draft business objects, the handling of the draft instances is always managed by the RAP runtime framework, no matter if your business object is unmanaged or managed. That means, the draft life-cycle is determined by the RAP draft runtime and specific draft actions are implicitly available for the draft business object.

### Runtime Aspects

If you use %tky to address the application key components of an entity, you do not have to change your business logic implementation when draft-enabling the business object. The derived type component %tky automatically includes the draft indicator %IS_DRAFT for draft business object to distinguish draft instances from active instances. Like this, the business functionality runs smoothly without adapting your code after draft-enabling your business object.

If you use %key in your business logic implementation, you have to revise the complete implementation when draft-enabling the business object. This derived type component only comprises the application key component. In this case, the runtime is not able to distinguish between draft and active instances.

**i Note**

The recommendation is to only use %tky in your business logic implementation for both, active-only and draft business object.
4.1.2.1.1.2 Draft Database Table

Draft business objects need two separate database tables for each entity. One for the active persistence and one for storing draft instances.

The draft data is stored on a separate draft table to match the different access patterns of draft and active data. While the active database table stores many instances, but rarely has access on these instances, it is vice versa for the draft table. With two separate tables, the performance can be adapted to the different approaches of the two tables more easily. During runtime, every request is marked whether it is intended for the draft table, or for the active with the draft indicator IS_DRAFT.

With using a separate database table for the draft information, it is guaranteed that the active persistence database table remains untouched and thus consistent for existing database functionality.

**i Note**

Although draft database tables are usual ABAP Dictionary database tables and there are no technical access restrictions, it is not allowed to directly access the draft database table via SQL, neither with reading access nor writing access. The access to the draft database table must always be done via EML, with which the draft metadata get updated automatically.

The draft database table contains exactly the same fields as the active database table plus some technical information the RAP runtime needs to handle draft. The technical information is added with the draft admin include.

**Draft Table**

```abap
...define table DraftTable {
  key client       : abap.clnt not null;
  key ...            ...
  "%admin"        : include sych_bdl_draft_admin_inc;}
```

**Draft Admin Include**

```abap
...define structure sych_bdl_draft_admin_inc {
  draftentitycreationdatetime   : sych_bdl_draft_created_at;
  draftentitylastchangedatetime : sych_bdl_draft_last_changed_at;
  draftadministrativedatauuid  : sych_bdl_draft_admin_uuid;
  draftentityoperationcode     : sych_bdl_draft_operation_code;
  hasactiveentity              : sych_bdl_draft_hasactive;
  draftfieldchanges            : sych_bdl_draft_field_changes;}
```

The draft table can be generated automatically via a quick fix in the behavior definition, which is offered as soon as the business object is draft-enabled with the syntax with draft. In case the draft database table does already exist, the quickfix completely overwrites the table.
Whenever you change the active data model in the active database table, you have to regenerate the draft table to align them. The behavior definition offers a quick fix for regeneration, but it is the responsibility of the application developer to keep the two database tables synchronized. When regenerating the draft database table it completely overwrites the existing one.

4.1.2.1.1.1.3 Total ETag

The total ETag is a designated field in a draft business object to enable optimistic concurrency checks during the transition from draft to active data.

Draft business objects require a total ETag. This designated field on the database table is updated by the RAP runtime framework as soon as an active instance is changed. The total ETag always refers to the complete BO. As soon as an instance of any BO entity is changed, the total ETag is updated. Its value is compared when resuming a draft instance to ensure that the active data has not been changed after the exclusive lock has expired. Thus, the total ETag is important for optimistic concurrency control during the transition from draft to active data. The total ETag is defined in the behavior definition.

The total ETag field is defined on the lock master entity (currently identical to root entity) and optimistically controls the whole business object regarding concurrency on the active data.
The definition of the total ETag is only possible directly after the lock master definition in the behavior definition.

The RAP managed framework is able to update the total ETag field automatically on saving a draft instance if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- The field is annotated in CDS with the annotation `@Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt: true` with the precondition that the field has a date-compatible type).
- The total ETag field is included in the field-mapping prescription in the behavior definition.

If you don’t enable the framework to update the field, you have to include your own updating logic in the business logic of the BO.

The total ETag and ETag master/dependent are two sides of the same medal. For a smoothly running application, you need both ETags.

The total ETag is used for edit-drafts, a draft that has a corresponding active instance. As soon as the exclusive lock expires and an edit-draft is resumed, the total ETag value of the draft instance is compared to the total ETag value on the active instance. Only if the values coincide can the draft be resumed. The total ETag is compared for all entities of a BO. Draft business objects requires a total ETag to ensure optimistic concurrency comparison.

The ETag master/dependent concept ensures that the end user of an OData service only changes instances with the state that is displayed on the UI. Hence, the ETag master/dependent prevents changes of the BO that are not noticed by the OData consumers. With ETag master, each BO entity can be checked independently. ETag master fields are required to provide optimistic concurrency locking for OData consumers. For more information, see Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161].

Since the total ETag and the ETag master serve different purposes, you must use separate fields to enable both functionalities.

### 4.1.2.1.1.1.4 Draft Actions

Draft actions are actions that are implicitly available for draft business objects as soon as the business object is draft-enabled. They can, but do not have to be explicitly declared in the behavior definition.

Draft actions can only be specified for lock master entities, as they always refer to the whole lockable subtree of a business object.

#### Syntax

```
[implementation] unmanaged|managed|abstract [in class class_name unique];
with draft;
define behavior for CDSEntityName [alias AliasName]
...
lock master
...
[draft action [(authorization : none, features : instance)] Edit;]
[draft action Activate;]
```
Draft actions are needed for specific occasions in business services with draft.

**Draft Action Edit**

The draft action **EDIT** copies an active instance to the draft database table. Feature and authorization control is available for the **EDIT**, which you can optionally define to restrict the usage of the action.

The draft action **EDIT** is automatically exposed to OData with the name `<lock_master_entity_name>Edit`, even without explicitly mentioning it in the behavior definition.

For more information, see [Edit Action](#).

**Draft Action Activate**

The draft action **ACTIVATE** is the inverse action to **EDIT**. It invokes the **PREPARE** and a modify call containing all the changes for the active instance in case of an edit-draft, or a **CREATE** in case of a new-draft. Once the active instance is successfully created, the draft instance is discarded.

In contrast to the draft action **Edit**, the **Activate** does not allow feature or authorization control. Authorization is not as it only transfers the state of the draft buffer to the active buffer. Authorization is controlled when the active instance is saved to the database.

The draft action **ACTIVATE** is automatically exposed to OData with the name `<lock_master_entity_name>Activate` even without explicitly mentioning it in the behavior definition.

For more information, see [Edit Action](#).

**Draft Action Discard**

The draft action **DISCARD** deletes the draft instance from the draft database table. No feature or authorization control can be implemented.

It is automatically exposed to OData with the name `<lock_master_entity_name>Discard` even without explicitly mentioning it in the behavior definition.

For more information, see [Discarding Root Draft Instances](#).

**Draft Determine Action Prepare**

The draft determine action **PREPARE** executes the determinations and validations that are specified for it in the behavior definition. The **PREPARE** enables validating draft data before the transition to active data.

In the behavior definition, you must specify which determinations and validations are called during the prepare action. Only determinations and validations that are defined and implemented for the BO can be used.

The draft action **PREPARE** is automatically exposed to OData with the name `<lock_master_entity_name>Prepare` even without explicitly mentioning it in the behavior definition. No validations or determinations are called if there is nothing specified for the **PREPARE**.

For more information, see [Preparing Draft Instances for Activation](#).
Draft Action Resume

The draft action RESUME is executed when a user continues to work on a draft instance whose exclusive lock for the active data has already expired. It re-creates the lock for the corresponding instance on the active database table. On a Fiori Elements UI, it is invoked when reopening and changing a draft instance whose exclusive lock is expired.

In case of a new draft, the same feature and authorization control is executed as defined for a CREATE. In case of an edit-draft, the same feature and authorization control is executed like in an Edit.

As the RESUME action is application-specific, it is only exposed to OData if it is explicitly declared in the behavior definition. It uses the name <lock_master_entity_name>Resume. You can only execute the RESUME action via EML if the action is explicitly made available in the behavior definition.

If you want to implement your own logic for the resume action, it must be implemented by the application developer in the related behavior implementation class, just like any other action, see Action Implementation [page 145].

For more information about the Resumes, see Resuming Locks for Draft Instances [page 86].

4.1.2.1.1.5 Draft-Enabled Associations

A draft-enabled association retrieves active data if it is followed from an active instance and draft data if it is followed from a draft source instance.

The intended behavior for all associations within the composition tree of a draft business object is to be draft-enabled, so that the associations always lead to the target instance with the same state (draft or active).

Example

On creating a child instance of a draft root instance by a CREATE_BY_ASSOCIATION, you want to create a draft instance. Creating an active child instance would lead to BO-internal inconsistencies. That is why, all compositions are automatically draft-enabled.

As soon as you draft-enable a business object by adding with draft to the behavior definition, all BO-internal associations are automatically draft-enabled. To make this behavior explicit, the behavior prompts you to specify the compositions within a draft BO with with draft.

Behavior Definition Syntax

```plaintext
define behavior for CDSEntityName [alias AliasName]  
... 
  association AssociationName { [create] [(features : instance)] ; } with draft; }
```

4.1.2.1.1.2 Draft Runtime

RESTful applications require a constant stateless communication with the backend to prevent that transient data is lost when a user session ends. Data changes are constantly persisted on the draft database tables and are therefore always retrievable from any device. The fact that two database tables are involved in the runtime...
of a draft business object requires an elaborate lifecycle of data. All data undergo several states while being processed by a draft business object. There are three distinct states that need to be distinguished.

For initial data that is not yet persisted on the active database table, we speak of new-draft instances. New-draft instances do not have a corresponding active instance. They are created using the modify CREATE operation having the draft indicator %IS_DRAFT set to \texttt{true}. The draft indicator is automatically available as derived type when working with the transactional key  \%tky.

As soon as a draft instance is transferred from the draft database table to the persistent table, the draft instance is activated. The data that is stored on the persistent database table is called active data. Active instances come into being by activating new-draft instances or by using the modify CREATE operation and setting the draft indicator %IS_DRAFT to  \texttt{false}.

Edit-drafts always exist in parallel to the corresponding active data. Whenever active data is edited, the whole active instance is copied to the draft table. All modifications are saved on the draft database table before the changes are finally applied to the active data on the active database table again. Edit-draft instances are created by using the EDIT action on active instances.

The following diagram illustrates the lifecycle of draft and active data and their transitions from one state to the other.

When working with draft instances, you always set an exclusive lock for this instance. In case of an edit-draft, that means that the corresponding active instance cannot be modified by any other user. In case of a new-draft, the primary key number is locked exclusively to avoid duplicate key failure on the database. For the time of the exclusive lock phase, it is not possible to create neither an active, nor a draft instance with the same key. After the exclusive lock has expired, the draft is in an optimistic lock mode, in case the user starts processing again, the draft resume action is automatically invoked. It locks the corresponding active instance again, compares the total ETag and if successful, the draft can be continued in exclusive mode.

You can always send requests for draft instances or active instances. Accessing draft instances via EML or OData works exactly like accessing active instances. To distinguish if the requests are aimed at draft or active instances, the RAP runtime framework evaluates the draft indicator %IS_DRAFT. This draft indicator must be set for every request, which can be processed on active or draft instances. In OData, this technical primary key component is mapped to \texttt{isActiveInstance}.

On a UI, modifications of data in a draft BO always take place on the draft instance (except for actionss). Only in case of activation via the activate action are the changes applied to the corresponding active instance. The transition from draft to active data and vice versa requires specific actions that process tasks that are not
relevant in a non-draft business object. These actions are explained best when considering the lifecycle of a draft and active data in detail.

Creating Draft Data [page 71]
Creating Active Data [page 76]
Changing and Reading Instances of a Draft BO [page 79]
Deleting Instances of a Draft BO [page 82]
Preparing Draft Instances for Activation [page 84]
Resuming Locks for Draft Instances [page 86]
Saving Data to the Database [page 89]

4.1.2.1.2.1 Creating Draft Data

You create draft instances by creating new-drafts or by editing active instances.

As the preceding diagram suggests, there are two options to create draft data:

Modify CREATE Request

By using the modify operation for CREATE, you create a new-draft instance, a draft instance that has no corresponding active instance. For such a create request, the draft indicator must be set to true. Like a CREATE for active instances, the RAP runtime sets an exclusive lock for the instance and triggers any determination on modify with trigger CREATE. On creating a new instance the uniqueness of the primary keys must be ensured. Otherwise, if duplicate keys reach the active database table, the whole request is denied. For more information about an early uniqueness check, see Uniqueness Check [page 93].

On a Fiori Elements UI, using the Create button executes a CREATE request with the draft indicator set to true. It is not possible to directly create active instances by using the Create button on a Fiori UI.
Via EML, however, it is possible to distinguish requests to create draft data and requests to create active data. To create draft instances, the draft indicator must be set to true:

```
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
 ENTITY BO_Entity
 CREATE FROM
  VALUE #( ( %is_draft = if_abap_behv=>mk-on "positive draft indicator"
           %control-FieldName = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
           %data-FieldName = 'Value') )
 REPORTED DATA(create_reported)
 FAILED DATA(create_failed)
 MAPPED DATA(create_mapped).
```

### Edit Action

By executing the draft action `EDIT` on an active instance, you create an edit-draft instance, a draft instance that has a corresponding active instance on the persistent database. An edit action creates a new draft document by automatically copying the corresponding active instance data to the draft table. At the same time, the `EDIT` triggers an exclusive lock for the active instance. This lock is maintained until the durable lock phase of the draft ends, which is either when the draft is activated, or when the durable lock expires after a certain time.

The edit action has a parameter with which you can determine whether editing an active instance for which a draft already exists is possible or not. Having set the parameter `preserve_changes` to true, your action request is rejected if a draft already exists. If `preserve_changes` is set to false (default setting), the edit action is executed. That means, the active instance is copied to the draft database table and the existing draft is overwritten with the values of the active data. In that case, you lose the changes that anyone has done on the existing draft instance. Hence, it is recommended to always include the parameter in your action requests.

For edit action requests, the draft indicator does not have to be set, as the `EDIT` is always executed on the active instance.

Instance authority and feature control are both checked for the action. To implement application-specific controls, define the `EDIT` action in the behavior definition and implement the method for features or for authorization in the behavior pool.

On a Fiori Elements UI, the edit action is triggered when choosing the `Edit` button, which is only available on the object page of an active instance. Triggering the edit action from the UI always includes the parameter `preserve_changes` set to true.

In this case, OData sends a `POST` request for action execution of the `EDIT`, which is then carried out by the RAP runtime framework.

The edit action can be executed via EML, just like any other business logic action:

```
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
 ENTITY BO_Entity
 EXECUTE Edit FROM
  VALUE #( ( %key-element1 = 'KeyValue'
           %param-preserve_changes = 'X' ) )
 REPORTED DATA(edit_reported)
 FAILED DATA(edit_failed)
 MAPPED DATA(edit_mapped).
```
This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for `CREATE`.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO’s behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1.2.1.2 Runtime Edit Action

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for EDIT.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO’s behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.

Activities by BO-Consumer via Odata or EML
Activities by RAP runtime framework
Activities executed by RAP runtime framework but implemented by application developer

- Edit
  - Check Global Authorization
  - Set Enqueue Context for User
  - Check Instance Authorization
  - Check Instance Features
  - Check Unexistence of other Draft
    - Other Draft
      - Discard Other Draft
    - No Other Draft
      - Create Draft Instance
      - Commit Entities / Persist Buffer State
      - Clean-Up Buffer
  - Transactional Buffer
    - Active Instance
    - Draft Table
      - Persistent Table
      - Active Instance
      - Draft Instance
      - Draft Instance
4.1.2.1.2.2 Creating Active Data

You create active data by activating draft data or by directly creating an active instance with a modify `CREATE` request.

Modify `CREATE` Request

Creating a new active instance for a draft BO from scratch is not possible from a Fiori Elements UI. Every create request (OData `POST`) is sent without the OData draft indicator `IsActiveEntity`. This is interpreted as `false` and the RAP runtime framework creates a new-draft instance.

Via EML, however, it is possible to distinguish modify `CREATE` requests for active instances and for draft instances. The syntax for directly creating an active instance via EML is the following:

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
   ENTITY BO_Entity
      CREATE FROM
      VALUE #( ( %is_draft          = if_abap_behv=>mk-off  "negative draft indicator"
                   %control-FieldName = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
                   %data-FieldName    = 'Value') )
   REPORTED DATA(create_reported)
   FAILED DATA(create_failed)
   MAPPED DATA(create_mapped).
```

The runtime of a modify request for active instances can be seen in Create Operation [page 130].

**i Note**

When saving the data from the application buffer on the persistent database table via `COMMIT ENTITIES` or BO-internal triggers of the save sequence, validations are executed and can prevent modification requests if the data is not consistent, see Save Sequence [page 150].

Activate Action

By executing the draft action `ACTIVATE` on a draft instance, you copy the draft instance to active application buffer. It invokes the `PREPARE` and a modify request to change the active BO instance according to the state of...
the draft instance. Once the active instance is successfully created or updated, the draft instance is discarded. The activate action does not save the active instance on the database. The actual save is executed separately, either by **COMMIT ENTITIES** via EML or by calling the save sequence in case of OData.

The activate action is only possible on draft instances.

On a Fiori Elements UI, the activate action is triggered when choosing the **Save** button after editing data. The **Save** button also triggers the save sequence after the activation.

For executing the **ACTIVATE** via EML, the following syntax is used:

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
ENTITY BO_Entity
  EXECUTE Activate FROM
    VALUE #( ( %key-FieldName = 'Value' ) )
  REPORTED DATA(activate_reported)
  FAILED DATA(activate_failed)
  MAPPED DATA(activate_mapped).
```

**Note**

The modify request to adapt the active instance according to the state of the draft BO-instance entails every operation that was done on the draft instance.

In case of an unmanaged implementation scenario, it is just one modify request that is passed to the active unmanaged provider. This can lead to problems if a child draft instance is deleted; and in the same logical unit of work, a new child instance is created with the same key. As the order of the modify requests for delete and create by association is not determined, it can happen that the unmanaged provider executes the **CREATE_BY_ASSOCIATION** before the child instance with the same key is deleted. This scenario raises a short dump during runtime. To prevent this, combine the handler methods for delete and create by association in one handler method in unmanaged scenarios with draft. In this single handler method, strictly define the order so that first, the **DELETE** is executed and then the **CREATE_BY_ASSOCIATION**.

### 4.1.2.1.2.2.1 Runtime Activate Action

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for **ACTIVATE**.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO’s behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1.2.3 Changing and Reading Instances of a Draft BO

You execute actions on, update, or read instances of a draft BO by sending a modify or read request. The draft indicator decides whether the active or the draft instance is processed.

### Updating Instances of a Draft BO

Fields of draft BO instances are changed by the modify request for UPDATE. Depending on the draft indicator, the request changes the active or the draft instance.

On a Fiori Element UI, the UPDATE with the draft indicator set to true is called whenever input fields on the UI are filled. After leaving the input field, the modify request for UPDATE is sent and the draft save sequence is triggered to save the draft on the draft database table.

The UPDATE with the draft indicator set to false is called by the activate action, after the prepare action is executed on an edit-draft instance. Hence, the modify UPDATE on active entities is hidden under the functionality of the Save button, see Activate Action [page 76].

Via EML you determine whether you want to update an active or a draft instance by setting the draft indicator %IS_DRAFT = if_abap_behv=>mk-on/off.

Each modify request for UPDATE, no matter if aimed at draft or active instances, goes through the same runtime process as in scenarios without draft, including locking, determination triggers etc. For more information about the runtime orchestrations, see Update Operation [page 132].

### Executing Actions on a Draft BO

Actions on draft business objects are executed by modify requests for action execution. Depending on the draft indicator, the action is executed on the active or the draft instance.

A Fiori Elements UI sends requests for action execution whenever you choose an action button that is defined for an application-specific action. Depending on whether this is done on a draft or an active instance, the draft indicator is set to true or false.
In the EML syntax for executing actions, you can also set the draft indicator to indicate whether you want to execute the action on a draft or an active instance:

Each modify request for action execution, no matter if aimed at draft or active instances, goes through the same runtime process as in scenarios without draft, including locking, determination triggers etc. For more information about the runtime orchestrations of actions, see Action Runtime [page 147].

Static actions are always delegated to the active provider. Static actions contain an additional parameter that indicates whether the action produces a draft or an active instance.

**Reading Instances of a Draft BO**

Business object instances of a draft BO are read by a read request. Depending on the draft indicator, the request reads the active or the draft instance.

In the reading request via EML, set the draft indicator to determine whether active or draft instances are read. On a Fiori Elements UI, the transactional read operation is always used when buffer information is relevant for the next operation. The draft indicator decides whether the draft or the active instance is read from the buffer.

**4.1.2.1.2.3.1 Runtime MODIFY Draft**

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for **UPDATE**, **DELETE**, actions, and create by association.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO’s behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1.2.4 Deleting Instances of a Draft BO

You delete instances of a draft BO by using the modify request for delete on active instances or the discard action for draft instances.

Discarding Root Draft Instances

By executing the draft action, DISCARD you delete the draft instance from the draft database table. In addition, possible exclusive locks are released. The DISCARD can be executed on new-drafts and on edit-drafts. Apart from releasing the lock, the action has no impact on the active instance. It is just the draft data that is deleted.

On a Fiori Elements UI, the draft action DISCARD is invoked by choosing Cancel. The discard action is always enabled. Neither dynamic feature control, nor authority control can restrict it. A user can always make a draft undone.

Via EML you discard draft instances with the following syntax:

```eaml
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
ENTITY BO_Entity
   EXECUTE Discard FROM
   VALUE #( ( %key-FieldName = 'Value' ) )
REPORTED DATA(discard_reported)
FAILED DATA(discard_failed)
MAPPED DATA(discard_mapped).
```

If a DELETE is executed on a new-draft, for which no active instance exists, the DELETE is internally transformed into a DISCARD.

Deleting Root Active Instances

As in non-draft business objects, persisted data can be deleted by using the standard operation DELETE.

On a Fiori Elements UI, the DELETE is called when choosing Delete button. If you choose Delete for an instance that has an active and a draft representation, the UI sends a request for DELETE on the active instance and one for DELETE on a draft instance. The DELETE on the draft instance is BO-internally considered as a DISCARD.
In general, via EML, you can indicate if you want to delete the active instance or the draft instance of an entity.
In case of a **DELETE** on a draft instance, the discard action is executed.

The syntax for deleting instances is the following:

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
ENTITY BO_Entity
    DELETE FROM
    VALUE #( ( %key-FieldName = 'Value' %is_draft = if_abap_behv=>mk-on|off "draft indicator" ) )
REPORTED DATA(delete_reported)
FAILED DATA(delete_failed)
MAPPED DATA(delete_mapped).
```

Each modify request for **DELETE** goes through the same runtime process as in scenarios without draft, including locking, determination triggers etc. For more information about the runtime orchestrations, see [Delete Operation](#)

### Deleting and Discarding Instances of Child Entities

Deleting an active child instance, with a delete request that has the draft indicator set to true, directly deletes the active child instance without affecting the other entities of the business object.

Deleting draft child instances, with a delete request that has the draft indicator set to false, deletes the draft child instance. Once the root entity, and with it all related child entities, is activated, the active child instance is deleted as well. During activation, it is the state of the whole composition tree that is passed to the active buffer. The activate action provides the suitable modify request for the changes that are done on the draft BO.

#### 4.1.2.1.1.2.4.1 Runtime Discard Action

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for **DISCARD**.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO's behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1.1.2.5 Preparing Draft Instances for Activation

Before draft instances become active, they are checked by the validations and determinations that are specified for the draft determine action prepare in the behavior definition.

The draft determine action PREPARE is executed automatically at least once before draft data is activated during the activate action. It ensures that the draft instance is consistent by calling the validations and
determinations on save that are specified for the prepare action in the behavior definition. The prepare action can only be executed on draft instances.

On a Fiori Elements UI, the action is invoked by choosing **Save** on a draft instance. The UI then sends the request for **PREPARE** before executing the action **ACTIVATE**.

**i Note**

When choosing **Save** on the UI, the prepare action is executed at least twice. First, the UI requests the **PREPARE** directly, and then it is called during the execution of the activate action.

Via EML the prepare action is executed with the following syntax:

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
ENTITY BO_Entity
   EXECUTE Prepare FROM
       VALUE %( %key-FieldName = 'Value' )
   REPORTED DATA(prepare Reported)
   FAILED DATA(prepare Failed)
   MAPPED DATA(prepare Mapped).
```

As the **PREPARE** can only be executed on draft instances, the draft indicator cannot be set for the action.

The prepare action only fails if the instance with the given key is not found. If the validations that are called by the **PREPARE** detect inconsistencies, the issues are only written in the **REPORTED** table, but the **FAILED** table remains empty. A possible **COMMIT ENTITIES** after the prepare action succeeds if the **PREPARE** does not return any failed keys, even if the validations within the **PREPARE** fail.

**i Note**

Only transition messages from validations are handed over to the **REPORTED** table of the prepare action, state messages are not.

### 4.1.2.1.2.5.1 Runtime Prepare Action

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for **PREPARE**.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO’s behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1.1.2.6 Resuming Locks for Draft Instances

The draft action resume is called automatically if the work on a draft instance with an expired lock is resumed.
The draft action `RESUME` is executed automatically whenever there is a modification on a draft instance whose exclusive lock has expired. It re-creates the lock for the corresponding active instance on the active database table.

On a Fiori Elements UI, the action is invoked when the user chooses a draft instance and continues with editing data if the exclusive lock is expired. This is the case when the user chooses an own draft and continues with editing the input fields. An `UPDATE` on the draft instance is sent, which invokes the resume action if the lock has expired.

**i Note**

If the user chooses a foreign draft and chooses the `Edit` button to edit any input fields, it is only possible to discard the foreign draft completely and start with a new draft based on the current active data. In this case, the user gets a pop-up with the warning that any changes done by the other user are lost.

Via EML the resume action is executed with the following syntax:

```
MODIFY ENTITIES OF BusinessObjectName
  ENTITY BO_Entity
    EXECUTE Resume FROM
      VALUE #( ( %key-FieldName = 'Value' ) )
      REPORTED DATA(resume_reported)
      FAILED DATA(resume_failed)
      MAPPED DATA(resume_mapped).
```

**i Note**

As the `RESUME` action is application-specific, it is only exposed to OData if it is explicitly declared in the behavior definition. It uses the name `<lock_master_entity_name>Resume`. You can only execute the `RESUME` action via EML if the action is explicitly made available in the behavior definition.

When resuming draft instances it must be ensured that the primary keys of the instance are still unique. It might have happened that other users created an instance with the same primary keys during the optimistic lock phase. For more information, see Uniqueness Check [page 93].

During the execution of a resume action, the framework runs the same checks as for a `MODIFY CREATE` in case of a new-draft, and the same checks as for an `EDIT` in case of an edit-draft.

### 4.1.2.1.2.6.1 Runtime Resume Action

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for `RESUME`.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO's behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1.1.2.7 Saving Data to the Database

Persisting business object instances is done during the save sequence. Draft instances are automatically saved on the draft database by the RAP runtime framework.

![Life Cycle of Draft and Active Data](image)

Depending on the state of the instance you want to save, the `SAVE` is done on the draft database table or the active database table. Active instances are saved on the active database tables; draft instances are saved on the draft database table.

Via EML, the statement `COMMIT ENTITIES` triggers the process to save the data on the database. It saves the state of the buffer, draft instances to the draft database table and active instances to the active database table. For active instances, the save sequence is triggered. For draft instances, only the actual save to the database is done. No validations or determinations on save are called.

### Saving Active Instances

For saving active data to the persistent database table, the data of the instance must be consistent in the buffer. The actual `SAVE` is done during the save sequence, which is triggered after the interaction phase, see [Save Sequence](page 150).

On a Fiori Elements UI, the save sequence is triggered by choosing the `Save` button on the UI. After the `PREPARE` and the `ACTIVATE` are executed successfully, the save sequence is triggered automatically.

### Saving Draft Instances

Draft data does not have to be in a consistent state to be saved. No validations are triggered when saving draft data to the draft database. The save sequence of the active provider is not triggered. That means, there is no `Finalize` and no `Check_Before_Save` when saving draft instances on the draft database table.

On a Fiori Element UI, the state of the application buffer is saved to the draft database table whenever the input fields are edited. This is done for each field separately. That means, after leaving one input field, the data is transferred to the draft database table. The UI displays the message `Draft saved` after each roundtrip.
4.1.2.1.2.7.1 Runtime Activate Action

This topic illustrates the execution order of possible runtime activities after executing a modify request for `ACTIVATE`.

Not all activities of the following runtime diagram are always present. It depends on the BO’s behavior that is specified in the behavior definition.
4.1.2.1 Numbering

Numbering is about setting values for primary key fields of entity instances during runtime.

The primary key of a business object entity can be composed of one or more key fields, which are identified by the keyword `key` in the underlying CDS view of the business object. The set of primary key fields uniquely identify each instance of a business object. The primary key value of a business object instance cannot be changed after the CREATE.

There are various options to handle the numbering for primary key fields depending on when (early or late during the transactional processing) and by whom (consumer, application developer, or framework) the primary key values are set. You can assign a numbering type for each primary key field separately. The following options are available:

- Early Numbering [page 91]
  - External Numbering [page 91]
  - Internal Numbering [page 92]
    - Managed Early Numbering [page 92]
    - Unmanaged Early Numbering [page 92]
  - Optional External Numbering [page 93]
- Late Numbering [page 94]

4.1.2.1.2.1 Early Numbering

The numbering type early numbering refers to an early value assignment for the primary key field. In this case, the final key value is available in the transactional buffer instantly after the MODIFY request for CREATE.

The key value can either be given by the consumer (externally) or by the framework (internally). In both cases, the newly created BO instance is clearly identifiable directly after the CREATE operation has been executed. It can be referred to by this value in case other operations are executed on this instance during the interaction phase (for example an UPDATE). During the save sequence, the newly created BO instance is written to the database with the primary key value that was assigned earlier on the CREATE operation.

External Numbering

We refer to external numbering if the consumer hands over the primary key values for the CREATE operation, just like any other values for non-key fields. The runtime framework (managed or unmanaged) takes over the value and processes it until finally writing it to the database. The control structure for the CREATE operation is flagged with true for the primary key field.

In this scenario, it must be ensured that the primary key value given by the consumer is uniquely identifiable. New instances with an already existing primary key value are rejected during the save sequence. The ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model supports uniqueness checks in early stages of the interaction phase. For more information, see Uniqueness Check [page 93].

Implementation
For external numbering, you must ensure that the primary key fields are not read-only at CREATE. Otherwise, the consumer cannot provide any value for the primary key field. The RAP framework offers dynamic primary key handling for this scenario. To ensure that the primary key fields are filled when creating new instances, but are read-only on further processing these instances, you can use operation dependent field access restrictions in the behavior definition.

```plaintext
...  
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]  
{ ...
  field (mandatory:create|readonly:update);
  ...
}
```

For more information, see Dynamic Feature Control [page 99].

**Internal Numbering**

In scenarios with internal numbering, the runtime framework assigns the primary key value when creating the new instance. Internal numbering can be managed by the RAP runtime or unmanaged, that is implemented by the application developer.

**Managed Internal Numbering**

When using managed numbering, a UUID is drawn automatically during the CREATE request by the RAP managed runtime.

**Note**

Managed early numbering is only possible for key fields with ABAP type `raw(16)` (UUID) of BOs with implementation type `managed`.

**Implementation**

Managed numbering is defined in the behavior definition. The key field must be read only.

```plaintext
[implementation] managed [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]];
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]  
lock (master|dependent() )  
{ ...
  field (readonly, numbering:managed) KeyField1 [KeyField2, ..., keyFieldn];
  ...
}
```

For more information, see Automatically Drawing Primary Key Values in Managed BOs [page 626].

**Unmanaged Numbering**

When using unmanaged numbering, the application developer has to implement the numbering logic in application code that is called during the CREATE operation.

- In unmanaged BOs, the CREATE operation implements the assignment of a primary key value during the CREATE modification.

  **Implementation**

  The assignment of a new number must be included in your application code.

  For more information, see Implementing the CREATE Operation for Travel Instances [page 389].
With the current version of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model, it is not possible to use unmanaged numbering in managed BOs.

**Optional External Numbering**

We refer to **optional external numbering** if both, external and internal numbering is possible for the same BO. If the consumer hands over the primary key value (external numbering), this value is processed by the runtime framework. If the consumer does not set the primary key value, the framework steps in and draws the number for the instance on **CREATE**.

Optional external numbering is only possible for managed business objects with UUID keys. Use cases for optional external numbering are replication scenarios in which the consumer already knows some of the UUIDs for specific instances to create.

**Implementation**

Optional external numbering is defined in the behavior definition. The key field must not be read only, so that the consumer is able to fill the primary key fields.

```abap
[implementation] managed [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]];
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
  lock {master|dependent()} 
  { ... 
    field (numbering:managed) KeyField1 [KeyField2, ... , keyFieldn];
  } ...
```

**Related Information**

- Numbering [page 91]
- Late Numbering [page 94]

**4.1.2.1.2.1.1 Uniqueness Check**

A uniqueness check ensures the new primary keys are unique before the saving of instances with these primary keys are rejected by a database table.

The persistent database table rejects any entry with a key that already exists. To avoid that the work of an end user is in vain if all the changes are rejected by the database, the uniqueness of the primary key values of new or resumed instances must be checked as early as possible. Hence, on creating new draft data, the application must ensure that the primary keys are unique.
A uniqueness check must check the new primary key values against all active instances and draft instances in the exclusive lock phase. The RAP runtime framework automatically discards draft instances whose exclusive lock has expired if their primary key value is used again. Following from this, duplicate keys on the draft database table are prevented.

**Internal Numbering**

In scenarios with internal numbering, the uniqueness is usually given by the process of determining the number, for example by a number range object. In scenarios with internal managed numbering, the RAP runtime framework ensures the uniqueness as it provides unique UUID values.

**External Numbering**

In scenarios with external numbering, the uniqueness must be checked explicitly. In some cases, it is possible for the RAP runtime framework to do the check. For other cases, you must implement a precheck to check the keys before the actual instance is created and provide an implementation for the resume action in scenarios with draft support.

Responsibilities for the Uniqueness Check in Scenarios with External Numbering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Managed Scenario without Draft without Unmanaged Lock</th>
<th>RAP runtime framework</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Managed Scenario with Draft without Unmanaged Lock | • for active instances: RAP runtime framework  
• for draft instances: Application developer needs to implement a precheck and the draft resume action. |

| Managed Scenario with/without Draft with Unmanaged Lock | Application developer needs to implement the uniqueness check in the precheck and the draft resume action. |

| Unmanaged Scenario with/without Draft | Application developer needs to implement the uniqueness check in the precheck and the draft resume action. |

After the uniqueness is checked successfully, the RAP runtime framework exclusively reserves the primary key value for the corresponding draft instance for the time of exclusive lock phase. After the exclusive lock, once the draft is resumed, the uniqueness check must be executed again.

**Related Information**

Operations [page 128]

Operations [page 128]

### 4.1.2.1.2.2 Late Numbering

The numbering type late numbering refers to a late value assignment for the primary key fields. The final number is only assigned just before the instance is saved on the database.

To identify a newly created instance for internal processing before the save sequence, a temporary identifier, the preliminary ID (%PID) is assigned. It works as a substitute as long as there is no final key value. The instance is referred to by the PID in case other operations are executed on this instance during the interaction.
phase (for example an UPDATE). To assign the real and final key value to the instance, the method adjust_numbers is called after the point of no return and before the actual SAVE happens. It overwrites the preliminary ID with the final key value. This late value assignment ensures that the instance can be written to the database.

For more information, see Method ADJUST_NUMBERS [page 940].

Late numbering is used for scenarios that need gap-free numbers. As the final value is only set just before the SAVE, everything is checked before the number is assigned.

In contrast to Early Numbering [page 91], late numbering can only be done internally, as a consumer cannot interfere anymore during the save sequence.

### Late Numbering in Managed Scenarios

With the current version of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model, it is not possible to use late numbering in managed scenarios.

### Late Numbering in Unmanaged Scenarios

Late numbering must be defined for each node in the behavior definition of an unmanaged BO.

```plaintext
implementation unmanaged;
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
late numbering
...
{ ...
}
```

In addition, the Method ADJUST_NUMBERS [page 940] must be implemented to assign a final number for each instance.

### Related Information

Numbering [page 91]
Early Numbering [page 91]
4.1.2.1.3 Feature Control

This topic is about the concept of feature control for the ABAP RESTful application development.

About Feature Control

With feature control, you can provide information to the service on how data has to be displayed for consumption in a SAP Fiori UI, for example if fields are mandatory or read-only.

You can implement feature control in a static or dynamic way. In a static case, you define which operations are available for each business object entity or which fields have specific access restrictions like being mandatory or read-only. In a dynamic case, the access restrictions for fields or the enabling or disabling of methods depends on the state of the business object, for example on the value of a specific field.

**Note**

Note that you can only use instance feature control or global feature control on an operation or action. It’s not possible to combine both.

In general you can define feature control for each instance:

- **Instance Feature Control**: You can define feature control on instance level for fields, operations, and actions. With this, you can control, for example, if a method is enabled or disabled when a business object has a certain state. You can define instance-based feature control for UPDATE and DELETE, as well as for actions. Since you need an active instance of a business object in this case, the CREATE operation can’t have feature control on instance level.

- **Global Feature Control**: You can define global feature control for feature control that is independent of the business object state, for example if you want to disable the CREATE depending on whether a certain business scope is active or not.

Syntax Overview: Instance Feature Control Definition

Here you can find an overview of all available syntax combinations for defining instance feature control in the behavior definition.

```plaintext
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
...
/* (1) Feature control at entity level */
/* Static operation control*/
internal create
internal update
internal delete
/* or (instance-based) dynamic operation control: implementation required! */
update (features: instance);
delete (features: instance);
_association {create (features:instance); }
/* (2) Feature control at field level */
/* Static field control */
field (read only | mandatory) f1[, f2, ..., fn];
/* or dynamic field control: implementation required! */
```
field (features: instance) f1[, f2, ..., fn];
/* (3) Feature control for actions */
/* Static action control */
  internal action ActionName [...]
/* or dynamic action control: implementation required! */
  action ( features: instance ) ActionName [... ]
}

Syntax Overview: Global Feature Control Definition

Here you can find an overview of all available syntax combinations for defining global feature control in the behavior definition.

[implementation] managed;
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
...
/* Global feature control for CUD-Operations */
  create (features:global);
  update (features:global);
  delete (features:global);
/* Global feature control for create-by-association */
  association {create (features:global); }
/* Global feature control for actions */
  [static] action {features:global} ActionName [...];
}

For more information, see.

- Feature Control Definition: Fields [page 98]
- Feature Control Definition: Operations [page 101]
- Feature Control Definition: Actions [page 104]

Related Information

Global Feature Control Definition [page 115]
Global Feature Control Implementation [page 116]
4.1.2.1.3.1 Instance Feature Control Definition

4.1.2.1.3.1.1 Feature Control Definition: Fields

You can define specific access restrictions for each field. Depending on your requirements, you can implement the restrictions either in a static way if the access restriction is always valid for each instance or in a dynamic way if the restrictions depend on a certain operation or condition.

Static Feature Control

Within the behavior definition, you can specify individual fields of an entity that have certain access restrictions.

Syntax

```
implementation {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS unique
...
/* Static field control */
  field (readonly | mandatory) field1[, field2, ..., fieldn];
...
```

You can use the following field properties to define static field control:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>field (readonly)</code></td>
<td>This property defines that values of the specified fields must not be created or updated by the consumer. You can set this property in the behavior definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**i Note**

The BO runtime rejects external EML MODIFY requests that include read-only fields for update or create operations.

Read-only fields that are included in OData call to update or create instances are ignored while possible other fields are processed for update and create operations.
**Property**  
**Effect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>field (mandatory)</code></td>
<td>Defines that the specified fields are mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The specified fields must be filled by the consumer when executing modifying requests. For the relevant fields, the value must be provided in CREATE operations. In update operations, it must not be given the null value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The mandatory property must be set in the behavior definition, not in the projection. This property isn’t evaluated if you’ve defined it in a projection.

**Caution**

Note that there’s no implicit validation by the business object framework. As an application developer, you must ensure that you’ve implemented a corresponding validation [page 1039].

---

**Dynamic Feature Control**

With dynamic feature control, you can add access restrictions based on conditions or specify access restrictions for CREATE and UPDATE of fields.

**Syntax**

```java
implementation {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasName]
  ...
  /* Dynamic field control */
  field (features:instance);
  /* Dynamic field control for access restrictions in operations */
  field (mandatory:create| readonly:update);
  field (mandatory:create, readonly:update);
  ...
```

**Property**  
**Effect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `field (features:instance)`  | For defining dynamic field control, the option (features: instance) must be added to the field in question. In this case however, the implementation of dynamic feature control in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is required. When implementing dynamic field control, you have the option of specifying the following values for each field that is notated with ( features: instance ):
|                               | - UNRESTRICTED – field has no restrictions
|                               | - MANDATORY – field is mandatory                                     |
## Property | Effect
--- | ---
**READONLY** – field is read-only
**ALL** – All restrictions are requested.

| field (mandatory:create) | The mandatory:create triggers a check before the data is persisted. If the annotated field is not filled in, the SAVE is rejected. |
| field (readonly:update) | The readonly:update displays a field as read-only when a business object instance is edited and the value can’t be changed via the user interface or via an external EML UPDATE request. |
| field (mandatory:create, readonly:update) | The combination of mandatory:create and readonly:update combines the effects of both annotations: In this case, a value must be filled in for new instances in CREATE requests and this value can’t be changed via the user interface. A typical use case would be the definition of an ID using external numbering. The ID is defined once and isn’t to be changed when the instance is modified. |

### Related Information

- Static Feature Control Examples: Fields [page 100]
- Dynamic Feature Control: Fields [page 109]

### 4.1.2.1.3.1.1.1 Static Feature Control Examples: Fields

Here we explain how you can implement static feature control in the behavior model of a business object for fields.

### Travel Entity: Static Field Control Examples

For the business object from our flight demo application, the static field control is used to restrict properties of particular fields. Here, the fields that are derived from system data are defined as read-only and can’t be created or updated by the consumer. All fields that are required for creating a travel are defined as mandatory in the behavior definition so that the fields must contain a value in create and modifying requests. In this case, the data is displayed after the CREATE and remains read-only in modify requests.

**Read-Only**

```xml
projection;
```
Mandatory fields are marked with an * on the user interface and read-only fields can't be changed on the UI. For a fully implemented example, refer to Modeling Static and Dynamic Feature Control [page 280].

Related Information

Feature Control Definition: Fields [page 98]
Dynamic Feature Control: Fields [page 109]

4.1.2.1.3.1.2 Feature Control Definition: Operations

In a typical transactional scenario, you have to specify which operations are provided by the respective entity.

The transactional character of a business object is defined in the behavior definition where all supported transactional operations are specified for each node of the business object’s composition tree. Whenever the corresponding root or child entity is going to be created, updated, or deleted, these operations must be declared in the behavior definition. In this way, you specify at the business object entity level whether each instance is enabled for creation, update, or deletion. For more general information about operations, refer to Operations [page 128].
internal update;
internal delete;
"

### Operation Effect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **create** | Specifies that new instances of a business object node that correspond to the underlying (root or child) entity can be created.  
If this operation isn’t declared for an entity in the behavior definition, creation of new instances of the corresponding business object nodes isn’t allowed. Note that the CREATE for subsequent entities is handled via the create-by-association defined in the parent entity. You can’t define an explicit CREATE for subordinated entities.  
For more information, see [Create Operation](page 130). |
| **update** | Specifies that data of existing instances of a business object node that corresponds to the underlying (root or child) entity can be updated.  
If this operation isn’t declared for the entity in the behavior definition, updating existing instances isn’t allowed.  
For more information, see [Update Operation](page 132). |
| **delete** | Specifies that existing instances of a business object node that corresponds to the underlying (root or child) entity can be deleted.  
If this operation isn’t declared for an entity in the behavior definition, deletion of existing instances isn’t allowed.  
For more information, see [Delete Operation](page 134). |

### Dynamic Feature Control

```plaintext
implementation {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
define behavior for Entity {alias AliasName}  
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS unique  
...  
}  
/*All transactional operations - no dynamic feature control for CREATE. CREATE is always enabled.*/
```
create;  
update (features:instance);  
delete (features:instance);  
 association { create(features:instance);}  
...  
}
define behavior for Entity_Subnode [alias AliasName]  
{  
/*Only specific operations */  
update(features:instance);  
...  
}
define behavior for Entity_Subnode [alias AliasName]  
{  
/*Operations can only be accessed from within the business object*/  
  
internal update(features:instance);  
internal delete(features:instance);  
...  
}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (Internal)Update|Delete (features:instance)                                               | For dynamic control of operations, the option (features: instance) must be added to the update or delete operation in question. This is also possible for the create by association operation. However, an implementation in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is necessary for this. For each relevant operation, you can specify the following values in the implementation of FOR INSTANCE FEATURES:  
  * ENABLED - if the operation is enabled  
  * DISABLED - if the operation is disabled. |

association
{ create(features:instance);}  

For dynamic control of the create by association, the option (features: instance) must be added to the create-by-association operation in question. This is also possible for the create by association operation. However, an implementation in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is necessary for this. For each relevant CREATE, you can specify in the implementing handler of the class pool the following values in FOR INSTANCE FEATURES:  
  * ENABLED - if the CREATE is enabled  
  * DISABLED - if the CREATE operation is disabled.  

For more information, refer to Implementing Dynamic Operation Control for Create By Association [page 410]

**Related Information**

Static Feature Control Examples: Operations [page 104]
Dynamic Feature Control: Operations [page 111]
### 4.1.2.1.3.1.2.1 Static Feature Control Examples: Operations

Here we explain how you can implement static feature control in the behavior model of a business object for operations.

In the behavior definition you can define which operations are available for a business object entity. In the following example, the travel processor can create, modify and delete travel entries.

**Travel Entity-Processor: Static Operation Control**

```plaintext
projection;
implementation ...;
define behavior for Z_Sample alias Example
...
{  
    use create;
    use update;
    use delete;
...}
```

For an example, refer to *Defining Elementary Behavior for Ready-to-Run Business Object* [page 258].

**Related Information**

- Feature Control Definition: Operations [page 101]
- Dynamic Feature Control: Operations [page 111]

### 4.1.2.1.3.1.3 Feature Control Definition: Actions

You can implement specific operations for an entity of a business object with actions. Just like the CUD-operations, actions can be enabled or disabled using dynamic feature control. If you define actions in the behavior definition without feature control, they’re always available for the respective business object entity they belong to.

**Static Feature Control**

```plaintext
implementation {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasName]
...
/* Action with Static Feature Control */
action ActionName [...]

/* Action can only be accessed from within the business object */
```
If actions are defined in the behavior definition without dynamic feature control, they’re always available for the respective entity.

For general information about defining and implementing actions, refer to Actions [page 138].

Specific operations of an entity of a business object can be defined using actions. Similar to standard operations, you can define internal actions in the behavior definition by adding the option internal to the operation name. Internal actions can only be accessed from the business logic inside the business object implementation such as from validations, determinations, or from other noninternal actions.

**Dynamic Feature Control**

It isn’t recommended to use this combination in your coding, even though it’s technically possible. For more information, refer to 2943709.

It’s technically possible to define an internal action with (features:instance), but since internal actions aren’t exposed to the consumer, the dynamic feature control doesn’t affect the behavior of the internal action and can have a negative impact.
4.1.2.1.3.1.3.1 Static Feature Control Examples: Actions

Here we explain how you can implement static feature control in the behavior model of a business object for actions.

Travel Entity: Static Action Control

In the behavior definition you can define which actions are available for a business object node. In the following example, the action provides a template for creating a new travel based on an already existing travel instance.

Travel Entity-Processor: Static Action Control

```
projection;
implementation ...;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
...
{   action createTravelByTemplate result [1] $self;
    ...
}
```

For more information about this individual action, refer to Implementing Actions [page 274].

Travel Entity: Static Action Control for Internal Actions

Internal actions can only be called from business-object-internal consumers. In this example, the action calculates the total price for one travel instance. It adds up the prices of all bookings, including their supplements, and the booking fee of the travel instance. If different currencies are used, the prices are converted to the currency of the travel instance.

```
projection;
implementation ...;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Flight_M alias Flight
...
{   internal action recalcPrice;
    ...
}
```

For more information about the implementation, refer to Implementing Actions for the Travel Entity [page 468].
4.1.2.1.3.1.4 Instance Feature Control Implementation:
Dynamic Feature Control

Implementing Dynamic Feature Control

For dynamic feature control with `features:instance`, you must implement the `For Features` method.

**i Note**

Note that the `For Features` method is required, if your business object is draft-enabled, even though you might haven’t assigned `feature:instance` to any property in the behavior definition. In this case, you must still have the method definition in the behavior implementation. The implementation of `For Features` can be empty in this case, as only the signature is required for the framework draft handling.

**Declaration of <method> FOR FEATURES**

The implementation of dynamic feature control is based on the ABAP language in a local handler class (`lhc_handler`) as part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base handler class `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER`. The dynamic feature control for an entity is implemented in this handler class using the `FOR FEATURES` method.

The dynamic feature control for an entity is implemented in a handler class using the method `feature_ctrl_method`. The signature of this handler method is defined by the keyword `FOR FEATURES`, followed by the input parameters `keys` and the `requested_features` of the entity.

```
METHODS feature_ctrl_method FOR FEATURES
  [IMPORTING] keys REQUEST requested_features FOR entity
  RESULT result.
```

Again, for the sake of better readability, the keyword `IMPORTING` can be specified before the import parameter.

**i Note**

The name of the `<method> FOR FEATURES` can be freely chosen. Often `get_features` is used as method name.

**Import Parameters**

- `keys`
  The table type of `keys` includes all elements that are specified as a key for the related entity.
- `requested_features`
  The structure type of `requested_features` reflects which elements (fields, standard operations, and actions) of the entity are requested for dynamic feature control by the consumer.
Export Parameters

The export parameter result is used to return the feature control values. It includes, besides the key fields, all the fields of the entity, standard operations, and actions for which the features control was defined in the behavior definition.

- field control information: %field-field_name
- action control information: %features-%action-action_name
- standard operation control information for update and delete: %features-(%update|%delete)
- operation control information for create by association: %assoc-_AssocName.

In addition to the explicitly declared export parameter, the FOR FEATURE method also provides the implicit CHANGING parameters failed and reported.

Implementing Feature Control in a Local Handler Class

CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS feature_ctrl_method FOR FEATURES
   IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR aliasedEntity RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD get_features.
   " Read data required
   READ ENTITY CDSEntityName
      FIELDS ( field1 field2 )
      WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
      RESULT DATA(lt_result_variable).

   " Return feature control information
   result = VALUE #( FOR ls_variable IN lt_result_variable
      ( %tky                          = ls_variable-%tky
      \%field-field1                 = if_abap_behv=>fc-f-readonly
      %field-field2                 = if_abap_behv=>fc-f-mandatory
      \%features-%action-action_name = COND #( WHEN condition
      THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
      ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
      )
      \%features-%update             = COND #( WHEN condition
      THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
      ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
      )
      \%assoc-_Assoc                 = COND #( WHEN condition
      THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
      ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
      )
   )
   ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
4.1.2.1.3.1.4.1 Dynamic Feature Control

4.1.2.1.3.1.4.1.1 Dynamic Feature Control: Fields

Here we explain how you can implement dynamic feature control in the behavior model of a business object for fields.

Prerequisites

- You’ve implemented the `get_features` method as described in Implementing Dynamic Feature Control [page 107].
- For more details about the use case referred in the example, see Developing Transactional Apps with Draft Capabilities [page 449]

Travel Entity: Dynamic Field Control

The field `bookingFee` should only be editable, if a travel hasn’t been accepted yet (Status ‘A’ on the user interface). To enable a field with dynamic field control, add `{ features : instance }` to the field declaration:

```abap
/DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_d unique
...
{   field { features : instance } BookingFee;
...
}
```

The method implementation begins with reading the `OverallStatus` to check whether a travel instance has been approved yet. This read access is implemented by the EML read operation that provides access to the selected travel instance by using the `%tky` component that contains all key elements of an entity. The result of this read operation is stored in `lt_travel`. For the `BookingFee` field, the condition-statement checks if the `OverallStatus` equals ‘A’ (Accepted). If that is the case, the field properties are set to `read_only`. Otherwise, there are no restrictions defined for the field.

Listing 2: Implementation of Feature Control for Travel Entity

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
...
METHODS get_features FOR FEATURES IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features
FOR travel RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD get_features.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
```
Hiding Fields Dynamically on the Object Page

You can use a combination of virtual elements and the hidden annotation to dynamically display fields on the UI depending on a condition or value.

For information, see Hiding Fields Dynamically on the Object Page [page 720].

Related Information

Feature Control Definition: Fields [page 98]
Static Feature Control Examples: Fields [page 100]
4.1.2.1.3.1.4.1.2 Dynamic Feature Control: Operations

Here we explain how you can implement dynamic feature control in the behavior model of a business object for operations.

**Prerequisites**

- You’ve implemented the `get_features` method as described in Implementing Dynamic Feature Control [page 107].
- For more details about the use case referred in the example, see Developing Transactional Apps with Draft Capabilities [page 449]

**Travel Entity: Dynamic Operation Control**

Another dynamic feature control is defined for the creating bookings by associations. In this case, the `CREATE` button for creating associated booking instance is displayed if the travel instance’s `overall_status` isn’t rejected. It’s hidden, if the travel is set to rejected.

```plaintext
/DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_d unique
...
  { association _Booking { create ( features : instance ); with draft; } ...

Listing 2: Implementation of Feature Control for Travel Entity

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
... METHOD get_features FOR FEATURES IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features
FOR travel RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
... METHOD get_features.
  READ ENTITY /dmo/i_travel_m
    FIELDS ( travel_id overall_status description )
    WITH VALUE #( FOR keyval IN keys ( %key = keyval-%key ) )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel_result).
  result = VALUE #( FOR ls_travel IN lt_travel_result
    ( %key                           = ls_travel-%key
      %field-travel_id               = if_abap_behv=>fc-f-read_only
      %features-%action-rejectTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
        overall_status = 'X'
        THEN
          %features-%action-rejectTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
        overall_status = 'A'
    )

    %field-travel_id               = if_abap_behv=>fc-f-read_only
    %features-%action-rejectTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
        overall_status = 'X'
        THEN
          %features-%action-rejectTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
        overall_status = 'A'
```
if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )

%assoc_Booking = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
overall_status = 'X'
THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )

ENDMETHOD.

ENDCLASS.

Dynamic Feature Control for Create By Association

Related Information

Feature Control Definition: Operations [page 101]
Static Feature Control Examples: Operations [page 104]
4.1.2.1.3.1.4.1.3 Dynamic Feature Control: Actions

Here we explain how you can implement dynamic feature control in the behavior model of a business object for actions.

Prerequisites

- You’ve implemented the `get_features` method as described in Implementing Dynamic Feature Control [page 107].
- For more details about the use case referred in the example, see Developing Transactional Apps with Draft Capabilities [page 449]

Travel Entity: Dynamic Operation Control

The two actions Accept Travel and Reject Travel depend on each other: If a travel is already accepted or rejected, the corresponding button is disabled. To achieve this dynamic behavior, both actions are defined with features:instance and the expected behavior is implemented in the `get_features` method.

```
/DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_d unique
...
{   action ( features : instance ) acceptTravel result [1] $self;
    action ( features : instance ) rejectTravel result [1] $self;
...
}
```

The following figure shows the effect of dynamic control on the two action buttons Accept Travel and Reject Travel. The availability of the actions depends on the Status of the travel instance: If the selected travel instance has a status of A (Accepted), the action button Accept Travel is disabled. If the selected instance has the status X (rejected), the action button Reject Travel is disabled.

Listing 2: Implementation of Feature Control for Travel Entity

```
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
...
METHODS get_features FOR FEATURES IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features
FOR travel RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD get_features.
READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( OverallStatus )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
RESULT DATA(lt_travel)
FAILED failed.
```
```abap
result = VALUE #( FOR ls_travel IN lt_travel
                   ( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
                     * Dynamic Feature Control Implementation for field booking fee
                     %field-BookingFee = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
                                               OverallStatus = 'A'
                                               THEN
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-f-read_only
                                               ELSE
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-f-unrestricted )
                     * Dynamic Feature Control Implementation for actions acceptTravel and rejectTravel
                     %action-acceptTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
                                               OverallStatus = 'A'
                                               THEN
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
                                               ELSE
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )
                     %action-rejectTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
                                               OverallStatus = 'X'
                                               THEN
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
                                               ELSE
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )
                     * Dynamic Feature Control Implementation for create-by-association for booking entity
                     %assoc-_Booking = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
                                               OverallStatus = 'X'
                                               THEN
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
                                               ELSE
                                               if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )
                   ) ).
```

### Related Information

**Feature Control Definition: Actions** [page 104]

**Static Feature Control Examples: Actions** [page 106]
4.1.2.1.3.2 Global Feature Control Definition

You can define global feature control for feature control that doesn’t depend on the business object instance, but external factors like specific user settings or the business scope.

Global Feature Control

```
implementation {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS unique
...
/*All transactional operations*/
create (features:global);
update (features:global);
delete (features:global);
action (features:global) ActionName [...]
_static action (features:global) ActionName [...] _association { create(features:global);}
...
define behavior for Entity_Subnode [alias AliasName]
{ /*Only specific operations */
  update(features:global);
...
}
define behavior for Entity_Subnode [alias AliasName]
{ /*Operations can only be accessed from within the business object*/
  internal update(features:global);
  internal delete(features:global);
...
}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Create| Update| Delete (features:global)       | For global feature control, the option (features:global) must be added to the create, update or delete operation in question. This is also possible for the create by association operation. However, an implementation in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is necessary for this. For each relevant operation, you can specify the following values in the implementation of FOR GLOBAL FEATURES:  
  - **ENABLED** - if the operation is enabled  
  - **DISABLED** - if the operation is disabled. |
| _association { create(features:global);}      | For global control of the create by association, the option (features:global) must be added to the create-by-association operation in question. This is also possible for |
the create by association operation. However, an implementation in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is necessary for this. For each relevant CREATE, you can specify in the implementing handler of the class pool the following values in FOR GLOBAL FEATURES:

- **ENABLED** - if the CREATE is enabled
- **DISABLED** - if the CREATE operation is disabled.

For global feature control, the option (features: global) must be added to the action in question. However, an implementation in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is necessary for this. For each relevant operation, you can specify the following values in the implementation of FOR GLOBAL FEATURES:

- **ENABLED** - if the operation is enabled
- **DISABLED** - if the operation is disabled.

## Related Information

Global Feature Control Implementation [page 116]

### 4.1.2.1.3.2.1 Global Feature Control Implementation

## Implementing Global Feature Control

For dynamic feature control with features: global, you must implement the FOR GLOBAL FEATURES method.

**Declaration of <method> FOR GLOBAL FEATURES**

The implementation of global feature control is based on the ABAP language in a local handler class (lhc_handler) as part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base handler class CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER. Global feature control for an entity is implemented in this handler class using the FOR GLOBAL FEATURES method.
The signature of this handler method is defined by the keyword \texttt{FOR GLOBAL FEATURES} and the \texttt{requested_features} of the entity as the result. \texttt{Requested_features} contains all elements that have been marked with \texttt{features:global} in the behavior definition.

\begin{verbatim}
METHODS get_global_features FOR GLOBAL FEATURES
  IMPORTING REQUEST requested_features FOR entity RESULT result.
\end{verbatim}

The export parameter \texttt{result} is used to return the feature control values. It includes the standard operations, and actions for which global features control was defined in the behavior definition.

- action control information: %features-%action-action_name
- standard operation control information for update and delete: %features-(%create|%update|%delete)
- operation control information for create by association: %assoc-_AssocName.

In addition to the explicitly declared export parameter, the \texttt{FOR GLOBAL FEATURES} method also provides the implicit \texttt{CHANGING} parameters \texttt{failed} and \texttt{reported}.

### Implementing Feature Control in a Local Handler Class

\begin{verbatim}
CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS get_global_features FOR GLOBAL FEATURES
    IMPORTING REQUEST requested_features FOR entity RESULT result.
  ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD METHOD get_global_features.
    result = VALUE #(
      " Action control information
      %features-%action-action_name = COND #( WHEN condition
        THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-
        ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-
        disabled
      )
      enabled )
      " Operation (example: update) control information
      %features-%update = COND #( WHEN condition
        THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-
        ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-
        disabled
      )
      enabled )
      " Operation control information for create by association
      %assoc-_Assoc = COND #( WHEN condition
        THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-
        ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-
        disabled
      )
      enabled )
    ).
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
\end{verbatim}

### Related Information

- Global Feature Control Definition [page 115]
4.1.2.1.4 Authorization Control

Authorization control in RAP protects your business object against unauthorized access to data.

Context

To define which consumers under which circumstances are allowed to read or change data of a business object, RAP offers an authorization concept for application developers to restrict access to the business object. Authorization control is always relevant when the permission to execute an operation depends on the role of the business object consumer. This contrasts to feature control, where the permission for operations depend on the state of existing instances, or on BO-external factors that do not relate to the user.

The authorization for consumers is managed and maintained by the system administrator and grouped into consumer roles. Authorization objects define the authorization for the respective user roles for certain operations. In RAP each read or modify request can be checked via authorization objects against user roles before the request is finally executed and reaches data. The authorization check with authorization objects is called from CDS entities in case of read requests and from the behavior implementation in case of modify requests.

For more information, about using authorization objects in your implementation, see .

For more information, about the general authorization concept for RAP business services, see Authorization Basics in the Identity and Access Management (IAM) Guide.

Authorization Checks for Read Operations

To protect data from unauthorized read access, the ABAP CDS provides its own authorization concept based on a data control language (DCL [page 1025]). To restrict read access to RAP business objects, it is sufficient to model DCL for the CDS entities used in RAP business objects. The authorization and role concept of ABAP CDS uses conditions defined in CDS access control objects to check the authorizations of users for read access to the data in question. In other words, access control allows you to limit the results returned by a CDS entity to those results you authorize a user to see.

In addition, DCL is also automatically evaluated in case of transactional read access, that is when using EML-based read and read-by-association operations.

For more information, see .

Authorization Checks for Modify Operations

In RAP business objects, modifying operations, such as standard operations and actions can be checked against unauthorized access during runtime. To retrieve user authorizations for incoming requests,
authorization objects are included in the behavior implementation for your business objects. Authorization objects return authorization values, which you can use in your implementation to further process the request, in case of positive authorization results, or, to reject the modification request, in case of negative authorization results.

Checking Authorization against Authorization Objects

For a generic code example, see Authorization Implementation [page 124].

In general, authorization checks against authorization objects can be added to any implementation in the behavior pool. There are, however, dedicated authorization implementation options in RAP business objects. For this, authorization is defined in the behavior definition and implemented in the methods for authorization.

Depending on the scenario, these dedicated authorization methods are called during runtime at a specific point in time before the actual modify operation. Hence, you can prevent modify operations with authorization control before the actual modify operation is executed on the transactional buffer.

**i Note**

Authorization checks in RAP authorization control methods can only check authorization against the state of the BO before the request was executed, the so-called before image. This is because these methods are called before the actual modify request is executed. See, for example, the runtime for updating a draft instance Runtime MODIFY Draft [page 80]. Hence, it is not possible to check the authorization of a user against the incoming values. Such a check must be implemented in other behavior implementation methods:

- Authorization checks can be implemented in the corresponding precheck method for the operation. In this case, the unwanted values do not even reach the backend.

**⚠️ Caution**

Fiori Elements UIs do not fully support the behavior of authorization checks in precheck methods.

- Authorization checks can be implemented in a validation. Validations are executed when the modified instance is saved to the active database. If an instance is updated with unwanted values, the validation
prevents saving and returns messages to inform the user about the authorization issues. Then, the 
user is able to change the values. In this case, unwanted values reach the transactional buffer, but are 
not saved on the persistent database table. For draft scenarios, this means that draft instances with 
values for which users are not authorized can exist, but can't be saved to the active database.

Global Authorization

Global authorization is used for all authorization checks that only depend on the user. You can define global 
authorization to check if users are allowed to execute an operation in general.

Example

Only HR representatives can create new instances in an employee master data BO. 
During the runtime of the create request, the authorization is checked against the role of the user.

Global authorization is the first check for incoming requests. With global authorization you can reject the 
request before it reaches any other method of the behavior handler classes.

Global authorization checks can be implemented for both, static and instance-bound operations.

Instance Authorization

Instance authorization is used for all authorization checks that, in addition to the user role, depend on the state 
of the entity instance in question. With instance authorization you can define authorization that depends on a 
field value of the instance.

Example

Managers can only change the salary amount of their own employees. 
In this case the employee entity must contain a field that refers to the manager. During the runtime of the 
update request, the value of the manager field is compared to the authorization of the user role. Only if for 
this value the user is authorized to update the instance, the update request is approved and can be 
exected. Otherwise, the request fails.

Instance authorization is only possible for instance-based operations. Operations that do not operate on a 
specific instance cannot be checked with instance authorization. Operations that are excluded from instance 
authorization are create and static actions. Technically speaking, the implementation method for instance 
authorizations requires the keys of the instance for the authorization check. Static operations do not relate to 
one specific instance, and thus, cannot provide a key.

Note

The method for instance authorization is not called by the RAP runtime framework in non-draft unmanaged 
scenarios. If authorization control is relevant for the BO, it must be implemented for the operations in the 
corresponding modify methods. Usually, authorization control is included in the legacy logic of an 
unmanaged BO and therefore does not have to be implemented separately, see Update Operation [page 
132].

For UI scenarios, however, instance authorization control must be implemented in the dedicated method to 
make it possible for an OData BO-consumer to retrieve the relevant consumer hints.
Authorization in Draft Scenarios

Authorization checks in RAP authorization control methods are executed before the draft instance is modified. The authorization methods are called for the operations that operate on draft instances and for the draft actions EDIT and RESUME, see Runtime Edit Action [page 75] and Runtime Resume Action [page 87]. In case of RESUME, the authorization control for CREATE is checked when executed for a new-draft and it is called for EDIT when the RESUME is executed for edit-drafts.

Note

The authorization methods are not called when activating the draft instance. If you want to prevent that a draft instance is activated, you have to implement the authorization check in a validation.

Authorization in UI Scenarios

In UI scenarios, consumer hints, which are retrieved from the backend, provide the information for the UI which operations are enabled for the current situation. On a Fiori Elements UI, action buttons are only displayed and clickable if the current user is authorized to execute the underlying action under the current conditions (the state of the retrieved BO instances). For example, the action SetStatusBooked can only be executed for instances, whose status is not booked already and by users that are assigned to a specific role.

For UI scenarios, the definition and implementation of authorization control is particularly important, as the consumer hints are based on the result of the authorization and feature control. The implementation methods for authorization and feature control are called on displaying the list report or the object page for a specific instance. By checking the authorization for all the exposed actions beforehand, users can't even start operations, for which they are not authorized, as their trigger (action buttons) are not available.

Note

Consumer hints are the main use case in non-draft unmanaged scenarios for defining and implementing authorization in authorization methods. In this kind of scenarios, authorization are usually already included in the legacy logic which is called in the MODIFY methods.

4.1.2.1.4.1 Authorization Definition

Authorization is defined in the behavior definition of a RAP business object.

Syntax

Like other behavior characteristics, authorization is defined in the header of the behavior definition for a business object entity.

```{unmanaged | managed };```
define behavior for RootEntity [alias AliasRootName] 
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS unique

... /*Authorization definition for global, or instance, or both */
authorization master [page 122] (global [page 123])
    | (instance [page 123])
    | (global, instance) [page 123]
...
{
/*Exclude operations from authorization control */
MyOperation (authorization : none) [page 124];
...
}
define behavior for ChildEntity [alias AliasChildName] 
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS unique

... /*Authorization dependent entities delegate the authority checks to their master entities */
authorization dependent by _AssocToMaster [page 122]
...
{

... 
association _AssocToMaster;
}

Once you have defined authorization in the behavior definition you can use the quick fix to generate the corresponding methods in the specified behavior pool.

Authorization Master

An entity is defined as authorization master if the operations of this entity have their own authorization implementation. That means in the behavior implementation of this entity, the authorization control must be implemented in the corresponding method for authorization (global or instance). For the authorization master, you must define either global, or instance, or both.

The current version of the RAP model only supports authorization masters on root entities.

Authorization Dependent

An entity is defined as authorization dependent if the authorization control from the authorization master entity shall also be applied for the operations of this entity. In this case, for the authorization check for UPDATE, DELETE and create by association on a authorization dependent entity, the authorization check for UPDATE of the authorization master entity is applied.

For actions of authorization dependent entities, the authorization control must be implemented in separate methods for authorization in the behavior implementation class of the authorization dependent entity. It depends on the definition of the authorization master entity, if global or instance authorization must be implemented for these actions.

For the definition of authorization dependent entities, you have to specify the association to the authorization master entity.
iNote
If the authorization master is not the parent entity of the authorization dependent entity, you have to specify the association in the behavior definition explicitly.

```plaintext
{ association _AssocToMaster;
}
```

If you define an authorization master in a business object, it is likely that all other entities are authorization dependent entities, although it is not technically required.

**Global Authorization**

By defining global authorization, you implement authority control for the following operations of the entity:

- Create
- Create by Association
- Update
- Delete
- Static Actions
- Instance Actions

The authorization check is implemented in the corresponding method in the behavior implementation. For more information, see [Global Authorization Implementation](#)

The global authorization check is called during runtime before the request reaches the backend. In case of a scenario with draft, if a user is not authorized, a request is rejected before a draft is saved on the draft database table.

**Instance Authorization**

By defining instance authorization, the following operations of the entity can be checked against unauthorized access:

- Create by Association
- Update
- Delete
- Instance Actions

The authorization check is implemented in the corresponding method in the behavior implementation. For more information, see [Instance Authorization Implementation](#)

The instance authorization check is called during runtime before the actual execution of the requested operation. In draft scenarios this means that the draft instance already exists, but its activation is prevented.

You can define both, global and instance authorization. It is possible to check instance-based operations in the global and the instance authority check. The checks are executed during different points in time during runtime.
**Authorization None**

By using the syntax element `authorization: none` on an operation in the entity's behavior definition, you exclude the operation in question from authorization checks. You can disable operations from authorization checks in authorization master and dependent entities.

### 4.1.2.1.4.2 Authorization Implementation

Authorization checks are implemented in the behavior pool with the respective methods for global or instance authorization.

The authorization that is defined on a business object's entity must be implemented in the corresponding local handler class (`lhc_handler`) of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base handler class `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER`. The authorization check is implemented in this handler class using the corresponding methods global authorization or instance authorization.

#### Authorization Implementation in the Behavior Pool

The method declarations can be generated via a quick fix when defining authorization in the behavior definition. Global and instance authorization need to be handled separately from provider perspective as they are consumed during different points in time.

##### Global Authorization

```abap
CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS get_global_authorizations FOR GLOBAL AUTHORIZATION
    IMPORTING [page 126] REQUEST requested_authorizations [page 126] FOR Entity RESULT result [page 127].
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD get_global_authorizations.
    // Implement method for global authorization here!
    ENDMETHOD.
    ...
ENDCLASS.
```

The global authorization method is called as the very first method in the handler class, when a modify request is executed, see Update Operation [page 132].

As global authorization is independent of the state of the entity and just checks the authorization of the user that has executed the request, the global authorization handler is usually used to forbid certain operations for certain user groups in general. A typical use case is to only allow specific user groups to create new instances.

##### Example

```abap
METHOD get_global_authorizations.
    IF requested_authorizations-%create EQ if_abap_behv=>mk-on.
    "Check authorization via authorization object
    AUTHORITY-CHECK OBJECT '/DMO/ZAUTHO'
```
ID '/DMO/ZAUTHF' DUMMY
ID 'ACTVT' FIELD '01'.

" user is authorized
IF SY-SUBRC = 0.
  result-%create = IF_ABAP_BEHAV=>auth-allowed.
" user is not authorized
ELSE.
  result-%create = IF_ABAP_BEHAV=>auth-unauthorized.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.

Instance Authorization

CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS get_instance_authorizations FOR INSTANCE AUTHORIZATION
  IMPORTING keys REQUESTED_AUTHORIZATIONS FOR travel RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD get_instance_authorizations.
  // Implement method for instance authorization here!
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

The method for instance authorization is called, right before the actual modification of the respective instance happens, see Update Operation [page 132]. At this point in time, during the runtime execution, you can only make checks against the state of the instance as it was before the modification request was triggered. This state, the so-called before image is relevant for authorization checks in the instance authorization method. You do not have the option to check against incoming values.

Example

Instances with status Booked can only be changed by a specific user group. In this example, you implement the authorization check in the instance authorization method and read the instance to check the value of the status field of the before image instance to pass to the authorization object. The actual authorization check is done by the authorization object if you have defined restriction values.

CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD get_instance_authorizations.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( Status ) WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(travels)
  FAILED failed.
  IF requested_authorizations-%update EQ IF_ABAP_BEHAV=>MK-ON.
  LOOP AT travels INTO DATA(travel).
    "Check authorization via authority object
    AUTHORITY-CHECK OBJECT '/DMO/ZAUTHO'
    ID '/DMO/ZAUTHF' travel-status
    ID 'ACTVT' FIELD '02'.
  ENDLOOP.
  ENDMETHOD.

"user is authorized
IF sy-subrc = 0.
  result-%update = if_abap_behv=>auth-allowed.
" user is not authorized
ELSE.
  result-%update = if_abap_behv=>auth-unauthorized.
"Return custom message
APPEND VALUE (# %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_message_exception(  
  textid = /dmo/cm_message_exception=>NOT_AUTHORIZED  /* constant  
  severity =  
  if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error ) ) TO reported-travel.
  ENDF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Importing Parameter

Since the global authorization check is independent of an entity instance, the method for global authorization does not import any keys.

In instance authorization control methods, the importing parameter keys imports the key of the relevant instance during runtime. Depending on the scenario all relevant components to identify an instance are imported, for example %is_draft in draft scenarios.

Request Parameter

The importing parameter requested_authorizations indicates for which operations authorization control must be implemented. For each authorization-relevant operation, the importing parameter receives a component (for example, %update), which is flagged during runtime. This flag indicates for which operation the authorization check is requested by the consumer. If the operation is defined with authorization:none, the operation does not appear as derived type.

As global authorization is independent of any instance, all standard operations including actions are relevant for global authorization.

For instance authorization, the following operations are relevant:

- Create by Association
- Update
- Delete
- Instance Actions
**Result Parameter**

The result parameter `result` is used to return the authorization check result to the consumer. For each requested operation in `requested_authorizations` the result parameter must be filled with the constants for authorization methods:

- `if_abap_behv=>auth-allowed` if the consumer is authorized to execute the respective operation
- `if_abap_behv=>auth-unauthorized` if the consumer is not authorized to execute the respective operation

If you do not fill the result parameter, the default value for operations is `allowed`.

**Changing Parameter**

`failed`

The changing parameter `failed` must be filled by the application developer to provide the failed key of the instance, for which instance authorization could not be specified. This can happen if the instance, for which authorization is requested, does not exist. That means, a `READ` request in the authorization implementation fails. This fail cause can then be provided in the `failed` structure of the authorization implementation.

The `failed` parameter must not be filled if the authorization check fails. The authorization check result is maintained in the `result` structure of the method.

The number of incoming keys must be the sum of the entries in `failed` and `result`, because either the authorization could not be specified for the instance or there is a result for the authorization.

- The global authorization does not have a `failed` parameter. As global authorization is not related to a specific entity instance, there is no key which can be returned in the `failed` parameter.

`reported`

The changing parameter `reported` can be filled by the application developer to provide messages to the consumer. These messages can be success messages in case authorization is granted for the user, or, the messages can further explain the reason why the authorization is not granted for the user in case the result parameter returns the constant `unauthorized`. The RAP framework provides a generic message for the reported structure if the implementation does not provide one.

In case of instance authorization, an instance-bound transition message is used. You can use the `%tky` component in your implementation. For further information about this message type, see The `%tky Component [page 176].

- Global authorization does not relate to a specific BO instance. Hence, there is no instance key, which can be used in the message implementation. You can therefore use an entity-bound transition message, which semantically relates to the BO entity, but not to a specific instance. For further information about this message type, see The `%tky Component [page 176].

If you do not fill the `reported` structure with a message, a generic message of the framework will be returned to the consumer.
4.1.2.2 Operations

Precheck for Modify Operations

You can prevent illegal changes from reaching the application buffer by prechecking modify operations.

The `precheck` can be defined for every modify operation in the behavior definition or in the projection behavior definition with the following syntax:

```plaintext
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
  ...
  { [use] create (precheck); 
    [use] update (precheck); 
    [use] delete (precheck); 
    [use] action (precheck) ActionName ... ;
    [use] association AssocName { create (precheck); }
  ...
}
```

The implementation for the condition deciding whether the modify operation is executed for a certain instance must be implemented in the corresponding method in the behavior pool. If the precheck is used for an operation in the projection behavior definition, the method must be implemented in the behavior pool for the projection.

```plaintext
METHOD MethodName FOR PRECHECK
  IMPORTING Keys1 FOR CREATE...
  Keys2 FOR ACTION...
```

The precheck method is called during runtime before the assigned modify operation and removes all input from the modifying request for which the condition in the precheck is not fulfilled.

Depending on the use case, you can define a precheck for the operation in the BO-layer or in the projection layer. Also, it is possible to define for both layers.

Augmentation for Modify Operations

You can add data to a modify request by augmenting the operation before the request is passed to the base business object.

Use cases for augmentation are

- Defaulting for incoming requests
- Including virtual fields in transactional handling (for example, updating localized fields)

Augmentation is defined in the projection behavior definition on the relevant operation with the following syntax:

```plaintext
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
  ...
```
The implementation of the augmentation is done in an ABAP handler class of the projection behavior pool for the augmented operation.

**Method Declaration**

```abap
METHODS augment_operation FOR MODIFY IMPORTING entities FOR <OPERATION> ProjectionEntityAlias.
```

A special form of the EML statement `MODIFY` is used to manipulate the request for the base BO in the handler implementation.

```abap
METHOD augment_operation.
  MODIFY AUGMENTING ENTITIES OF BaseBusinessObject
  ENTITY EntityAlias
    UPDATE FIELDS ( Field1 )
      WITH VALUE #( ( Field1 = 'DefaultValue' ) ).
  ENDMETHOD.
```

**Note**

This form of EML can only be used by a BO-provider.

With this EML statement, you can only modify entities of the base business object.

The statement variant has no `FAILED` or `REPORTED` addition. This is because of its special semantics. The operations in `modify augmenting` are not executed immediately, but are only merged with the operation of the original request. Thus, the processing of the augmented request by the base BO handler only begins after the termination of the augment method.

However, the augment method itself is entitled to fill its own `FAILED` and `REPORTED` parameters, if it detects errors in its inputs. These responses are included in the overall response of the projection request. Furthermore, failed instances returned by the augment method are removed from the request before (the remainder of) it is passed to the base BO. For more information about the execution order, see the runtime diagrams of Create Operation [page 130], Update Operation [page 132], or Create by Association Operation [page 136].

**Related Information**

- Create Operation [page 130]
- Update Operation [page 132]
- Delete Operation [page 134]
- Create by Association Operation [page 136]
- Actions [page 138]
- Save Sequence [page 150]
4.1.2.2.1 Create Operation

In RAP, the create operation is a standard modifying operation that creates new instances of a business object entity.

**i Note**

In case of a managed business object, instances for child entities can only be created by a create-by-association.

The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents' activities during the interaction phase of a create operation when an OData request for create (**POST**) is sent. The save sequence is illustrated in a separate diagram. see Save Sequence [page 150].
4.1.2.2 Update Operation

In RAP, the update operation is a standard modifying operation that changes instances of a business object entity.

The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents' activities during the interaction phase of an update operation when an OData request for update (MERGE) is sent. The save sequence is illustrated in a separate diagram, see Save Sequence [page 150].
4.1.2.2.3 Delete Operation

In RAP, the delete operation is a standard modifying operation that deletes instances of a business object entity.

The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents' activities during the interaction phase of a delete operation when an OData request for delete (DELETE) is sent. The save sequence is illustrated in a separate diagram, see Save Sequence [page 150].
4.1.2.2.4 Create by Association Operation

In RAP, the create by association operation is a modify operation that creates new instances of an associated entity.

The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents’ activities during the interaction phase of a create by association operation when an OData request for a create by association (POST) is sent. The save sequence is illustrated in a separate diagram, see Save Sequence [page 150].
4.1.2.2.5 Actions

An action in RAP is a non-standard modifying operation that is part of the business logic.

The standard use case of an action is to change specific fields of a business object entity. When using an action, it is not the standard update operation that is called, but the action with the predefined update implementation. On a Fiori UI, this means that the consumer of the Fiori app can change the state of an individual business object instance without having to switch to edit mode. The application developer provides action buttons for the action to be executable directly from a list report or an object page.

In the travel demo scenario, we provide examples of actions for changing the status of a travel instance to booked. Expand the following figure to watch how an action is executed on a Fiori UI.
Setting the Status to booked by an Action

In general, however, actions can have a much wider scope than just changing single values of an instance. You can create instances or implement complete work-flows in an action.

Technically, actions are part of the business logic. They are defined in the behavior definition and implemented in the behavior pool of a business object. Actions are executed by calling the corresponding method \texttt{FOR MODIFY} that has typed import and export parameters. They are identified as actions by the syntax \texttt{FOR ACTION}.

Triggers for Actions

For an action to be executed, a corresponding trigger is required. Actions can be called by

- A service consumer, for example, by a user interface.
- Internally, for example, by another action or by a determination via EML.
- By other business objects via EML.

Related Information

Action Definition [page 140]
Action Implementation [page 145]
Action Runtime [page 147]
4.1.2.2.5.1 Action Definition

You define actions for an entity in the behavior definition.

Syntax for Defining Actions

Actions are specified as non-standard operations in behavior definitions by using the following syntax:

```
... define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasedEntityName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique]
[authorization master ( instance )]
...
[internal [page 140]] [static [page 140]] [factory [page 141]] [static [page 140]]
action [{ features: instance [page 141], authorization: none [page 141] }]
ActionName [external 'ExternalActionName' [page 141]]
[parameter { InputParameter | $self } [page 141] ]
result [page 142] [selective [page 142]] [cardinality] [page 142]
{ $self [page 142] | entity OutputParameterEntity [page 142] |
  OutputParameterStructure [page 143]
[external 'ExtResultStructureName' [page 143]] };
[draft [page 67]] determine action [page 143] [actionName] { validation
validationName; determination determinationName; }
```

Internal Action

By default, actions are executable by OData requests as well as by EML from another business object or from the same business object. To only provide an action for the same BO, the option `internal` can be set before the action name, for example, when executing internal status updates. An internal action can only be accessed from the business logic inside the business object implementation such as from a determination or from another action.

Static Action

By default, actions are related to instances of a business object’s entity. The option `static` allows you to define a static action that is not bound to any instance but relates to the complete entity.
Factory Actions

With factory actions you can create entity instances by executing an action. Factory actions can be instance-bound or static. Instance-bound factory actions can be useful if you want to copy specific values of an instance. Static factory actions can be used to create instances with default values.

**Note**

**Actions:** Instance factory actions are not supported for the managed implementation type.

Dynamic Action Control

You can enable or disable actions depending on other preconditions of the business object. For example, you might want to offer the action `accept_travel` only if the status is not `rejected` already.

Dynamic action control is defined with the syntax `features: instance`.

For more information, see Feature Control [page 96].

Authorization Control

Actions can be checked against unauthorized execution. A precondition for this is the definition of an authorization master in the behavior definition. To exclude the action from authorization checks, you can use the syntax `authorization: none`.

For more information, see Authorization Definition [page 121].

External Action Name

By using the syntax `external 'ExternalActionName'`, you can rename the action for external usage. That means, the new name will be exposed in the OData metadata. This external name can be much longer than the actual action name, but is not known by ABAP.

If you want to define an action button for an action with an external name, the external name must be used in the @UI annotation. For more information, see UI Consumption of Actions [page 146].

Input Parameter

Actions can pass abstract CDS entities or other structures as input parameters. They are defined by the keyword `parameter`. 
For OData V4 UI services, you can specify a default value for the input parameter, which is automatically displayed when the pop-up of the input parameter shows up. For more information about the modeling, see Action deductDiscount [page 469] in the development guide for Transactional Apps with Draft Capabilities.

You can specify $self if the input parameter entity is the same abstract entity the action is assigned to. Input parameters with $self are only allowed on static actions. The reason for this is that instance-bound actions always import the key of the instance on which the action is executed. If you import the same entity instance as input parameter, the keys would be imported twice, which will cause a short dump during runtime. For more information about the importing parameter, see Importing Parameter [page 146].

**Output Parameter**

The output parameter for an action is defined with the keyword result. The result parameter for actions is not obligatory. However, if a result parameter is declared in the action definition, it must be filled in the implementation. If it is not filled, the action does not return anything, even if the action is declared with result cardinality greater 0. In such a case, the OData service returns initial values.

**Selective Result**

By declaring the action result to be selective you can define that the action consumer can decide whether the result shall be returned completely or only parts of it, for example the keys only. This can help to improve performance as performance consuming calculated fields can be excluded from the result.

The action method in the behavior pool then receives the additional importing parameter REQUEST. This parameter specifies which components of the result shall be returned. For more information about the implementation of actions with selective result parameter, see Action Importing Parameter [page 146].

A Fiori UI requests only the keys of the result when an action with selective result is executed.

**Result Cardinality**

The result cardinality for actions determines the multiplicity of the output. In this way, it indicates whether the action produces 0..1, 1, 0..n, or 1..n output instances. The possible values for cardinality are therefore:

- [0..1], or [1], or [0..*], or [1..*].

**i Note**

RAP does not support actions with result entity cardinality greater than 1.

**Result Parameter**

You can define an entity or a structure as a result for actions:

- **Result Entity:** You can return a business object entity as action result.
  - Use the syntax $self if the result entity instance is the same instance for which the action is executed.
    - In a UI service, the UI always stays on the same page where the action is executed. If, like in the demo above, the action is executed on the list report, the UI stays on the list report page after the action is executed. Executing the action from the object page returns the action result on the object page.
Use the syntax `entity OutputParameterEntity` to define the action result if the result entity is a different entity of the same or another BO.

**Note**

Only actions having output entities that are included in the service definition are exposed in the service.

For action with return type result entity other than `$self`, the Fiori UI does not navigate to the result entity, but stays on the page where the action is executed.

**Note**

In a projection behavior definition, result entities other than `$self` must be redefined with the projection result entity. For more information, see Actions in Projection Behavior Definitions [page 144].

- **Result Structure**: Apart from returning entities you can also return ABAP structures. This can be an entity type but also other structures that are defined in the ABAP dictionary. A resulting structure for actions is defined without the keyword `entity`.

  Using a structure as a return type is useful if you want to use the result in your further implementation. For result structures it is possible to define an alias to clearly identify the result in the OData metadata. The keyword `external` after the result type defines this OData representation of the action result.

  **Note**

  If the action result is an abstract entity, you have to define the result without the keyword `entity` as abstract entities are generally considered to be structures in ABAP.

**Determine Action**

Determine actions allow the business object consumer to call determinations and validations on request. You can assign determinations on save and validations to a determine action and execute it like any other action. Whenever a determine action is called, the determinations and validations assigned to it are evaluated and then only those determinations and validations are executed whose trigger conditions are fulfilled.

Determine actions are primarily meant to be called by side effects in order to give the user immediate feedback after changing UI fields or field groups in draft-enabled applications. Combined with side effects, determine actions act as an early execution of parts of the save sequence that already runs determinations and validations before the draft instance is prepared and activated. Side effects must be defined and annotated in the OData document. For more information, see Side effects.

You cannot add on modify determinations to a determine action. Furthermore, feature and authorization control are not enabled for determine actions.

In unmanaged scenarios, determine actions must be implemented manually for active instances.

**Syntax for Defining Determine Actions**

Determine actions are specified in the behavior definition with the following syntax:

```
DETERMINE ACTION DetActionName {
```
DETERMINATION MyDetOnSave;
VALIDATION MyValidation;
DETERMINATION Child-ChildDetermination;
VALIDATION Child-ChildValidation;
DETERMINATION (always) AnotherDetOnSave;
VALIDATION (always) AnotherValidation;
}

Only determinations and validations that are defined and implemented in the BO can be assigned to a determine action.

You can include validations and determinations for child entities, if these validations or determinations do not include the trigger operation delete.

The always flag

When a determine action is called that contains a determination or validation with the flag always, this determination or validation is executed regardless of its trigger conditions. After a determination with the flag always has been executed, it can be triggered again by other determinations belonging to the same determine action. The flag always cannot be used for determinations or validations that act on descendent entities.

Execution order

After calling a determine action, assigned determinations are executed before assigned validations. The execution order among determinations or validations themselves is defined by the framework and is independent of the specified order within the determine action.

Messages and failed keys

Determinations and validations assigned to determine actions can return messages to the REPORTED structure, but the failed keys of assigned validations are discarded.

The draft determine action prepare is a determine action that is implicitly available for all draft BOs. It is automatically called before a draft instance is activated and cannot be called for active instances. If a validation is assigned to the draft determine action prepare and detects failed keys, the subsequent activate action is not executed anymore. The FAILED structure is not filled in this case either.

For more information, see Draft Actions [page 67].

Actions in Projection Behavior Definitions

Like any operation, an action must be included in the projection behavior definition if you want to expose it for an OData service. The following syntax is used:

```
projection; ...
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasedEntityName]
{...
  use action ActionName [result entity ProjResultEntity] [as ActionAlias]
  [external ExtActName];
}
```

The keyword use registers action and determine actions for the specified business object projection.
Actions that have an entity result other than $self must be redirected to the projection entity of the result entity with the syntax result entity ProjResultEntity. Otherwise, it may happen that the action is not exposed anymore if the result entity is not included in the service.

You can define an internal alias for the action by using the syntax as ActionAlias. This alias is used in EML calls.

You can define an external name for the action with external ExtActName that is used in OData. This external name can be much longer than the alias name in ABAP and needs to be used when defining the corresponding UI annotation.

**Example**

For a fully defined action, see Defining Actions as Part of the Behavior Definition [page 273].

**Related Information**

Actions [page 138]
Action Implementation [page 145]
Action Runtime [page 147]

**4.1.2.2.5.2 Action Implementation**

You implement action in the behavior pool with the respective method FOR MODIFY.

As a rule, an action that belongs to a business object’s entity is implemented in the behavior pool that is defined in the behavior definition by the keyword implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique].

The concrete implementation of an action is based on the ABAP language in a local handler class as part of the behavior pool.

As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base handler class CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER. The signature of the handler method FOR MODIFY is type based on the entity that is defined by the keyword FOR ACTION followed by AliasedEntityName~ActionName. The alias name is defined in the behavior definition using the additional alias AliasedEntityName that refers to the suitable CDS entity.

Implementing an Action in a Local Handler Class

```plaintext
CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS method_name FOR MODIFY
  IMPORTING it_key_for_action FOR ACTION AliasedEntityName~ActionName
  [REQUEST it_requested_fields]
  [RESULT et_action_result].
```
Importing Parameter

- Depending on the type of action, the importing parameter it_key_for_action has the following components:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Specifics</th>
<th>Importing Parameter Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>instance action</td>
<td>An instance action imports the key of the instance on which the action is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>static action</td>
<td>A static action imports %cid. For static actions, %cid works as an operation ID that identifies the operation uniquely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action with parameter</td>
<td>An action with parameter imports the parameter structure %param for parameter input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action with result type entity</td>
<td>If the action returns one or more entity instances, the action imports %cid to identify the new instance before the final key is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factory action</td>
<td>A factory action imports %cid and %cid_ref. As factory actions always create new instances, %cid is filled to identify the new instance(s) before the final key is set. If factory actions are instance-bound they also import %cid_ref to identify a possibly newly created instance to which they are assigned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If the result parameter is defined as selective in the behavior definition, the action declaration in the behavior pool receives another importing parameter REQUEST it_requested_field. In the request parameter all fields of the action result that are selected by the action executor are flagged. Because of this, the action provider knows which fields are expected as a result.

Result Parameter

The components of the result parameter depend on those of the importing structure. The imported values of %cid and %cid_ref are returned if they are imported.

If a result is defined, it has the structure %param to be filled by the action implementation. This component is a table that reflects the type of the defined result type.

For action with selective result, only the field that are requested in REQUEST must be filled in %param.

UI Consumption of Actions

For an action to be consumable by a Fiori Elements UI, you need to define an action button in the relevant CDS view.
An action is always assigned to one business object entity in the behavior definition. In the corresponding CDS view, the action button must be defined in the @UI annotation.

Use `@UI.lineItem: [ {type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'ActionName', label: 'ButtonLabel' } ]` to define an action button on a list report page.

Use `@UI.identification: [ {type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'ActionName', label: 'ButtonLabel' } ]` to define an action button on the object page.

The `ActionName` must correspond to the action name in the behavior definition. If an external action name is defined for the action, you have to use this external name.

**Example**

For a fully implemented action, see Implementing Actions [page 274] and Enabling Actions for UI Consumption [page 279].

**Related Information**

- Action Runtime [page 147]
- Actions [page 138]
- Action Definition [page 140]

**4.1.2.2.5.3 Action Runtime**

In RAP, an action is a non-standard modify operation.

The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents' activities during the interaction phase of an action when an OData request to execute an action (POST) is sent. The save sequence is illustrated in a separate diagram, see Save Sequence [page 150].
Related Information

Actions [page 138]
Action Definition [page 140]
Action Implementation [page 145]
4.1.2.2.6  Save Sequence

The save sequence is part of the business logic and is called when data must be persisted after all changes are performed during the interaction phase.

The following runtime diagram illustrates the main agents’ activities during the save sequence in OData requests. The interaction phase of the operations is illustrated in separate diagrams, see

- Create Operation [page 130]
- Update Operation [page 132]
- Delete Operation [page 134]

**i Note**

The save sequence is divided into two phases. In the first phase, it is possible to have modify calls that change the BO even in the save sequence. In the second phase, after the point of no return, any modify call results in a short dump.
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model - Concepts

**OData Client**
- Interaction Phase
  - Trigger Save Sequence
    - Call Finalize Implementation

**Orchestration Framework**
- Call Check_Before_Save Implementation
  - Point of No Return
    - Call Adjust_Numbers Implementation
      - Call Save Implementation
        - Execute Managed Save
          - Method SAVE_MODIFIED
        - Method SAVE
      - Method ADJUST_NUMBERS
    - Method CHECK_Before_SAVE
      - Method FOR VALIDATION on save field
    - Method FINALIZE
      - Method FOR DETERMINATION on save create
      - Method FOR DETERMINATION on save field
    - Execute Managed FINALIZE

**BO Framework**
- Managed Implementation
  - Unmanaged Implementation

**Custom Business Logic**
- Managed Implementation
  - Unmanaged Implementation

PUBLIC 151
4.1.2.3 Determinations

A determination is an optional part of the business object behavior that modifies instances of business objects based on trigger conditions.

A determination is implicitly invoked by the business object’s framework if the trigger condition of the determination is fulfilled. Trigger conditions can be modify operations and modified fields. The trigger condition is evaluated at the trigger time, a predefined point during the BO runtime. An invoked determination can compute data, modify entity instances according to the computation result and return messages to the consumer by passing them to the corresponding table in the REPORTED structure.

For detailed information on messages, see Messages [page 173].

Example

A determination is implemented to calculate the invoice amount based on a changed price or quantity of an item. As soon as the consumer creates a new item entity instance or updates the quantity or price of an existing one, the determination is executed and recalculates the invoice amount.

i Note

When working with determinations, you have to consider the following runtime specifics:

- In unmanaged scenarios, determinations are only supported for draft instances, not for active instances.
The determination result must not change if the determination is executed several times under the same conditions (idempotence).

The execution order of determinations is not fixed. If there is more than one determination triggered by the same condition, you cannot know which determination is executed first.

Once a determination has been triggered, it must run independently from other determinations.

If you create or update an instance and delete it with the same request, it can happen that an EML read operation in a determination on modify fails as instances with the given key cannot be found.

**i Note**

Side effects can be used to trigger a call to the backend after a determination has been executed. This makes sense if the determined data are not automatically reread by the operation the determination belongs to. Side effects must be defined and annotated in the OData document. For more information, see Side effects.

### 4.1.2.3.1 Determination Definition

#### Syntax for Defining Determinations

Determinations are specified in the behavior definition with the following syntax:

```plaintext
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasedName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique]
...
{
    // (1) determinations for triggers at field level
determination MyDetOnModify on modify { field f1, f2, fn; }
determination MyDetOnSave on save { field f1; field f2; field fn; }
    // (2) determinations for triggers at operation level
determination MyDetOnModify2 on modify { create; update; delete; }
determination MyDetOnSave2 on save { create; update; delete; }
    // (3) combined trigger usage
determination MyDetOnModify3 on modify { create; field f1; }
...
}
```

### Assigned Entity

A determination belongs to an entity stated in the behavior definition. The fields that are used for the trigger conditions must belong to the same entity the determination is assigned to. The determined fields and the determining fields may belong to the same entity or to other entities of the business object.
Reference to Implementation Class

Determinations are implemented in the behavior pool, which is referred in the behavior definition by the keyword implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique].

Trigger Time

The trigger time defines at what time the trigger condition of a determination is evaluated. The following options are available:

- **on modify:** The determination is triggered during a modify operation.

  **Note**
  A determination on modify can also be triggered by the draft action activate as this action invokes a modify call including an update operation in case of an already existing active instance or a create operation in case of a new active instance. For more information, see Activate Action [page 76].

- **on save:**
  - The determination is triggered in the finalize phase of the save sequence.
  - The determination can be called on request by executing a determine action, if the determination has been assigned to such an action in the behavior definition. For more information, see Determine Action [page 143].

For more information on the different activities performed during the BO runtime, see Operations [page 128].

Trigger Condition

Determinations can be triggered by trigger operations or by trigger fields or by both.

Trigger Operations

Determinations can be triggered by the operations create, update and delete. When one of these operations is executed for a draft instance or for an active instance, determinations with the respective trigger operations are triggered.

**Note**
The trigger operation update for determinations on save is only supported in combination with the trigger operation create.
**Trigger Aggregations**

Determinations on save are triggered according to the relation between the operations performed on the current transactional buffer and the state of the database before the transaction. This applies to draft and to non-draft scenarios.

In draft scenarios, the transactional buffer is represented by the draft instance. In order to determine which operation triggers a determination on save, all operations performed on the draft instance are aggregated across its whole lifetime. Then, when a determination on save is called, these operations are evaluated relatively to the state of the active database. This does not apply to determinations on modify.

**Example**

A new draft instance is created. Then, it is updated. After that, a determine action containing a determination on save is called. The trigger for the determination is the operation `create` and not the operation `update`, because from the active database’s point of view, this instance is new and has hence been created, not updated.

If a delete operation is involved as a subsequent operation, the delete operation is the one which triggers the determination on save. This enables the business object consumer to revert changes that might have been performed before the delete operation by implementing a determination which triggers on that delete.

**Example**

A new draft instance is created as the child of an existing draft root instance. While entering data for this child instance, a determine action containing a determination on save is called that modifies the root instance. After that, the child instance is deleted. A determination which is triggered by the `delete` operation can now ensure that the changes done to the root instance are reverted.

The table below shows, which operation triggers a determination on save in case of different operation aggregations. The trigger operation which is respectively effective must be stated in the behavior definition for the determination so that it is executed. The following rules apply to the standalone execution of determinations on save as well as to their execution via determine actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation aggregation</th>
<th>Effective trigger operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create + Update</td>
<td>Create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create + Delete</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update + Update</td>
<td>Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update + Delete</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete + Create</td>
<td>Create</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Trigger Fields**

Determinations can be triggered by fields belonging to the assigned entity. When one or more fields are changed by a `create` or by an `update` operation, the determination is executed.
Input Parameter

A determination imports the keys of the instances on which the determination is executed. The name of the input parameter must be declared in the signature of the corresponding method, see Determination Implementation [page 156].

**Note**
If imported keys are not available anymore during the runtime of a triggered determination on modify, this determination is ignored by the framework.

Output Parameter

Messages can be returned to the consumer by writing them into the implicitly declared REPORTED structure.

4.1.2.3.2 Determination Implementation

The implementation of a determination is contained in a local handler class as part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, this local class inherits from the base handler class CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER.

The signature of a determination method is typed using the keyword FOR DETERMINE followed by the chosen determination time and the importing parameter. The type of the importing parameter is an internal table containing the keys of the instances the determination will be executed on. Lastly the signature contains the affected entity followed by the name of the determination stated in the behavior definition.

It is possible to implement multiple determinations for multiple entities in a single method, if these determinations use the same trigger time.

**Listing 1: Implementing a Determination in a Local Handler Class**

```abap
CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS method_name1 FOR DETERMINE ON MODIFY
  IMPORTING keys FOR AliasedEntityName~DetOnModify.
METHODS method_name2 FOR DETERMINE ON SAVE
  IMPORTING keys FOR AliasedEntityName~DetOnSave
  keys2 FOR AliasedEntityName2~DetOnSave2.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD method_name1.
  // Implement method for determination here!
ENDMETHOD.
...
ENDCLASS.
```
4.1.2.4 Validations

A validation is an optional part of the business object behavior that checks the consistency of business object instances based on trigger conditions.

A validation is implicitly invoked by the business object’s framework if the trigger condition of the validation is fulfilled. Trigger conditions can be modify operations and modified fields. The trigger condition is evaluated at the trigger time, a predefined point during the BO runtime. An invoked validation can reject inconsistent instance data from being saved by passing the keys of failed instances to the corresponding table in the FAILED structure. Additionally, a validation can return messages to the consumer by passing them to the corresponding table in the REPORTED structure.

For detailed information on messages, see Messages [page 173].

Example

A validation is implemented to check if the customer ID contained in travel instances is valid. This validation is assigned to the entity travel and contains the trigger field customer_ID. As soon as the field for the customer ID is updated by the consumer, the validation checks whether the customer ID is valid or not. If the customer ID is not valid, the validation prevents the instance data from being saved in the save sequence and returns a warning message.

Note

When working with validations, you have to consider the following runtime specifics:

- In unmanaged scenarios, validations are only supported for draft instances, not for active instances.
- The execution order of validations is not fixed. If there is more than one validation triggered by the same condition, you cannot know which validation is executed first.
- It is not allowed to use EML modify statements in validations.

4.1.2.4.1 Validation Definition

Syntax for Defining Validations

Validations are specified in the behavior definition with the following syntax:

```plaintext
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasedName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique]
...
{
  // (1) validations for triggers at field level
  validation Validation1 on save { field f1, f2, fn; }
  validation Validation2 on save { field f1; field f2; field fn; }
  // (2) validation for triggers at operation level
  validation Validation3 on save { create; update; delete; }
  // (3) combined trigger usage
```
Assigned Entity

A validation belongs to an entity stated in the behavior definition. The fields that are used for the trigger conditions must belong to the same entity the validation is assigned to. The validated fields may belong to the same entity or to other entities of the business object.

Reference to Implementation Class

Validations are implemented in the behavior pool, which is referred in the behavior definition by the keyword implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique].

Trigger Time

The trigger time defines at what time the trigger condition of a validation is evaluated. For validations, only the trigger time on save can be stated. Validations on save are executed:

- In the checkBeforeSave method of the save sequence
- On request by executing a determine action, if the validation has been assigned to such an action in the behavior definition. For more information, see Determine Action [page 143].

For more information on the different activities performed during the BO runtime, see Operations [page 128].

Trigger Condition

Validations can be triggered by trigger operations or by trigger fields or by both.

Trigger Operations

Validations can be triggered by the operations create, update and delete. When one of these operations is executed for a draft instance or for an active instance, validations with the respective trigger operations are triggered.

**i Note**

The trigger operation update for validations is only supported in combination with the trigger operation create.
Trigger Aggregations

Validations are triggered according to the relation between the operations performed on the current transactional buffer and the state of the database before the transaction. This applies to draft and to non-draft scenarios.

In draft scenarios, the transactional buffer is represented by the draft instance. In order to determine which operation triggers a validation, all operations performed on the draft instance are aggregated across its whole lifetime. Then, when a validation is called, these operations are evaluated relatively to the state of the active database.

Example

A new draft instance is created. Then, it is updated. After that, a determine action containing a validation is called. The trigger for the validation is the operation create and not the operation update, because from the active database's point of view, this instance is new and has hence been created, not updated.

If a delete operation is involved as a subsequent operation, the delete operation is the one which triggers the validation. This enables the business object consumer to check data determined by a determination that might have been executed before the delete operation.

Example

A new draft instance is created as the child of an existing draft root instance. While entering data for this child instance, a determine action containing a determination on save is called that modifies the root instance. After that, the child instance is deleted. A validation which is triggered by the delete operation can now validate the changes done to the root instance.

The table below shows, which operation triggers a validation in case of different operation aggregations. The trigger operation which is respectively effective must be stated in the behavior definition for the validation so that it is executed. The following rules apply to the standalone execution of validations as well as to their execution via determine actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation aggregation</th>
<th>Effective trigger operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create + Update</td>
<td>Create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create + Delete</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update + Update</td>
<td>Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update + Delete</td>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete + Create</td>
<td>Create</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Trigger Fields

Validations can be triggered by fields belonging to the assigned entity. When one or more fields are changed by a create or by an update operation, the validation is executed.
Input Parameter

A validation imports the keys of the instances on which the validation is executed. The name of the input parameter must be declared in the signature of the corresponding method, see Validation Implementation [page 160].

Output Parameter

An invoked validation can reject inconsistent instance data from being saved by writing the keys of failed instances into the implicitly declared FAILED structure.

Additionally, messages can be returned to the consumer by writing them into the implicitly declared REPORTED structure.

4.1.2.4.2 Validation Implementation

The implementation of a validation is contained in a local handler class as part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, this local class inherits from the base handler class CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER.

The signature of a validation method is typed using the keyword FOR VALIDATE followed by the importing parameter. The type of the importing parameter is an internal table containing the keys of the instances the validation will be executed on. Lastly the signature contains the affected entity followed by the name of the validation stated in the behavior definition.

It is possible to implement multiple validations for multiple entities in a single method.

Listing 1: Implementing a Validation in a Local Handler Class

```plaintext
CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS method_name1 FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE
  IMPORTING keys FOR AliasedEntityName~MyValidation.
METHODS method_name2 FOR VALIDATE ONE SAVE
  IMPORTING keys FOR AliasedEntityName~AnotherValidation
    keys2 FOR AliasedEntityName2~AnotherValidation2.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD method_name1.
  // Implement method for determination here!
ENDMETHOD.
... ENDCLASS.
```
## 4.1.2.5 Concurrency Control

Concurrency control prevents concurrent and interfering database access of different users. It ensures that data can only be changed if data consistency is assured.

RESTful applications are designed to be usable by multiple users in parallel. In particular, if more than one user has transactional database access, it must be ensured that every user only executes changes based on the current state of the data and thus the data stays consistent. In addition, it must be ensured that users do not change the same data at the same time.

There are two approaches to regulate concurrent writing access to data. Both of them must be used in the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model to ensure consistent data changes.

- Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161]
- Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking) [page 166]

### 4.1.2.5.1 Optimistic Concurrency Control

Optimistic concurrency control enables transactional access to data by multiple users while avoiding inconsistencies and unintentional changes of already modified data.

The approach of optimistically controlling data relies on the concept that every change on a data set is logged by a specified ETag field. Most often, the ETag field contains a timestamp, a hash value, or any other versioning that precisely identifies the version of the data set.

When optimistic concurrency control is enabled for RAP business objects, the OData client must send an ETag value with every modifying operation. On each ETag relevant operation, the value of the ETag field is compared to the value the client sends with the request. Only if these values match is the change request accepted and the data can be modified. This mechanism ensures that the client only changes data with exactly the version the client wants to change. In particular, it is ensured that data an OData client tries to change has not been changed by another client between data retrieval and sending the change request. On modifying the entity instance, the ETag value must also be updated to log the change of the instance and to define a new version for the entity instance.

Concurrency control based on ETags is independent of the ABAP session and instances are not blocked to be used by other clients.

The following diagram illustrates the ETag checks for two different clients working on the same entity instance.
In RAP business objects, optimistic concurrency control is defined in the behavior definition by specifying an ETag field. Shortly before data is changed on the database, the orchestration framework reads the ETag field to compare its value to the value that is sent with the change request. The modify operation is accepted if the ETag values match. The modify operation is then executed and a new ETag value is assigned to the entity instance. The modify operation is denied if the ETag values are not identical. To enable the transactional read for reading the ETag value in unmanaged scenarios, the method FOR READ must be implemented by the application developer.

For more information about the ETag check during the runtime of a modify operation, see Update Operation [page 132].

Related Information

ETag Definition [page 163]
ETag Implementation [page 164]
4.1.2.5.1.1 ETag Definition

In RAP business objects, ETags are used for optimistic concurrency control. You define the ETag in the behavior definition of the business object entity.

Whenever an ETag is defined for a business object entity in the behavior definition, the ETag check is executed for modifying operations, as described in Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161]. You can define which entities support optimistic concurrency control based on their own ETag field and which entities use the ETag field of other entities, in other words, which are dependent on others.

An ETag is defined using the following syntax elements in the behavior definition:

```plaintext
... define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasedEntityName] implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique] ...
  etag master ETagField [page 163] | etag dependent by _AssocToETagMaster [page 163] ...
    { ...
      association _AssocToETagMaster { }
    }
```

**ETag Master**

An entity is an ETag master if changes of the entity are logged in a field that is part of the business object entity. This field must be specified as an ETag field in the behavior definition (ETagField). Its value is compared to the value the change request sends before changes on the business entity are executed.

Root entities are often ETag masters that log the changes of every business object entity that is part of the BO.

**ETag Dependent**

An entity is defined as ETag dependent if the changes of the entity are logged in a field of another BO entity. In this case, there must be an association to the ETag master entity. To identify the ETag master, the association to the ETag master entity is specified in the behavior definition (_AssocToETagMaster). Whenever changes on the ETag dependent entities are requested, the ETag value of their ETag master is checked.

**iNote**

You do not have to include the ETag field in ETag dependent entities. Via the association to the ETag master entity, it is ensured that the ETag field can always be reached.

The association that defines the ETag master must be explicitly specified in the behavior definition, even though it is implicitly transaction-enabled due to internal BO relations, for example a child/parent relationship. The association must also be defined in the data model structure in the CDS views and, if needed, redefined in the respective projection views.

An ETag master entity must always be higher in the BO composition structure than its dependents. In other words, a child entity cannot be ETag master of its parent entity.

**Projection Behavior Definition**

```plaintext
projection;
  define behavior for ProjectionView [alias ProjectionViewAlias] use etag [page 164]
  { ...
```
To expose the ETag for a service specification in the projection layer, the ETag has to be used in the projection behavior definition for each entity with the syntax `use etag`. The ETag type (master or dependent) is derived from the underlying behavior definition and cannot be changed in the projection behavior definition.

If the entity is an ETag dependent, the association that defines the ETag master must be used in the projection behavior definition. This association must be correctly redirected in the projection layer.

### Related Information

- Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161]
- ETag Implementation [page 164]

### 4.1.2.5.1.2 ETag Implementation

There are two prerequisites that must be fulfilled to make an ETag check work properly:

- The ETag field must be updated reliably with every change on the entity instance.
- The read access to the ETag master field from every entity that uses an ETag must be guaranteed.

If these prerequisites are fulfilled, the actual ETag check is performed by the orchestration framework, see Update Operation [page 132], for example.

### Implementation for ETag Field Updates

An ETag check is only possible, if the ETag field is updated with a new value whenever the data set of the entity instance is changed or created. That means, for every modify operation, except for the delete operation, the ETag value must be uniquely updated.

#### Managed Scenario

The managed scenario updates administrative fields automatically if they are annotated with the respective annotations:

```java
@Semantics.user.createdBy: true
@Semantics.systemDateTime.createdAt: true
@Semantics.user.lastChangedBy: true
@Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
```

If the element that is annotated with `@Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true` is used as an ETag field, it gets automatic updates by the framework and receives a unique value on each update. In this case, you do not have to implement ETag field updates.

If you choose an element as ETag field that is not automatically updated, you have to make sure that the ETag value is updated on every modify operation via determinations.
Unmanaged Scenario

Unlike in managed scenarios, the application developer in the unmanaged scenario must always ensure that the defined ETag field is correctly updated on every modify operation in the application code of the relevant operations, including for updates by actions.

Implementation for Read Access to the ETag Field

As can be seen in the runtime diagrams of the ETag check-relevant operations (for example Update Operation [page 132]), the ETag check during runtime can only be performed if the transactional READ operation to the relevant ETag master entity is enabled.

For ETag master entities that means the READ operation must be defined and implemented, whereas for ETag dependent entities, the READ by Association operation to the ETag master entity must be defined and implemented.

Unless you are using groups in your behavior definition, the READ operation is always implicitly defined. You cannot explicitly specify it. In groups, however, you have to assign the READ operation to one group.

The READ by Association must be defined in the behavior definition by the syntax association AssocName, see ETag Definition [page 163]. It must be ensured that there is an implementation available for the READ by Association definition.

Managed Scenario

In the managed scenario, the READ operation, as well as the READ by Association operation for each entity is provided by the framework. The READ operation is always supported for each entity and the READ by Association operation is supported as soon as the association is explicitly declared in the behavior definition, see <method> FOR READ [page 933].

Unmanaged Scenario

In the unmanaged scenario, the application developer has to implement the read operations for the ETag check. This includes the READ operation for the ETag master entity, as well as the READ by Association operation from every ETag dependent entity to the ETag master entity. The corresponding method for READ must be implemented in the behavior pool of the business object.

For a complete example, see Implementing the READ Operation for Travel Data [page 400] and Implementing the READ Operation for Associated Bookings [page 411].

Related Information

Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161]
ETag Definition [page 163]
4.1.2.5.2  Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking)

Pessimistic concurrency control prevents simultaneous modification access to data on the database by more than one user.

Pessimistic concurrency control is done by exclusively locking data sets for the time a modification request is executed. The data set that is being modified by one user cannot be changed by another user at the same time. In draft scenarios, this modification request lasts as long as the draft instance exists. In other words, it lasts until the draft instance is saved or the exclusive lock expires.

Technically, this is ensured by using a global lock table. Before data is changed on the database, the corresponding data set receives a lock entry in the global lock table. Every time a lock is requested, the system checks the lock table to determine whether the request collides with an existing lock. If this is the case, the request is rejected. Otherwise, the new lock is written to the lock table. After the change request has been successfully executed, the lock entry on the lock table is removed. The data set is available to be changed by any user again.

The lifetime of such an exclusive lock is tied to the session life cycle. The lock expires once the lock is actively removed after the successful transaction or with the timeout of the ABAP session.

The following diagram illustrates how the lock is set on the global lock table during an UPDATE operation.

The transaction of the client that first sends a change request makes an entry in the global lock table. During the time of the transaction, the second client cannot set a lock for the same entity instance in the global lock tables and the change request is rejected. After the successful update of client 1, the lock is removed and the same entity instance can be locked by any user.

For more information, see SAP Lock Concept.
**Locking in Non-Draft Scenarios**

If a lock is defined for a RAP BO entity, it is invoked during the runtime of the following modify operations:

- Update Operation [page 132]
- Delete Operation [page 134]
- Create by Association Operation [page 136]
- Action [page 147].

The **CREATE** operation does not invoke the lock mechanism, as there is no instance whose keys can be written to the global lock table.

**i Note**

The locking mechanism does not check key values for uniqueness during **CREATE**. That means, the locking mechanism does not prevent the simultaneous creation of two instances with the same key values.

In the managed scenario, this uniqueness check is executed by the managed BO framework. In the unmanaged scenario, the uniqueness check must be ensured by the application code provided by the application developer.

To prevent simultaneous data changes in RAP business objects, the lock mechanism must be defined in the behavior definition. Before instance data is changed by RAP-modifying operations, the entity instance is then locked to prevent data from being changed by other users or transactions.

In managed scenarios, the business object framework assumes all of the locking tasks. You do not have to implement the locking mechanism in that case. If you do not want the standard locking mechanism by the managed business object framework, you can create an unmanaged lock in the managed scenario. This enables you to implement your own locking logic for the business object.

**i Note**

Whereas the managed BO runtime executes a uniqueness check for all dependent entities of the lock master entity, an unmanaged implementation must ensure that newly created instances are unique.

In unmanaged scenarios, however, the application developer has to implement the method for lock and implement the locking mechanism including the creation of the lock object. The method for lock is called by the orchestration framework before the relevant modifying operations are executed. The lock method calls the enqueue method of a lock object that was previously created to enter the lock for the relevant entity instance on the lock table. During the save sequence, after data has been successfully saved to the database, the lock is removed during the cleanup method, see **Save Sequence** [page 150].

**Locking in Draft Scenarios**

In scenarios with draft support, locking plays an even more crucial role during the draft business object life cycle.

As soon as a draft instance is created for an existing active instance, the active instance receives an exclusive lock and cannot be modified by another. This exclusive lock remains for a determined time, even if the ABAP session terminates. The duration time of the exclusive lock can be configured. Once the exclusive lock expires after this duration time, the optimistic lock phase begins.
There are three cases that end the optimistic lock phase:

1. The user that created a draft instance for an active instance, and thus set an exclusive lock on the active instance, discards the draft explicitly. This can be the case, if the data changes are not relevant anymore.
2. The draft is discarded implicitly, when
   1. the draft remains untouched for a certain period of time. The lifetime of a draft is determined, but configurable. If the draft is not used for a certain period of time, the draft is discarded automatically by the life-cycle service.
   2. the corresponding active instance is changed directly without using the draft (by the draft owner or by a different user). This is possible during the optimistic lock phase. This change on the active instance invalidates the draft document. Invalid drafts are discarded automatically after a determined time by the draft life-cycle service.
3. a second draft is created for the corresponding active document.
3. The draft is resumed by the draft owner. If the user that created the draft continues to work on the draft instance after the exclusive locking phase has ended, the draft can be resumed and the changes are still available for the user. The optimistic locking phase ends as a new exclusive lock is set for the corresponding active document.

**Lock Master and Lock Dependent**

In RAP, locking is not only restricted to the entity instance that is being modified. All related entities in the business object structure are involved if one entity instance is getting locked. The locking structure is defined in the behavior definition with the keywords **lock master** and **lock dependent** by. Every business object that supports locking must have at least one lock master entity. Whenever a lock is requested for a specific entity
instance, its lock master and all dependent entity instances are locked for editing by a different user. This mechanism ensures that relevant data is not changed concurrently.

**i Note**
Currently, only root entities can be lock masters.
Lock dependent entities must always have a lock master that is superior to them in the business object structure.

The following diagram illustrates the structure of a business object with lock master and lock dependent entities.

If one entity instance of the blue BO tree receives a lock request, its lock master, the travel instance, is locked and with it all dependent entity instances of this travel instance. That means if one of the blue instances is locked, all blue instances are locked, but not the green instances of a different lock master entity instance.

**Related Information**

Lock Definition [page 169]
Lock Implementation [page 171]

**4.1.2.5.2.1 Lock Definition**

In RAP business objects, enqueue locks are used for pessimistic concurrency control. You define the lock in the behavior definition of the business object entity.

Whenever the locking mechanism is defined for a business object entity in the behavior definition, the orchestration framework calls the lock method to lock the respective data set and its lock dependencies. You define which entities are lock masters and which entities are dependent on other entities. The lock mechanism is only defined in the behavior definition in the interface layer. Its use for a business service must not be specified in a projection behavior definition.
**i Note**

In managed scenarios, locking must always be enabled. Therefore, the lock definition is always included in the template of the behavior definition.

The lock mechanism is defined using the following syntax elements in the **behavior definition**:

```plaintext
... 
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasedEntityName] 
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique] 
lock master [page 170] [unmanaged [page 170]] | lock dependent by 
_AssocToLockMaster [page 170] 
... 
{ ... 
  association _AssocToLockMaster { } 
}
```

**Lock Master**

Lock master entities are locked on each locking request on one of their lock dependent entities. The **method FOR LOCK** in unmanaged scenarios must be implemented for the lock master entities. The lock implementation must include locking all dependent entities.

**i Note**

Currently, only root entities are allowed to be lock masters.

Lock dependent entities must always have a lock master that is superior to them in the business object composition structure.

**Lock Master Unmanaged**

In the managed scenario, you can define an unmanaged lock if you do not want the managed BO framework to assume the locking task. In this case the lock mechanism must be implemented in the **method FOR LOCK** of the behavior pool, just like the lock implementation in the unmanaged scenario, see **Unmanaged Scenario [page 171]**.

**Lock Dependent**

An entity is defined as lock dependent if locking requests shall be delegated to its lock master entity. The lock master entity of lock dependent entities is identified via the association to the lock master entity. This association must be explicitly specified in the behavior definition, even though it is implicitly transaction-enabled due to internal BO relations, for example a child/parent relationship. The association must also be defined in the data model structure in the CDS views and, if needed, redefined in the respective projection views.

**Related Information**

- Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking) [page 166]
- Lock Implementation [page 171]
4.1.2.5.2.2 Lock Implementation

If a lock mechanism is defined for business objects in the behavior definition, it must be ensured that the lock is set for modifying operations.

Managed Scenario

The lock mechanism is enabled by default for business objects with implementation type managed. The template for the behavior definition comes with the definition for at least one lock master entity and the implementation of the lock mechanism is provided by the managed BO framework.

If you define an unmanaged lock for a managed business object, you have to implement the method FOR LOCK, just like in the unmanaged scenario. It is then invoked at runtime.

Unmanaged Scenario

Just like any other operation in the unmanaged scenario, the lock must be implemented by the application developer. To enable locking, the method FOR LOCK must be implemented.

For a complete example, see Implementing the LOCK Operation [page 414].

<method> FOR LOCK

4.1.2.5.2.2.1 <method> FOR LOCK

Implements the lock for entities in accordance with the lock properties specified in the behavior definition.

The FOR LOCK method is automatically called by the orchestration framework [page 1032] framework before a changing (MODIFY) operation such as update is called.

Declaration of <method> FOR LOCK

In the behavior definition, you can determine which entities support direct locking by defining them as lock master.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The definition of lock master is currently only supported for root nodes of business objects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, you can define entities as lock dependent. This status can be assigned to entities that depend on the locking status of a parent or root entity. The specification of lock dependent contains the association
by which the runtime automatically determines the corresponding lock master whose method FOR LOCK is executed when change requests for the dependent entities occur.

The declaration of the predefined LOCK method in the behavior definition is the following:

```plaintext
METHODS lock_method FOR LOCK
  [IMPORTING] lock_import_parameter FOR LOCK entity.
```

The keyword IMPORTING can be specified before the import parameter. The name of the import parameter lock_import_parameter can be freely selected.

The placeholder entity refers to the name of the entity (such as a CDS view) or to the alias defined in the behavior definition.

**Import Parameters**

The row type of the import table provides the following data:

- **ID fields**
  All elements that are specified as a key in the related CDS view.

*Note*

The compiler-generated structures %CID, %CID_REF, and %PID are not relevant in the context of locking since locking only affects persisted (non-transient) instances.

**Changing Parameters**

The LOCK method also provides the implicit CHANGING parameters failed and reported.

- The failed parameter is used to log the causes when a lock fails.
- The reported parameter is used to store messages about the fail cause.

You have the option of explicitly declaring these parameters in the LOCK method as follows:

```plaintext
METHODS lock_method FOR LOCK
  IMPORTING lock_import_parameter FOR LOCK entity
  CHANGING failed   TYPE DATA
                   reported TYPE DATA.
```

**Implementation of method FOR LOCK**

The RAP lock mechanism requires the instantiation of a lock object. A lock object is an ABAP dictionary object, with which you can enqueue and dequeue locking request. For tooling information about lock objects, see .

The enqueue method of the lock object writes an entry in the global lock tables and locks the required entity instances.

An example on how to implement the method FOR LOCK is given in Implementing the LOCK Operation [page 414].
Related Information

Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

4.1.2.6   Messages

This topic explains the basic message concepts relevant for the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model.

About Messages

Messages offer an important way to guide and validate consumer and user actions, and help to avoid and resolve problems. Thus, messages are important to communicate problems to a consumer or user. Well-designed messages help to recognize, diagnose, and resolve issues. That’s why it’s important to always use messages consistently and optimize the interaction as a whole. Consequently, errors and warnings that require action should be clearly stated and described in a way that helps to resolve the issue quickly and efficiently. It’s recommended to provide a message for each entry in the fail structure to provide additional information.

There are different types of messages depending on whether they refer to the state of a business object instance or only to the current request. **State messages** refer to a business object instance and **transition messages** refer to a request. State messages must always be bound to a business object instance (bound), whereas transition messages can either be bound or unbound (not related to a business object instance).

Messages in EML

When you execute a modify request, the keys of the failed instances are returned in the **failed** structure. As messages are optional, they’re returned with the **reported** structure whose components are derived at runtime by the compiler depending on the returned values. The following components of the **reported** structure are relevant for the message handling:

- **REPORTED**
  - **%CID**: ID of the relevant instance
  - **%MSG**: Filled with an instance of the message-wrapper class
  - **%ELEMENT**: Lists all fields or associations of an entity the message relates to.
  - **%STATE_AREA**: If this component of type **String** is filled in, the framework interprets a message as state message.
  - **%OTHER**: The reported structure contains a table for each entity defined and in addition **%OTHER** for all messages that aren’t entity-related. The **%OTHER** component is filled with an instance of the message-wrapper class when a message isn’t related to a business object entity (Unbound messages)
  - **%path** (only relevant for child entities): The path component maps a child entity to its parent. If there’s a business object with several child entities, the **%PATH** component is extended to map the child entity to its parent and the business object root.
With the %ELEMENT component, you can assign messages to one or several target fields. These targets are interpreted by the client and result in an improved user experience, because the target establishes a visible link between the message and the target field that also enables navigation if there are many error messages. The %STATE_AREA component determines whether a message is interpreted as state message. If this component is left empty, a message is interpreted as a transition message. If the component is filled in, the message is interpreted as a state message. For more general information about the reported and failed structure, see:

- Reported Structure. [page 946]
- Failed Structure. [page 945]

For more information about how messages behave in EML, see Message Behavior in EML (Entity Manipulation Language) [page 184].

### Related Information

- State Messages [page 180]
- Transition Messages [page 176]

### 4.1.2.6.1 Generic Message Implementation

#### Generic Message Implementation

Generally, the message creation and allocation to a reported structure is identical for every scenario:

```app
APPEND VALUE #(
  %tky = instance-%tky
  %msg = NEW message_exception(
    TEXTID = message_exception=>message_exception_constant
    SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-severity
    message_variable = instance-field )
  %element-field1 = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
  %element-field2 = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
  %element-_Association = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
  %state_area = 'state_area'
  %PATH = VALUE #(<root>-%is_draft   = <child>-%is_draft
               <root>-<key>       = <child>-<parent_key_in_child_entity> )
) TO REPORTED-BUSINESS_OBJECT_ENTITY.
```

- **APPEND**: Appends the message to the reported structure.
- **%tky**: The %TKY makes it possible to uniquely identify to which instance a message belongs. A %TKY is always required for state messages - if state messages are accessed via EML, the respective messages can only be returned if the %TKY of the instance is known. For transitions messages, the %TKY is required for the framework to resolve a %element-field1 target assignment. If a transition message doesn't have a %TKY, the target isn't resolved in an OData response and the message is interpreted as unbound transition message by the framework.
• **Message Exception:** In this example, a message exception class is used to encapsulate the messages stored in a message class to handle the formatting of message variables types like dates or amounts via the exception class. You can adapt the message exception class to fit your specific message requirements if necessary. For an example implementation, see Creating a Message Exception Class [page 660].

• **Message Exception_Constant:** A message constant is implemented for every message contained in the message class. The constant contains the message class from where the message is drawn and the message number to identify one specific message and its variables.

• **Severity:** The severity specifies if a message is a success, information, warning, or an error message. Depending on the severity, the message is displayed with different icons and colors on the UI. You can select between the following options:
  ○ **Success:** A success message informs the user that a process or action was completed successfully. No action is required from the user-side. Note that success messages are omitted in some cases.
  ○ **Information:** An information message offers additional information about a process or an action. No action is required from the user-side.
  ○ **Warning:** A warning indicates that an action may be required on the user-side.
  ○ **Error:** An error occurred and an action is required on the user interface.

• **Message_Variable:** You can pass one or more message variables, if they’re required for the message you want to display. It’s recommended to declare all CDS view fields as possible but optional input parameters in your message exception class, so you can use all fields as variables if necessary.

• **%element-field1/field2:** The referenced field is used as a target for the message. This improves the user experience, as it enables navigation and clear allocation of errors when there are multiple error messages. 
  **%element** can also contain associations to child nodes (for example, Sales Order Header -> Sales Order Item). If the target refers to an association, the message references all subinstances of the association. This is useful, for example, if there are no subinstances to issue a message saying that at least one subitem must exist on parent level.
  For more information, about how a target assignment is displayed in a UI use case, refer to State Messages on the UI [page 182].

• **%state_area** (only relevant for state messages): This message is identified as state message since this component is filled in. For a transition message, this component isn’t filled in.
  For more information about state messages, see State Messages [page 180].

• **%path** (only relevant for child entities): The path component maps a child entity to its parent. If there’s a business object with several child entities, the **%PATH** component is extended to map the child entity to its parent and the business object root.

• **REPORTED-BUSINESS_OBJECT_ENTITY:** This message is bound since it’s allocated to a specific business object entity. Unbound messages are allocated to the **%other** component instead of a specific entity.

• **Longtexts:** If a message has a longtext, the longtext is automatically displayed on the UI together with the message and no additional implementation is required.
4.1.2.6.1.1 Transition Messages

Transition messages refer to a triggered request.

Transition Messages

Transition messages refer to a triggered request and are only valid during the runtime of the request. In contrast to state messages, they don't have any relation to the state of the business object itself, but instead to the transition between states. A typical example for a transition message could be: "Business Object is locked by user &1". As the example refers to a request relevant for a specific entity, it's classified as a bound transition message.

Optionally, a transition message can be bound to a business object entity by adding a %tky to identify the instance and adding the transition message to the REPORTED structure of a business object entity.

The %path Component for Child Entities

The %path component must be filled in for all child entities of a root entity to explicitly map child entities to the parents. For a direct child of a root, the %path component maps the child entity to the specific parent instance using the primary key and the draft-indicator. In the following example the draft parent (%is_draft) is mapped to the child draft via the instance keys:

```plaintext
%path = VALUE #( <root>-%is_draft = <child>-%is_draft
<root>-<key> = <child>-<key>
<parent_key_in_child_entity> )
```

For a business object consisting of three entities, the second child entity is mapped to the direct parent entity and additionally to the root of the business object. The %path component allows efficient mapping between the entities at runtime.

```plaintext
%path = VALUE #( <root>-%is_draft = <child_2>-%is_draft
<root>-<key> = <child_2>-<root_key_in_child2_entity>
<parent>-%is_draft = <child_2>-%is_draft
<parent>-<key> = <child_2>-<parent_key_in_child2_entity> )
```

For a specific implementation example, refer to Sample Implementation: validateBookingDate (Booking) [page 668].

The %tky Component

The %tky defines whether a transition message refers to a specific business object instance or not. You can define entity-bound transition messages belonging to a business object entity without referring to specific instances with the following syntax:

```plaintext
APPEND VALUE #( %MSG = NEW MESSAGEWRAPPER( TEXTID = MESSAGE_WRAPPER=>MESSAGE_WRAPPER_CONSTANT
SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-SEVERITY
MESSAGE_VARIABLE = READ_RESULT-FIELD ) ) TO REPORTED->BUSINESS_OBJECT_ENTITY.
```
If no `%tky` is specified, the transition message doesn’t refer to an instance of the business object, but the message is still semantically related to the respective entity the `REPORTED` structure belongs to. This syntax is required, for example, if you want to return a transition message in the context of `global authorizations` or `global feature control`. In global methods, no business object instance exists, but the message is related to a specific entity of the business object. Note that components that rely on the `%tky` to resolve assignments like `%element` are ignored in this context. Transition messages without instance reference are interpreted as unbound transition messages in the OData metadata, however defining an unbound transition message in the context of global authorization isn’t possible. Note that the global flag is set automatically by the framework and can’t be set manually.

**Generic Message Implementation: Bound Transition Message**

A message is interpreted as a transition message if the `STATE_AREA` isn’t filled in the implementation. The following generic implementation is an example of an instance-bound transition message (added to the reported structure of a business object entity and referencing a business object instance with the `%tky` component) with one message variable. It’s recommended to have target fields assigned to the `(%ELEMENT-FIELDNAME)` component, if the transition message relates to a particular field value. This doesn’t affect the UI, but the target is transmitted as part of the OData metadata.

**Instance-bound transition messages** require a `%tky` as instance reference to resolve assignments to the `%element` component. If no `%tky` is specified, these assignments are ignored during runtime. Instance-bound messages are returned from instance method implementations like instance feature control or instance authorization. An instance-bound transition message with a `%tky` as instance is generically implemented as follows:

```plaintext
APPEND VALUE #(  
  %tky = instance-%tky  
  %msg = NEW message_exception(  
    TEXTID = message_exception=>message_exception_constant  
    SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-severity  
    MESSAGE_VARIABLE = instance-field )  
) TO reported-business_object_entity.
```

As this example message is attached to a business object entity, the assumption is that the content of the message is related to the request for a specific entity. If this isn’t the case and the transition message has no link to any business object entity, a transition message can be bound to the `%OTHER` component.

For a specific implementation example, refer to Sample Implementation: `setToBooked (Travel)` [page 667].

**Entity-bound transition messages** are semantically only related to an entity, but not a specific instance. Hence, entity-bound transition messages are implemented without an instance reference and are returned from global method implementations like global feature control or global authorization. An entity-bound transition message is generically implemented as follows:

```plaintext
APPEND VALUE #(  
  %msg = NEW message_exception(  
    TEXTID = message_exception=>message_exception_constant  
    SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-severity  
    MESSAGE_VARIABLE = instance-field )  
) TO reported-business_object_entity.
```

This example is implemented without a `%tky` reference since global exits are called before a specific business object instance is created. The `%msg` component is filled exactly like an instance-bound transition message. If a
%element is defined in this case, the assignment is ignored during the runtime. For more details, refer to the section The %tky Component.

**Generic Message Implementation: Unbound Transition Message**

An unbound transition message is allocated to the %OTHER component. This generic implementation represents a transition message that passes one message variable to the message-wrapper class and is allocated to the %OTHER component.

```
reported-%other = VALUE #{ ( NEW message_exception(
    TEXTID = message_exception=>message_exception_constant
    SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-severity
    MESSAGE_VARIABLE = instance-field ) ) ).
```

### 4.1.2.6.1.1.1 Unbound and Bound Transition Messages on the UI

This topic shows how bound and unbound transition messages are displayed with UI5.

**Unbound and Bound Transition Messages on the UI**

**i Note**

The display of messages depends on the OData version and the UI technology, so the display may vary.

A transition message appears as a pop-up message and is gone once the pop-up window is closed. The rendering is the same for bound and unbound transition messages. The following example refers to a bound transition message in an action implementation. The action AcceptTravel modifies the travel entity and changes the overall status (field overall_status) to 'A' (accepted). To make sure that the state transition was successful, an information message is thrown after the action was called to confirm that the overall status was indeed changed. Because this change triggers a change of the business object state and is directly related to the travel entity, the message is defined as a bound transition message and is allocated to the reported-travel structure. Furthermore, since the request is related to the field overall_status, this field is added as element target. This doesn’t directly affect the UI, but the information is contained in the OData Metadata. This example doesn’t pass any message variables, but they can be passed by filling the defined import parameters of the /DMO/MESSAGEWRAPPER class. For a generic example of a message with message variables, you can refer to State Messages [page 180]. :

```
APPEND VALUE #{ %MSG = NEW /DMO/MESSAGEWRAPPER(
    TEXTID = DMO/MESSAGEWRAPPER=>ACTION_APPROVAL
    SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-INFORMATION
    %ELEMENT=OVERALL_STATUS = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
) } TO REPORTED-Travel.
```
This transition message is rendered as a pop-up on the UI with OData V4 once the respective action is triggered and completed. The pop-up depends on the message severity - messages with severity information, warning and error are displayed in a pop-up that can be closed by the user:

Since usually no action is required if there’s a success message, a transition message with this severity appears as a brief pop-up and disappears on its own without any user interaction:
4.1.2.6.1.2 State Messages

State messages refer to a business object instance and its values.

State Messages

⚠️ Caution
A state message must always be bound to a business object entity and can't be allocated to the %OTHER component.

⚠️ Caution
If a rollback is triggered in the context of an exposed RAP OData service, the state of a business object is returned to the state it had before the request as executed. Since state messages always reflect the current state of the persisted entity, state messages triggered after the initial request and before the rollback are invalid with regards to the persisted entity. As a consequence, the framework converts state messages triggered during this time frame to transitions messages that are then allocated to the REPORTED structure of the respective MODIFY request.

If a business object is consumed via EML in a non-RAP scenario, and the SAVE is canceled in the CheckBeforeSave phase, the business object remains in its state and the state messages are preserved.

State messages refer to a business object instance and its values. For a business object with draft capabilities, they’re persisted until the state that caused the message is changed and in a managed scenario, the messages are buffered until the end of the session. Messages in validations and determinations (that are part of a determine action or the Prepare action in a draft scenario) can typically be considered as state messages. Validations usually check the business object values for inconsistencies, thus reflecting the business object state, whereas determinations trigger changes to the business object state. Depending on your scenario, state messages may be converted to transition messages.

For example, if a validation returns an error message regarding an incorrect value in a field, the state message is persisted until the value is changed and the save sequence is triggered again. Using state messages is only recommended for the following cases:

- **Business Object with Draft Capabilities**: Determinations and Validation that are allocated to the PREPARE or a determine action
- **Unmanaged Business Object**: Finalize/Check Before Save Code Exit
- **Managed Scenario**: Determinations/Validation on Save

The %state_area Component

State messages are defined as such when the %state_area component is filled in with a string in the REPORTED structure. Regarding the naming, it’s recommended to choose a name that uniquely identifies the condition that the message originates from. For example, if a validation checks if a CustomerID the user entered is consistent with customers stored in a customer table, the %state_area ‘Invalid_Customer’ can be helpful in characterizing the condition because of which the validation failed. Alternatively, you can choose the name of the operation a message is thrown in as %state_area. This value isn’t displayed on the UI nor is it
contained in the OData metadata - the %state_area is only used to clear state messages from the corresponding message table.

Consequently, you need to define a %state_area for each unique condition you’re checking against and want to be able to invalidate your messages for.

Invalidating State Messages

State messages must be invalidated so that the messages aren’t continuously added to a REPORTED structure if the same request is triggered multiple times on the same instance. You can only invalidate messages belonging to the same %state_area in one statement. Each unique %state_area needs to be invalidated separately. Use the following syntax to invalidate state messages in context of a Managed Business Object:

```
APPEND VALUE #( %tky        = instance-%tky
%state_area = 'state_area' ) TO REPORTED-BUSINESS_OBJECT_ENTITY.
```

The %state_area component invalidates all messages that were added to the REPORTED structure with the same state area property for the instance with the %tky component. Since the %msg is undefined, all %msg that were added beforehand with the respective %state_area are removed by the framework from the message table.

In case of an Unmanaged Business Object, an additional implementation for the DELETE implementation is necessary to invalidate state messages for all state areas belonging to one instance when the instance is deleted. This implementation removes all state messages belonging to the instance specified with key. State_area_all removes all state messages for this instance from the message persistence after the instance is deleted:

```
"Clear state area for instance
APPEND VALUE #( key  = instance-key
%state_area = if_abap_behv=>state_area_all ) TO REPORTED-
BUSINESS_OBJECT_ENTITY.
```

The %path Component for Child Entities

The %path component must be filled in for all child entities of a root entity to explicitly map child entities to the parents. For a direct child of a root, the %path component maps the child entity to the specific parent instance using the primary key and the draft-indicator. In the following example the draft parent (%is_draft) is mapped to the child draft via the instance keys:

```
%path       = VALUE #( <root>-%is_draft   = <child>-%is_draft
<root>-<key> = <child>-<key>
<parent>-<key> = <child>-<parent_key_in_child_entity> )
```

For a business object consisting of three entities, the second child entity is mapped to the direct parent entity and additionally to the root of the business object. The %path component allows efficient mapping between the entities at runtime.

```
%path       = VALUE #( <root>-%is_draft = <child_2>-%is_draft
<root>-<key> = <child_2>-<root_key_in_child2_entity>
<parent>-%is_draft = <child_2>-%is_draft
<parent>-<key> = <child_2>-<parent_key_in_child2_entity> )
```

For a specific implementation example, refer to Sample Implementation: validateBookingDate (Booking) [page 668].
Generic Message Implementation: State Message

A message is interpreted as state message once the \%state_area component is filled in. The following generic implementation is a state message with two target fields that is allocated to a business object entity passing one field as a message variable:

```
APPEND VALUE #(
  %tky = instance-%tky
  %msg = NEW message_exception(
    TEXTID = message_exception=>message_exception_constant
    SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-severity
    message_variable =~instance-field )
  %element-field1 = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
  %element-field2 = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
  %element-_Association = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
  %state_area = 'state_area'
  %PATH = VALUE #(<root>%is_draft = <child>%is_draft
              <root><key> = <child><parent_key_in_child_entity> )
) TO REPORTED-BUSINESS_OBJECT_ENTITY.
```

For more information, about how state messages are displayed on the UI and a more specific implementation example, refer to State Messages on the UI [page 182].

For an example implementation with state and transition messages, refer to Creating a Message Exception Class [page 660] and Exposing Messages for a Sample Business Object with DraftCapabilities [page 665].

### 4.1.2.6.1.2.1 State Messages on the UI

This topic shows that state messages are displayed with UI5.

State Messages on the UI

The representation of messages depends on the UI technology and the following screenshots are UI5-specific and the message representation may vary in other cases.

State messages are displayed in a message pop-over and they’re persisted until the state of the business object changes. If a message is assigned to field in \%ELEMENT, the respective field is framed in the severity color to illustrate the link between the field values and a message in order to improve the user experience.

The following example is extracted from the implementation of the `validateDates` method from the managed scenario. This validation checks if the start date is earlier than the end date. Since a validation refers to the state of business object, the \%state_area component is filled in with 'VALIDATE_DATES'. If you implement several state messages within the same implementation, it is recommended to use the same value for all \%state_area definitions.

For this validation, two target elements \%element-BeginDate and \%element-EndDate are defined, since these field values are checked in the validation. The class `/dmo/cm_flight_home` is used as a message-wraper class in this case. The specific message id and the respective variables necessary for the message text are contained in the `end_date_before_begin_date` constant. For this message, the `begin_date` (type DATS), `end_date` (type DATS) and `travel_id` (type String) are passed as variables for the message. The
message severity is defined as Error indicating that the date must be changed by the user for incorrect values. The message is allocated to the reported structure of the travel entity:

APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel_result-%tky
%state_area = 'VALIDATE_DATES'
%msg = NEW /dmo/
cm_flight_home( textid = /dmo/cm_flight_home=>end_date_before_begin_date
begin_date = ls_travel_result-BeginDate
end_date = ls_travel_result-EndDate
travel_id = ls_travel_result-TravelID
severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
%element-BeginDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
%element-EndDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.

If a date is incorrect, the state message is rendered as follows after the user tries to save the travel instance:

The defined target elements are framed in red to indicate the link between the message and the respective fields. As a state message, the validation result appears in the message box on the lower left. The defined message length exceeds the maximum length for a short text and is automatically displayed in the longtext view so that the complete text is readable for the user. The message is allocated to the travel entity that has the label Managed· Travel with Semantic Key - the heading for the message is always derived from the business object label to whose reported structure the message was allocated. Furthermore, the state messages enable the user to navigate between the messages and the affected field. The respective message then appears on the
bottom of the affected fields:

![Travel Managed with Semantic Key](image)

**Related Information**

- State Messages [page 180]
- Creating a Message Exception Class [page 660]
- Exposing Messages for a Sample Business Object with Draft Capabilities [page 665]

### 4.1.2.6.2 Message Behavior in EML (Entity Manipulation Language)

This topic describes how transition and state messages behave in EML.

**Transition Messages**

As transition messages are semantically related to the current request and not a business object state, transition messages are returned with the `REPORTED` structure of the respective `MODIFY` statement.

For example, if an action throws a transition message and the actions is triggered with a `MODIFY` statement, the transition message is returned with the `REPORTED` structure of the same statement. Transition messages are bound to a request, so the message can’t be accessed at a later point in time, meaning it isn’t contained in the `REPORTED` structure of the `COMMIT` statement, nor is the message returned in case of a `READ` statement.
State Messages

As state messages are semantically related to the state of business object, state messages aren’t returned with the REPORTED structure of a MODIFY request, but can instead only be accessed via a READ. All thrown state messages are pooled during the modify operations and are returned with a READ on the business object entity for which the MODIFY requests were triggered.

For example, if a MODIFY - CREATE triggers a validation during the save sequence that throws a state message, this message isn’t contained in the REPORTED structure of the same request, but in the REPORTED structure of the next READ on the same instance.

⚠️ Caution

If a rollback is triggered in the context of an exposed RAP OData service, the state of a business object is returned to the state it had before the request as executed. Since state messages always reflect the current state of the persisted entity, state messages triggered after the initial request and before the rollback are invalid with regards to the persisted entity. As a consequence, the framework converts state messages triggered during this time frame to transitions messages that are then allocated to the REPORTED structure of the respective MODIFY request.

If a business object is consumed via EML in a non-RAP scenario, and the SAVE is canceled in the CheckBeforeSave phase, the business object remains in its state and the state messages are preserved.

Example: Managed Business Object with Draft

The following example illustrates the message behavior of state and transition messages:

A validation belonging to the business object instance throws one bound transition message and one state message. This example is only used for message behavior comparison - generally speaking a validation would rather throw state messages than transition messages. First two draft instances are created via an EML CREATE. Then the two entities are committed to the draft table. On the draft table, the validation is triggered which check for the value of sample_field.

The generic validation implementation follows the usual action implementation pattern. The validation is triggered on save and checks if the content of the field sample_field is valid:

```implementation
[implementation] unmanaged|managed|abstract [in class class_name unique];
with draft;
...
define behavior for CDSEntity travel
implementation in class travel_implementation [unique]
...
{
  draft determine action Prepare { sampleValidation; }
  validation sampleValidation on save { field sample_field; }
}
```
Within the `sampleValidation`, there are two messages implemented. The state message is triggered if an incorrect value was entered in the `sample_field` and has the severity error, the transition message confirms that the contained value is correct and has the severity success:

```abap
METHOD sampleValidation.
//State message is invalidated
APPEND VALUE #(  %tky = k-%tky
  %state_area = 'sampleValidation' ) TO reported-travel.
[...Code to check value ]
IF value_is_incorrect.
  APPEND VALUE #(  %tky = key-%tky
                    %state_area = 'sampleValidation'
                    %msg = NEW MESSAGEWRAPPER( textid =
                    MESSAGEMAKER=>VALIDATION_SUCCESSFUL
                    travel_id =
                    ls_travel-TravelID
                    severity =
                    if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
    TO failed-travel.
  ENDIF.
//Value is correct
APPEND VALUE #(  %tky = key-%tky
                    %msg = NEW MESSAGEWRAPPER( textid =
                    MESSAGEMAKER=>VALIDATION_NOT_SUCCESSFUL
                    travel_id =
                    ls_travel-TravelID
                    severity =
                    if_abap_behv_message=>severity-success )
    TO reported-travel.
ENDMETHOD.
```

Now, a `CREATE` is triggered via EML and all validations are triggered during the `CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE`. In the first case, an incorrect value is passed for the `sample_field` and the `%tky` of the instance is added to the failed structure and the state message isn't returned with the `REPORTED` structure of the `MODIFY` or `COMMIT`. In the second case, the transition message is triggered:

```abap
// Trigger two creates via EML
//Returns state message
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /dmo BUSINESSOBJECT
  ENTITY Bo_Entity
  CREATE SET FIELDS WITH
  VALUE #( ( %tky = VALUE #( ID = '1234'
                      %is_draft = if_abap_behv=>mk-on )
       %data = VALUE #( sample_field = 'incorrectValue' ...
                      fill in other required fields for CREATE) )
   FAILED DATA(create_failed)
   MAPPED DATA(create_mapped)
   REPORTED DATA(create_reported).
//Returns transition message in reported
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /dmo BUSINESSOBJECT
  ENTITY Bo_Entity
  CREATE SET FIELDS WITH
  VALUE #( ( %tky = VALUE #( ID = '12345'
                      %is_draft = if_abap_behv=>mk-on )
       %data = VALUE #( sample_field = 'correctValue' ...
                      fill in other required fields for CREATE) )
```
The two messages are allocated as follows:

- **State Message Instance 1234**: The persisted state message is allocated in the `READ_REPORTED_STATEM` structure. Even if a new session is started, the `READ` on instance 1234 returns the state message until the value is changed and the `PREPARE` is triggered again. When the business object is consistent in the draft instance, the business object instance can be persisted on the data base.
• Transition Message Instance 12345: The transition message is returned with the prepare_reported_2 structure.

4.1.2.6.3 Messages in OData

4.1.2.6.3.1 OData V2

This topic describes how messages are modeled in OData V2.

Messages in OData V2

Messages in OData V2 aren’t modeled as entities, but are returned together with the business data.

Successful Request (http response 2xx)

If the request is successful (http response 2xx), messages are contained in the custom response header sap-message with the following structure:

• Message Code: A machine-readable code
• Message Text: Message text defined in the T100 message class.
• Message Targets: Message targets are defined with the %element component. A message can have one or multiple targets. If multiple targets are defined, they’re modeled as an array of additional Targets. In this case, each item in this array is a string with the same syntax as target.
• Severity: The severity reflects the severity defined in the %msg component with the statement SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE->SEVERITY-SEVERITY.
• Transition indicator: An optional transition indicator - transition messages originate during transition from one backend state to another backend state, for example, during execution of an action. Transition messages are flagged as transition:true and state messages are flagged as transition:false.
• Detail messages: Zero or more details, each with a code, message, severity, target, and optional an additional Targets array and a transition indicator.

The content of the SAP-Message header uses the same format (Atom/XML or JSON) as the response body.

The sap-message header is structured as follows:

```json
{  "code": "DM0_BUSINESSOBJECT_MESSAGES/002",  "message": "Message text as defined in T100 message class",  "severity": "info",  "transition": true,  "target": "to_Target"  "details": [   ] }
```

The code is composed of the T100 message class the message originates from and the message identifier. This message example has the severity info and was defined as transition message that has the target _Target.
Not Successful (Http Response Code 4xx [Client Error]/ 5xx [Server Error] )

If a request isn’t successful, messages are returned with the http body. If the response contains multiple messages, they’re arranged hierarchically below the first returned message. The first message is described with the following properties:

- **Lang**: Language in which the server returned the message (response language is derived from request language).
- **Message**: Message text as defined in the respective T100 message class.

The properties within the response are structured as follows:

```json
"error": {
  "code": "DMO_BUSINESSOBJECT_MESSAGES/001",
  "message": {
    "lang": "en",
    "value": "Message Text as defined in T100 message class."
  }
}
```

Details about all messages are contained in the error details block:

```json
"errordetails": [
  {
    "code": "DMO_BUSINESSOBJECT_MESSAGES/001",
    "message": "Message text as defined in T100 message class.",
    "propertyref": "",
    "severity": "error",
    "transition": true,
    "target": ""
  },
  {
    "code": "DMO_BUSINESSOBJECT_MESSAGES/002",
    "message": "Second text as defined in T100 message class.",
    "propertyref": "",
    "severity": "success",
    "transition": true,
    "target": "to_Target"
  }
]
```

In this example, both messages have the property transition:true indicating that they were defined as transition messages (no %state_area defined in the implementation). The code indicates which message class the message was created in, the numeric value reflects the message identifier defined in the T100 message class. The first example wasn’t bound to target because of which the property is undefined. The second message was assigned to the target _Target with the %element component.

### 4.1.2.6.3.2 OData V4

This topic describes how messages are modeled in OData V4.

**Messages in OData V4**

Bound Messages in OData V4 are modeled as a complex type named `sap__messages` and unbound messages (messages allocated to `%other`) are transported with the response header.
Unbound Messages

Unbound messages are transported with the response header property `sap__messages` that has the following structure:

- **Message Code**: A machine-readable code
- **Message Text**: Message text defined in the message class.
- **Numeric Severity**: The numeric severity corresponds to the severity defined in the `%msg` component with the statement `SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-SEVERITY`. The mapping is as follows:
  - **Success**: 1 (Success - no action required)
  - **Info**: 2 (Information - no action required)
  - **Warning**: 3 (Warning - action may be required)
  - **Error**: 4 (Error - action is required)
- **Optional longtextUrl**: Contains the URL to the longtext, if the message was defined with a longtext in the message class.
- **Optional Target**: The target relates a detail message to (a part of) an OData resource, or a related OData resource. This link required for errors resulting from validation to establish a visual link between the message and the affected fields. It's possible to define one or multiple targets.
- **Message Targets**: Message targets are defined with the `%element` component. A message can have one or multiple targets. If multiple targets are defined, they're modeled as an array of additionalTargets. In this case, each item in this array is a string with the same syntax as target.

The content of the `sap-messages` header uses JSON and is encoded according to the rules for HTTP header fields.

```
sap-messages: [
  {
    "code": "DMO_BUSINESSOBJECT_MESSAGES/002",
    "message": "Message text as defined in message class",
    "numericSeverity": 2,
    "longtextUrl": "...",
    "target": "to_Target"
  }
]
```

The code is composed of the message class the message originates from and the message identifier. This message example has the severity info (2) and was defined with a longtext and has the target `_Target`.

Successful Request (http response 2xx): Bound Message

If a request (http response 2xx) is successful, bound messages are contained in an explicitly modeled collection-valued message container property to avoid header size problems. This complex type has the following properties:

- **Message Code**: A machine-readable code
- **Message Text**: Message text defined in the message class.
- **Message Target**: Message targets are defined with the `%element` component. A message can have one or multiple targets. If multiple targets are defined, they’re modeled as an array of additionalTargets. In this case, each item in this array is a string with the same syntax as target.
- **Numeric Severity**: The numeric severity corresponds to the severity defined in the `%msg` component with the statement `SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-SEVERITY`. The mapping is as follows:
- **Success**: 1 (Success - no action required)
- **Info**: 2 (Information - no action required)
- **Warning**: 3 (Warning - action may be required)
- **Error**: 4 (Error - action is required)

- **Transition indicator**: An optional transition indicator - transition messages originate during transition from one backend state to another backend state, for example, during the execution of an action. Transition messages are flagged as `transition: true` and state messages are flagged as `transition: false`.

- **Optional longtextUrl**: Contains the URL to the longtext, if the message was defined with a longtext in the message class.

The `sap__messages` is structured as follows:

```json
sap-messages: {
  "code": "DMO_BUSINESSOBJECT_MESSAGES/002",
  "message": "Message text as defined in message class",
  "target": "to_Target",
  "numericSeverity": "3",
  "transition": true,
  "longtextUrl": "...
}
```

The code is composed of the message class the message originates from and the message identifier. This message example has the severity warning (3) and was defined as transition message that has the target `_Target`. Furthermore, the message was defined with a longtext.

**Not Successful (Http Response Code 4xx [Client Error]/ 5xx [Server Error]): Bound Massage**

If a request (http response 2xx) Code 4xx [Client Error]/ 5xx [Server Error]), the error response has the following structure:

- **Message Code**: A machine-readable code
- **Message Text**: Message text defined in the message class.
- **Message Target**: Message targets are defined with the `%element` component. A message can have one or multiple targets. If multiple targets are defined, they’re modeled as an array of additionalTargets. In this case, each item in this array is a string with the same syntax as target.
- **Details**: Zero or more details, each with a code, message, and a target.

The error response is extended with instance annotations, to add a severity to detail messages, or an array of additionalTargets or the longtext URL:

```json
{
  "error": {
    "code": "UF0",
    "message": "Message text as defined in message class",
    "target": "",
    "@Common.additionalTargets": [],
    "@Common.longtextUrl": "...
  },
  "details": [
    {
      "code": "UF1",
      "message": "Message text as defined in message class",
      "target": "$_Target",
      "@Common.additionalTargets": [],
      "@Common.numericSeverity": 4,
      "@Common.longtextUrl": "...
    },
    ...
  ]
}
```
The code is composed of the message class the message originates from and the message identifier. There was no target defined for this message. The second example was defined with a longtext, the target _Target, and the severity 4 (error).

4.2 Business Service

Definition

The ABAP development platform can act in the roles of a service provider and a service consumer (such as SAP Fiori UI client).

In the context of the ABAP RESTful application programming model, a business service is a RESTful service which can be called by a consumer. It is defined by exposing its data model together with the associated behavior. It consists of a service definition and a service binding.

Business Services in the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

As illustrated in the figure below, the programming model distinguishes between the data model and behavior and the service that is defined by exposing these data models together with the behavior. The data model and the behavior layer contain domain-specific semantic entities like business objects, list views, and analytical queries, and, in addition, related functionality such as value help, feature control, and reuse objects.
A **business object** (BO) is a common term used to represent a real-world artifact in enterprise application development such as the **Product**, the **SalesOrder** or the **Travel**. In general, a business object contains multiple nodes such as **Items** and **ScheduleLines** (data model) and common transactional operations such as creating, updating and deleting data and additional application-specific operations, such as the **Approve** action in a **SalesOrder** business object. All modifying operations for all related business objects form the transactional behavior model of an application.

### Separation Between the Service Definition and the Service Binding

In a SAP Fiori UI, many role-based and task-oriented apps are based on the same data and related functionality must be created to support end users in their daily business and in their dedicated roles. This is implemented by reusable data and behavior models, where the data model and the related behavior is projected in a service-specific way. The **service definition** is a projection of the data model and the related behavior to be exposed, whereas the **service binding** defines a specific communication protocol, such as OData V2 or OData V4, and the kind of service to be offered for a consumer. This separation allows the data models and service definitions to be integrated into various communication protocols without the hassle of re-implementation.

### Example

Let us assume that a business object **SalesOrder** is defined and implemented in the data model and the behavior layer with the related value help and authorization management. The service definition might expose the **SalesOrder** and several additional business objects such as the **Product** and the **BusinessPartner** as they are included in a service binding for an OData V2 service.

The service requires the following artifacts:

- The service definition and the related projection views that project the service relevant parts of the data model implemented in CDS and the behavior definition where it projects the operations that should be
exposed. For example, the SalesOrder BO might offer the operations: create, update, delete, and 10 different application-specific actions. However, for a concrete role-specific list report, only two actions are required, so the remaining 8 actions and three standard operations are not included in the service projection.

- If the service is used to create a user interface, additional UI semantics are required. These are implemented by CDS UI annotations that are regularly stored in CDS metadata extensions (MDEs).
- The service binding that uses the package of artifacts that is defined in the service definition to bind the package to a service type (Web API, UI service, INA service) and a protocol type (OData V2, OData V4).

Related Information

Service Definition [page 201]
Service Binding [page 204]
Working with Business Services [page 974]

4.2.1 Business Object Projection

The business object projection in the ABAP RESTful Programming Model is an ABAP-native approach to project and to alias a subset of the business object for a specific business service. The projection enables flexible service consumption as well as role-based service designs.

Introduction

A service projection layer is required for a flexible service consumption of one business object. The basic business object [page 1019] is service agnostic. That means, this BO is built independently from any OData service [page 1032] application. The basic BO comprises the maximum range of features that can be applicable by a service that exposes this BO. The projection layer is the first layer in the development flow of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model that is service specific. When projecting the basic BO, you define the real manifestation of a business object in an OData service. The business object projection entails that part (the subset) of the BO structure and behavior that is relevant for the respective service, including denormalization of the underlying data model. Furthermore, the projection layer contains service-specific fine-tuning which does not belong to the general data model layer, for example UI annotations, value helps, calculations or defaulting.

Why Using Projections?

By using a projection layer for your business object, you gain flexibility in the service consumption. The general business object can be extended without affecting the already existing business service. This layering with projections enables robust application programming. The projection layer exposes the service specific subset of the general business object and thus, the service remains stable under modification of the underlying
business object. In addition, aliasing in the projection views allows context-specific adaptations of the business object for a service.

The projection layer also enables one business object to be exposed in an OData service for a Fiori UI and for a stable Web API. The service-specific differences can then be implemented in the respective projection layers. For example, UI specifications are defined only in the BO projection that is exposed for the UI service. Furthermore, with projections, you cannot only define the type of the service, but you can also design role-based services. One business object for general purpose is exposed for more than one context-specific projection as specialized business object. The most prominent example is the business partner BO, which is exposed as customer, vendor, or supplier. In the projection, you can use that subset of the business partner BO that is relevant for the respective specialization.

Example

The basic BO of a business partner contains a wide range of CDS elements and behavior options. Depending on the concrete realization of the business partner, that is, depending on which role the business partner is assigned to, the structure of the data model and the behavior in the BO projection might vary. In the role of a customer, which is a typical projection of the business partner, the business partner projection contains the standard data available for business partners and in addition, sales arrangements. Sales arrangements contain data that is related to specific sales areas and used for the purposes of sales. All these characteristics must already be available in the basic BO and are then selected as a subset of the general business partner pool of elements and functionalities.

Imagine the business partner is enriched with characteristics for a new role of a business partner, for example a supplier. You can add the necessary additional elements, for example delivery information, to the data model and the behavior implementation in the business partner BO without affecting the already existing BO projections.

Business Partner Projections
How to Use BO Projections?

The design time artifacts to create an OData service that includes a projection layer are the following:

- **Service Binding**
- **Service Definition**
- **CDS View for Projection**
- **Behavior Definition for Projection**
- **CDS View for BO Structure**
- **Behavior Definition for BO Behavior**
- **Behavior Pool (in ABAP class)**
- **Application Code (Legacy Application)**
- **DB Tables**

To create a projection layer for a business object, you need to create two projection artifacts:

- **CDS Projection Views**
  
  The projection of the data model is done in one or more CDS projection views, depending on the number of nodes of the underlying BO. The CDS projection views use the syntax element `as projection on <ProjectedEntity>` to mark the relationship to the underlying projected entity [page 1033]. As opposed to the former consumption views, they do not create another SQL view. Since they only provide the consumption representation of the projected entity, they do not need an ABAP Dictionary representation. If one BO entity is projected, the root and all parent entities must be projected as well. The root entity has to stay the root entity and must be defined as root projection view. The compositions are redirected to the new target projection entity.
For a detailed description on CDS projection views and their syntax, see CDS Projection View [page 197].

- **Projection Behavior Definition**
  The projection of the behavior is done in a behavior definition of type `projection`, which is declared in the header of the behavior definition. According to this type, only syntactical elements for projections can be used. Only behavior that is defined in the underlying behavior definition can be reused in the projection behavior definition. You cannot define or implement new behavior. The projection behavior always refers back to the behavior implementation of the underlying business object.
  For more information on projection behavior definitions and their syntax, see Projection Behavior Definition [page 199].

![Diagram showing the relationship between (root) Travel, Booking, Booking Supplement, and Travel BO Projection]

**Restriction**
In the current version of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model, it is not possible to migrate a classic CDS consumption view to a CDS projection view. It is recommended to delete and recreate the CDS consumption view as CDS projection view.

### 4.2.1.1 CDS Projection View

Projection views provide means within the specific service to define service-specific projections including denormalization of the underlying data model. Fine-tuning, which does not belong to the general data model layer is defined in projection views. For example, UI annotations, value helps, calculations or defaulting.

CDS projection views are defined in data definition development objects. The wizard for data definitions provides a template for projection views. For a detailed description on how to create projection views, see Creating Projection Views [page 983].

For the CDS view projection, a subset of the CDS elements is projected in the projection view. These elements can be aliased, whereas the mapping is automatically done. That means, the elements can be renamed to match the business service context of the respective projection. It is not possible to add new persistent data elements in the projection views. Only the elements, that are defined in the underlying data model can be
reused in the projection. However, it is possible to add virtual elements to projection views. These elements must be calculated by ABAP logic.

You can add new read-only associations in the projection view. This can be relevant to display additional information on the UI, like charts etc. It is not possible, however, to denormalize fields from new associated entity in the projection view. New associated entities cannot be accessed transactionally. Associations, including compositions, that are defined in the projected CDS view can be used in the projection CDS view. However, associations or compositions might change their target, if the target CDS view is also projected. This is especially relevant for compositions as the complete BO is projected and therefore the composition target changes. In case of a changed target, the association or composition must be redirected to the new target. The projection view comes with a new syntax element to express the target change.

For more details about the projection view syntax, see Define View as Projection.

**Note**
In transactional operations, including the transactional READ, the where clause in projection views is not respected. Applications must ensure that the instances that are created, updated, or read via the projection conform to the where clause.

### Annotation Propagation to Projection Views

Annotations that are defined in the projected entity on element level are completely propagated to the projection view. That means, annotation values remain the same in the projection view. Once the same annotation is used on the same elements in the projection view, the values are overwritten and only the new values are valid for the respective element.

If you use an annotation with an element reference in the projected entity and the reference element is aliased in the projection entity, the reference is not drawn to the element in the projection view, due to the name change. In such a case, you have to redefine the annotation in the projection view and use the alias name of the element in the annotation value.

**Example**

The amount and currency elements are annotated in the underlying CDS view with @Semantics annotations to support the semantic relationship of the elements.

```abap
define root view /DMO/I_Travel
...
{ key travel_id,
  ... @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
  total_price,
  @Semantics.currencyCode: true
  currency_code,
  ...}
```

Both @Semantics annotations are propagated to the projection view. However, the element currency_code is aliased in the projection view and therefore the reference to the correct element is not established. Hence, the relationship is broken and the metadata of a possible OData service will not resemble this semantic relationship.
To avoid this, you have to reannotate the amount element with the reference to the aliased element.

```plaintext
define root view entity /DMO/C_Travel as projection on /DMO/I_Travel

    ... 
    key travel_id,
    ... 
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    total_price as TotalPrice,
    currency_code as CurrencyCode,
    ...
```

### Defining UI Specifics in the Projection Views

From a design time point of view, the projection layer is the first service-specific layer. If the resulting OData service is a UI service, all UI specifications or other service-specific annotations must be defined in the CDS projection views via CDS annotations [page 1023]. The following UI specifics are relevant on the projection BO layer:

- UI annotations defining position, labels, and facets of UI elements
- Search Enablement
- Text elements (language dependent and independent)
- Value Helps

**Restriction**

In the current version of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model, CDS projection views can only be used to project CDS view entities. Other entities, such as custom entities are not supported.

### Related Information

- Creating Projection Views [page 983]
- Providing a Data Model for Projections [page 325]

### 4.2.1.2 Projection Behavior Definition

A projection behavior definition provides means to define service-specific behavior for a BO projection.

The behavior definition with type `projection` is created equally to other types of behavior definitions. When creating a behavior definition based on a CDS projection view, the syntax template directly uses the projection type. For more information, see Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966].

In a behavior definition, only behavior characteristics and operations that are defined in the underlying behavior definition can be defined for the BO projection. The syntax for this is `use <Element>`.
Syntax: Behavior Definition for Projection

The syntax in a projection behavior definition is the following:

```plaintext
projection;
    define behavior for ProjectionView alias ProjectionViewAlias
    /* use the same eTag defined in underlying behavior definitition */
    use etag
    {
        /* define static field control */
        field (readonly ) ProjViewElem1;
        /* expose standard operations defined in underlying behavior definition */
        use create;
        use update;
        use delete;
        /* expose actions or functions defined in underlying behavior definition */
        use action|function ActionName [result entity ProjResultEntity][as ProjAction]
            [external ExtProjname];
    /* expose create_by_association for child entities defined in underlying behavior definition */
    use association _Assoc { create; }
    }

Explanation

The keyword `use` exposes the following characteristics or operations for the service-specific projection. In the projection, only elements can be used that were defined in the underlying behavior definition. These elements can be

- ETag
- standard operations
- actions
- functions
- `create_by_association`

Every operation that you want to expose to your service must be listed in the projection behavior definition. New aliases can be assigned for actions and functions. Projection behavior definitions do not have a behavior implementation. The complete behavior is realized by mapping it to the underlying behavior.

The definitions that already restrict the character of the underlying BO are automatically applied in the BO projection and cannot be overwritten. This is the case for:

- locking
- authorization
- feature Control

If no static field control is defined in the underlying behavior definition, you can add this definition in the projection behavior definition. If it is already defined in the underlying behavior definition, you cannot define the opposite in the projection layer. If you do, you will get an error during runtime. New dynamic field control cannot be defined in the projection behavior definition, as there is no option to implement the feature.

Related Information

Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966]
Providing Behavior for Projections [page 343]
4.2.2 Service Definition

Definition

A business service definition (short form: service definition) describes which CDS entities of a data model are to be exposed so that a specific business service, for example, Sales Order handling, can be enabled. It is an ABAP Repository object that describes the consumer-specific but protocol-agnostic perspective on a data model. It can directly access the standard ABAP Workbench functionality, such as transports, syntax checks, element information, and activation. Its transport type is SRVD.

Use

A service definition represents the service model that is generically derived from the underlying CDS-based data model.

You use a service definition to define which data is to be exposed as a business service using one or more business service bindings (short form: service bindings). A service definition itself is independent from the version or type of the protocol that is used for the business service.

→ Remember

When going to expose a data model as a service, you can make use of a service definition only in connection with at least one service binding.

i Note

You cannot expose an OData service that includes abstract entities. Whereas abstract entities are allowed to be used in a service definition, the publishing of a service via a service binding causes a dump error.

Syntax: DEFINE SERVICE

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'text'
@<Annotation_1>
...
@<Annotation_n>
DEFINE SERVICE service_definition_name
{
  EXPOSE cds_entity_1 [AS alias_1];
  EXPOSE cds_entity_2 [AS alias_2];
  EXPOSE ...;
  EXPOSE cds_entity_m [AS alias_m];
}
```
**Explanation**

The source code of the actual service definition is preceded by the optional CDS annotation `@EndUserText.label` that is available for all objects which can contain CDS annotations. The annotation value is a character string with a maximum of 60 characters. The specified text value should consist of a meaningful short text that describes the service in the original language of the source code. The size of the set of service-relevant CDS entities depends on the kind of functionality the service should provide to the application scenario. However, the respective dependencies must be considered:

Depending on the needs of your scenario, further optional annotations `@<Annotation_1>` ... `@<Annotation_n>` can be specified.

The service definition is initiated with the `DEFINE SERVICE` keyword followed by the name for the service definition.

**i Note**

This name for the service definition follows the naming rules that are common to ABAP Repository objects:

- Names are not case-sensitive.
- A name can have a maximum of 30 characters.
- A name can consist of letters, numbers, underscores (_), and slashes (/).
- A name must start with a letter or a slash character (in the case of namespaces).
- The CDS keywords, as well as the CDS entity names cannot be used as names.
- Corresponding with naming conventions, there is no need for a prefix or suffix in the service definition name. **See also:** Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990]

The source code of a service definition is created within a single bracket { ... } that is used to group all the related CDS entities (including their associations with the relevant entities) which are to be exposed as part of an individual service.

The name of each individual CDS entity to be exposed follows the `EXPOSE` keyword. This is followed by an optional alias name, which is initiated by the `AS` keyword. An alias defines an alternative name for a CDS entity to be exposed. As a result, when accessing the service, the alias names are used instead of the current entity names. Thus, you have the option of assigning syntactically uniform identifiers in the service definition and thus decoupling the service semantics from the concrete technical names resulting from the data definition.

Similar to the CDS syntax rules, each statement is completed by a semicolon.

**i Restriction**

For Web APIs and UI services you cannot use CDS abstract CDS entities [page 1022] in service definitions that are used by service bindings. Only use CDS view entities or CDS custom entities.

However, abstract entities can be used in a service definition, but only if they are created using OData client proxy tools (service consumption use case).

**Example**

`/DMO/Travel` defines associations to the entities `/DMO/Customer` and `/DMO/Agency`. In addition, associations to the entities `I_Currency` and `I_Country` must be included.
The following example shows the corresponding source code for the service definition `/DMO/TRAVEL`. The travel management service to be defined in this way includes all dependencies that come from the root entity `/DMO/I_TRAVEL`.

```
@EndUserText.label: 'Service for managing travels'
define service /DMO/TRAVEL
{
    expose /DMO/I_TRAVEL as Travel;
    expose /DMO/I_AGENCY as TravelAgency;
    expose /DMO/I_CUSTOMER as Passenger;
    expose I_Currency as Currency;
    expose I_Country as Country;
}
```

**Note**

In this example, the service definition is based on CDS entities that originate from different namespaces.

**Related Information**

- Service Binding [page 204]
- Creating Service Definitions [page 974]
4.2.3 Service Binding

Definition

The business service binding (short form: service binding) is an ABAP Repository object used to bind a service definition to a client-server communication protocol such as OData. Like any other repository object, the service binding uses the proven infrastructure of the ABAP Workbench, including the transport functionality.

Use

As shown in the figure below, a service binding relies directly on a service definition that is derived from the underlying CDS-based data model. Based on an individual service definition, a plurality of service bindings can be created. The separation between the service definition and the service binding enables a service to integrate a variety of service protocols without any kind of re-implementation. The services implemented in this way are based on a separation of the service protocol from the actual business logic.

![Relationship Between the Data Model, the Service Definition and the Service Binding](image)

Parameters

The following parameters are used to characterize a service binding:

Service Name

Defines a unique system-wide name for the service and is identical to the name of the service binding.

Tip

We recommend using the prefix `API_` for Web API services and the prefix `UI_` for UI services.

Binding Type

The binding type specifies the service type and the specific protocol which is implemented with the service binding.

The OData models of the current version of ABAP Platform support

- **OData version 2.0** (ODATA V2)
  For more information, see [https://www.odata.org/documentation/odata-version-2-0/](https://www.odata.org/documentation/odata-version-2-0/).
  For more information about Fiori Elements apps based on OData V2 Models, see [OData V2 Model](#).
- **OData version 4.0** or **OData version 4.01** (ODATA V4)
For more information, see https://www.odata.org/documentation/.

OData V4 services have a wider scope than OData V2 services. Use OData V4 wherever possible for transactional services.

**Note**

Full support for Fiori Elements UIs based on OData V4 services is only granted for draft-enabled scenarios.

For more information about Fiori Elements app based on OData V4 Models, [OData V4 Model](https://www.odata.org/documentation/).

**Remember**

The Open Data Protocol (OData) enables the creation of HTTP-based services, which allow resources identified using Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs) and defined in an abstract data model to be published and edited by Web clients using HTTP messages. OData is used to expose and access information from a variety of sources including, but not limited to, relational databases, file systems, content management systems, and traditional Web sites.

This parameter also determines the way a service is offered to a consumer. There are two options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI</strong></td>
<td>A UI service makes it possible to add a SAP Fiori elements UI or other UI clients to the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Web API</strong></td>
<td>A service that is exposed as Web API is used for all other use cases apart from UIs. Web APIs can be consumed by an unknown consumer via OData. Web APIs can be extended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>InA-UI</strong></td>
<td>An analytical service that is exposed for a UI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Service Version**

The versioning of services is made by a version number which is assigned to a service binding.

The next higher version is created by adding another service definition to the existing service binding. By means of this further service definition, functional changes or extensions (compared to the previous version) are exposed. And, vice versa, the version number can be decreased by removing a service definition from the service binding.

**Publishing**

The local service endpoint of an OData service must be published via the Publish button in the service binding editor. This triggers several task lists to enable the service for consumption. By publishing the service binding the service is only enabled for the current system. It is not consumable from other systems.

**Note**

The service binding needs to be active to be published. To activate the service binding use the activation button in the tool bar.
Service URL

The derived URL (as a part of the service URL) is used to access the OData service starting from the current ABAP system. It specifies the virtual directory of the service by following the syntax: /sap/opu/odata/<service_binding_name>

For more information about the service binding, see Using Service Binding Editor for OData V2 Service [page 978].

Preview

You can start a Fiori Elements Preview directly from the service binding. With this, you can test UI-related features directly from your ABAP system.

Related Information

Service Definition [page 201]
Creating Service Binding [page 975]

4.3 Service Consumption

An OData service [page 1032] can be exposed as a UI service, that can be consumed by an SAP Fiori UI, or as a Web API that can be consumed by any OData client.
UI service

An OData service that is exposed as a UI service is consumable by an SAP Fiori Elements app. Every front-end configuration, which is manifested in the back-end development object (for example, UI annotations), is exposed within the metadata of the service. That means, a Fiori UI reads the information in the metadata and creates the matching UI for the service. These UI settings can be enhanced and overwritten in the SAP Web IDE.

A UI service can be previewed with the Fiori Elements preview in the service binding [page 1021] tool. The preview mocks a real UI app and has the same look and feel as a Fiori Elements app. It is therefore a powerful tool to test the UI of your OData service already in the backend. However, it does not substitute the development in the SAP Web IDE.

For further information about the Fiori Elements preview in the service binding, see Previewing the Resulting UI Service [page 32].

For more information about SAPUI5 to get more information about creating a deployable SAP Fiori app, see Developing Apps with SAP Fiori Elements.

Web API

An OData service that is exposed as a Web API comes without any UI specific information in the metadata. It is the public interface for any OData client to access the OData service. For example, you can consume a Web API from another OData service.

Web APIs require a life cycle management. It must be possible to define the release, the version, and the possible deprecation of the Web API. This functionality is enabled in the service binding [page 1021] tool.

For more information about Web APIs, see Developing a Web API [page 534].

4.4 Runtime Frameworks

The runtime frameworks SAP Gateway and the Orchestration Framework are the frameworks that manage the generic runtime for OData services built with the ABAP RESTful Programming Model. As a developer you do not have to know the concrete inner functioning of these frameworks, as many development tasks are automatically given. However, the following sections provide a high-level overview.
SAP Gateway

SAP Gateway provides an open, REST-based interface that offers simple access to SAP systems via the Open Data Protocol (OData).

As the name suggests, the gateway layer is the main entry point to the ABAP world. All services that are created with the ABAP RESTful Programming Model provide an OData interface to access the service. However, the underlying data models and frameworks are based on ABAP code. SAP Gateway converts these OData requests into ABAP objects to be consumed by the ABAP runtime.

Orchestration Framework

The orchestration framework dispatches the requests for the business object (BO) or the query. It receives the ABAP consumable OData requests from the Gateway layer, forwards it to the relevant part of the business logic and interprets the matching ABAP calls for it. For transactional requests, the orchestration framework delegates the requests to the BO and calls the respective method of the BO implementation. For query requests, the framework executes the query. Depending on the implementation type, the BO or the query runtime is implemented by a framework or by the application developer.

If locks are implemented, the orchestration framework executes first instance-independent checks and sets locks. For the eTag handling, the framework calls the necessary methods before the actual request is executed.

- Note

The orchestration framework is also known under the name SADL (Service Adaptation Description Language). Apart from the runtime orchestration, the SADL framework is also responsible for essential parts in the query and BO runtime.

Examples

The OData client sends a DELETE request, which is converted to an object that is understandable for ABAP. The orchestration framework analyzes this ABAP object and triggers the MODIFY method for DELETE of the business object to execute the DELETE operation on the database table. Depending on the implementation type (managed or unmanaged), the code for the MODIFY method is generically available or must be implemented by the application developer.

Likewise, if an OData request contains a query option, such as $orderby, the Gateway layer converts it to the query capability SORT. Then, the orchestration framework takes over and delegates the query capability to the query. Depending on the runtime type (managed or unmanaged), the query is executed by the generic framework in case of managed type or by the self-implemented runtime in case of unmanaged type. For a managed query, the generic framework converts the requests to ABAP SQL statements to access the database.
4.5 Entity Manipulation Language (EML)

Entity Manipulation Language (in short: EML) is a part of the ABAP language that is used to control the business object’s behavior in the context of ABAP RESTful programming model. It provides a type-save read and modifying access to data in transactional development scenarios.

Consumption of Business Objects Using EML

Business objects that are implemented with the ABAP RESTful architecture based on the behavior definition and implementation of the interaction phase and save sequence in behavior pools can be consumed not only by means of OData protocol (Fiori UIs, or Web APIs) but also directly in ABAP by using the EML syntax.

There are two flavors of EML available:

- A **standard API**, which uses the signature of the business object related entities
- A **generic API** for dynamic/generic consumption of business objects.

The latter is typically used for generic integration of business objects into other frameworks, such as the Cloud Data Migration Cockpit or the Process Test Framework.

The standard API is used whenever the “target” business object is statically specified. It provides code completion and static code checks. This typed API provides statements for read-only access to data (**READ ENTITIES**), as well as for modifying data access (**MODIFY ENTITIES**) and for triggering the save sequence (**COMMIT ENTITIES**).

→ **Remember**

One of the uses cases of EML is the writing of test modules as ABAP Unit tests. As an ABAP application developer, it gives you the ability to test transactional behavior of business objects for each relevant operation that is defined in the behavior definition.

EML Syntax

The EML syntax consists of three major statements:

**MODIFY ENTITIES**

This statement includes all operations that change data of entities. This is handled by the statement **MODIFY ENTITIES**, which provides the following operations:

- create
- create by association
- update
- delete
- actions, that is, any modify operation that cannot be covered with create, update, or delete, for example, if parameters are required.
Syntax (short form)

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITY EntityName
  CREATE [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM] it_instance_c
  CREATE BY \association_name [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM]
  it_instance_cba
  UPDATE [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM] it_instance_u
  DELETE FROM it_instance_d
  EXECUTE action_name FROM it_instance_a
  [RESULT et_result_a]
  [FAILED ct_failed]
  [MAPPED ct_mapped]
  [REPORTED ct_reported].
```

You can use the short form of the MODIFY statement in special cases when calling modify operations for one entity only - without any relation to a business object. In this case, however, it is required that you specify the full name of the CDS entity instead of the alias name. The keywords for modify operations are: CREATE, UPDATE, DELETE, and EXECUTE for actions. Each operation has a table of instances as input parameters. For actions, you can also add a RESULT parameter et_result_a in case the action is defined to provide a result.

→ Remember

Note that at least one of the operations must specify a valid EML statement. The sequence of the operations is irrelevant.

The MODIFY statement provides a FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH option with a field list for direct creating, creating by association and updating entity’s instance data. That means all fields that are to be updated for an instance or are required for creating an entity’s instance are specified in the field list.

The different operations can be mixed within one EML statement. It is possible, for example, to combine a create, update and action operation of an entity (even related to the same instance(s)) in one statement.

You can complete the MODIFY statement with the response parameters FAILED [page 945], MAPPED [page 946], and REPORTED [page 946]. As is common in ABAP, you can use either existing variables (ct_failed) with matching data types or add an inline declaration (DATA(ct_failed)).

Syntax (long form)

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITIES OF RootEntityName
  ENTITY entity_1_name
    CREATE [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM] it_instance1_c
    CREATE BY \association1_name [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM]
    it_instance1_cba
    UPDATE [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM] it_instance1_u
    DELETE FROM it_instance1_d
    EXECUTE action1_name FROM it_instance1_a
    [RESULT et_result1_a]
  [FAILED ct_failed]
  [MAPPED ct_mapped]
  [REPORTED ct_reported].

  ENTITY entity_2_name
    CREATE FROM it_instance2_c
  ...

  ENTITY entity_3_name
  ...
  [FAILED ct_failed]
  [MAPPED ct_mapped]
  [REPORTED ct_reported].
```

You can use the short form of the MODIFY statement in special cases when calling modify operations for one entity only - without any relation to a business object. In this case, however, it is required that you specify the full name of the CDS entity instead of the alias name. The keywords for modify operations are: CREATE, UPDATE, DELETE, and EXECUTE for actions. Each operation has a table of instances as input parameters. For actions, you can also add a RESULT parameter et_result_a in case the action is defined to provide a result.

→ Remember

Note that at least one of the operations must specify a valid EML statement. The sequence of the operations is irrelevant.

The MODIFY statement provides a FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH option with a field list for direct creating, creating by association and updating entity’s instance data. That means all fields that are to be updated for an instance or are required for creating an entity’s instance are specified in the field list.

The different operations can be mixed within one EML statement. It is possible, for example, to combine a create, update and action operation of an entity (even related to the same instance(s)) in one statement.

You can complete the MODIFY statement with the response parameters FAILED [page 945], MAPPED [page 946], and REPORTED [page 946]. As is common in ABAP, you can use either existing variables (ct_failed) with matching data types or add an inline declaration (DATA(ct_failed)).
The long form of the MODIFY statement allows you (like a complex OData request) to collect multiple modify operations on multiple entities of one business object that is identified by RootEntityName. Grouped by entities, the relevant operations are listed according to the previous short form syntax. If aliases for the entities are defined in the behavior definition, they should be referred in the long form syntax.

Examples:
- Action implementation: copy_travel [page 276]
- Action implementation: set_status [page 278]

READ ENTITIES (Transactional READ)

This statement includes all operations that do not change data of entities (read-only access).

The current version of the ABAP RESTful programming model provides the following read operations:
- read: for read access to entities by using a key
- read by association: for read access to child entities by using parent key(s).

Syntax (short form)

```
READ ENTITY EntityName
  [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM] it_instance
  RESULT et_result
  BY 'association_name'
  [FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH] | [FROM] it_instance_rba
  RESULT et_result_rba
  LINK et_link_rba
  [FAILED ct_failed].
```

The short syntax directly specifies the EntityName (CDS view name). The consumer using EML has therefore read access to data for this entity only. In this case, an alias of the entity cannot be used since no context of a business object is known.

The READ statement provides a FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH option with a field list for direct reading, reading by association of entity’s instance data. The fields of an instance to be read are specified in the field list.

The READ statement always has the addition RESULT, since this specifies the variable that receives the READ operation’s results. This variable contains the target instance(s) with all fields of the entity.

The read-by-association operation provides an additional target variable that follows after the LINK keyword addition. The et_link_rba variable contains only a list of key pairs: key of the source entity and the key of the target entity. Target variables must have either a matching type or are declared inline, for example, DATA (et_link_rba).

You can complete the READ statement with the response parameter FAILED (table containing error keys).

Examples:
- Action implementation: copy_travel [page 276]
- Action implementation: set_status [page 278]
- Implementing Validations [page 289]
- Implementing Dynamic Feature Control [page 282]

Syntax (long form)

```
READ ENTITIES OF RootEntityName
```

The long form of the MODIFY statement allows you (like a complex OData request) to collect multiple modify operations on multiple entities of one business object that is identified by RootEntityName. Grouped by entities, the relevant operations are listed according to the previous short form syntax. If aliases for the entities are defined in the behavior definition, they should be referred in the long form syntax.
The long form `READ ENTITIES` allows you to group read operations for multiple entities of a business object that is specified by `RootEntityName`. The long form allows using aliases defined in the behavior definition for specifying the entities.

**COMMIT ENTITIES**

Modify operations [page 1031] that are executed within a behavior pool or by an ABAP program, do not cause any data changes at the database level. This is because they are applied only to the transactional buffer and the buffer content disappears at the end of the ABAP session. This means the save sequence must be triggered in this case.

The save sequence is triggered by the `COMMIT ENTITIES` statement. The runtime infrastructure translates this statement into the save chain starting with `finalize( )` performing the final calculations before data can be persisted. If the subsequent `check_before_save( )` call is positive for all transactional changes, the point-of-no-return is reached. From now on, a successful `save( )` is guaranteed by all involved BOs. After the point-of-no-return, the `adjust_numbers( )` call can occur to take care of late numbering. The `save( )` call persists all BO instance data from the transactional buffer in the database.

In its simplest form, the statement `COMMIT ENTITIES` does not have any parameters:

**Syntax (simplest form)**

```plaintext
COMMIT ENTITIES.
```

**Syntax (long form)**

```plaintext
COMMIT ENTITIES
    [RESPONSE OF root_entity_name_1
        [FAILED ct_failed]
        [REPORTED ct_reported]]
    [RESPONSE OF root_entity_name_2
        [FAILED ct_failed]
        [REPORTED ct_reported]].
```

The syntax of the `COMMIT ENTITIES` statement also provides the `RESPONSE` clause that allows to retrieve the response information of one or more business objects involved that are grouped by their root entity. For each `root entity (root_entity_name_1, root_entity:name_2)`, a `RESPONSE` clause can contain parameters `FAILED` and `REPORTED`.

`COMMIT ENTITIES` saves all BOs that were changed within the `LUW [page 1030]`.
→ Remember

The crucial criteria of success for the COMMIT ENTITIES EML statement is not FAILED response is empty, but SY-SUBRC = 0. Background: Indirect failures (in remote business objects) cannot be foreseen by using the response parameter.

Related Information

Consuming Business Objects with EML [page 640]
The development guides in this section provide a detailed step-by-step description on how to use and exploit the ABAP RESTful Programming Model in end-to-end scenarios.

The guides in this section focus on specific development tasks. It depends on your initial situation and on the aimed outcome of your development, which guide meets your requirements best.

Follow the path in the diagram and ask yourself the questions to find out which development guide helps you with your development task. You get further information about the steps and the development guides by hovering over the image.
Developing an OData Service for Simple List Reporting

- Develop [page 214]
- Develop [page 214]
- Develop [page 214]
- Develop [page 214]
- Developing Transactional Apps With Draft Capabilities [page 215]
- Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348]
- Developing a UI Service with Access to a Remote Service [page 539]
5.1 Developing Read-Only List Reporting Apps

Based on existing persistent data sources, you create and implement a query for an OData service to get a running app with useful read-only features.

Introduction

In this chapter you learn how to develop an OData service including multiple read-only features. This OData service can be consumed by a Fiori Elements application or by any other OData client.

Starting from the elementary list reporting scenario that was introduced in the Getting Started [page 12] section, you may want to add some further features to the existing elementary OData service. First of all, the end user wants to be able to navigate to a second information layer for a flight connection to retrieve more detailed information about the flight, such as flight dates or plane types. Secondly, if the list report contains a large number of rows, it becomes difficult for end users to find the information they need. To make it easier to find this information, you can implement search capabilities or label the app elements differently than their presets in the data model layer in the back end. You might also want to enable value helps for selection field dialogs. All these features are implemented using specific CDS annotations, which you, as the developer, add to the source code of the respective CDS view.

We assume that you know the development steps to create an OData service, as described in the Getting Started [page 12] section. The following guide uses the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R and the OData service /DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2 as the basis for a more elaborate OData service with further read-only features. You learn how to expand the data model with associated CDS views and how to include useful read-only functions in the OData service.

You are guided step-by-step through the application model and expand the OData service that you created in the Getting Started section with the following features and query capabilities.
This scenario implements the query case. We firstly define a CDS data model for which we define modeled query capabilities. The service that was created in the Getting Started scenario is reused and the new CDS entities including their query capabilities are exposed for this service.

**Prerequisites**

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.
- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT).
  SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/.
- To recreate the demo scenario, the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario must be available in your ABAP system. You can download the complete reference scenario from GitHub: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].
- You have understood the development steps to create an OData service as described in Developing an OData Service for Simple List Reporting [page 13].
  In particular, you are able to use the existing OData service /DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2 to check and try out the new implementation with the preview tool.

---

**Note**

Via ABAPGit you can import the service including the related development objects into your development environment for comparison and reuse. You find the service in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_READONLY. The suffix for development objects in this development guide is _R.

For information about downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, see Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].
Objectives

By the end of this development guide you are able to:

- Apply and enhance your knowledge about how to create and expand an OData service
- Implement associations between CDS views
- Expose new CDS views for an existing OData service
- Use @EndUser.Text annotations
- Implement text associations
- Develop value helps for input fields
- Implement search capabilities

5.1.1 Determining the Data Model for the Read-Only Scenario

Starting Point

We build the list reporting scenario based on the service that was created in the Getting Started [page 12] scenario. The CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R is reused in the following scenario and included in a broader data model.

In the first step of this development guide, you expand the data model with additional CDS views to create a full blown reference app for flights. The resulting running app is able to find flights based on connections and the airports involved. From a technical point of view, this means that the CDS data model is expanded with three other CDS views, one of which is connected using associations to enable navigation from one CDS view to
another. The data model and the relationship between the CDS views that you work on to implement read-only features is illustrated in the following figure. All items represent a self-contained data model of a CDS view that retrieves data from a database table included in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 984].

As you can see in the figure above, the entry point of the flight scenario is the well-known CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R. It manages data for flight connections. From here, you can navigate to more detailed flight information with flight dates and plane information. The detailed information in the carrier CDS view is used to display the full name of the airline, whereas the CDS view /DMO/I_Airport_R is used as a value help provider view for the airport elements in the connection CDS view.

These items only represent a part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario. The other items in the reference data model are applied in other development scenarios.

5.1.1.1 Defining CDS Views

To provide a complete data model for a read-only OData service, CDS views have to be defined first.

Context

In the introductory guide, you learned how to define CDS views based on an existing persistent data source. Repeat the process for further CDS views to expand the data model for the flight scenario. We assume that the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R already exists. This view defines the starting point of the app.

For a detailed description of the following steps, look at Defining the Data Model with CDS [page 15].

Procedure

1. For each new CDS view, do the following:
   a. Create a data definition using the creation wizard in your development package.
   b. Implement the CDS view as a data model and define the name of the CDS view as given in the table below.
**i Note**

**Naming CDS views:** Since CDS views are (public) interface views, they are prefixed with `I_` in accordance with the VDM (virtual data model) naming convention. In addition, we add the suffix `_R` for the read-only implementation type to the view name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Definition</th>
<th>CDS View Name</th>
<th>Data Source</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/DMO/I_FLIGHT_R</td>
<td>/dmo/flight (DB table)</td>
<td>Provides information about the available flights including flight dates and plane information. You can navigate to this view once you have chosen a flight connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/DMO/I_Flight_R</td>
<td>/dmo/flight (DB table)</td>
<td>Provides information about the airlines that operate the flights. This view is later used as a value help provider view for the view /DMO/I_CONNECTION_R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/DMO/I_AIRPORT</td>
<td>/dmo/airport (DB table)</td>
<td>Provides information about the involved airports.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. For each new CDS view, do the following:
   a. Insert all elements provided from the data source.
   b. Add a meaningful alias to each CDS element.

3. Add the relevant `@Semantics` annotation where necessary.

   The price element in the CDS view /DMO/I_FLIGHT_R must be annotated with 
   `@Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'`. This annotation establishes the link between the amount and the currency element.

   More information: Relating Semantically Dependent Elements [page 20].

4. Insert the relevant UI annotations to ensure that the user interface is rendered properly where necessary.

   Whereas the existing CDS view of the introductory guide in the getting started section requires many UI annotations, since it represents the landing list report page, the new CDS views only require a limited number of UI annotation. In fact, only the CDS view /DMO/I_Flight_R requires the `@UI.lineItem: [[]]` annotation to be applied to the relevant elements. Since the remaining views only function as text provider or value help provider views, they do not need any UI annotations at all.
A detailed description of this procedure is described in Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34].

5. Activate the CDS view.

The resulting source code for each data definition is displayed at the end of this topic: Data Model for Flight App [page 221].

6. Include the new CDS entities in the existing service /DMO/UI_FLIGHT_R_V2, which you created in the introductory guide in the getting started section: Developing an OData Service for Simple List Reporting [page 13]. To do this, expose the CDS entities in the service definition /DMO/FLIGHT_R.

The following codeblock displays the source code of the updated service definition /DMO/FLIGHT_R:

```abap
#define service /DMO/FLIGHT_R {
    expose /DMO/I_Connection_R as Connection;
    expose /DMO/I_Flight_R as Flight;
    expose /DMO/I_Carrier as Airline;
    expose /DMO/I_Airport as Airport;
}
```

5.1.1.2 Data Model for Flight App

The following listings display the source code of the CDS views that are involved in our read-only scenario.

**Note**

You can use metadata extensions to separate the metadata specified by @UI or other UI related annotations from the actual data definition in the CDS view. See

Expand the following listing to view the source code of the Connection CDS view.

**Connection CDS view** /DMO/I_Connection_R

This CDS view is the entry point of the flight reference app. It provides the elements for the connection search that the end user can use to find suitable flights for a journey.

This CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R was already modeled in the introductory guide in the getting started section.

```abap
#define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
{    
    @UI.facet: [    
        { id: 'Connection',
          purpose: #STANDARD,
          type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
          label: 'Connection',
          position: 10 }]
    @UI: {    
        lineItem: [ { position: 10, label: 'Airline' } ],
        identification:[ { position: 10, label: 'Airline' } ] }    
    key Connection.carrier_id as AirlineID,
```
Expand the following listing to view the source code of the Flight CDS view.

**Flight CDS view /DMO/I_Flight_R**

This CDS view provides detailed information about the flights. It is displayed as a second facet in the UI, which means we only need a limited number of UI annotations.

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E": Data Model Flight'
define view entity /DMO/I_Flight_R
   as select from /dmo/flight as Flight
   {
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 10, label: 'Airline'} ]
      key Flight.carrier_id     as AirlineID,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 20, label: 'Connection Number' } ]
      key Flight.connection_id  as ConnectionID,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 30, label: 'Flight Date' } ]
      key Flight.flight_date    as FlightDate,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 40, label: 'Price' } ]
      @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode' ** establishes the link between amount and currency code
      Flight.price          as Price,
      Flight.currency_code  as CurrencyCode,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 50, label: 'Plane Type' } ]
      Flight.plane_type_id  as PlaneType,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 60, label: 'Maximum Seats' } ]
      Flight.seats_max      as MaximumSeats,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 70, label: 'Occupied Seats' } ]
      Flight.seats_occupied as OccupiedSeats
   }
```

Expand the following listing to view the source code of the Carrier CDS view.

**Carrier CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier_R**

This CDS view provides detailed information about the airlines. It is displayed as a second facet in the UI, which means we only need a limited number of UI annotations.

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E": Data Model Carrier'
define view entity /DMO/I_Carrier_R
   as select from /dmo/carrier as Carrier
   {
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 10, label: 'Airline'} ]
      key Carrier.name     as CarrierName,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 20, label: 'Connection Number' } ]
      key Carrier.connection_id  as ConnectionID,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 30, label: 'Flight Date' } ]
      key Carrier.flight_date    as FlightDate,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 40, label: 'Price' } ]
      @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode' ** establishes the link between amount and currency code
      Carrier.price          as Price,
      Carrier.currency_code  as CurrencyCode,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 50, label: 'Plane Type' } ]
      Carrier.plane_type_id  as PlaneType,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 60, label: 'Maximum Seats' } ]
      Carrier.seats_max      as MaximumSeats,
      @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 70, label: 'Occupied Seats' } ]
      Carrier.seats_occupied as OccupiedSeats
   }
```
**Carrier CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier**

This CDS view is used as a text provider view for the main views of the app. It contains the text for the element AirlineID.

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Carrier'
define view entity /DMO/I_Carrier
  as select from /dmo/carrier as Airline
  
  {key Airline.carrier_id as AirlineID,
   Airline.name as Name,
   Airline.currency_code as CurrencyCode}
```

Expand the following listing to view the source code of the Airport CDS view.

**Airport CDS view /DMO/I_Airport**

This CDS view is used as a value help provider view for the connection view. It contains detailed information about the available airports that can be used for the value help.

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Airport'
define view entity /DMO/I_Airport
  as select from /dmo/airport as Airport
  
  {key Airport.airport_id as AirportID,
   Airport.name as Name,
   Airport.city as City,
   Airport.country as CountryCode}
```

**Note**

To obtain the full scope of a data model and to enable flexible service consumption, you can project the data model before creating a business service with CDS projection views. With a projection layer, you can extend the basic data model without affecting the already existing business service.

For more information, see [CDS Projection View](#).

### 5.1.2 Implementing Associations for Existing CDS Views

Associations structure the relationships between CDS views. To enable navigation in the UI, associations must be implemented in CDS.

**Context**

You created the flight CDS view that provides detailed information about the available flights for the connection. To be able to navigate to this view in the UI, you have to implement an association from /DMO/I_Connection_R to /DMO/I_Flight_R.
An association defines a structural and unidirectional relationship between two CDS views. Associations are used to navigate from a source CDS view to a related target CDS view.

Associations are defined in the source CDS view. The connections between the two CDS views are established by a join condition applied to the respective elements of the source and target view. You need to define a cardinality for the target CDS view to define how many records of the target CDS view are associated with one record of the source.

**Procedure**

1. Open the source CDS view `/DMO/I_Connection_R`.
2. Define the association after the select statement.
   a. Introduce the association with the keyword `association`.
   b. Define `[min .. max]` for the cardinality of the target view.

   ```
   i Note
   The cardinality defines the minimum and maximum number of associated entries of the target view.
   ```

   In our example, the cardinality is one-to-many, since one entry in `/DMO/I_Connection_R` is associated to many entries of `/DMO/I_Flight_R`. This complies with business logic since one connection can be operated by flights on different dates.

   ```
   define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
   association [1..*]
   ```

c. Specify the target CDS view and define an alias. An alias makes it easy to reference the association.

   ```
   define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
   association [1..*] to /DMO/I_Flight_R as _Flight
   ```

d. Specify the mapping condition for the CDS views.

   In our example, the associated CDS views are mapped to two elements. Therefore both of them must be stated in the condition expression.

   ```
   define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R as select from /dmo/connection
   association [1..*] to /DMO/I_Flight_R as _Flight on
   $projection.AirlineID = _Flight.AirlineID
   and
   $projection.ConnectionID = _Flight.ConnectionID
   ```

3. Add the association to the element list in the CDS view.

   ```
   { key Connection.carrier_id as AirlineID,
   /*Associations*/
   _Flight ** use the alias to refer to the association
   }
4. For the UI: Provide a second facet to make it possible to navigate from the list report page to the detailed object page of the connection with corresponding flights as line items.

A detailed description of UI annotations can be found in Defining UI Annotations [page 35].

```json
@UI.facet: [ 
  { id:     'Connection',
    purpose:  #STANDARD,
    type:     #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
    label:    'Connection',
    position: 10 },
  { id:     'Flight',
    purpose:  #STANDARD,
    type:     #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
    label:    'Flight',
    position: 20,
    targetElement: '_Flight' }
]
```

5. Activate the CDS view.

## Results

You have established a connection between the connection CDS view and the flight CDS view. With the right configuration of UI annotations, the end user can now navigate to the flight information by selecting one connection in the list report app. The flight information is displayed as line items in the object page as can be seen in the following figures.

Click on one connection entry to navigate to the information for flights.

The object page then displays the information about the selected connection and the related flights for this connection in the second facet.
5.1.3 Changing UI Field Labels and Descriptions

Field labels and description help to customize the UI of the app.

Meaningful descriptions of elements that appear on the user interface are a key concept for working with an app and improving the user experience. It is essential that all items on the UI are readable and understandable for the end user. Although every data element in ABAP Dictionary is labeled with descriptions for presentation on the UI, sometimes you want to modify the description for a specific use case and give it a name other than the name predefined on the persistent database layer. In the CDS layer, database description labels can be redefined and given more information by using the annotations @EndUserText.label: '<text>' and @EndUserText.quickInfo: '<text>'.

The labels that are assigned in the CDS layer overwrite the database field descriptions and are exposed to the OData service. These labels are also propagated to the UI and displayed on the user interface if no UI labeling annotations exist that overwrite the CDS EndUserText annotations.

**Note**

UI labeling annotations, such as @UI.lineItem: [ { label: '' } ]. overwrite any @EndUserText labeling annotations on the UI. However, they are not manifested in the OData service metadata.

A tooltip can provide additional or more thorough information for the element. The tooltip is displayed on the UI as mouse over text. If no @EndUserText annotations are used, the text for the mouse over function is retrieved from the long description of the data element stored in ABAP Dictionary.

In general, every text that is used in EndUserText annotations is translated into every relevant language by the SAP translation process, along with the labels that are given to the data elements.

For more information on how to integrate information for the end user in your data model, refer to Adding Field Labels and Descriptions [page 691].

Adding Labels for Elements with Selection Fields

In our flight scenario, we have equipped the CDS elements with UI annotations to display them adequately in the UI, which means that all elements are already represented with a meaningful label.

However, there is one use case where EndUserText labels are necessary to ensure coherence on the UI. Whereas @UI.lineItem and @UI.identification offer the option to directly label list items and object page items with UI annotations, the @UI.selectionField annotation lacks this option. The selection field label is therefore retrieved from the database label and might not match the label we have given to the list item.

Object page displaying all flights of the connection AZ 789 from TYO to FCO
and the identification. In this case, it is useful to apply the \@EndUserText\ annotations to those elements that represent selection fields to provide consistency.

\*\*\* Example \*\*\*

In the CDS view `/DMO/I_Connection_R`, we defined two selection fields that are labeled differently than the corresponding list item. We use the \@EndUserText\ annotation to acquire matching labels.

```json
 {...
  @UI: {
    lineItem: [{ position: 30, label: 'Departure Airport Code' }],
    selectionField: [{ position: 10 }],
    identification: [{ position: 30, label: 'Departure Airport Code' }]
  } @EndUserText.label: 'Departure Airport Code'  //*** Use the same label as in lineItem
  Connection.airport_from_id as DepartureAirport,
  @UI: {
    lineItem: [{ position: 40, label: 'Destination Airport Code' }],
    selectionField: [{ position: 20 }],
    identification: [{ position: 40, label: 'Destination Airport Code' }]
  } @EndUserText.label: 'Destination Airport Code'  //*** Use the same label as in lineItem
  Connection.airport_to_id as DestinationAirport,
  ...
}
```

\*\*\* Integrating the Mouse Over Function \*\*\*

If you want additional and longer information about an element, you can use the annotation \@EndUserText.quickInfo: <text>\ to display a text when hovering over the element.

\*\*\* Note \*\*\*

If you do not define a tooltip in CDS, the mouse over text displays the short description of the data element in ABAP Dictionary.

Mouse over displaying long text of data element

To change the text of the mouse over, use the tooltip.

\*\*\* Example \*\*\*

```json
 @UI: {
  lineItem: [{ position: 10, label: 'Airline' }],
  identification: [{ position: 10, label: 'Airline' }]
  @EndUserText.quickInfo: 'Airline that operates the flight.'
  key Connection.carrier_id as AirlineID,
```
5.1.4 Displaying Text for Unreadable Elements

Use text associations to add readable texts to short forms or identifiers.

Data that is stored in databases is usually kept as short as possible and consequently, many words are shortened or abbreviated with a character code. While this is convenient for storage reasons, it becomes a problem on the UI as the elements might then not be understandable anymore. The following figure displays a UI screen with airline codes that are not commonly known and which makes it difficult (or impossible) to use the app.

In our use case, the airline is abbreviated with the two letter airline code.

The full name of the airline is given in the CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier based on the database /DMO/carrier. Using a text association, you can establish a link from the connection CDS view to the carrier CDS view and adopt the names of the airlines as an addition to the airline codes in the UI. This requires the use of annotations from the domains @semantics and @ObjectModel to mark the names as readable text and to assign the text addition to the airline code elements.

For more detailed information about text elements, refer to Defining Text Elements [page 591].
Getting Airline Names through a Text Association

Prerequisites

A text provider view already exists. In our case, the CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier contains the relevant text element Name.

Context

The readable names of the airlines can be displayed in the UI together with the two letter code. The text is taken from the text provider view /DMO/I_Carrier that contains the airline code as well as the readable name of the airline. We want to display the text for the airlines on the list report page and on the object page. This is why we need to implement the text association for both views, /DMO/I_Connection_R and /DMO/I_Flight_R. Apart from an association with the text provider view, the text element in that view needs to be specified as text with an @Semantics annotation. In addition, the element with the airline code in the source view must be annotated to assign the text from the associated view to the element.

Procedure

1. Open the CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier. Use the annotation @Semantics.text: true on the element Name to identify the annotated element as a text and activate the view.

```abap
... define view entity /DMO/I_Carrier
   as select from /dmo/carrier as Airline
   { key Airline.carrier_id as AirlineID,
     @Semantics.text: true
     Airline.name as Name,
     Airline.currency_code as CurrencyCode
   }
```

i Note

In general, you can annotate more than one field as a text field. However, only the first annotated field is respected in the text consumer view for OData exposure.

2. Open the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R, for which you want to display the text. Implement an association to the CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier with the join condition on AirlineID. This association serves as a text association.

The process how to implement associations is described in Implementing Associations for Existing CDS Views [page 223].
3. Use the annotation @ObjectModel.text.association: '<_AssocToTextProvider>' on the element AirlineID and reference the association _Carrier as a text association. Then activate the CDS view.

```abap
... define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  association [1..*] to /DMO/I_Flight_R as _Flight on
  $projection.AirlineID = _Flight.AirlineID
  and $projection.ConnectionID = _Flight.ConnectionID
  association [1] to /DMO/I_Carrier as _Airline on
  $projection.AirlineID = _Airline.AirlineID
  ... @ObjectModel.text.association: '_Airline'
  key Connection.carrier_id as AirlineID,
  ... /*Association*/
  _Airline }
```

4. Open the CDS view /DMO/I_Flight_R for which you also want to display the text. Use the annotation @ObjectModel.text.association: '<_AssocToTextProvider>' on the element AirlineID and reference the association _Airline as a text association. Then activate the CDS view.

```abap
... define view entity /DMO/I_Flight_R
  as select from /dmo/flight as Flight
  association [1] to /DMO/I_Carrier_R as _Airline on
  $projection.AirlineID = _Airline.AirlineID
  }
  ... @ObjectModel.text.association: '_Airline'
  key Flight.carrier_id as AirlineID,
  ... /*Association*/
  _Airline }
```

5. Activate all changed CDS views.

Results

You have established a text association from the two CDS views that contain the two-letter airline code. The text is taken from the text provider view and is displayed in the UI together with the two-letter code, as can be seen in the following image. Now, the airlines are clearly identifiable by their full names.
You can also establish a text association with the CDS view `/DMO/I_Airport` to provide a full text for the airport elements `Departure Airport Code` and `Destination Airport Code`.

**Related Information**

Defining Text Elements [page 591]

### 5.1.5 Providing Value Help for the Selection Fields

Use value helps to make it easier to find the correct value for selection fields on the UI.

We created some selection fields for the UI to enable the end user to find a suitable flight in the flight app. The difficulty, however, is to know the correct three letter airport code to determine the correct departure or destination airport for a flight. You can enable a value help option to assist the end user in finding correct values. The end user then gets direct access to a value help dialog in which he or she can enter values, such as city names or country codes, to find the suitable airport code. This is shown in the following figure.
Adding Annotations for Value Help

Prerequisites

A value help provider view already exists. In our case, the CDS view /DMO/I_Airport contains the relevant fields Name, City and CountryCode to help find the airport code.

Context

To provide a value help for the selection fields of the elements Departure Airport Code and Destination Airport Code in the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R, use the annotation

@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition:

Procedure

1. Open the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R.
2. Annotate the elements Departure Airport Code and Destination Airport Code. You want to equip these elements with a value help dialog with the annotation

   @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name: '<target_view>', element:
In our case, the target view is /DMO/I_Airport with the target element "AirportID", which works as the binding condition for both elements in the source view.

{...
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{
    entity: {
      name: '/DMO/I_Airport',
      element: 'AirportID'
    }
  }]
  airport_from_id as DepartureAirport,
...
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{
    entity: {
      name: '/DMO/I_Airport',
      element: 'AirportID'
    }
  }]
  airport_to_id as DestinationAirport,
...}

**Note**

For the value help, you do not need to establish an association between the source and the target view. Nevertheless, you need to make sure that the target view is part of the service.

If not already done, add the value help provider view to the service definition.

3. Activate the CDS view.

**Results**

You have implemented a value help for the selection fields that refer to the airport code elements. Clicking opens the value help dialog with the option to use all the elements of the value help provider view /DMO/I_Airport to find the correct three letter airport code (see the image above). Additionally, the selection fields are now equipped with a value completion option. This means that, once you start typing in the selection field, the possible values are displayed. This is shown in the following figure:

![Value completion option](image)

**Related Information**

Consumption Annotations [page 760]
Providing Value Help [page 597]
5.1.6 Adding Search Capabilities

Include a search input field to execute a text and fuzzy search on multiple elements.

Prerequisites

The CDS view must be suitable for text and fuzzy search enabling. For more information, take a look at the corresponding topics in the SAP HANA Search Developer Guide.

Context

In the previous chapter, you implemented a value help for the selection fields, which are based on airport code fields. This means you can easily search for connections from and to certain airports. However, it is not possible to search for connections by specific airlines or flights that are operated on a specific day. Maybe the end user even wants to search for values of different elements, say someone wants to find out which connections are available to or from Frankfurt on, say, February 18, 2019. This is exactly the use case when search capabilities are required.

You use annotations to enable search capabilities for a specific CDS view and also to mark the elements that you want to be included in the search scope. You can also define fuzziness thresholds for the search, so that entries are also found if the values are entered in the search field with incorrect spelling. This makes the search easier and more effective.

The following section explains the process used to implement search capabilities when the end user wants to search for the following:

- Connections operated by one or more certain airlines
- Connections on one or more certain days
- Connections with one or more plane types
- Or a combination of any of these.

Whereas the first two searches operate only on the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R (because the search target elements Airline, Departure Airport Code and Destination Airport Code are part of this view), the searches for days and plane types require the search to be operated on the associated view, since the elements Flight Date and Plane Type are part of /DMO/I_Flight_R. In addition, we also want to be able to search for the full airline name. That is why the text provider view /DMO/I_Carrier must also be search enabled.

Procedure

1. Enable the relevant elements for searches in /DMO/I_Connection_R
   a. Open the CDS view /DMO/I_Connection_R.
   b. Use the annotation @Search.searchable: true on the entity level to enable the CDS view for searches and to expose a standard search field on the UI.
If you use this annotation in a CDS view, you have to assign at least one default search element.

```java
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Connection'
@UI.headerInfo: { typeName: 'Connection',
    typeNamePlural: 'Connections' }
@Search.searchable: true   //*** exposes a standard search field on
the UI
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
    as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
    ...
```

c. Choose the elements that you want to search for and annotate them with
    ```java
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    ```

d. Define a fuzziness threshold for the searchable elements with
    `@Search.fuzzinessThreshold: <fuzziness_value>`.

```java
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Connection'
@UI.headerInfo: { typeName: 'Connection',
    typeNamePlural: 'Connections' }
@Search.searchable: true   //*** exposes a standard search field on
the UI
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection_R
    as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
    ...
```

The search elements in the connection view are **Airline**, **Departure Airport Code**, and **Destination Airport Code**. As the first one only consists of a two letter code, you do not need to define a fuzziness threshold for this element.

```java
{...
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    key Connection.carrier_id       as AirlineID,
    ...
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    Connection.airport_from_id  as DepartureAirport,
    ...
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    Connection.airport_to_id    as DestinationAirport,
    ...
}
```

e. Annotate the association **_Flight** with `@Search.defaultSearchElement: true` to enable the search for elements in the associated view.

```java
{...
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    _Flight,
    ...
}
```

f. Activate the CDS view.

Now the end user can search for connections by specific airlines or to or from a specific airport. The following figure illustrates the connections operated by SQ (Singapore Airlines Limited).
2. For our use case, we not only want to search for elements in the main view of the app, but also for the fields of the associated view. Enable the relevant elements for search in /DMO/I_Flight_R. As previously described, open the CDS view /DMO/I_Flight_R, mark it as search enabled, and then choose the elements to search on with a proper fuzziness threshold.

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Flight'
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/I_Flight_R
  as select from /dmo/flight as Flight
  {...
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    key Flight.flight_date as FlightDate,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    Flight.plane_type_id as PlaneType,
    ...
  }
```

The association is now search enabled. This means it is possible to search for connections with a specific plane type and at a specific airport at the same time, even though the elements are not part of the same view. The following figure displays the search results for the search for the machine with the code A380 and the airport with the code FRA.

3. Enable the relevant elements for searches in /DMO/I_Carrier to be able to search for the full airline names and not only for the two letter code. As previously described, open the CDS view /DMO/I_Carrier, mark it as search enabled, and then choose the elements to search on with a proper fuzziness threshold.

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Read-Only E2E: Data Model Carrier'
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/I_Carrier_R
  as select from /dmo/carrier as Airline
  {...
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    Airline.name as Name,
    ...
  }
```
The text association now enables the end user to search for the full names of airlines, even though the full name element Name is not exposed on the UI. Even if the full name is not complete in the search field, the search still presents the right results, as can be seen in the following figure.

### Related Information

Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608]

### 5.2 Developing Managed Transactional Apps

In this chapter, you will be guided through all steps necessary to develop a travel administration app based on the business object’s managed runtime infrastructure.

### Introduction

Let’s assume you want to develop completely new transactional apps for SAP Fiori UI or for an arbitrary Web API consumer in SAP Cloud Platform or ABAP environment. Let’s further assume that you don’t have any transactional buffer or business logic implementation or authorization functionality available to you.

In that situation you can benefit from the managed implementation type of the ABAP RESTful programming model.

Unlike the unmanaged scenario which aims for reusing the persistence layer and integrating an already existing business logic, the managed scenario addresses use cases where all essential parts of an application must be developed from scratch. However, these new applications can highly benefit from out-of-the-box support for transactional processing. Whereas for the unmanaged implementation type, the application developer must implement essential components of the REST contract manually, for the managed scenario, all required standard operations (create, update, delete) must only be specified in the behavior definition to obtain a ready-to-run business object. The technical implementation aspects are taken over by the business object runtime infrastructure. In this case, the business object framework implements the interaction phase and the save sequence generically. The application developer can then focus on business logic that is implemented using actions, validations and determinations and user interaction. The corresponding BO runtime manages the entire life cycle of your business objects and covers all aspects of your business application development.
Architecture Overview

The architecture for a managed scenario can be depicted as in the simplified figure below.

The new implementation of business objects and their functionality is a key component in the architecture. In addition to the generic implementation of transactional handling, these objects also provide the application-specific business logic. Even with new developments, you will certainly always use already available reuse functionality whenever possible. For example, our demo application uses value help views and text views for text information retrieval, currency conversion procedures, and message constants as reuse components.

Note

If you are running ABAP developments on SAP Cloud Platform, then you have the option to introduce reuse components after the custom code migration into ABAP Environment.

Prerequisites

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.
- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT).
  SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/.
- To recreate the demo scenario, the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario must be available in your ABAP system. You can download the complete reference scenario from GitHub: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].
→ Remember

The namespace /DMO/ is reserved for the demo content. Apart from the downloaded ABAP Flight Scenario, do not use the namespace /DMO/ and do not create any development objects in the downloaded packages.

You can access the development objects in /DMO/ from your own namespace.

However, if you want to recreate all development objects of this demo content, make sure that you use different names from this documentation.

Constraints

When working with the managed implementation type the following constraints are given:

- **Numbering**: Late numbering is not supported.
- **Actions**: Instance factory actions are not supported for the managed implementation type.
- You cannot use primary key values that are longer than 117 characters.
- You cannot use ABAP dictionary structures as importing or exporting action parameter.

Involved Development Objects

The figure below provides an overview of the main development objects involved when creating new transactional apps based on the managed implementation type.
Development Process in Overview

The development of new managed applications mainly requires developers to perform the following fundamental activities:

1. Developing Ready-to-Run Business Objects

In this section, you will create, from scratch, all the components of your application required to run ready-to-run business objects. Using the business object framework for managed implementation type, you will save time during the development cycle because you don’t have to implement all the technical details yourself - details such as low-level transaction handling, buffer management, or business logic orchestration. This framework provides a set of generic services and functionalities to speed up, standardize, and modularize your development.

More on this: Developing a Ready-to-Run Business Object [page 246]
2. Developing Business Logic

Using model-driven development approach, you may focus your attention more on the actual business requirements themselves by developing actions, validations, determinations and providing feature control for each entity of the business object structure.

More on this: Developing Business Logic [page 268]

3. Providing Projection Layer for Service Consumption

To enable a flexible consumption of the resulting business service, a projection [page 1033] is introduced as a separate layer within the application development. This layer is required for service projections for different consumption scenarios such as Web APIs and UI-related services according to Fiori UI role-based design.

This essentially includes three steps: providing a data model with CDS views for projections, modelling behavior definitions for projections as well as defining business services that expose projections for consumption.

More on this: Developing a Projection Layer for Flexible Service Consumption [page 323]

4. Testing the OData UI Service

Using ABAP Development Tools, you have the option of publishing the service to the service repository of your local system. As soon as the service is published, it is ready for consumption through an OData client, such as an SAP Fiori app. The service binding editor also offers a preview tool that you can use for testing the resulting app within your ABAP development environment.

More on this: Testing the Business Object [page 266]

5.2.1 Reference Business Scenario

In this demo scenario, we will implement a simple travel provider app that can be used to manage flight bookings. A single travel should be booked by the travel provider for an existing customer through a travel agency and include one or multiple flight bookings. In addition, one or more supplements should be able to be booked for each flight.

Requirements

Based on the same data model, two different views of the travel app are to be realized, each corresponding to two different user roles:

- The processor acquires all the data relevant to flight bookings: he or she creates individual travel instances, creates and manages individual flights, and adds supplements to flight bookings. The accumulated travel costs should be calculated automatically when the underlying bookings are updated. When editing individual travel data, validation must be made for data consistency and, in the case of an error, be issued as an appropriate message to the user.
List of Travels - UI for Processor Role

Creating a Travel - UI for Processor Role

- The role of the approver is limited to the verification of the recorded travel data entered by the processor. The approver has the option to accept or reject individual travels.
Data Model

Entities for Transactional Data

As depicted in the figure below, the 3-tier entity hierarchy for managing transactional data in our scenario consists of the following editable entities, with a 1:N cardinality on each level:

- Travel
- Booking
- BookingSupplement

That is, each travel instance has 0..N bookings and each booking has 0..N booking supplements.

The figure below shows the composition relationship between the travel, the (flight) booking and the supplement entities, where the travel entity represents the root of the data model.

Additional Entities for Master Data (Reuse Components)

To access business data from other entities in our demo content, we are going to reuse master data from the package /DMO/FLIGHT_REUSE that is part of the downloaded demo content /DMO/FLIGHT. Some of these entities will be used primarily as text provider views for retrieving text information and as value help provider views for individual input fields on the UI.
Behavior

In the following table, we briefly outline the scope of the business logic to be implemented in the demo scenario. Bear in mind that the managed implementation type comes into play with a few new concepts such as validations and determinations, which will be introduced later on over the course of this E2E guide.

**Processor Role:** Processor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Travel</td>
<td>Operations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create, update, delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Create bookings by association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Action: create travels by template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Validations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Validate editable input fields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feature Control:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Static and dynamic field control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dynamic operation control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Dynamic action control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entity</td>
<td>Behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booking</td>
<td>Operations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Create booking supplements by association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validations:</td>
<td>- Validate editable input fields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determinations:</td>
<td>- Calculate total price for bookings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Control:</td>
<td>- Static and dynamic field control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dynamic operation control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booking Supplement</td>
<td>Operations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determinations:</td>
<td>- Calculate total price for supplements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Control:</td>
<td>- Static and dynamic field control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Approver Role:

**Approver**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Behavior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Travel</td>
<td>Operations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Update (on limited set of travel fields)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Action: accept travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Action: reject travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Validations:</td>
<td>- Validate editable fields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Control:</td>
<td>- Static and dynamic field control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Dynamic action control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booking</td>
<td>Read operations only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Restrictions

Restriction

The current version of the ABAP RESTful programming model does not support late numbering [page 1029] for managed implementation type. Therefore, in our demo scenario, the numbering is not implemented in the save sequence using the adjust_numbering( ) method when creating instances for travels, bookings, and booking supplements.

5.2.2 Developing a Ready-to-Run Business Object

Each business object is characterized by a structure, a behavior and a runtime implementation.

As shown in the figure below, the structure of a business object is defined by the sequence of compositions and to-parent associations between CDS entities with a root entity on top of the composition tree. Each level of a business object’s composition tree can offer a set of operations that are specified in the behavior definition that refers to the entities of the CDS data model. In the case of managed implementation type, the standard operations (create, update, delete) must only be specified in the behavior definition to obtain a ready-to-run business object. The business object runtime infrastructure already implements the interaction phase and the save sequence generically and provides an out-of-the-box support for transactional processing.

Data Model and Behavior of a Ready-to-run Business Object
Preview: Resulting Business Object in Relation Explorer

The figure below displays the resulting “Travel” business object in Relation Explorer view. If you choose the Business Object context, the Relation Explorer provides the composition tree of the business object and displays all operations of the selected entity.

Activities Relevant to Developers

1. Providing Business Object Structure [page 247]
   1. Providing Persistent Tables [page 249]
   2. Creating CDS Data Definitions [page 253]
   3. Defining Data Model and Business Object Structure [page 254]
2. Defining Elementary Behavior for Ready-to-Run Business Object [page 258]
3. Testing the Business Object [page 266]

Related Information

Exploring Business Objects [page 965]

5.2.2.1 Providing Business Object Structure

From a structural point of view, a business object consists of a tree of entities that are linked by compositions. Every entity in this composition tree is an element that is modeled with a CDS entity.

For our demo travel booking scenario, we will implement a 3-level hierarchy composition tree.

Entities for Transactional Data

As depicted in the figure below, the 3-tier entity hierarchy for managing transactional data in our scenario consists of the following editable entities, with a 1: N cardinality on each level:

- Travel
- Booking
- BookingSupplement

That is, each travel instance has 0..N bookings and each booking has 0..N booking supplements.

The figure below shows the composition relationship between the travel, the (flight) booking and the supplement entities, where the travel entity represents the root of the data model.

---

Additional Entities for Master Data (Reuse Components)

To access business data from other entities in our demo content, we are going to reuse master data from the package /DMO/FLIGHT_REUSE that is part of the downloaded demo content /DMO/FLIGHT. Some of these entities will be used primarily as text provider views for retrieving text information and as value help provider views for individual input fields on the UI.
## iNote

Additional entities for currencies (I_Currency) and countries (I_Country) are generally available in your system and are included in our data model using associations.

### Related Information

- Providing Persistent Tables [page 249]
- Creating CDS Data Definitions [page 253]
- Defining Data Model and Business Object Structure [page 254]

## 5.2.2.1.1 Providing Persistent Tables

Travel data of our demo application is distributed across multiple database tables: a table for the travel header data, a table for flight bookings, and booking supplements.

To build up our demo scenario from scratch, we will first create a suitable set of database tables using ADT ABAP Dictionary tools and then use these tables as a data source in the new CDS-based data model.

The standard use case is to work with client-dependent tables. That means, the database table has a key field in which the client is maintained. Like this, you can control the access to the database entries based on the client. However, there are use cases in which the instances of the database tables are not client-specific. These tables do not contain a client field. The RAP managed BO runtime also supports scenarios with client-independent database tables. For more information, see Using Client-Independent Database Tables in Managed Transactional Apps [page 252].

### Starting Point and Prerequisites

To provide data persistence for our sample travel management scenario, we assume that you...

- Have the standard developer authorization profile to create ABAP development objects with ABAP Development Tools.
- Reuse the data elements from the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario (package: /DMO/FLIGHT_LEGACY) when editing table fields for tables to be created.

### Procedure: Creating Tables

To create and work with database tables in ABAP Development Tools (ADT), do the following:

1. Open the source-based ABAP Dictionary editor in ADT and create the corresponding database tables listed below. For further information, see.
2. Edit the database tables with the fields and metadata as depicted in the listings below.

3. Activate the tables

### Table /DMO/TRAVEL_M: Persistent Table for Managing Travel Data

This table defines general travel data, such as the key element travel ID, agency ID or customer ID, the date for travel’s begin and end, as well as the overall status of the travel bookings, and the total price of an individual travel. In addition, the fields for standard administration data, such as the respective user or the time of creation, are added to the table.

**Listing 1: Source Code**

```java
@EndUserText.label : 'Flight Reference Scenario: Managing Travels'
@AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
@AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
@AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
@AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #LIMITED

define table /dmo/travel_m {
  key client      : abap.clnt not null;
  key travel_id   : /dmo/travel_id not null;
  agency_id       : /dmo/agency_id;
  customer_id     : /dmo/customer_id;
  begin_date      : /dmo/begin_date;
  end_date        : /dmo/end_date;
  booking_fee     : /dmo/booking_fee;
  total_price     : /dmo/total_price;
  currency_code   : /dmo/currency_code;
  description     : /dmo/description;
  overall_status  : /dmo/overall_status;
  created_by      : syuname;
  created_at      : timestampl;
  last_changed_by : syuname;
  last_changed_at : timestampl;
}
```

### Table /DMO/BOOKING_M: Persistent Table for Managing Bookings

This table will be used for managing flight booking data, such the flight connection, the carrier, or the price and flight date, and finally, the status of flight bookings.

**Listing 2: Source Code**

```java
@EndUserText.label : 'Flight Reference Scenario: Booking'
@AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
@AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
@AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
@AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #LIMITED

define table /dmo/booking_m {
  key client     : abap.clnt not null;
  @AbapCatalog.foreignKey.label : 'Travel'
  agency_id  : /dmo/agency_id;
  connection : /dmo/connection;
  price       : /dmo/price;
  status      : /dmo/status;
  @AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
  created_by  : syuname;
  created_at  : timestampl;
  @AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
  last_changed_by : syuname;
  last_changed_at : timestampl;
}
```
Table /DMO/BOOKSUPPL_M: Persistent Table for Managing Booking Supplement Data

This table is used to add additional products to a travel booking. For example, the customer can book together with a flight, a drink or a meal.

Listing 3: Source Code

```abap
define table /dmo/booksuppl_m {
  key client                 : abap.clnt not null;
  key travel_id              : /dmo/travel_id not null
    with foreign key [0..*,1] /dmo/travel_m
    where travel_id = /dmo/booksuppl_m.travel_id;
  key booking_id             : /dmo/booking_id not null
    with foreign key [0..*,1] /dmo/booking_m
    where travel_id = /dmo/booksuppl_m.travel_id
    and booking_id = /dmo/booksuppl_m.booking_id;
  key booking_supplement_id  : /dmo/booking_supplement_id not null;
  supplement_id              : /dmo/booking_supplement_id;
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/book_suppl_data.currency_code'
  price                      : /dmo/supplement_price;
  currency_code              : /dmo/currency_code;
  last_changed_at           : timestamp;
}
```

Related Information

Database Tables
5.2.2.1.1 Using Client-Independent Database Tables in Managed Transactional Apps

The RAP managed BO runtime supports transactional scenarios with client-independent database tables. This topic provides information about things you need to consider when using client-independent tables.

Creating Client-Independent Database Tables

The procedure for creating client-independent database tables does not differ from the process described in Procedure: Creating Tables [page 249]. You can simply remove the client field in the template for database tables.

The following codeblock shows the travel database table without a client field.

```abap
@EndUserText.label : 'Flight Reference Scenario: Managing Travels'
@AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
@AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
@AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
@AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #LIMITED
define table /dmo/travel_m {
  key travel_id   : /dmo/travel_id not null;
  agency_id       : /dmo/agency_id;
  customer_id     : /dmo/customer_id;
  begin_date      : /dmo/begin_date;
  end_date        : /dmo/end_date;
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/travel_data.currency_code'
  booking_fee     : /dmo/booking_fee;
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/travel_data.currency_code'
  total_price     : /dmo/total_price;
  currency_code   : /dmo/currency_code;
  description     : /dmo/description;
  overall_status  : /dmo/overall_status;
  @AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
  created_by      : syuname;
  created_at      : timestamp;
  @AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
  last_changed_by : syuname;
  last_changed_at : timestamp;
}
```

Modeling Business Objects with Client-Independent Tables

The business object must be consistent with regard to the client fields in the database tables. This means that CDS views that are used for modeling the data model in scenarios with client-independent tables must not contain a client element. In particular, the generated SQL-view of a CDS V1 view must not contain such an element. When using CDS V2, the client handling of the CDS view is implicitly defined by the underlying data source.

There must be client-consistency among the entities in the business object composition structure. It is not possible to have one entity that is client-dependent and one that is client-independent with a compositional relationship between them.
Business Object Runtime with Client-Independent Tables

The client field in database tables influences the runtime of business objects during lock. While locks are set on entity instances only for one specific client in client-dependent tables, locks in client-independent tables lock instances for all clients.

i Note

In scenarios in which you have client-dependent database tables, but join client-independent fields from other database tables to your CDS view, the managed BO runtime locks the instances specific to the client. This means only the fields from the client-dependent database tables are locked. If you also want to lock the client-independent fields, you have to implement an unmanaged lock [page 1038].

i Note

In scenarios, in which you use an unmanaged save [page 1038] in the managed scenarios, the managed BO runtime always sets a client-specific lock. If you want to lock client-independently, you have to use an unmanaged lock [page 1038].

Related Information

Lock Definition [page 169]
Integrating Unmanaged Save in Managed Business Objects [page 313]

5.2.2.1.2 Creating CDS Data Definitions

In this step you create CDS views as the basis for the data model of our demo scenario. For each data definition a corresponding development object and the related CDS views are created.

Data Definitions and CDS Views to Create

i Note

Naming CDS views: Since CDS views are (public) interface views, they are prefixed with I_ in accordance with the VDM (virtual data model) naming convention. In addition, we add the suffix _M to the view name in case it is specific for our managed implementation type scenario. For detailed information, see: Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990]
Data Definitions Required for all Editable Entities of the Data Model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS View Name</th>
<th>Data Source</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_TRAVEL_M</td>
<td>/DMO/TRAVEL_M</td>
<td>A Travel entity defines general travel data, such as the agency ID or customer ID, overall status of the travel bookings, and the total price of a travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Travel_M (root entity)</td>
<td>/DMO/TRAVEL_M (DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_BOOKING_M</td>
<td>/DMO/BOOKING_M</td>
<td>The booking entity is used for managing flight booking data, such as the customer, the flight connection, or the price and flight date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Booking_M (child entity)</td>
<td>/DMO/BOOKING_M (DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_BOOKSUPPL_M</td>
<td>/DMO/BOOKSUPPL_M</td>
<td>This entity is used to add additional products to a travel booking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_BookSuppl_M (child entity)</td>
<td>/DMO/BOOKSUPPL_M (DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Procedure: Creating a Data Definition**

To launch the wizard tool for creating a data definition, do the following:

1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In your ABAP project (or ABAP cloud project), select the relevant package node in Project Explorer.
3. Open the context menu and choose New ➔ Other ABAP Repository Object ➔ Core Data Services ➔ Data Definition ➔

**Further information**: (Tool Reference)

**5.2.2.1.3 Defining Data Model and Business Object Structure**

**Travel Root View /DMO/I_Travel_M**

The listing 1 (below) provides you with the implementation of the CDS data model for managing travel instances, where the database table /dmo/travel_m serves as the data source for the corresponding CDS view /DMO/I_Travel_M. This CDS view defines the root entity of the data model and represents the root of compositional hierarchy for the travel business object to be created.

To define a composition [page 1022] relationship from the root to a child entity, the keyword COMPOSITION is used. In our example, we specify the /DMO/I_Booking_M as child entity in the composition _Booking. As a
result, the booking node is defined as a direct child entity to the business object’s root. The cardinality \([0 \ldots *]\) specifies that any number of booking instances can be assigned to each travel instance.

To be able to access master data from other entities, a set of associations is defined in the CDS source code. These associations refer to CDS entities (/DMO/I_Agency, /DMO/I_Customer) that are part of our demo application scenario. Some of these views are used primarily as text views for retrieving text information and as value help provider views for specific UI fields.

Finally, the fields for standard administration data are added to the select list, where the persistent field `last_changed_at` plays a special role as an ETag [page 1027] field.

To ensure uniform data processing on the consumer side, all administrative as well as quantity fields are provided with appropriate `@Semantics` annotations. These annotations are necessary to support managed ETag handling, that is the automatic update of the relevant ETag field on every operation.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**Listing 1: Source Code of the CDS Root View /DMO/I_Travel_M**

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Travel view - CDS data model'
define root view entity /DMO/I_Travel_M
 as select from /dmo/travel_m as Travel -- the travel table is the
data source for this view
 composition [0..*] of /DMO/I_Booking_M as _Booking
 association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Agency as _Agency on
 $projection.agency_id = _Agency.AgencyID
 association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Customer as _Customer on
 $projection.customer_id = _Customer.CustomerID
 association [0..1] to I_Currency as _Currency on
 $projection.currency_code = _Currency.Currency

{ key travel_id,
  agency_id,
  customer_id,
  begin_date,
  end_date,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
  booking_fee,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
  total_price,
  currency_code,
  overall_status,
  description,
  @Semantics.user.createdBy: true
  created_by,
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.createdAt: true
  created_at,
  @Semantics.user.lastChangedBy: true
  last_changed_by,
  //local ETag field --> OData ETag
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
  last_changed_at,

  /* Associations */
  _Booking,
  _Agency,
  _Customer,
  _Currency
}
```
Booking View /DMO/I_Booking_M

Listing 2 (below) provides you with a data model implementation of the booking entity. All fields that are declared in the database table are used in the CDS view. The administrative field `last_changed_at` is used for optimistic concurrency control on all nodes. That means, every business object entity stores its own eTag.

In the data definition of the root entity /DMO/I_Travel_M, we specified the booking entity /DMO/I_Booking_M as a composition child entity. Reversely, this relationship requires an association to their compositional parent entity – from the child entity. This relationship is expressed by the keyword `ASSOCIATION TO PARENT`.

To provide a data model for 3-tier entity hierarchy, we also define a composition relationship from booking to a booking supplement entity. In our example, we specify /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M as child entity in the composition `BookSupplement`. The cardinality `[0 .. *]` expresses that any number of booking supplement instances can be assigned to each booking instance.

To be able to access data from other entities, a set of additional associations (`_Customer, _Carrier, and _Connection`) is defined in the CDS source code.

The `SELECT` list includes all elements of a booking entity that are relevant for consumption in a user interface.

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 2: Source Code of the CDS View /DMO/I_Booking_M

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking view'
define view entity /DMO/I_Booking_M
  as select from /dmo/booking_m as Booking
  association        to parent /DMO/I_Travel_M as _Travel on
$projection.travel_id = _Travel.travel_id
  composition [0..*] of /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M     as _BookSupplement
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Customer        as _Customer on
$projection.customer_id = _Customer.CustomerID
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Carrier         as _Carrier on
$projection.carrier_id = _Carrier.AirlineID
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Connection      as _Connection on
$projection.connection_id = _Connection.ConnectionID

  {
    key travel_id,
    key booking_id,
    booking_date,
    customer_id,
    carrier_id,
    connection_id,
    flight_date,
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
    flight_price,
    currency_code,
    booking_status,
    /* Local ETag field --> OData ETag
    @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
    last_changed_at,
    /"Associations */
    _Travel,
    _BookSupplement,
    _Customer,
    _Carrier,
    _Connection
```
Booking Supplement View /DMO/I_BookSuppI_M

The 3-tier composition relationship requires an association for the booking supplement child entity /DMO/I_BookSuppI_M entity to their compositional parent entity.

Like the booking entity, the booking supplement entity also uses the field `last_changed_at` to store eTag values.

To access master data from other entities, additional associations _Product and _SupplementText are defined in the CDS source code.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 3: Source Code of the CDS View /DMO/I_BookSuppI_M

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Booking Supplement View - CDS data model'
define view entity /DMO/I_BookSuppI_M
  as select from /dmo/booksuppl_m as BookingSupplement
    association to parent /DMO/I_Booking_M as _Booking on
    $projection.travel_id    = _Booking.travel_id
    and
    $projection.booking_id   = _Booking.booking_id
    association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Travel_M as _Travel on
    $projection.travel_id    = _Travel.travel_id
    association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Supplement as _Product on
    $projection.supplement_id = _Product.SupplementID
    association [1..*] to /DMO/I_SupplementText as _SupplementText on
    $projection.supplement_id = _SupplementText.SupplementID
  {   
    key travel_id,
    key booking_id,
    key booking_supplement_id,
    supplement_id,
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
    price,
    currency_code,
    //local ETag field --> OData ETag
    @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
    last_changed_at,
    /* Associations */
    _Travel,
    _Booking,
    _Product,
    _SupplementText
  }
```
5.2.2.2 Defining Elementary Behavior for Ready-to-Run Business Object

In this step, we will limit our focus to modeling an elementary behavior in which only the standard operations `create()`, `update()`, and `delete()` are defined for each entity. These operations, along with some basic properties (behavior characteristics), should already be sufficient to obtain a ready-to-run business object.

Procedure: Creating a Behavior Definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M

To launch the wizard tool for creating a behavior definition, do the following:
1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In the Project Explorer view of your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the node for the data definition that defines the root entity (/DMO/I_TRAVEL_M).
3. Open the context menu and choose New Behavior Definition to launch the creation wizard.

![New Behavior Definition Wizard](image)

Further information: (Tool Reference) [page 967]
Parenthesis: Syntax for Defining Managed Transactional Behavior

To define the transactional behavior for a CDS Entity for managed implementation type, the following syntax is used:

```plaintext
/* Header of behavior definition */
[implementation] managed;
/* Definition of entity behavior */
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasName]
/* Entity properties */
[implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_NAME [unique] ]
persistent table DB_TABLE_NAME
[etag (master Field | dependent by _Association)]
lock {master Field [unmanaged] | dependent by _Association}
[authorization (master(instance)|dependent by _Association)]
{
  /* Static field control */
  [field (read only | mandatory) field1[, field2, ..., fieldn];]
  /* Dynamic field control */
  [field (features: instance) field1[, field2, ..., fieldn];]
  /* Managed Early Numbering */
  field ([readonly,] numbering:managed ) keyfield1[, keyfield2, ..., keyfieldn];
  /* Mapping entity's field types with table field types */
  mapping for DB_TABLE_NAME corresponding;
  /* Standard operations */
  [internal] create;
  [internal] update;
  [internal] delete;
  /* Actions */
  action ActionName;
  /* Associations */
  [association AssociationName [abbreviation AbbreviationName] [create;] ]
  /* Validations */
  // (1) validations for triggers at field level
  validation ValidationName on save { field f1, f2, ..., fn; }
  // (2) validations for triggers at operation level
  validation ValidationName on save { create; update; delete; }
  // (3) combined trigger usage
  validation ValidationName on save { create; field f1; }
  /* Determinations */
  // (1) determination for triggers at field level
  determination DeterminationName on (save | modify) { field f1, f2, ..., fn; }
  // (2) determination for triggers at operation level
  determination DeterminationName on (save | modify) { create; update;
  delete; }
  // (3) combined trigger usage
  determination DeterminationName on (save | modify) { create; field f1; }
}
```

Explanation

A behavior definition consists of a header information and a set of definitions for entity behavior. Each entity of the composition tree can be referred in the behavior definition at most once.

→ Remember

Consider that if an entity does not occur in the behavior definition, then it would not be modifiable within the ABAP RESTful application programming model.
The header specifies the implementation type of the business object:

### Implementation Type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>managed</td>
<td>This implementation type addresses use cases where all essential parts of an application must be developed from scratch. Furthermore, whereas for the unmanaged implementation type, the application developer must implement essential components of the REST contract manually, for the managed scenario, on the other hand, all required standard operations (create, update, delete) must only be specified in the behavior definition to obtain a ready-to-run business object. New applications can highly benefit from out-of-the-box support for transactional processing, since the technical implementation aspects are taken over by the business object runtime infrastructure. In this case, the business object framework implements generically the interaction phase and the save sequence. The application developer can then focus on business logic that is implemented using actions, validations, determinations and user interaction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The behavior description is divided into a section with behavior characteristic that describes several properties for each entity, followed by information on any operations, validations, and determinations enclosed in the brackets {...}.

The **AliasName** defined in the behavior definition for CDSEntity gives you the option of introducing a more concise name than the entity name that is hence easier to read. Note that the length of the **AliasName** is restricted to 20 characters. The **AliasName** becomes visible in the implementation part when implementing the BO’s business logic.

The **Behavior Definition Language (BDL) [page 1019]** allows you to add the following properties to a behavior definition:

#### Behavior Characteristic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>implementation in class ... unique</td>
<td>When modelling the behavior for an individual entity, you have the option of assigning a specific behavior pool that implements the behavior for this entity. Behavior for the entity in question is implemented in a behavior pool with the specified name ABAP_CLASS_NAME. By including the restriction implementation in class ... unique for the implementation, you can protect the application against multiple implementations so that each operation can only be implemented once for the relevant entity. Any other class (program) that attempts this, raises an ABAP compiler error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persistent table ...</td>
<td>This property defines the database table DB_TABLE_NAME for storing CDSEntity's data changes that result from transactional behavior (in managed implementation type).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Characteristic** | **Effect**
---|---
etag master Field | An ETag is used for optimistic concurrency control in the OData protocol to help prevent simultaneous updates of a resource from overwriting each other.
etag dependent by _Association | The managed scenario updates administrative fields automatically if they are annotated with the respective annotations:

```java
@Semantics.user.createdBy: true
@Semantics.systemDateTime.createdAt: true
@Semantics.user.lastChangedBy: true
@Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
```

If the element that is annotated with

@Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true

is used as an ETag field, it gets automatic updates by the framework and receives a unique value on each update. In this case, you do not have to implement ETag field updates.

For more information, see Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161].

**lock master** | In the behavior definition, you can determine which entities support direct locking (lock master) and which entities depend on the locking status of a parent or root entity (lock dependent by). For lock dependents it is required to specify which association is used to determine the lock master. This association must be explicitly defined in the behavior definition with association _AssociationToLockMasterEntity.

If you want to implement your own locking logic in the managed scenario, you can define an unmanaged lock with lock master unmanaged. In this case, you have to implement the method FOR LOCK just like in the unmanaged scenario, see Implementing the LOCK Operation [page 414].

For more information, see Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking) [page 166].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authorization master / authorization dependent by Association</td>
<td>To protect data from unauthorized access, you can add authorization checks for modifying operations to each entity of the business object. For standard operations such as update, delete, as well as for create by associations and actions, the authorization control is then checked by the BO runtime as soon as the relevant operation is executed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> **Remember**

With the current release, the root entity is always defined as authorization master, whereas all child entities are defined as authorization dependent. If a child entity is modified (update, delete, create by association) or an action is invoked on that entity, the authorization check (that is implemented in the behavior class) of the master is triggered to check if the operation is allowed for being accessed.

> **Restriction**

With the current release, only instance-based authorization control is supported: authorization master(instance). This means, static authorization is not yet available. Therefore, you cannot apply authorization checks to create operation (static operation).

> **Note**

The operations create (by association), update, delete, and actions on child entities are treated as an update on the corresponding root entity (authorization master). Thus, the authorization check implementation is triggered to check the authorization for update at master level - despite of the fact that it was a create (by association), update, delete, or action request at dependent level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Properties</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
<td><strong>Effect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field (readonly)</td>
<td>This property defines that values of the specified fields must not be created or updated by the consumer. You can set this property in the behavior definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

> **Note**

The BO runtime rejects external EML MODIFY requests that include read-only fields for update or create operations. Read-only fields that are included in OData call to update or create instances are ignored while possible other fields are processed for update and create operations.

The specified fields are grayed out on Fiori UI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>field (mandatory)</th>
<th>Defines that the specified fields must be filled with values – at least at save point of time. The BO runtime rejects saving request in case of an empty value. The specified fields are marked with a specific (red star) icon to indicate them as mandatory,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

262  PUBLIC
**Property**  | **Effect**  
---|---
field (numbering : managed)  | Defines that the managed BO framework draws the key value for the determined key field automatically after the CREATE request is executed, if the key value is not provided externally.  
If you additionally set the key field to readonly, only internal numbering is possible.  

field (features: instance)  | Defines that specified field is handled by dynamic field control at instance level.  
The dynamic field control must be implemented in a handler class of the behavior pool.  
More on this: [Modeling Static and Dynamic Feature Control](page 280)  

mapping for ... corresponding  | The addition corresponding automatically maps field types of entity fields to types of DB table fields with the same name. The corresponding fields of different names can be specified through explicitly listed field pairs.  
More on this: [Using Type and Control Mapping](page 630)  

**Operations, Validations and Determinations**

| **Operation, ...** | **Meaning** |
---|---
create | update | delete  | An important part of the transactional behavior of a business object are the standard operations create, update and delete (CUD). Whenever an entity can be created, updated, or deleted, these operations must be declared in the behavior definition.  

**i Note**  
Creating instances of managed BOs without managed numbering requires that all primary key values are provided by the consumer. If the consumer does not provide values for all primary key fields, the instance is created with initial primary key values.  
To only provide an operation without exposing it to consumers, the option internal can be set before the operation, for example, internal update. An internal operation can only be accessed from the business logic inside the business object implementation such as from a determination.  

association  | All compositions that form the business object’s structure must also be declared in the behavior definition as associations. An abbreviation *AbbreviationName* needs to be defined if the composition name in the CDS view is longer than 11 characters. The keyword `{create;}` is used to declare that the association is create-enabled, which means that instances of the associated entity can be created by the source of the association.  

**i Note**  
The `create_by_association` expects that the parent key fields of the child entity that is to be created are read-only.  

action  | Actions can be specified as non-standard operations in behavior definitions.  
For more information, see [Actions](page 138).
### Operation, ... Meaning

**validation**

A validation is an implicitly executed function that checks the consistency of entity instances that belong to a business object.

The BO framework implicitly evaluates all validations if the validation’s trigger condition is fulfilled at a certain validation time. A trigger condition consists of trigger operation (create, update, create by association) and list of entity fields (trigger elements) belonging to the same entity the validation is assigned to. For validations, the current version of the programming model supports only the save phase as validation time:

```
validation ValidationName on save { field field1, ..., fieldn; }
```

Validations are not allowed to modify data; they can reject the save of inconsistent data and return messages.

**determination**

A determination is an implicitly executed function that is used to handle side effects of modifications by changing instances and returning messages.

The BO framework implicitly invokes a determination if the determination’s trigger condition is fulfilled at a certain determination time.

(1) The option on (save | modify) { field f1[, f2, ..., fn]; } defines the determination time on save (before save) or on modify (immediately after modification) and the trigger fields, which (together with the create or update operation) form the trigger condition for the determination.

(2) The option on (save | modify) { create; } defines the determination time on save or on modify for the entire entity (all entity fields are trigger fields), which together with the create operation (no update operation!) form the trigger condition for the determination.

---

### Procedure: Modeling the Behavior for Ready-to-Run Travel BO

As depicted in the listing below, the source code of the behavior definition consists of a header information and three definitions for entity behavior: one for the root travel entity and two for the child entities booking and booking supplements – corresponding to the composition tree of the business object. Note that for each entity of the composition tree, the transactional behavior can be defined in the behavior definition at most once. All required transactional operations of an individual business object’s node are specified in the same behavior definition (that is introduced by the keyword `DEFINE BEHAVIOR FOR ...`).

The header specifies managed implementation type of our business object’s provider since we are going to implement all essential parts of an application from scratch.

For this implementation type, all required standard operations (create, update, delete) and create by association must only be specified in the behavior definition to obtain a ready-to-run business object.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The <code>create_by_association</code> expects that the parent key fields of the child entity that is to be created are read-only as the parent key fields are filled automatically during runtime.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Our TRAVEL business object refers to the underlying CDS data model, which is represented by root entity /DMO/I_Travel_M. All data changes related to this entity that result from transactional behavior are stored in the database table /DMO/TRAVEL_M. The transactional handling of the business object’s root entity travel is mainly determined by the standard operations create, update, and delete. The fact that in our scenario new instances of the booking child entity should also be created for a specific travel instance is considered by the addition of the _Booking association. The keyword {create;} declares that this association is create-enabled what exactly means that instances of the associated bookings can only be created by a travel instance.

The sub node of TRAVEL business object structure refers to the corresponding data model for bookings that is represented by the child entity /DMO/I_Booking_M. The transactional handling of booking child entity is determined by the standard operation update. In addition, the create-enabled association _BookSupplement is defined for creation of supplements as part of associated booking instances. Similarly, we model the behavior of the booking supplement entity /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M. Since we reach the end of the composition tree with this entity, there is no need to define a create-enabled association.

When providing modifying operations, we also must take care for locking support for all relevant entities of the composition tree. For this purpose, the root entity travel is defined as lock master and the child entities as lock dependent. In the latter case, the binding information is specified via the association leading from child entity instance to its lock master instance.

In the managed scenario, all entities receive a separate eTag master field to store eTag values. Like this, every entity can be accessed and modified independently of others.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 1: Behavior Definition

```plaintext
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
  persistent table /DMO/TRAVEL_M
  etag master last_changed_at
  lock master
  {
    mapping for /DMO/TRAVEL_M corresponding;
    create;
    update;
    delete;
    association _Booking { create; }
  }
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
  persistent table /DMO/BOOKING_M
  etag master last_changed_at
  lock dependent by _Travel
  {
    field (readonly) travel_id;
    mapping for /DMO/BOOKING_M corresponding;
    update;
    association _BookSupplement { create; }
    association _Travel { }
  }
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M alias booksuppl
  persistent table /DMO/BOOKSUPPL_M
  etag master last_changed_at
  lock dependent by _Travel
  {
    field (readonly) travel_id, booking_id;
    mapping for /DMO/BOOKSUPPL_M corresponding;
    update;
    association _Travel { }
  }
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop

PUBLIC 265
5.2.2.3 Testing the Business Object

At this point, you can now test the newly created travel business object for its basic functionality by creating some new instances for the 3 entities (travel, booking, booking supplement) that correspond to the business object’s structure, modifying the existing data sets or deleting existing instances.

These options are available to you:

- Testing with Fiori UI by using the integrated Fiori UI preview function
- Testing without Fiori UI:
  - By executing automated ABAP Unit tests, starting from a generated test class
  - By consuming the newly created business object’s entities with EML.

Procedures

To use the integrated Fiori UI preview, perform the following steps:

1. Add required UI annotations to the relevant CDS views.
   - Add, at least, the `@UI.identification` annotation on each element to be editable when creating or editing entity instances on the Fiori UI object pages.
2. Create the service definition.
3. Specify which CDS entities are exposed as a UI service.
4. Create a service binding for UI consumption.
5. Activate the UI service endpoint in the local service repository.
6. Run the resulting app by using the integrated UI preview function.

Tip

Since UI annotations are not yet defined in the CDS views provided, you can benefit from the generic templates by choosing the Settings (⚙️) button on the (initial) screen that appears. In the Settings dialog, click on the Select all box for Columns and confirm with OK. Then choose the Go button.

More on this: Creating an OData Service [page 22] and Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34]

To generate a test class for an individual entity of the OData service, perform the following steps:

1. Create the service definition.
2. Specify which CDS entities are to be exposed as a service.
3. Create a service binding for service consumption.
4. Activate the service endpoint in the local service repository.
5. To launch the test class creation wizard, select the relevant entity in the service binding editor and choose New ABAP Test Class from context menu.
Creating a Test Class for Travel Entity

For the selected entity, the wizard creates a test class with a source code template for ABAP unit tests. After completing the test code, you can perform CUD operations on relevant entity.

**Note**

You can either create a separate test class for each entity or copy and paste the generated code, then change the name of the entity accordingly for writing ABAP unit tests for other entity.

---

**To test the business object functionality by implementing EML consumer class, you can, for example, proceed as follows:**

1. Create an EML consumer class.
   - You can use, for example, the source code template from listing below.
2. Implement **MODIFY** calls for creating, updating, or deleting instances of business object’s entities.

**LISTING 1: Template for EML consumer class**

```abap
CLASS MY_EML_CONSUMER_CLASS DEFINITION
PUBLIC FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC.
PUBLIC SECTION.
  INTERFACES if_oo_adt_classrun.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_update IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD if_oo_adt_classrun-main.
  " To implement the MODIFY call, add EML code here!
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

**Tip**

To check the results of the **MODIFY** call implemented in the consumer class, run the main method of the consumer class by pressing F9 key in the class editor and then search for the created, or updated (and deleted) travel, booking and booking supplement instances in the data preview tool (F8).

---

**More on this:** Entity Manipulation Language (EML) [page 209] and Consuming Business Objects with EML [page 640]
5.2.3 Developing Business Logic

The managed scenario addresses use cases where all essential parts of an application are to be developed from scratch. New applications like this can highly benefit from out-of-the-box support for transactional processing. The corresponding BO runtime manages the entire life cycle of your business objects and covers all aspects of your business application development.

In a managed scenario, the business object framework implements generically the interaction phase and the save sequence. You, as an application developer can then focus on business logic that is implemented by adding actions, validations and determinations and user interaction.

Preview: Resulting Business Object in Relation Explorer

The figure below displays the resulting "Travel" business object in the Relation Explorer view. If you choose the Business Object context, the Relation Explorer provides the composition tree of the business object and displays all operations (including actions), determinations and validations defined by the selected entity.

Contents

- Creating ABAP Classes for Behavior Implementation [page 269]
- Developing Actions [page 272]
- Adding Static and Dynamic Feature Control [page 279]
- Developing Validations [page 288]
- Developing Determinations [page 295]
- Integrating Additional Save in Managed Business Objects [page 303]
- Integrating Unmanaged Save in Managed Business Objects [page 313]
5.2.3.1 Creating ABAP Classes for Behavior Implementation

Until this step, we got by without any line of ABAP code. This was also not necessary, as in case of managed implementation type the technical implementation aspects are taken over by the business object runtime infrastructure itself. In this case, the business object framework implements generically the interaction phase and the save sequence.

However, to provide our application with specific business logic, we will on the one hand extend the behavior definition with actions, feature control, validations and determinations and on the other hand implement it in ABAP code.

In this step, you create the ABAP classes required for extending behavior artifacts of the corresponding behavior definition that you created earlier.

In doing so, we apply the contribution pattern and split the behavior implementation into different behavior pools, one for the travel root entity and the others for the booking and booking supplement child entities (as shown in figure below). In addition, we will make use of a separate auxiliary class for implementing helper methods (such as for methods reused in different handlers) that can be reused in each behavior implementation class.

### Procedure 1: Create a Behavior Pool /DMO_BP_TRAVEL_M

To launch the wizard tool for creating a behavior implementation, do the following:
1. In your **ABAP project** (or **ABAP Cloud Project**), select the relevant behavior definition node (**/DMO/I_TRAVEL_M**) in **Project Explorer**.

2. Open the context menu and choose **New Behavior Implementation** to launch the creation wizard.

## New Behavior Class

### ABAP Class

Create an ABAP class

| Project: * | /MA_800_SpaceX_M | Browse... |
| Package: * | /DMO/FLIGHT_MANAGED | Browse... |
| Add to favorite packages | | |
| Name: * | /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M | |
| Description: * | Behavior Implementation for /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M | |
| Original Language: | EN | |
| Behavior Definition: | /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M | |

---

**Creating the Behavior Pool /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M**

Further information: **Naming Conventions for Development Objects** [page 990]

Compared to the standard ABAP class, the generated behavior pool (in our case **/DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M**) provides you with an extension **FOR BEHAVIOR OF**.

```abap
CLASS /dm0/bp_travel_m DEFINITION PUBLIC ABSTRACT FINAL FOR BEHAVIOR OF /dm0/i_travel_m.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dm0/bp_travel_m IMPLEMENTATION.
ENDCLASS.
```

---

The real substance of a behavior pool is located in **Local Types** (there is currently no implementation yet). Here you can implement special local classes, namely handler classes for additional operations (such as actions), validations and determinations that are triggered at specific points in time within the interaction phase.

Note that these classes can be instantiated or invoked only by the **ABAP runtime environment (virtual machine)** [page 1018].
Procedure 2: Create a Behavior Pool /DMO/BP_BOOKING_M

Create another behavior pool class /DMO/BP_BOOKING_M, for example, by duplicating the just-created class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M.

Listing 1: Global Class /DMO/ BP_BOOKING_M

```abap
CLASS /dmo/bp_booking_m DEFINITION PUBLIC ABSTRACT FINAL FOR BEHAVIOR OF /dmo/i_travel_m.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/bp_booking_m IMPLEMENTATION.
ENDCLASS.
```

**iNote**
The name behind FOR BEHAVIOR OF always refers to the root entity of the business object.

Procedure 3: Create a Behavior Pool /DMO/BP_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_M

Create another behavior pool class /DMO/BP_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_M, for example, by duplicating the class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M.

Listing 2: Global Class /DMO/ BP_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_M

```abap
CLASS /dmo/bp_bookingsupplement_m DEFINITION PUBLIC ABSTRACT FINAL FOR BEHAVIOR OF /dmo/i_travel_m.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/bp_bookingsupplement_m IMPLEMENTATION.
ENDCLASS.
```

Results

The newly created behavior pools are located in the Behavior Implementations folder of the corresponding behavior definition node /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M.
Procedure 4: Create an Auxiliary Class /DMO/CL_TRAVEL_AUXILIARY_M

To launch the wizard tool for creating a standard ABAP class, do the following:

1. In your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the Source Code Library > Classes node of the relevant package.
2. To launch the creation wizard, open the context menu and choose New ABAP Class.

We will use this auxiliary class to offload parts of the handler code and thus reuse them in different behavior pools.

5.2.3.2 Developing Actions

An action is assigned to an individual entity of a business object and is used to implement a modifying non-standard operation as part of the business logic.

This demo scenario implements three actions for the travel entity.

The action acceptTravel sets the overall status of the travel entity to accepted (A). The action rejectTravel sets the overall status of the travel entity to rejected (X). These actions are an instance action as there is one specific instance of the travel entity for which the status is changed. They return exactly one instance, namely the instance on which the action is executed. The result is therefore defined as result [1] $self.

Accept and Travel Action on the Fiori UI

The action createTravelByTemplate creates a new travel instance based on the values of an already existing travel instance. This action is an instance action as the end user has to select one instance which serves as the basis for the entity instance to be created. Of course, a different key is assigned. It returns exactly one instance of the same entity type the action is assigned for. The result is therefore defined as result [1] $self.
Activities Relevant to Developers

1. Defining Actions as Part of the Behavior Definition [page 273]
2. Implementing Actions [page 274]
3. Enabling Actions for UI Consumption [page 279]

5.2.3.2.1 Defining Actions as Part of the Behavior Definition

Procedure: Adding Actions to the Behavior Definition

Corresponding to the listing below, add the following actions to the behavior definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M.

Listing: Added Actions to /DMO/I_Travel_M

All three actions acceptTravel, rejectTravel, and createTravelByTemplate have a similar syntax: they have no input parameters and the output parameter is the same entity for which the action is executed.

```c
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
{
    // instance actions
```
5.2.3.2.2 Implementing Actions

In this topic we demonstrate how you can implement the two actions `createTravelByTemplate` and `acceptTravel`.

**Action createTravelByTemplate**

This action provides a template for creating a new travel based on an already existing travel instance.

**UI Preview**

When we run the final app, the UI screen provides the button *Create Travel by Template* for the action as shown in the figure below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travels (2)</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Create Travel by Template</th>
<th>Delete</th>
<th>Create</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Travel ID</td>
<td>Agency ID</td>
<td>Customer ID</td>
<td>Starting Date</td>
<td>End Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Happy Hoping (70003)</td>
<td>Buchholz (G)</td>
<td>Jul 5, 2019</td>
<td>Jul 13, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total Price:</strong></td>
<td>1,587.04 EUR</td>
<td><strong>Booking Status:</strong></td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In change mode (after the user clicks the *Edit* button on Fiori UI’s object page), the end user is able to change the relevant travel fields as shown in the figure below.
As soon as the user chooses the Save button on the object page, the data is persisted in the corresponding database table and a travel instance with a new travel ID is created.

**Definition**

In the behavior definition, the action `createTravelByTemplate` is defined as follows:

```
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
  ...
  ...
  action createTravelByTemplate result [1] $self;
  ...
```

**Procedure: Implementing `createTravelByTemplate` Action in the Handler Class**

The `createTravelByTemplate` action is implemented in the `copy_travel` method within the handler class `lhc_travel` which is part (local types) of the behavior pool `/DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M`. 
The local handler class lhc_travel inherits from class cl_abap_behavior_handler and is automatically instantiated by the framework.

The signature of copy_travel method includes the importing parameter keys for referring to the travel (root) instances, which contains the template data to be copied into the travel root instances to be created. To identify the root entity, the alias travel is used - according to the alias that is specified in the behavior definition. The action is then addressed with FOR ACTION travel~createTravelByTemplate.

As given in the listing below, the basic structure of the copy_travel method includes:

- The maximum of travel number from all existing travel instances is determined in the SELECT MAX statement.
- The EML read operation provides read access to the selected travel instance by using the key. The result of this read operation is stored in lt_read_result. Based on the resulting data, the parameter lt_create defines the new data set as a template for the travel instance to be created.
- The actual creation of new travel instance is implemented using EML MODIFY statement. The modifying operation takes place in LOCAL MODE. As a result, the create operation is excluded from the authorization checks (that may be implemented later on).

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 1: Action Implementation

CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS copy_travel FOR MODIFY IMPORTING keys FOR ACTION travel~createTravelByTemplate RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  ...
  METHOD copy_travel.
  _SELECT MAX( travel_id ) FROM /dmo/travel_m INTO @DATA(lv_travel_id).
  CI_NOWHERE
  _READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_m IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY travel
  _FIELDS ( travel_id
             agency_id
             customer_id
             booking_fee
             total_price
             currency_code )
  _WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  _RESULT DATA(lt_read_result)
  _FAILED failed
  _REPORTED reported.
  DATA(lv_today) = cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ).
  DATA lt_create TYPE TABLE FOR CREATE /DMO/I_Travel_M\travel.
  lt_create = VALUE #( FOR row IN lt_read_result INDEX INTO idx
             travel_id = lv_travel_id + idx
             agency_id = row-agency_id
             customer_id = row-customer_id
             begin_date = lv_today
             end_date = lv_today + 30
             booking_fee = row-booking_fee
             total_price = row-total_price
             currency_code = row-currency_code
             description = 'Enter your comments here'
             overall_status = 'O' ) ) ). " Open
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_m IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY travel
CREATE FIELDS (    travel_id    agency_id    customer_id    begin_date    end_date    booking_fee    total_price    currency_code    description    overall_status )

WITH lt_create
MAPPED mapped
FAILED failed
REPORTED reported.

result = VALUE # ( FOR create IN lt_create INDEX INTO idx
                   %cid_ref = keys[ idx ]-%cid_ref
                   %key    = keys[ idx ]-travel_id
                   %param  = CORRESPONDING # ( create ) ) ) .

ENDMETHOD.

... ENDCLASS.

**Action acceptTravel**

This action provides the end user with the option of accepting individual travels without switching to EDIT mode.

**UI Preview**

If you run the app, the resulting UI screen provides you with the label *Accept Travel* for the new action - as shown in the figure below.

**Action on Fiori UI**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travel ID</th>
<th>Overall Status</th>
<th>Agency ID</th>
<th>Customer ID</th>
<th>Booking Fee</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Happy Hopping (70003)</td>
<td>Buchholm (5)</td>
<td>234.00 EUR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Definition**

Remember, in the behavior definition, the action `acceptTravel` is defined as follows:

managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
  ...
  ...
  action acceptTravel result [1] $self;
  ...
}

**Procedure: Implementing acceptTravel Action in the Handler Class**

The `acceptTravel` action is implemented in the `set_status_completed` method within the handler class `lhc_travel` which belongs to local types component of the behavior pool `/DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M`.

To update `overall_status` data of a selected travel instance, operation `UPDATE` is specified in the EML `MODIFY` statement. Note that the modifying operation takes place in `LOCAL MODE`. As a result, the update operation is excluded from the authorization checks (that may be implemented later on).

In addition to the fields for travel instance data to be updated, it is necessary to specify the sub-structure `%control`, which is part of the import parameter specification of the EML `MODIFY` statement for updating the instance data. The `UPDATE` call allows to trigger delta updates on consumer side where only the key field `key-travel_id` and the new value need to be supplied. From provider side, it allows to identify which fields are overwritten and which need to be kept according to the DB data. The `%control` structure contains for each entity field a flag `if_abap_behv=>mk-on`, which indicates whether the field was provided by the consumer or not.

*i Expand the following listing to view the source code.*

**Listing 2: Action Implementation**

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
    METHODS set_status_completed FOR MODIFY IMPORTING keys FOR ACTION travel~acceptTravel RESULT result.
  ...
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  ...
  METHOD set_status_completed.
    " Modify in local mode
    MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY travel
      UPDATE FROM VALUE #( for key in keys ( travel_id = key-travel_id
      overall_status = 'A' "
    Accepted
    %control-overall_status =
    if_abap_behv=>mk-on )
    FAILED failed
    REPORTED reported.
  ENDMETHOD.
  ...
ENDCLASS.
```

**Tip**

The implementation of the `rejectTravel` action takes place analogous to the `acceptTravel` action in the handler class `lhc_travel` which belongs to local types component of the behavior pool `/DMO/`
5.2.3.2.3  Enabling Actions for UI Consumption

On the UI, actions are triggered by choosing an action button. This action button must be configured in the backend in the related CDS view. Depending on where you want to use an action button on the UI (list report, or object page), use the annotation `@UI.lineItem` or `@UI.identification` to display an action button.

**Note**

The UI-annotations for actions must be used as element annotation. However, it does not have an impact on which element the action is annotated. The action button always appears at the same position on the UI.

You can use the following UI annotation to expose actions to the consumer:

**Syntax**

```plaintext
define view <CDSEntity> as select from <DATA_SOURCE> as ..
{
    @UI.lineItem: [ ...
        { type: FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'action_1', label: 'label 1', position: 10 },
        { type: FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'action_2', label: 'label 2', position: 20 },
        ...
    ]
    @UI.identification: [ ...
        { type: FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'action_1', label: 'label 1', position: 10 },
        { type: FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'action_2', label: 'label 2', position: 20 },
        ...
    ]
}
```

**Note**

The `dataAction` element references the name of the action as it is defined in the behavior definition.

5.2.3.3  Adding Static and Dynamic Feature Control

As an application developer you may want to determine, which entities of your business object should be create-, delete- and update-enabled, so that they can be modified during consumption using EML [page 1027] or OData services [page 1032]. In addition, you may also want to control which (UI) fields of an entity are read-only or which actions in which usage scenarios are enabled or disabled for execution by the end users.

In ABAP RESTful application programming model, feature control is precisely the way to accomplish such tasks. It allows you to control the visibility and changeability of fields, operations or entire entities.
The availability of feature control values is modeled in a behavior definition. Unlike static feature control, instance feature control requires not only a definition but also an implementation in a handler class of the behavior pool. Therefore, we also talk about dynamic feature control in case of instance feature control.

Feature control can be related to an entire entity or to individual elements of an entity, such as individual fields or operations. For more information, see Feature Control [page 96].

**Activities Relevant to Developers**

1. Modeling Static and Dynamic Feature Control [page 280]
2. Implementing Dynamic Feature Control [page 282]

### 5.2.3.3.1 Modeling Static and Dynamic Feature Control

Both, static and dynamic feature control is defined for different levels (entity, field, or action level) in the behavior definition by using the following syntax:

**Syntax: Feature Control in the Behavior Definition**

```plaintext
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasName]
   implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
   ... *
   /* (1) Feature control at entity level */
   /* Static operation control*/
   internal create
   internal update
   internal delete
   /* or (instance-based) dynamic operation control: implementation required! */
   update (features: instance);
   delete (features: instance);
   _association {create (features:instance); } 
   /* (2) Feature control at field level */
   /* Static field control */
   field (read only | mandatory) f1[, f2, ..., fn];
   /* or dynamic field control: implementation required! */
   field (features: instance) f1[, f2, ..., fn];
   /* (3) Feature control for actions */
   /* Static action control */
   internal action ActionName [...] 
   /* or dynamic action control: implementation required! */
   action ( features: instance ) ActionName [...] 
```

**1) Feature Control at Operation Level**

To manage a transactional behavior, an entity of a business object offers standard operations create, update, and delete for external consumption using EML or OData services. To only provide these operations without exposing them to consumers, the option internal can be set before the operation name.
For dynamic control of operations acting on individual entity instances, the option `(features: instance)` must be added to the operation in question. However, an implementation in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is necessary for this.

**More on this:** Feature Control Definition: Operations [page 101]

**2) Feature Control at Element Level**

Within the bracket of `define behavior for CDSEntity { ... }`, you can specify for fields of an entity if they should have certain access restrictions like being mandatory during a create operation or readonly during a modify operation.

**More on this:** Feature Control Definition: Fields [page 98]

For defining instance field control, the option `(features: instance)` must be added to the field in question. In this case however, the implementation of dynamic feature control in the referenced class pool ABAP_CLASS is required.

**More on this:** Feature Control Definition: Fields [page 98]

**3) Feature Control for Actions**

Specific operations of an entity of a business object can be defined using actions. Similar to standard operations, you can define internal actions in the behavior definition by adding the option internal to the operation name.

For dynamic control of actions acting on individual entity instances, the option `(features: instance)` must be added to the relevant action in the behavior definition.

**More on this:** Feature Control Definition: Actions [page 104]

**Procedure: Adding Feature Control to Behavior Definition /DMO/I_Travel_M**

Corresponding to the listing below, add the static and dynamic feature control to each entity in the behavior definition.

 Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**Listing: Added Feature Control to Behavior Definition /DMO/I_Travel_M**

```abap
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
...

// administrative fields: read only
field (readonly) last_changed_at, last_changed_by, created_at, created_by;
// mandatory fields that are required to create a travel
field (mandatory) agency_id, customer_id, begin_date, end_date,
overall_status, booking_fee, currency_code;
// Fields that are mandatory for create but should be read-only afterwards
field (mandatory: create, readonly: update) travel_id;
// dynamic action control
action (features: instance) acceptTravel result [1] $self;
action (features: instance) rejectTravel result [1] $self;
// dynamic operation control
association _Booking (create {features:instance};)
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop PUBLIC 281
For the travel entity, we define all admin fields as read-only, whereas the fields that are required for creating a travel instance are defined as mandatory.

The key field `travel_id` plays a special role and is intended for static field control which differentiates between the create operation and the update operation. Whereas it should be mandatory on creating new instances, it should be read-only when editing the instance. The same is true for the other key fields of the child entities and some other booking-specifics fields. This kind of field control is static, which means it does not have to be implemented in the corresponding feature control implementation.

Examples of dynamic action control are the two methods `acceptTravel` and `rejectTravel`. Depending on the status value (overall_status), these actions can become enabled or disabled.

Creating bookings by association is dynamically controlled. You can only create new bookings if the overall_status of the corresponding travel instance is not rejected.

### 5.2.3.3.2 Implementing Dynamic Feature Control

The implementation of dynamic feature control is based on the ABAP language in a local handler class (`lhc_handler`) as part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base handler class `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER`.

The dynamic feature control for an entity is implemented in this handler class using the method `FOR FEATURES`. For more information, see `<method> FOR FEATURES [page 936]`.

The output parameter `result` is used to return the feature control values.

These include:

- field control information: `%field-fieldx`
action control information: %features-%action-action_name
standard operation control information for update and delete: %features-(%update|%delete)
operation control information for create by association: %assoc-assoc_name.

Listing 1: Implementing Feature Control in a Local Handler Class

CLASS lhc_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS feature_ctrl_method FOR FEATURES
  IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR aliasedEntity RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD feature_ctrl_method.
    " Read data required
    READ ENTITY CDSEntityName
      FIELDS ( field1 field2 )
      WITH VALUE #( FOR keyval IN keys ( %key = keyval-%key ) )
      RESULT DATA(lt_result_variable).
    " Return feature control information
    result = VALUE #( FOR ls_variable IN lt_result_variable
      ( %key                          = ls_variable-%key
      " Field control information
      %field-field1                 = if_abap_behv=>fc-f-read_only
      %field-field2                 = if_abap_behv=>fc-f-mandatory
      " Action control information
      %features-%action-action_name = COND #( WHEN condition
        THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
        ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
      )
    " Operation (example: update) control information
    %features-%update             = COND #( WHEN condition
      THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
      ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
    )
    " Operation control information for create by association
    %assoc-_Assoc                 = COND #( WHEN condition
      THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
      ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
    )
    ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Dynamic Feature Control for Travel Entity

In the following step, we will apply the feature control specifically to our demo scenario.

UI Preview

The figure below shows the realization of the static and dynamic field control using the example of the travel object page that has been switched to edit mode. All mandatory fields are marked with a red star. Since it is an already existing travel instance selected, a re-assignment of travel ID number is suppressed in edit mode.
Static and Dynamic Feature Control on Field Level

The following figure shows the effect of dynamic control on the two action buttons **Accept Travel** and **Reject Travel**: Since the selected travel instance has a status of **A** (Accepted), the action button **Accept Travel** is disabled.

Another dynamic feature control is defined for the creating bookings by associations and creating booking supplements by association. In this case the **CREATE** button for creating associated booking instance is displayed if the travel instance's overall status is not rejected. It is hidden, if the travel is set to rejected. Likewise, the **CREATE** button for bookings supplements is displayed depending on the booking status of the corresponding booking instance.
Dynamic Feature Control for Create By Association

**Definition**

In the behavior definition, the feature control for travel entity is defined as follows:

```plaintext
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
...{field (readonly) last_changed_at, last_changed_by, created_at, created_by;
  field (mandatory) agency_id, overall_status, booking_fee, currency_code;
  field (mandatory: create, readonly: update) travel_id;
  action (features: instance) acceptTravel result [1] $self;
  action (features: instance) rejectTravel result [1] $self;
  association _Booking {create(features:instance);}
...}
```

**Procedure: Implementing Dynamic Feature Control for Travel Entity**

The method implementation begins with reading the `travel_id` field that is designated for dynamic field control. This read access is implemented by the EML read operation that provides access to the selected travel instance by using the `%key` component that contains all key elements of an entity. The result of this read operation is stored in `lt_travel_result`.

Depending on the value of `overall_status` field, the actions `rejectTravel` and `acceptTravel` are enabled or disabled, and the create by association is possible or not.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination `setTravelNumber`.
Listing 2: Implementation of Feature Control for Travel Entity

CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
... 
METHODS get_features FOR FEATURES IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features 
FOR travel RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD get_features.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_M IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY travel
    FIELDS (  travel id overall_status )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel_result)
  FAILED failed.
  result = VALUE #( FOR ls_travel IN lt_travel_result
    ( %key                           = ls_travel-%key
      %features-%action-rejectTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel- 
        overall_status = 'X'
        THEN
          if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )
          %features-%action-acceptTravel = COND #( WHEN ls_travel- 
        overall_status = 'A'
        THEN
          if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )
          %assoc_-Booking = COND #( WHEN ls_travel- 
        overall_status = 'X'
        THEN
          if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled ELSE if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled )
    )
  ).
ENDMETHOD.
...
ENDCLASS.

Dynamic Feature Control for Booking Entity

UI Preview

The following figure shows the effect of static and dynamic field control after switching the Fiori UI object page for bookings in edit mode.
Definition

define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKING_M unique
...
{  // static field control
    field ( mandatory ) carrier_id, connection_id, flight_date, booking_status;
    field ( readonly ) travel_id;
    // Fields that are mandatory for create but should be read-only afterwards
    field ( mandatory : create, readonly : update ) booking_id, booking_date, customer_id;
    // dynamic feature control create booking supplement by association
    association _BookSupplement { create (features:instance); }
...
}

Procedure: Implementing Dynamic Feature Control for Booking Entity

The get_features method implements dynamic field control for the create booking supplements by association.

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 3: Dynamic feature control for bookings implemented in behavior class /dmobp_booking_m

CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  ...
  METHODS get_features FOR FEATURES IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR
  booking RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  ...
  METHOD get_features.
    READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_M IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY booking
    FIELDS ( booking_id booking_status )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  
  ...
5.2.3.4 Developing Validations

For the managed scenario, add validations to check the values provided by the client.

Context and Procedure

Validations are used to check whether provided values by a client are consistent. They give direct feedback (messages) before the BO instance is saved to the database. For conceptual information about validations, see Validations [page 157].

For this demo scenario, define and implement validations for the entities travel and booking.

- **Entity travel**
  - The validation validateCustomer checks if the customer ID that is entered by the consumer is valid.
  - The validation validateAgency checks if the agency ID that is entered by the consumer is valid.
  - The validation validateDates checks if the begin_date is in the future and if the value of the end_date is after the begin_date.
  - The validation validateStatus checks if the value of the overall_status field is valid.

- **Entity booking**
  - The validation validateStatus checks if the value of the booking_status field is valid.

5.2.3.4.1 Defining Validations

As depicted in the listing below, add the following validations to each entity in the behavior definition.

*Expand the following listing to view the source code.*

**Listing: Added Validations to /DMO/I_Travel_M Behavior Definition managed;**

```abap
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
...
{ ...
  validation validateCustomer on save { field customer_id; }
```
For the travel entity, we define the following four validations:

- **validateCustomer**: Checks if the customer ID that is entered by the consumer is valid.
- **validateAgency**: Checks if the agency ID that is entered by the consumer is valid.
- **validateDates**: Checks if the `begin_date` is in the future and if the value of the `end_date` is after the `begin_date`.
- **validateStatus**: Checks if the value of the `overall_status` field is valid.

For the booking entity, also a validation `validateStatus` is defined. However, in contrast to the validation with the same name in the travel entity, `booking_status` is specified as trigger field.

### 5.2.3.4.2 Implementing Validations

#### Validations on Travel Entity

**UI Preview**

If the user enters an invalid Customer ID (an ID that is not available in the customer database table `/DMO/Customer`) the validation is initiated at the save time. As a result saving the instance data is rejected and a corresponding message is returned to the user.
Customer ID field validation on Fiori UI

Definition

In the behavior definition, the validations on the travel entity are defined as follows:

```
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
...
{
  ...
  validation validateCustomer on save { field customer_id; }
  validation validateAgency   on save { field agency_id; }
  validation validateDates    on save { field begin_date, end_date; }
  validation validateStatus   on save { field overall_status; }
}
```

Procedure: Implementing Validations on Travel Entity

It should come as no surprise that the signatures of all four methods for implementing validations are very similar.

In the following listing 2, you see details about the implementation of the validate_customer method:

(1) First, the EML read operation `READ ENTITY` provides read access to the selected travel instance by using the key.

To access data of the relevant entity fields, the `FIELDS ( )` addition is used. As a result of the read operation the entered (changed) value of the `customer_id` field for the selected travel instance are written into the table `lt_travel`. Only this value is relevant for the validation.

(2) In the following lines of code, we prepare an optimization for the following database select. By using the sorted table `lt_customer`, we ensure that only data records with non-initial customer IDs are considered for database access.

(3) By accessing the contents of the database table `/dmo/customer`, we can check whether the entered customer ID exists on the database at all.

(4) If the validation detects inconsistencies (customer ID is not valid or is initial), we must provide the key of all inconsistent instances as failed key and return error messages to the consumer. For all failed instances, also corresponding messages are created by calling the framework’s `new_message` method. For access to suitable message texts, a message class `/DMO/CM_FLIGHT_LEGAC` from the `/DMO/FLIGHT` package is reused.
Listing 2: Implementation of validate_customer Method

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS validate_customer          FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE importing keys FOR travel-validateCustomer.
  METHODS validate_agency            FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE importing keys FOR travel-validateAgency.
  METHODS validate_dates             FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE importing keys for travel-validateDates.
  METHODS validate_travel_status     FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE importing keys FOR travel-validateStatus.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  **********************************************************************
  * Validate customer data when saving travel data
  **********************************************************************
  METHOD validate_customer.
    " (1) Read relevant travel instance data
    READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_M IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY travel
      FIELDS ( customer_id )
      WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
    RESULT DATA(lt_travel).
    DATA lt_customer TYPE SORTED TABLE OF /dmo/customer WITH UNIQUE KEY customer_id.
    " (2) Optimization of DB select: extract distinct non-initial customer IDs
    lt_customer = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel DISCARDING DUPLICATES MAPPING customer_id = customer_id EXCEPT * ).
    DELETE lt_customer WHERE customer_id IS INITIAL.
    IF lt_customer IS NOT INITIAL.
    "(3) Check if customer ID exists
    SELECT FROM /dmo/customer FIELDS customer_id
    FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_customer
    WHERE customer_id = @lt_customer-customer_id
    INTO TABLE @DATA(lt_customer_db).
    ENDIF.
    " (4) Raise msg for non existing customer id
    LOOP AT lt_travel INTO DATA(ls_travel).
    IF ls_travel-customer_id IS INITIAL
    OR NOT line_exists( lt_customer_db[ customer_id = ls_travel-customer_id ] ).
    APPEND VALUE #( travel_id = ls_travel-travel_id ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( travel_id = ls_travel-travel_id
    %msg = new /dmo/cm_flight_messages( textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>customer_unknown
    severity = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-error )
    %element-customer_id = if_abap_behv=>mk-on )
    TO reported-travel.
    ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
```

The validation to check if the agency ID is valid has exactly the same structure as validate_customer. The code can be downloaded from ABAP Flight Reference Scenario in /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M.

In the following listing 3, you see details about the implementation of the validate_dates method:
(1) The EML read operation \texttt{READ ENTITY} provides read access to data from trigger fields \texttt{begin_date} and \texttt{end_date}. As a result of the read operation the entered (changed) values of the \texttt{begin_date} and \texttt{end_date} fields for the selected travel instance are written into the table row \texttt{lt_travel}.

(2), (3) The validation detects inconsistencies if the date value of \texttt{end_date} is before the date value of \texttt{begin_date} or if the date value of \texttt{begin_date} is in the past. Each validation can produce failed keys and messages. Any failed keys are stored in the table \texttt{FAILED} whereas the \texttt{REPORTED} table includes all instance-specific messages.

\textit{i Expand the following listing to view the source code.}

**Listing 3: Implementation of validate_dates Method**

```abap
METHOD validate_dates.
  " (1) Read relevant travel instance data
  READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_m IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY travel
    FIELDS ( begin_date end_date )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel_result).
  LOOP AT lt_travel_result INTO DATA(ls_travel_result).
    " (2) Check if end_date is not before begin_date
    IF ls_travel_result-end_date < ls_travel_result-begin_date.
    APPEND VALUE #( %key = ls_travel_result-%key
      travel_id = ls_travel_result-travel_id ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( %key = new /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
      textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>BEGIN_DATE_BEF_END_DATE
      severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
      begin_date = ls_travel_result-begin_date
      end_Date = ls_travel_result-end_date
      travel_id = ls_travel_result-travel_id
    )%element-begin_date = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
      %element-end_date = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.
    " (3) Check if begin_date is in the future
    ELSEIF ls_travel_result-begin_date < cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ).
    APPEND VALUE #( %key = ls_travel_result-%key
      travel_id = ls_travel_result-travel_id ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( %key = new /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
      textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>BEGIN_DATE_ON_OR_BEF_SYSDATE
      severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
      %element-begin_date = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
      %element-end_date = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
```

In the following listing 4, you see details about the implementation of the \texttt{validate_travel_status} method:
Checking the validity of overall_status values is performed within a case loop. The valid values O, X, and A are specified directly in the source code.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 4: Implementation of validate_travel_status Method

```abap
**********************************************************************
* Validate travel status when saving travel data
**********************************************************************
METHOD validate_travel_status.
  READ ENTITY /DMO/I_Travel_M\travel FIELDS ( overall_status ) WITH
    VALUE #( FOR <root_key> IN keys ( %key = <root_key> ) )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel_result).
  LOOP AT lt_travel_result INTO DATA(ls_travel_result).
    CASE ls_travel_result-overall_status.
      WHEN 'O'.  " Open
      WHEN 'X'.  " Cancelled
      WHEN 'A'.  " Accepted
      WHEN OTHERS.
        APPEND VALUE #( %key = ls_travel_result-%key ) TO failed-travel.
        APPEND VALUE #( %key = ls_travel_result-%key
          %msg = new /dmo/cm_flight_messages( 
            textid    = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>BEGIN_DATE_BEF_END_DATE
            severity  = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-error
            travel_id = ls_travel_result-travel_id )
          %element-overall_status = If_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.
    END_CASE.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
```

Validation on Booking Entity

UI Preview

In this case, we want to validate the status values of booking instances. If a user enters the wrong value K, according to the figure below, the instance with its data is not saved and an error message is displayed instead.
Booking Status Validation on Fiori UI

Definition

define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
...
...validation validateStatus on save { field booking_status; }
}

Procedure: Implementing Validation on Booking Entity

The validate_booking_status method is implemented analogous to the one of the previous case when checking travel status.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 5: Implementation of validate_booking_status Method

CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.

PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS validate_booking_status FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE importing keys FOR
...booking-validateStatus.

ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD validate_booking_status.

READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_M IN LOCAL MODE
ENDCLASS.
5.2.3.5 Developing Determinations

For the managed scenario, add determinations to calculate values implicitly.

Context and Procedure

With determinations, you can generalize the calculation of values in the business logic of a managed BO. For conceptual information about determinations, see Determinations [page 152].

For this demo scenario, define and implement determinations for the entities booking and booksuppl.

- **Entity booking**
  The determination `calculateTotalFlightPrice` calculates the total price of all flight bookings that belong to the selected travel. Technically speaking, this determination is a determination on modify with the trigger fields `flight_price` and `currency_code`.

- **Entity booking supplement**
  The determination `calculateTotalSupplmPrice` calculates the total price of all supplements assigned to an booking instance. Technically speaking, this determination is a determination on modify with the trigger fields `price` and `currency_code`.

5.2.3.5.1 Defining Determinations

As depicted in the listing below, add the following determinations to relevant entities in the behavior definition.

*Expand the following listing to view the source code.*
The determination calculateTotalFlightPrice on the booking entity is intended to handle the calculation of total price of all flight bookings that belong to the selected travel. The determination will be triggered by on modify as determination time when creating new booking instances or updating the flight price value or when changing the currency. In other words: both fields flight_price and currency_code serve as trigger fields and form, together with create and update operations, the trigger condition for the determination.

For the booking supplement entity, the determination calculateTotalSupplmPrice is defined analogously. This determination is used to calculate the total price of all supplements assigned to an individual flight booking instance.

All calculated values are finally used to re-calculate the total travel price at the root entity level.

5.2.3.5.2 Implementing Determinations

Determination on Booking Entity

UI Preview

The figure below refers to the starting point of viewing with a newly created travel instance with the initial amount (Total Price) and the travel currency 0.00 EUR.
The Newly Created Travel with a Total Price 0.00 EUR.

If a user adds a flight booking to the travel, then also the travel’s Total Price is updated.

Added Bookings Triggers an Update on Travel Data

If the user switches the booking’s object page to edit mode and then changes the Flight Price, then the Total Price is also updated at root level.
Definition

In the behavior definition, the determination on the booking entity is defined as follows:

```
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
  ...;
  determination calculateTotalFlightPrice on modify { field flight_price,
    currency_code; }
```

Procedure: Implementing the Determination Code in the Auxiliary Class

Since the pricing calculation is required for both determinations and we will access them from different handler classes, we outsource the more generic code of the `calculate_price` method to a separate class, which we already created in one of the previous steps as auxiliary class `/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m`.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

### Listing 2: Implementation of `calculate_price` Method as Part of the Auxiliary Class

```abap
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m DEFINITION
PUBLIC
FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC .
PUBLIC SECTION.
*  Type definition for import parameters ------------------------
  TYPES tt_travel_id TYPE TABLE OF /dmo/travel_id.
  TYPES tt_travel_reported TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED /dmo/i_travel_m.
  TYPES tt_booking_reported TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED /dmo/i_booking_m.
  TYPES tt_bookingsupplement_reported TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED /dmo/i_booksuppl_m.
*  Method for price calculation (used in determination calls) -------
METHOD calculate_price IMPORTING it_travel_id TYPE tt_travel_id.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD calculate_price.
  DATA: total_book_price_by_trav_curr TYPE /dmo/total_price,
        total_suppl_price_by_trav_curr TYPE /dmo/total_price.
```
IF it_travel_id IS INITIAL.
  RETURN.
ENDIF.

* (1) Read relevant travel instance data
-------------------------------------------
READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_m
  ENTITY travel
    FROM VALUE #( FOR lv_travel_id IN it_travel_id 
        travel_id = lv_travel_id
        %control-currency_code = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) )
  RESULT DATA(lt_read_travel).

* (2) Read relevant booking instance data by using the association (travel to booking)----
READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_m
  ENTITY travel BY \_booking
    FROM VALUE #( FOR lv_travel_id IN it_travel_id 
        travel_id = lv_travel_id
        %control-flight_price  = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
        %control-booking_id    = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
        %control-currency_code = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) )
  RESULT DATA(lt_read_booking_by_travel).
LOOP AT lt_read_booking_by_travel INTO DATA(ls_booking)
  GROUP BY ls_booking-travel_id INTO DATA(ls_travel_key).
  ASSIGN lt_read_travel[ KEY entity COMPONENTS travel_id = ls_travel_key ] TO FIELD-SYMBOL(<ls_travel>).
  CLEAR <ls_travel>-total_price.
  LOOP AT GROUP ls_travel_key INTO DATA(ls_booking_result)
    GROUP BY ls_booking_result-currency_code INTO DATA(lv_curr).
    total_book_price_by_trav_curr = 0.
    LOOP AT GROUP lv_curr INTO DATA(ls_booking_line).
      total_book_price_by_trav_curr += ls_booking_line-flight_price.
    ENDLOOP.
    IF lv_curr  = <ls_travel>-currency_code.
      <ls_travel>-total_price += total_book_price_by_trav_curr.
    ELSE.
      * (2') Call procedure for currency conversion
      --------------------------------------------
      /dmo/cl_flight_amdp=>convert_currency(
        EXPORTING
        iv_amount                   = total_book_price_by_trav_curr
        iv_currency_code_source     = lv_curr
        iv_currency_code_target     = <ls_travel>-currency_code
        iv_exchange_rate_date       = cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( )
      IMPORTING
        ev_amount                   = DATA(total_book_price_per_curr)
      ).
      <ls_travel>-total_price += total_book_price_per_curr.
    ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDLOOP.

* (3) Read relevant supplement data by using the association (booking to booking supplement)-----
READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_m
  ENTITY booking BY \_BookSupplement
    FROM VALUE #( FOR ls_travel IN lt_read_booking_by_travel 
        travel_id = ls_travel-travel_id
        booking_id = ls_travel-booking_id
        %control-price  = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
        %control-currency_code = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) )
  RESULT DATA(lt_read_booksuppl).
LOOP AT lt_read_booksuppl INTO DATA(ls_booksuppl)
  GROUP BY ls_booksuppl-travel_id INTO ls_travel_key.
  ASSIGN lt_read_travel[ KEY entity COMPONENTS travel_id = ls_travel_key ] TO <ls_travel>.
  LOOP AT GROUP ls_travel_key INTO DATA(ls_booksuppl_result)
    GROUP BY ls_booksuppl_result-currency_code INTO Data lv_curr.
    total_suppl_price_by_trav_curr = 0.
LOOP AT GROUP lv_curr INTO DATA(ls_booking_suppl2).
  total_suppl_price_by_trav_curr  += ls_booking_suppl2-price.
ENDLOOP.
IF lv_curr  = <ls_travel>-currency_code.
  <ls_travel>-total_price    += total_suppl_price_by_trav_curr.
ELSE.
  * (3’) Call procedure for currency conversion
  ---------------------------------------------------------------------
  /dmo/cl_flight_amdp=>convert_currency(
    EXPORTING
    iv_amount                     =  total_suppl_price_by_trav_curr
    iv_currency_code_source       =  lv_curr
    iv_currency_code_target       =  <ls_travel>-currency_code
    iv_exchange_rate_date         =
    cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( )
  ).
  <ls_travel>-total_price     += total_suppl_price_per_curr.
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDLOOP.

Procedure: Implementing the Determination on Booking Entity

The implementation of the determination method calculate_total_flight_price in the handler class lhc_travel of the corresponding class pool /dmo/bp_booking_m is now reduced to the method call /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m=>calculate_price().

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 3: Implementation of calculate_total_flight_price Method

********************************************************************************
* Calculates total booking price
********************************************************************************
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
  ...  
METHODS calculate_total_flight_price FOR DETERMINE ON MODIFY IMPORTING keys
  FOR booking~calculateTotalFlightPrice.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD calculate_total_flight_price.
    IF keys IS NOT INITIAL.
      /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m=>calculate_price(
        it_travel_id = VALUE #(  FOR GROUPS <booking> OP booking_key IN keys
                                    GROUP BY booking_key-travel_id WITHOUT
                                    MEMBERS
                                      ( <booking> ) ) )).
    ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.
Determination on Booking Supplement Entity

UI Preview
If the user adds a supplement to a given flight booking, then the travel amount is re-calculated.

The updated travel amount is displayed in as new value of Total Price.

In addition to the price, the currency was also defined as another trigger field for determination. In this way, we want to ensure that currency conversion is also carried out when the total amount is re-calculated. In our case, the supplement price with the current currency (USD) is converted into the travel currency (EUR).
Currency Conversion of Supplement Price and Updated Total Price in EUR

Definition
In the behavior definition, the determination on the booking supplement entity is defined as follows:

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M alias booksuppl
implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_M unique
...
{ ...
determination calculateTotalSupplmPrice on modify { field price, currency_code; }
}
```

Procedure: Implementing the Determination on Booking Supplement Entity
The implementation of the determination method `calculate_total_price` in the handler class `lhc_travel` of the corresponding class pool `/dmo/bp_bookingsupplement_m` is now reduced to the method call `/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m=>calculate_price()`. Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 4: Implementation of `calculate_total_price` Method

```
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS calculate_total_supplm_price FOR DETERMINE ON MODIFY IMPORTING keys FOR booksuppl~calculateTotalSupplmPrice.
  ...
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
 ********************************************************************************
  * Calculates total total flight price - including the price of supplements
  *********************************************************************************
  METHOD calculate_total_supplm_price.
  IF keys IS NOT INITIAL.
  /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary_m=>calculate_price( 
    it_travel_id = VALUE #(  FOR GROUPS <booking_suppl> OF booksuppl_key 
      GROUP BY booksuppl_key-travel_id WITHOUT 
        ( <booking_suppl> ) ) }
  ).
```
5.2.3.6 Integrating Additional Save in Managed Business Objects

This section explains how you can integrate Additional Save within the transactional life cycle of managed business objects.

Use Case

In some application scenarios, an external functionality must be invoked during the save sequence, after the managed runtime has written the changed data of business object's instances to the database but before the final commit work has been executed.

For example, reuse services like change documents and the application log must be triggered during the save sequence and the changes of the current transaction must be written to change requests.

In real-life business applications, the data of business objects may change frequently. It is often helpful, and sometime even necessary, to be able to trace or reconstruct changes for objects that are critical, for example for investigation or auditing purposes. The ABAP Application Server records changes to business data objects in change documents.

Application events can be centrally recorded in the application log. The entries of an application log contain information about who gave rise to a given event at what time and with which program.

In order to integrate the additional save into the save sequence as a part of the managed runtime, you must first add the corresponding syntax to the behavior definition and then implement the saver handler method as a part of the behavior pool.

**i Note**

If you would like to replace the managed runtime from saving the entity's data and reuse your own save logic instead, you can integrate the unmanaged save instead. More on this: Integrating Unmanaged Save in Managed Business Objects [page 313].

Additional Save Within the Transactional Life Cycle

The following figure depicts the additional save within the transactional life cycle of a managed business object.
Additional Save within the Transactional Processing

Interaction Phase

FOR MODIFY & Determinations onModify, ...

Save

Save Sequence

FINALIZE & Determinations onSave

CHECK BEFORE SAVE & Validations onSave

Save rejected

For each entity

SAVE (managed)  SAVE (managed)  SAVE (unmanaged)

Additional SAVE

COMMIT

CLEANUP (managed)
The save sequence is triggered for each business object after at least one successful modification (create, update, delete) was performed and saving data has been explicitly requested by the consumer. The save sequence starts with the `FINALIZE` processing step performing the final calculations and determinations before data changes can be persisted.

If the subsequent `CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE` call, including all `onSave` validations (validations with the `trigger time` on `save`), is positive for all transactional changes, the point-of-no-return is reached. From now on, a successful save is guaranteed by all involved BOs.

If, on the other hand, the result of the checks is negative at the time of `CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE`, a save is denied and the save sequence is interrupted. The consumer has now the option of modifying business object data and then trigger the save sequence again.

After the `point-of-no-return`, the save call persists all BO instance data from the transactional buffer in the database.

For each entity of an individual business object, the following options are available to execute the `SAVE` processing step:

- Managed save (default)
- Managed save in conjunction with additional save
- Unmanaged save (to prevent the managed runtime from saving the entities data)

All change requests of the current LUW are committed. The actual save execution is finished by `COMMIT WORK`.

The final `CLEANUP` clears all transactional buffers of all business objects involved in the transaction.

**Activities Relevant to Developers**

- Defining Additional Save in the Behavior Definition [page 305]
- Implementing Additional Save [page 307]

### 5.2.3.6.1 Defining Additional Save in the Behavior Definition

In this topic, you will learn the syntax for defining the additional save for managed business objects.

**Syntax for Defining Additional Save for Each Individual Entity**

In general, an additional save can be defined for each entity of a given business object with managed implementation type. This is done in the behavior definition of the business object by adding the keyword `with additional save` after specifying the persistent table `DB_TABLE`.

The database table `DB_TABLE` is used in managed implementation type for storing entity’s business data changes that result from the transactional life cycle.
The actual implementation of an additional save is based on the ABAP language and takes place in a local saver class as a part of the behavior pool. More on this: Implementing Additional Save [page 307]

```plaintext
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
  implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
  persistent table DB_TABLE
  with additional save
  
```

### Short Syntax for Defining Additional Save for All Entities

The following compact notation for defining the additional save is useful as an alternative if you want to define an additional save for all entities of a business object and the saver implementation is carried out in a single behavior pool ABAP_CLASS. In this case, the keyword with additional save is already specified in the header of the business object’s behavior definition.

```plaintext
[implementation] managed with additional save
  implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
  persistent table DB_Table
  
```

### Example

In the following behavior definition, the additional save is defined for the travel (root) entity and the booksuppl child entity, whereas for the booking child entity, the (default) managed save is defined.

### Listing: Behavior Definition with Additional Save

```plaintext
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
  implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
  persistent table /DMO/TRAVEL_M
  with additional save
  
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Develop
5.2.3.6.2 Implementing Additional Save

The additional save of the relevant business object’s entity is implemented in the behavior pool (ABAP_CLASS) that is specified in the behavior definition by the keyword implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique].

The implementation takes place in a local saver class as a part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base saver class CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER. This superclass provides the predefined method save_modified that needs to be redefined in the local saver class lhc_saver.

General Implementation Steps

The following listing provides a template with the main steps for implementing additional save within the save_modified method.

The essential elements of this method are the predefined, implicit parameters:

- CREATE-EntityName
- UPDATE-EntityName
- DELETE-EntityName

These parameters contain not only the table type of the entity to be modified, but also the %control structure that can be used for identifying which elements are requested by the consumer.
CLASS lcl_saver DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS save_modified REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lcl_saver IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD save_modified.
  IF CREATE-EntityName IS NOT INITIAL.
    " Provide table of instance data of all instances that have been created
    " during current transaction
    " Use %CONTROL to get information on what entity fields have been set when
    " creating the instance
    ENDIF.
  IF UPDATE-EntityName IS NOT INITIAL.
    " Provide table of instance data of all instances that have been updated
    " during current transaction
    " Use %CONTROL to get information on what entity fields have been updated
    ENDIF.
  IF DELETE-EntityName IS NOT INITIAL.
    " Provide table with keys of all instances that have been deleted during
    " current transaction
    " NOTE: There is no information on fields when deleting instances
    ENDIF.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Example

The following example shows you in detail how you can implement additional save based on our travel demo scenario [page 984].

Since in the current release of SAP CP, ABAP Environment, the reuse services like change documents and the application log are not yet available, we will demonstrate a simplified example for integrating the for additional
save. In this example, all essential changes to the root instance of the travel business object should be recorded in a log table. This is defined in such a way that it can hold different travel instance data and contains the following fields:

Log Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Log Table Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>change_id</td>
<td>Identifier for an individual change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel_id</td>
<td>Key field of the travel entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing_operation</td>
<td>Standard operation for travel instances: create, update and delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changed_field_name</td>
<td>Name of the field that has been created or changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changed_value</td>
<td>Value of a created or changed entity field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>created_at</td>
<td>Date and time of instance data creation, update or deletion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following listing shows you the definition of the corresponding table `/DMO/LOG_TRAVEL` in the table editor.

Listing: Source code with table definition

```abap
@EndUserText.label : 'flight reference scenario: log changes to travel entity'
@AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
@AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
@AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
@AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #LIMITED
define table /dmo/log_travel {
 key client : abap.clnt not null;
 key change_id : abap.raw(16);
 travel_id : /dmo/travel_id not null;
 changing_operation : abap.char(10);
 changed_field_name : abap.char(32);
 changed_value : abap.char(32);
 created_at : timestamp1;
}
```
UI Preview

Consumer modifies business data on Fiori UI

After successful save, the relevant entries are recorded in the log table

Definition

In the behavior definition, the additional save for the root entity may be defined as follows:

```apav
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
persistent table /DMO/TRAVEL_M
with additional save
... 
... 
```  

Implementation

The source code of our example implementation is divided into three sections:

Each of these sections is initiated with an IF statement, each of which checks whether

- the travel instances have been created (IF create-travel IS NOT INITIAL),
- their elements have been modified (IF update-travel IS NOT INITIAL), or
• deleted (IF delete-travel IS NOT INITIAL) by a consumer.

The relevant instance data is written to the internal table lt_travel_log and passed to the log table for persistent storage on the database (INSERT /dmo/log_travel...).

When creating new travel instances and updating instance data, the %control structure is used to get information on what fields have been provided or updated by the consumer. The %control structure contains a flag if _abap_behv=>mk-on for each field, which indicates whether the field was provided (or changed) by the consumer or not.

When creating instances (1), the new values for relevant fields of the travel entity are written into the internal table lt_travel_log_c. In our demo code, we select the two fields booking_fee and overall_status as an example. Their values are transferred as separate rows by means of APPEND into lt_travel_log_c and finally written into the log table /dmo/log_travel with INSERT.

Similarly, in the update case (2), we also select two fields, namely customer_id and description, as relevant fields for recording. So whenever the value of one of these fields is changed for an existing travel instance by a consumer, a new table row (with the corresponding change ID) is appended to the internal table lt_travel_log_c.

The last section (3) deals with the deletion of travel instances. However, in this case we are only interested in the information of which instances have been deleted. Therefore, there is no information of fields available when deleting instances.

Listing: The method save_modified implements the additional save

CLASS lcl_save DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS save_modified REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lcl_save IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD save_modified.
  DATA lt_travel_log   TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/log_travel.
  DATA lt_travel_log_c TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/log_travel.
  DATA lt_travel_log_u TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/log_travel.
  " (1) Get instance data of all instances that have been created
  IF create-travel IS NOT INITIAL.
  " Creates internal table with instance data
  LOOP AT lt_travel_log ASSIGNING #( create-travel ).
  <fs_travel_log_c>-changing_operation = 'CREATE'.
  " Generate time stamp
  GET TIME STAMP FIELD <fs_travel_log_c>-created_at.
  " Read travel instance data into ls_travel that includes %control
  structure
  READ TABLE create-travel WITH TABLE KEY entity COMPONENTS travel_id =<fs_travel_log_c>-travel_id INTO DATA(ls_travel).
  IF sy-subrc = 0.
  " If new value of the booking_fee field created
  IF ls_travel-%control-booking_fee = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed.
  " Generate uuid as value of the change_id field
  TRY.
  <fs_travel_log_c>-change_id = cl_system_uuid=>create_uuid_x16_static( ) .
  CATCH cx_uuid_error.
  "Handle exception
  ENDTRY.
  <fs_travel_log_c>-changed_field_name = 'booking_fee'.
  <fs_travel_log_c>-changed_value = ls_travel-booking_fee.
  APPEND <fs_travel_log_c> TO lt_travel_log_c.
ENDIF.
" If new value of the overall_status field created
IF ls_travel-%control-overall_status = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed.
" Generate uuid as value of the change_id field
TRY.
  <fs_travel_log_c>-change_id =
  cl_system_uuid=>create_uuid_x16_static( ) .
  CATCH cx_uuid_error.
  "handle exception
  ENDTRY.
  <fs_travel_log_c>-changed_field_name = 'overall_status'.
  <fs_travel_log_c>-changed_value = ls_travel-overall_status.
  APPEND <fs_travel_log_c> TO lt_travel_log_c.
ENDIF.
" If ls_travel-%control-...
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
" Inserts rows specified in lt_travel_log into the DB table /dmo/log_travel
INSERT /dmo/log_travel FROM TABLE @lt_travel_log_c.
ENDIF.
" (2) Get instance data of all instances that have been updated during the
transaction
IF update-travel IS NOT INITIAL.
  lt_travel_log = CORRESPONDING #( update-travel ).
  LOOP AT update-travel ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_log_u>).
    ASSIGN lt_travel_log[ travel_id = <fs_travel_log_u>-travel_id ] TO FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_db>).
    <fs_travel_db>-changing_operation = 'UPDATE'.
    " Generate time stamp
    GET TIME STAMP FIELD <fs_travel_db>-created_at.
    IF <fs_travel_log_u>-%control-customer_id = if_abap_behv=>mk-on.
      <fs_travel_db>-changed_value = <fs_travel_log_u>-customer_id.
    " Generate uuid as value of the change_id field
    TRY.
      <fs_travel_db>-change_id =
      cl_system_uuid=>create_uuid_x16_static( ) .
      CATCH cx_uuid_error.
      "handle exception
      ENDTRY.
      <fs_travel_db>-changed_field_name = 'customer_id'.
      APPEND <fs_travel_db> TO lt_travel_log_u.
    ENDIF.
    IF <fs_travel_log_u>-%control-description = if_abap_behv=>mk-on.
      <fs_travel_db>-changed_value = <fs_travel_log_u>-description.
    " Generate uuid as value of the change_id field
    TRY.
      <fs_travel_db>-change_id =
      cl_system_uuid=>create_uuid_x16_static( ) .
      CATCH cx_uuid_error.
      "handle exception
      ENDTRY.
      <fs_travel_db>-changed_field_name = 'description'.
      APPEND <fs_travel_db> TO lt_travel_log_u.
    ENDIF.
    "IF <fs_travel_log_u>-%control-....
    ENDLOOP.
" Inserts rows specified in lt_travel_log into the DB table /dmo/log_travel
INSERT /dmo/log_travel FROM TABLE @lt_travel_log_u.
ENDIF.
" (3) Get keys of all travel instances that have been deleted during the
transaction
IF delete-travel IS NOT INITIAL.
  lt_travel_log = CORRESPONDING #( delete-travel ).
  LOOP AT lt_travel_log ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_log_d>).
    <fs_travel_log_d>-changing_operation = 'DELETE'.
    " Generate time stamp
    GET TIME STAMP FIELD <fs_travel_log_d>-created_at.
    " Generate uuid as value of the change_id field
"
5.2.3.7 Integrating Unmanaged Save in Managed Business Objects

This section explains how you can integrate unmanaged save within the transactional life cycle of managed business objects.

Use Case

In certain use cases you might be requested to prevent business object’s managed runtime from saving business data (changes). By default, the managed runtime saves all changed instances of business object’s entity in the database table that is specified as persistent table DB_TABLE in the behavior definition (managed save). However, you define for each entity of the business object or for the entire business object whether the complete save is done by the managed runtime or by the unmanaged save instead. This implementation flavor of a managed scenario may be relevant to you if you need to implement the interaction phase for your application anyway, but the update task function modules are already available.

The following figure outlines the main components of business objects managed runtime that integrates function modules for persistent save of business data changes. Within the interaction phase, a consumer calls the business object operations to change business data and read instances with or without the transactional changes. The business object runtime keeps the changes in its internal transactional buffer which represents the state of instance data. After all changes on the related entity were performed, the instance data can be persisted. This is realized during the save sequence. To prevent the managed runtime from saving the data, the function modules (for the update task) are called to save data changes of the relevant business object’s entity (unmanaged save). In order to persist the business data changes, the function modules access the corresponding tables of the HANA database.

Note that the behavior handler can also directly access table data from the database during the interaction phase: Authorization checks, for example, require direct access to the table data on the database.
Unmanaged Save in Transactional Life Cycle

The following figure depicts the unmanaged save within the transactional life cycle of a managed business object.
Unmanaged Save within the Transactional Processing

Interaction Phase

FOR MODIFY & Determinations onModify, ...

Save

Save Sequence

FINALIZE & Determinations onSave

CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE & Validations onSave

Save rejected

For each entity

SAVE (managed)

SAVE (managed)

Additional SAVE

SAVE (unmanaged)

COMMIT

CLEANUP (managed)
The save sequence is triggered for each business object after at least one successful modification (create, update, delete) was performed and saving data has been explicitly requested by the consumer. The save sequence starts with the **FINALIZE** processing step performing the final calculations and determinations before data changes can be persisted.

If the subsequent **CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE** call, including all onSave validations (validations with the trigger time [page 1037] on save), is positive for all transactional changes, the point-of-no-return is reached. From now on, a successful save is guaranteed by all involved BOs.

If, on the other hand, the result of the checks is negative at the time of **CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE**, a save is denied and the save sequence is interrupted. The consumer has now the option of modifying business object data and then trigger the save sequence again.

After the **point-of-no-return**, the save call persists all BO instance data from the transactional buffer in the database.

For each entity of an individual business object, the following options are available to execute the **SAVE** processing step:

- Managed save (default)
- Managed save in conjunction with additional save
- Unmanaged save (to prevent the managed runtime from saving the entities data)

All change requests of the current **LUW** [page 1030] are committed. The actual save execution is finished by **COMMIT WORK**.

The final **CLEANUP** clears all transactional buffers of all business objects involved in the transaction.

**Activities Relevant to Developers**

In order to integrate unmanaged save into the save sequence as a part of the managed runtime, you must first add the corresponding syntax to the behavior definition and then implement the saver handler method as a part of the behavior pool.

- **Defining Unmanaged Save in the Behavior Definition** [page 316]
- **Implementing the Save Handler Method** [page 318]

**5.2.3.7.1 Defining Unmanaged Save in the Behavior Definition**

In this topic, you will learn the syntax for defining unmanaged save for managed business objects.

**Syntax for Defining Unmanaged Save for Each Individual Entity**

In general, unmanaged save can be defined for each entity of a given business object with managed implementation type. This is done in the behavior definition of the business object by adding the keyword **with**
unmanaged save. Note that persistent table DB_TABLE does not apply in unmanaged save. In this case, a function module in update task is used for storing entity’s business data changes that result from the transactional life cycle.

The actual implementation of the unmanaged save is based on the ABAP language and takes place in a local saver class as a part of the behavior pool. More on this: Implementing the Save Handler Method [page 318]

```
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
with unmanaged save
...[...
```

Short Syntax for Defining Unmanaged Save for All Entities

The following compact notation for defining the unmanaged save is useful as an alternative if you want to define an unmanaged save for all entities of a business object and the saver implementation is carried out in a single behavior pool ABAP_CLASS. In this case, the keyword with unmanaged save is already specified in the header of the business object’s behavior definition.

```
[implementation] managed with unmanaged save
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
...[...
```

Example

In the following behavior definition, the unmanaged save is defined for the travel (root) entity, whereas for the child entity booking the (default) managed save and for the child entity booksuppl an additional save is defined.

Listing: Behavior Definition with Unmanaged Save

```
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
with unmanaged save
...[...

define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKING_M unique
persistent table /DMO/BOOKING_M
...[...
5.2.3.7.2  Implementing the Save Handler Method

The unmanaged save of the relevant business object's entity is implemented in the behavior pool (ABAP_CLASS) that is specified in the behavior definition by the keyword `implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique].`

The implementation takes place in a local saver class as a part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base saver class `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER`. This superclass provides the predefined method `save_modified` that needs to be redefined in the local saver class `lhc_saver`.

→ Remember

**Convention:** The local saver class that implements the `save_modified` method is either a separate global class or a part of the root implementation (behavior pool for the root entity).

**General Implementation Steps**

The following listing provides a template with the main steps for implementing unmanaged save within the `save_modified` method.

The essential elements of this method are the predefined, implicit parameters:

- CREATE-EntityName
- UPDATE-EntityName
- DELETE-EntityName

These parameters contain not only the table type of the entity to be modified, but also the `%control [page 947]` structure that can be used for identifying which elements have been changed during the current transaction.
Accessing Element Information for the Implicit Parameter Type (F2)

The actual implementation steps of the \texttt{save\_modified} method are shown in the template below:

\textbf{Listing: Template for Implementing Unmanaged Save}

\begin{verbatim}
CLASS lcl_saver DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS save_modified REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lcl_saver IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD save_modified.
    IF CREATE-EntityName IS NOT INITIAL.
      " Provide table of instance data of all instances that have been created
      " during current transaction
      " Use \%CONTROL to get information on what entity fields have been set or
      " updated during the current transaction
      ENDIF.
    IF UPDATE-EntityName IS NOT INITIAL.
      " Provide table of instance data of all instances that have been updated
      " during current transaction
      " Use \%CONTROL to get information on what entity fields have been updated
      ENDIF.
    IF DELETE-EntityName IS NOT INITIAL.
      " Provide table with keys of all instances that have been deleted during
      " current transaction
      " NOTE: There is no information on fields when deleting instances
      ENDIF.
  ENDMETHOD.
  ...
ENDCLASS.
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Example}

The following example shows you in detail how you can implement unmanaged save specifically based on our \textit{travel demo scenario} [page 984]. In particular, the previous implementation must be extended in such a way
that the available function modules are used to save changes to business data of the booking supplement child entity.

**Function Modules**

In our example, the corresponding function modules for creating, changing, and deleting instances of the booking supplement entity are already available in the corresponding function group of the demo package `/DMO/FLIGHT_MANAGED`.

Listing: Function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_BOOKSUPPL_C`

```
FUNCTION /dmo/flight_booksuppl_c
  IMPORTING
    VALUE(values) TYPE /dmo/tt_booksuppl_m.
  INSERT /dmo/booksuppl_m FROM TABLE @values.
ENDFUNCTION.
```

**Note**

To use this source code, the table type `/dmo/tt_booksuppl_m` is also required for the `values` importing parameter.
The following listing provides you with the function module’s source code for persistent storage of individual elements of existing booking supplement instances.

**Listing: Function module /DMO/FLIGHT_BOOKSUPPL_U**

```abap
FUNCTION /dmo/flight_booksuppl_u
  IMPORTING
  VALUE(values) TYPE /dmo/tt_booksuppl_m.
  UPDATE /dmo/booksuppl_m FROM TABLE @values.
ENDFUNCTION.
```

The following listing provides you with the source code of the function module for deleting booking supplement instances.

**Listing: Function module /DMO/FLIGHT_BOOKSUPPL_D**

```abap
FUNCTION /dmo/flight_booksuppl_d
  IMPORTING
  VALUE(values) TYPE /dmo/tt_booksuppl_m.
  DELETE /dmo/booksuppl_m FROM TABLE @values.
ENDFUNCTION.
```

**Definition**

In the behavior definition, the unmanaged save for the child entity `booksuppl` may be defined as follows:

```abap
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique
  ...
  ...
```
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M alias booksuppl implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_M unique with unmanaged save

Implementation

As shown in the listing below, the source code of our example implementation is divided into three sections:

Each of these sections is initiated with an IF statement, each of which checks whether the booking supplement instances have been created, their elements have been modified, or deleted by a consumer. The relevant instance data is written to the internal table lt_booksuppl_db and passed to the respective function module for persistent storage on the database.

In case of updating instance data (IF update-booksuppl IS NOT INITIAL), the %control structure is used to get information on what fields have been updated by the consumer. The %control structure contains a flag if_abap_behv=>mk-on for each field, which indicates whether the field was provided (changed) by the consumer or not.

To eliminate the option that the unchanged fields are overwritten with default values, we must ensure that they are kept according to the database data. This is the reason why we read the current data set from the database using the statement

Listing: The method save_modified implements the unmanaged save

CLASS lcl_save DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS save_modified REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS lcl_save IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD save_modified.
    DATA lt_booksuppl_db TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /DMO/BOOKSUPPL_M.
    " (1) Get instance data of all instances that have been created
    IF create-booksuppl IS NOT INITIAL.
    lt_booksuppl_db = CORRESPONDING #( create-booksuppl ).
    CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_BOOKSUPPL_C' EXPORTING values =
    lt_booksuppl_db .
    ENDIF.
    " (2) Get instance data of all instances that have been updated during the transaction
    IF lt_booksuppl_db IS NOT INITIAL.
    lt_booksuppl_db = CORRESPONDING #( update-booksuppl ).
    SELECT * FROM /dmo/booksuppl_m FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_booksuppl_db
    WHERE booking_supplement_id = @lt_booksuppl_db-
    booking_supplement_id
    INTO TABLE @lt_booksuppl_db .
    " Take over field values that have been changed during the transaction
    LOOP AT update-booksuppl ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<ls_unmanaged_booksuppl>).
    ASSIGN lt_booksuppl_db[ travel_id  = <ls_unmanaged_booksuppl>-travel_id
    booking_id = <ls_unmanaged_booksuppl>-booking_id
    booking_supplement_id = <ls_unmanaged_booksuppl>-booking_supplement_id
    ] TO FIELD-SYMBOL(<ls_booksuppl_db>).
    IF <ls_unmanaged_booksuppl>%control-supplement_id = if_abap_behv=>mk-on.
    ELSE.
    ENDIF.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
5.2.4 Developing a Projection Layer for Flexible Service Consumption

For a more flexible service consumption, every transactional business object is projected onto a service specific context. In other words, only those elements of the data model and those behavior characteristics and operations that are needed in the relevant business service context are exposed for the service. By means of projections, you can expose one BO in different business contexts by using different BO subsets. The general business logic is defined in the BO whereas the BO projection adopts a subset of the business logic.

A layering with projections enables robust application programming. You can change or enhance the BO without changing the exposed service as the scope of the service is defined in the projection layer. Enhancing the business object with additional structure or behavior does not have any effect on the resulting service.

Projection Layers in the Travel Business Scenario

The business object that you developed with the help of the previous sections is ready to run. It uses the managed runtime for CRUD (create, read, update, delete) operations. In addition, the relevant business logic for managing travels with action, determinations and validations was implemented. The BO CDS entities expose every element that might be relevant for any business service scenario. The behavior is defined and implemented for any kind of business service.

This demo scenario uses two projections with a different service scope. The resulting apps represent two role-based approaches for managing travels:

One business object projection uses the BO characteristics and the operations that are relevant for processing travel data. This resulting UI service serves the role of a data processor. The responsible person can enter the
information about travels, bookings and booking supplements into the role-based app for processing travel data. This person needs functionality to create, update and delete entries on all three tiers of the business object. In addition, the action `CreateTravelByTemplate` is designed to facilitate the creation of new travel entries. The instance-bound action reads the values of the selected entry and creates a new entry based on these values with some deviations for the `TravelID` and the travel dates.

The other business object projection is the basis for a UI service that contains the functionality that is relevant for an approver. Imagine a person, maybe a manager of a travel agency, that approves the data that was entered by the processor. That means, this person sees the travel information and the corresponding booking data. Based on this data, the approver can either accept or reject the travel. For a minimal scope of fields in the travel entity the approver is enabled to edit the values, for example the `BookingFee` or the `Description`. The information about bookings is set to read-only for the approver. The approver is not allowed to change the fields of the booking entity.

See Business Scenario [page 244] for a detailed list of features for the respective roles.

The design time artifacts that you need for these projection scenarios are illustrated in the following figure. The CDS views, as well as the behavior definition must be projected for both roles. To expose the BO projections for a UI service, you need to create a service definition and binding for both BO projections. The behavior implementation is not projected. Every behavior characteristic or operation that is used in the BO projection must be implemented in the underlying BO implementation. You cannot define new behavior that needs implementation in the BO projection.

### Activities Relevant to Developers

1. Providing a Data Model for Projections [page 325]
   1. Projection Views for the Processor BO Projection [page 326]
2. Projection Views for the Approver BO Projection [page 337]
2. Providing Behavior for Projections [page 343]
   1. Behavior for the Processor BO Projection [page 344]
   2. Behavior for the Approver BO Projection [page 346]
3. Defining Business Services Based on Projections [page 347]

Related Information

Business Object Projection [page 194]

5.2.4.1 ☁ Providing a Data Model for Projections

The data model for the BO projection is defined in CDS projection views. Projection views are data definition artifacts with a syntax that differs slightly from CDS views. With projection views, you define the consumption-specific data model.

Syntax: CDS Projection View

For a detailed explanation of the syntax, see CDS Projection View [page 197].

Data Model in the Travel Scenario

For our travel scenario, the data models for the two projections have to be defined. For the processor BO, all three entities of the underlying BO are projected; the approver BO only uses the travel entity and the booking entity. All elements are aliased as an automatic mapping is provided for the elements in the projection views. For both projections, we use all elements from the underlying CDS views and the associations that are defined in the projected entity. For the processor BO, the only language-dependent text element in the booking supplement entity must be localized to get the description in the relevant language.

For both BO projections, the compositions have to be redirected.

UI Specifics for the Travel Scenario

Since the projection layer is the first service-specific layer, all UI specification must be defined in the CDS projection views. In the travel scenario, the following UI specifics are relevant on the projection layer:

- UI annotations defining position, labels, and facets of UI elements
- Search Enablement
- Text elements (language dependent and independent)
- Value Helps

These features have to be defined via annotations in the projection views.

The following sections provide a detailed description on how to project the existing BO to define a data model for one business object that is tailored to expose a UI service for a data processor and one that is tailored for a data approver.

- Projection Views for the Processor BO Projection [page 326]
5.2.4.1.1 Projection Views for the Processor BO Projection

To define a data model for the BO projection that defines the scope for the processor application, the following tasks need to be done:

- Creating the Projection CDS Views for the Processor [page 326]
- Defining the Data Model for the Processor Projection Views [page 327]

5.2.4.1.1.1 Creating the Projection CDS Views for the Processor

A data processor needs to be able to create, update, and delete entries for the travel entity, the booking entity, and the booking supplement entity. That means, all three nodes of the composition structure must be projected.

For the following CDS views, create the corresponding projection views by choosing the projection view template in the creation wizard for data definitions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS views for BO structure</th>
<th>/DMO/ I_TRAVEL_M</th>
<th>/DMO/ I_BOOKING_M</th>
<th>/DMO/ I_BOOKSUPPL_M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDS views for BO projection</td>
<td>/DMO/ C_TRAVEL_PROCessor_M</td>
<td>/DMO/ C_BOOKING_PROCessor_M</td>
<td>/DMO/ C_BOOKSUPPL_PROCessor_M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**i Note**

The names are assigned according to the naming conventions for projection views: Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

For more information, see Creating Projection Views [page 983].

The resulting CDS projection views must have the following syntax:

```
define root view entity <projection_view> as projection on <projected_view>
```

For more information about the syntax in projection views, see Syntax for CDS Projection Views [page 197]
5.2.4.1.1.2 Defining the Data Model for the Processor Projection Views

The following topics provide you with a detailed description on how to define the data model for the CDS projection views that are used in the BO projection for the processor.

- Travel Projection View /DMO/C_TRAVEL_PROCESSOR_M [page 327]
- Booking Projection View /DMO/C_BOOKING_PROCESSOR_M [page 331]
- Booking Supplement Projection View /DMO/C_BOOKSUPPL_PROCESSOR_M [page 334]

5.2.4.1.1.2.1 Travel Projection View /DMO/C_TRAVEL_PROCESSOR_M

For the service specific projection, the elements as well as all the UI specifics need to be defined.

The data model defines which elements are exposed for the UI service. In addition, in data definitions for projection views you define all UI specifications.

The following UI is achieved by implementing the corresponding features in the CDS Travel projection view for the processor.

**Preview: UI Application for Processor**

![UI Application for Processor](image)

- Travel List Report
- Travel Object Page
Expand the following listing to view the source code of the travel projection view /DMO/C_TRAVEL_PROCESSOR_M that results in the previously shown UI:

/DMO/C_TRAVEL_PROCESSOR_M

@EndUserText.label: 'Travel projection view'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@UI: {
    headerInfo: { type: 'Travel', typePlural: 'Travels', title: { type: #STANDARD, value: 'TravelID' } }
}@Search.searchable: true
define root view entity /DMO/C_Travel_Processor_M
    as projection on /DMO/I_Travel_M
{
    @UI: {
        facet: [ { id: 'Travel', purpose: #STANDARD, type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE, label: 'Travel', position: 10 },
    }
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 10, importance: #HIGH } ],
        identification: [ { position: 10, label: 'Travel ID [1,...,99999999]' } ]
    }
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    key travel_id as TravelID,
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 20, importance: #HIGH } ],
        identification: [ { position: 20 } ],
        selectionField: [ { position: 20 } ]
    }
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Agency', element: 'AgencyID' } }]
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['AgencyName']
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    agency_id as AgencyID,
    Agency.Name as AgencyName,
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 30, importance: #HIGH } ],
        identification: [ { position: 30 } ],
        selectionField: [ { position: 30 } ]
    }
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Customer', element: 'CustomerID' } }]
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    customer_id as CustomerID,
    _Customer.LastName as CustomerName,
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 40, importance: #MEDIUM } ],
        identification: [ { position: 40 } ]
    }
    begin_date as BeginDate,
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 41, importance: #MEDIUM } ],
        identification: [ { position: 41 } ]
    }
    end_date as EndDate,
    @UI: {
        identification: [ { position: 42 } ]
    }
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    booking_fee as BookingFee,
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 43, importance: #MEDIUM } ],
        identification: [ { position: 43, label: 'Total Price' } ]
    }
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
Explanation

For the data model of the travel projection view in our scenario, you can adopt all elements of the projected view, except for `created_by`, `created_at` and `last_changed_by`. Those elements are not needed for our service use cases. The element `last_changed_at`, however, is needed to store the eTag, but the other administrative elements are not needed in the scenario. The other elements for travel information are used to process travel data.

→ Remember

The eTag is needed for optimistic concurrency check. In the travel BO, all nodes use their own master eTag.

All elements of the projection can be given an alias with an automatic mapping done by the service framework.

The travel projection view uses a subset of the associations that are defined in the projected view. `_Agency` and `_Customer` are needed for text provisioning. These associations can simply be adopted in the projection view. On the other hand, the composition to the child entity booking must be redirected as the target entity changes in the projection layer. The association `_Currency` is not necessary in the projection view. It is only defined in the underlying BO data model to represent a complete data model structure.

Note

Before you can activate the travel projection root view for the processor, you need to create the booking projection view with the redirection of the composition to parent in the booking projection child view. Compositions must always be consistent from parent to child and vice-versa.

UI Specifics

The UI header information is given in an entity annotation to label the list report page.

The travel processor projection view is the root node of the BO projection. When opening the travel processing app, the travel entries are displayed as list items with a navigation to their object page and the corresponding bookings. From this object page, it is possible to navigate to the booking supplements. In the back end, navigating is implemented by compositions. For the UI to enable navigation, UI facets need to be defined in the travel projection view for the identification reference of the travel entity on the object page and for the line item reference of the booking entity.
In addition, the elements for list items and the identification reference for the object page need to be annotated in the projection view with the respective UI annotations to define position, importance and possible labels.

To indicate the number range for the TravelID element, the range is added to the label. In the same manner, the possible values for the element TravelStatus are added.

For more information about UI navigation and positioning of elements, see Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34] or UI Annotations [page 816].

The annotations that are used in the projected entity are propagated to the projection view. You do not need to reannotate elements with the same annotations as in the projected entity. However, if an annotation draws reference to a specific element and the name of that specific element is changed with an alias in the projection view, the propagated annotation keeps the reference that was given in the projected entity. A semantic relationship between two elements can then be lost. In such a case, you have to reuse the same annotation and use the alias name in the element reference of the annotation.

In our example scenario, this is the case for the semantic relationship between CurrencyCode and TotalPrice or BookingFee. In the projection view, you do not need to annotate CurrencyCode with @Semantics.currencyCode: true as this annotation is inherited from the projected entity. The annotation @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code' is inherited as well, but the name of the field has changed in the projection view. So you need to reannotate the element with the new alias name: @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'.

Tip
Check the Active AnnotationsView to find out which annotations are active for the current CDS view and what the values of the active annotations are. For more information, see .

To be able to search for a specific data set, the travel projection view must be search enabled and at least one element must be assigned as default search element. In addition, you can define selection fields to provide a filter bar for certain elements. For more information about search enabling, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608]. For more information about selection fields, see List Report Header [page 37].

To access the corresponding texts or descriptions for ID elements, the relationship between the elements AgencyID and CustomerID and their text elements in the associated text provider views must be established. The text elements of the text provider view must be integrated in the projection view. The text provider view must be associated to the projection view and the text element in the text provider view must be annotated with @Semantics.text: true. For more information about text provisioning, see Defining Text Elements [page 591].

Especially for a data processing role, value helps are particularly important to find the necessary values for the ID elements AgencyID, CustomerID and CurrencyCode. Value helps are defined with the annotation @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition. The value help provider view does not have to be associated to get the value help as the entity and the element are referenced in the annotation. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

In the projection view, you also have to define the position of the execution button of actions, that you have defined in the behavior definition. On the list report page, the position of the button for the action createTravelByTemplate is defined. For more information about the action, see Developing Actions [page 272].
5.2.4.11.2.2 Booking Projection View /DMO/C_BOOKING_PROCESSOR_M

For the service-specific projection, the elements as well as all the UI specifics must be defined.

The data model defines which elements are exposed for the UI service. In addition, in data definitions you have to define all UI specifications.

The following UI is achieved by implementing the corresponding features in the CDS Booking projection view for the processor.

**Preview: UI Application for Processor**

![Booking List Report Page]

![Booking Object Page]

Expand the following listing to view the source code of the booking projection view /DMO/C_BOOKING_PROCESSOR_M that results in the previously shown UI:

/DMO/C_BOOKING_PROCESSOR_M

```xml
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking projection view'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@UI: {
  headerInfo: { type: 'Booking',
    typeNamePlural: 'Bookings',
    title: { type: #STANDARD, value: 'BookingID' } } }
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_Booking_Processor_M as projection on /DMO/I_Booking_M
{
  @UI.facet: [ { id: 'Booking',
    purpose: #STANDARD,
```
type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
label: 'Booking',
position: 10,
{ id: 'BookingSupplement',
purpose: #STANDARD,
type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
label: 'Booking Supplement',
position: 20,
targetElement: '_BookSupplement' }

@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
key travel_id                as TravelID,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 20, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 20 } ],
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
key booking_id                as BookingID,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 30, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 30 } ] }
booking_date                  as BookingDate,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 40, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 40 } ] }
@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Customer',
element: 'CustomerID' }}]
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
key customer_id                as CustomerID,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 50, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 50 } ] }
@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Carrier',
element: 'AirlineID' }}]
@ObjectModel.text.element: ['CarrierName']
carrier_id                    as CarrierID,
_carrier.Name                 as CarrierName,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 60, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 60 } ] }
@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Flight',
element: 'ConnectionID' }}]
additionalBinding: [ { localElement:
'FlightDate', element: 'FlightDate' },
{ localElement:
'CarrierID', element: 'AirlineID' },
{ localElement:
'FlightPrice', element: 'Price' },
{ localElement:
'CurrencyCode', element: 'CurrencyCode' } ]
connection_id                 as ConnectionID,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 70, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 70 } ] }
@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Flight',
element: 'FlightDate' }}]
additionalBinding: [ { localElement:
'ConnectionID', element: 'ConnectionID' },
{ localElement:
'CarrierID', element: 'AirlineID' },
{ localElement:
'FlightPrice', element: 'Price' },
{ localElement:
'CurrencyCode', element: 'CurrencyCode' } ]
flight_date                   as FlightDate,

@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 80, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [ { position: 80 } ] }
@Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
flight_price                  as FlightPrice,
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: 'I_Currency', element: 'Currency'}}]
currency_code                 as CurrencyCode,
  @UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 90, importance: #HIGH, label: 'Status' } ], identification: [ { position: 90, label: 'Status [N(New)|X(Canceled)| B(Booked)]' } ] }
booking_status                as BookingStatus,
  @UI.hidden: true
last_changed_at    as LastChangedAt,
/* Associations */
  _Travel: redirected to parent /DMO/C_Travel_Processor_M,
  _BookSupplement: redirected to composition Child /DMO/
  C_BookSuppl1_Processor_M,
  _Customer,
  _Carrier
}

Explanation
For the data model of the booking projection view, you can adopt all elements of the projected view.

All elements of the projection can be given an alias with an automatic mapping done by the service framework.

The booking projection view uses a subset of the associations that are defined in the projected view. The associations _Customer and _Carrier are needed for text provisioning. These associations can simply be adopted in the projection view. On the other hand, the compositions to the parent entity _Travel and to the child entity _BookSupplement must be redirected as the target entities change in the projection layer. The association _Connection is not necessary in the projection view. It is defined in the underlying BO data model to complete the BO data model structure.

i Note
Before you can activate the booking projection view for the processor, you need to create the booking supplement projection view with the redirection to the composition to parent from the booking supplement projection child view. Compositions must always be consistent from parent to child and vice-versa.

UI Specifics
Like in the travel projection view, the UI header information for the booking projection view is given in an entity annotation.

For the UI to enable navigation from the Booking to the BookingSupplement entity, you need to define UI facets. The booking entity must be defined as identification reference and the BookingSupplement as line item reference.

In addition, the elements for list items and identification reference for the second navigation need to be annotated in the booking projection view with the respective UI annotations to define position, importance, and possible labels.

For more information about UI navigation and positioning of elements, see Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34] or UI Annotations [page 816].

As in the travel projection view, the annotation @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode' needs to be repeated in the projection view, since the annotation value changes due to aliasing.
To be able to search for a specific data set, the booking projection view must be search enabled and at least one element must be assigned as default search element. For more information about search enabling, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

To access the corresponding texts or descriptions for ID elements, the relationship between the element CarrierID and its text element in the associated text provider view must be established. Therefore, you need the association to the text provider view. The text element of the text provider view must be integrated in the projection view. The text provider view must be associated to the projection view and the text element in the text provider view must be annotated with @Semantics.text: true. For more information about text provisioning, see Defining Text Elements [page 591].

Especially for a data processing role, value helps are important to find the necessary values for the ID elements CustomerID, CarrierID, ConnectionID and to find adequate values for FlightDate and CurrencyCode. Value helps are defined with the annotation @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition. The value help for ConnectionID and FlightDate use additional bindings, so that only those values appear that match the entries in the given local elements. The value help provider view does not have to be associated to get the value help as the entity and the element are referenced in the annotation. However, it needs to be included in the service definition. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

The administrative field last_changed_at is only used for concurrent processing and does not have to be displayed on the UI. The annotations @UI.hidden = true is used for that purpose.

5.2.4.11.2.3 Booking Supplement Projection View /DMO/
C_BOOKSUPP_PROCESSOR_M

For the service-specific projection, the elements as well as all the UI specifics must be defined.

The data model defines which elements are exposed for the UI service. In addition, in data definitions you have to define all UI specifications.

The following UI is achieved by implementing the corresponding features in the CDS Booking Supplement projection view for the processor.

**Preview: UI Application for Processor**
Expand the following listing to view the source code of the booking projection view /DMO/
C_BOOKSUPPL_PROCESSOR_M that results in the previously shown UI:

/DMO/C_BOOKSUPPL_PROCESSOR_M

@EndUserText.label: 'Booking supplement projection view'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@UI: { headerInfo: {
    typeName: 'Booking Supplement',
    typeNamePlural: 'Booking Supplements',
    title:
    { type: #STANDARD,
      label: 'Booking Supplement',
      value: 'BookingSupplementID' } }
}
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_BookSuppl_Processor_M as projection on /DMO/I_BookSuppl_M
{

  @UI.facet: [
    { id:              'BookingSupplement',
    purpose:         #STANDARD,
    type:            #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
    label:           'Booking Supplement',
    position:        10 }  
  ]
  @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
  key travel_id                     as TravelID,
  key booking_id                    as BookingID,
  key booking_supplement_id         as BookingSupplementID,
  @UI: { lineItem:       [
    { position: 10, importance: #HIGH }
  ],
  identification: 
  [ { position: 10 } ]
  }
  @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
  @UI: { lineItem:       [
    { position: 20, importance: #HIGH }
  ],
  identification: 
  [ { position: 20 } ]
  }
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
    { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_SUPPLEMENT',
    element: 'SupplementID' } ,
    additionalBinding: [ { localElement:
      'Price',
      element: 'Price' } ],
    } ]
  @ObjectModel.text.element: ['SupplementDescription']
  supplement_id                     as SupplementID,
  _SupplementText.Description       as SupplementDescription:
    localized,
  @UI: { lineItem:       [
    { position: 30, importance: #HIGH }
  ],
  identification: 
  [ { position: 30 } ]
  }
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  price                             as Price,
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
    { entity: { name: 'I_Currency',
    element: 'Currency' } }
  ]
  currency_code                     as CurrencyCode,
  @UI.hidden: true
  last_changed_at             as LastChangedAt,
  /* Associations */
  _Travel  : redirected to /DMO/C_Travel_Processor_M,
  _Booking : redirected to parent /DMO/C_Booking_Processor_M,
  _SupplementText
}

For the data model of the booking supplement projection view, you can adopt all elements of the projected view.

All elements of the projection can be given an alias with an automatic mapping done by the service framework.

The booking supplement projection view uses a subset of the associations that are defined in the projected view. The association _SupplementText is needed for text provisioning. This association can simply be adopted in the projection view. On the other hand, the composition to the parent entity _Booking and to the
The root entity _Travel must be redirected as the target entity changes in the projection layer. The association _Supplement is not necessary in the projection view of the service context. It is defined in the underlying BO data model to complete the BO data model structure.

**Note**

Now, that all compositions are redirected, you can activate the three projection views for the processor.

**UI Specifics**

Like in the travel and the booking projection view, the UI header information for the booking supplement projection view is given in an entity annotation.

**Restriction**

The Fiori Elements Preview does not support the navigation to more than one child entity. Hence, when accessing the preview via entity set Travel and association to_Booking, it is not possible to navigate to the object page of the BookingSupplement entity. That means, some of the UI annotations are not relevant if you only use the preview to test your application. For example, the UI annotations referring to identification cannot be shown in the preview, when testing via the root node Travel.

However, if you want to develop a real application or test your service with the Web IDE, you can configure the application to enable navigation to any number of child entities. That is why, the UI annotation concerning identification are included in the following description.

You can imitate the behavior of the Web IDE for the second-level navigation by accessing the Fiori Elements Preview via entity set Booking and Association to_BookSupplement.

To show the entries of the booking supplement entity on its object page, the UI facet for #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE must be defined.

In addition, the elements for list items (to appear on the object page of the booking entity) and identification must be annotated in the Booking Supplement projection view with the respective UI annotation to define position, importance, and possible labels.

For more information about UI navigation and positioning of elements, see Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34] or UI Annotations [page 816].

As in the travel projection view, the annotation @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode' needs to be repeated in the projection view, since the annotation value changes due to aliasing.

To be able to search for a specific data set, the booking supplement projection view must be search enabled and at least one element must be assigned as default search element. For more information about search enabling, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

To access the corresponding texts or descriptions for ID elements, the relationship between the element SupplementID and its text element in the associated text provider view must be established. Therefore, you need the association to the text provider view. The text element of the text provider view must be integrated in the projection view. The text provider view must be associated to the projection view and the text element in the text provider view must be annotated with @Semantics.text: true. For more information about text provisioning, see Defining Text Elements [page 591].

Especially for a data processing role, value helps are important to find the necessary values for the ID element SupplementID as well as for CurrencyCode. Value helps are defined with the annotation @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition. The value help for SupplementID uses additional binding, so that
only those values appear that match the entry in the field `CurrencyCode` field. The value help provider view does not have to be associated to get the value help as the entity and the element are referenced in the annotation. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

The administrative field `last_changed_at` is only used for concurrent processing and does not have to be displayed on the UI. The annotations `@UI.hidden = true` is used for that purpose.

### 5.2.4.1.2 Projection Views for the Approver BO Projection

To define a data model for the BO projection that defines the scope for the approver application, the following tasks need to be done:

- Creating the Projection CDS Views for the Approver [page 337]
- Defining the Data Model for the Approver Projection Views [page 338]

#### 5.2.4.1.2.1 Creating the Projection CDS Views for the Approver

The scope of the UI service for the approver is more limited than for the processor. The approver can only modify the travel entity with accepting or rejecting the travel entries. The values in the corresponding booking entries are the basis for this decision-making. Only these two entities are relevant for the approver app. That means, only these two entities must be projected for the approver BO projection.

For the following CDS views, create the corresponding projection views by choosing the projection view template in the creation wizard for data definitions.

**CDS views for BO structure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS views for BO structure</th>
<th>/DMO/</th>
<th>/DMO/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I TRAVEL M</em></td>
<td>I TRAVEL M</td>
<td>I BOOKING M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS views for BO projection</th>
<th>/DMO/</th>
<th>/DMO/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>C TRAVEL APP  ROVER M</em></td>
<td>C BOOKING AP PROVER M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The names are assigned according to the naming conventions for projection views: Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

For more information, see Creating Projection Views [page 983].

The resulting CDS projection views must have the following syntax:

```plaintext
define root view entity <projection_view> as projection on <projected_view>
```

For more information about the syntax in projection views, see Syntax for CDS Projection Views [page 197].
5.2.4.1.2.2 Defining the Data Model for the Approver Projection Views

The following topics provide you with a detailed description on how to define the data model for the CDS projection views that are used in the BO projection for the approver.

- Travel Projection View /DMO/C_TRAVEL_APPROVER_M [page 338]
- Booking Projection View /DMO/C_BOOKING_APPROVER_M [page 341]

5.2.4.1.2.2.1 Travel Projection View /DMO/C_TRAVEL_APPROVER_M

For the service-specific projection, the elements as well as all the UI specifics for the approver BO projection must be defined.

The data model defines which elements are exposed for the UI service. In addition, in data definitions you have to define all UI specifications.

The following UI is achieved by implementing the corresponding features in the CDS Travel projection view for the approver.

Preview: UI Application for Approver

![Travel List Report Page](image-url)
Expand the following listing to view the source code of the travel projection view `/DMO/C_TRAVEL_APPROVER_M` that results in the previously shown UI:

```sql
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel projection view'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@UI: {
  headerInfo: { typeName: 'Travel', typeNamePlural: 'Travels', title: { type: #STANDARD, value: 'TravelID' }}
}
@Search.searchable: true
define root view entity /DMO/C_Travel_Approver_M as projection on /DMO/I_Travel_M {
  @UI: {
    facet: [
      { id: 'Travel', purpose: #STANDARD, type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE, label: 'Travel', position: 10 },
      { id: 'Booking', purpose: #STANDARD, type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE, label: 'Booking', position: 20, targetElement: '_Booking' }
    ],
    lineItem: [ { position: 10, importance: #HIGH } ],
    identification: [ { position: 10 } ],
    key travel_id as TravelID,
    @UI: {
      lineItem: [ { position: 20, importance: #HIGH } ],
      identification: [ { position: 20 } ],
      selectionField: [ { position: 20 } ],
      @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [ { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Agency', element: 'AgencyID' } } ],
      @ObjectModel.text.element: ['AgencyName'],
      agency_id as AgencyID,
      _Agency.Name as AgencyName,
      @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 30, importance: #HIGH } ],
        identification: [ { position: 30 } ]
      }
    }
  }
}
```
Explanation

Except for the actions, which are different in the processor and the approver projection, the CDS projection views for the processor and the approver BO are identical. Refer to explanation [page 329] for a thorough description on the travel projection view.

Minor changes can be detected in the field label of the field `TravelID` and `TravelStatus`. This results from the fact, that the approver does not create new travel entries. It is not necessary for this role to know the number range of the `TravelID` or the possible values of the `TravelStatus`. In addition, the approver BO projection has gained a selection field for the `TravelStatus` to make it easier for the approver to filter for open/accepted/rejected travels.
Actions

The position and the label for the action button must be defined in the CDS projection views. In the case of an approver, the available actions concerning the travel entity set are Accept Travel and Reject Travel. The implementation of these actions is done in the behavior pool, see Developing Actions [page 272]. It is simply the UI appearance that needs to be configured in the projection view. The action buttons for the respective actions are designed to appear on the travel list report page and on the travel object page. That is why the annotations are used in the list item and identification UI annotation. When executing the action on the list report page, a travel instance must be selected to assign an instance for the instance-bound action. On the object page, the instance for which the action shall be executed is clear. For more information about the annotations to define the action buttons, see Enabling Actions for UI Consumption [page 279].

5.2.4.1.2.2.2 Booking Projection View /DMO/C_BOOKING_APPROVER_M

The data model defines which elements are exposed for the UI service. In addition, in data definitions you have to define all UI specifications.

Preview: UI Application Approver

### Booking List Report Page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Booking Number</th>
<th>Booking Date</th>
<th>Customer ID</th>
<th>Airline ID</th>
<th>Flight Number</th>
<th>Flight Date</th>
<th>Flight Price</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Jul 5, 2019</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>United Airlines, Inc. (UA)</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>Jul 10, 2019</td>
<td>500.00 AUD</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Jul 5, 2019</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>United Airlines, Inc. (UA)</td>
<td>1527</td>
<td>Jul 10, 2019</td>
<td>422.00 USD</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Jul 8, 2019</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>United Airlines, Inc. (UA)</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>Jul 13, 2019</td>
<td>422.00 EUR</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Jul 8, 2019</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>United Airlines, Inc. (UA)</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>Jul 13, 2019</td>
<td>422.00 EUR</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Expand the following listing to view the source code of the travel projection view /DMO/C_BOOKING_APPROVER_M that results in the previously shown UI:

/DMO/C_BOOKING_APPROVER_M

@endUserText.label: 'Booking projection view'
@endUserText.label: 'Booking projection view'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@UI: {
  headerInfo: {
    typeName: 'Booking',
    typeNamePlural: 'Bookings',
    title: {
      type: #STANDARD,
      value: 'BookingID'
    }
  }
}
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_Booking_Approver_M as projection on /DMO/I_Booking_M
{
  @UI.facet: [{
    id: 'Booking',
    purpose: #STANDARD,
    type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
    label: 'Booking',
    position: 10
  }]
}
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
key travel_id as TravelID,
@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    {
      position: 20,
      importance: #HIGH
    }
  ],
  identification: [
    {
      position: 20
    }
  ]
}
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
key booking_id as BookingID,
@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    {
      position: 30,
      importance: #HIGH
    }
  ],
  identification: [
    {
      position: 30
    }
  ]
}
booking_date as BookingDate,
@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    {
      position: 40,
      importance: #HIGH
    }
  ],
  identification: [
    {
      position: 40
    }
  ],
  selectionField: [
    {
      position: 10
    }
  ]
}
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
customer_id as CustomerID,
Explanation

The CDS projection views for the processor and the approver BO are almost identical. Refer to Booking Projection View /DMO/C_BOOKING_PROCESSOR_M [page 331] for a thorough description on the booking projection view.

Value helps are not necessary for the interpretation of the approver role in this scenario. As the booking entity is a read-only entity in this scenario and selection fields with value helps cannot be defined for a sub entity, value helps cannot be applied and thus are not necessary to be defined for the booking entity.

5.2.4.2 Providing Behavior for Projections

The behavior for the BO projection is defined in a behavior definition of type projection. The type is defined in the behavior definition header. The projection behavior definition provides the behavior for the projection CDS view. All characteristics and operations that you want to include in the BO projection must be listed explicitly. The keyword for this is use.

Syntax: Behavior Definition for Projection

The syntax in a projection behavior definition is the following:

```
projection;
```
define behavior for ProjectionView alias ProjectionViewAlias
/* use the same eTag defined in underlying behavior definititon */
use etag
{
/* define static field control */
field (readonly) ProjViewElem1;
field (mandatory) ProjViewElem2;
/* expose standard operations defined in underlying behavior definition */
use create;
use update;
use delete;
/* expose actions or functions defined in underlying behavior definition */
use action|function ActionName [result entity ProjResultEntity][as ProjAction]
[external ExtProjname];
/* expose create_by_association for child entities defined in underlying
behavior definition */
use association _Assoc { create; }
}

For a detailed explanation of the syntax, see Projection Behavior Definition [page 199].

**Defining the BO Projection Behavior in the Travel Scenario**

As described in Reference Business Scenario [page 241], the BO projections for the processor and the approver differ with regard to their behavior. The following sections provide a detailed description on how to project the existing BO to define a behavior for one business object that is tailored to expose a UI service for a data processor and one that is tailored for a data approver.

- Behavior for the Processor BO Projection [page 344]
- Behavior for the Approver BO Projection [page 346]

**Related Information**

Projection Behavior Definition [page 199]

**5.2.4.2.1 Behavior for the Processor BO Projection**

The behavior for the BO projection that defines the scope for the processor application is defined in a behavior definition with type projection.

**5.2.4.2.1.1 Creating a Behavior Definition for the Processor BO Projection**

The easiest way to create a projection behavior definition is to use the context menu in the project explorer by selecting the relevant projection root view //DMO/C_TRAVEL_PROCESSOR_M and choosing New Behavior Definition. The behavior definition always uses the same name as the corresponding root view.

For a more detailed description, see Creating Behavior Definitions [page 967].
As the behavior definition is created on the basis of the root projection view, the template with type `projection` is generated.

5.2.4.2.1.2 Defining the Behavior for the Processor BO Projection

When creating the behavior definition based on the projection view, the template automatically creates the type `projection` and lists all available characteristics and operations of the underlying behavior definition. That means, if nothing is done explicitly the BO projection has exactly the same behavior as the underlying BO.

For the processor projection, only the following elements are used:

```plaintext
projection;
define behavior for /DMO/C_Travel_Processor_M alias TravelProcessor
use etag
{  
  field (readonly) TotalPrice;
  use create;
  use update;
  use delete;
  use action createTravelByTemplate;
  use association _BOOKING { create; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/C_Booking_Processor_M alias BookingProcessor
use etag
{  
  use update;
  // use delete; // workaround for missing determination on delete
  use association _BOOKSUPPLEMENT { create; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/C_BookSuppl_Processor_M alias BookSupplProcessor
use etag
{  
  use update;
  // use delete; // workaround for missing determination on delete
}
```

**Explanation**

Only the characteristics and operations that are relevant for the processor are used in the projection behavior definition. This is only a subset of the behavior that was defined in the underlying BO. See Developing Business Logic [page 268] to compare the projection BO to the underlying one.

The ETag handling that was defined in the underlying BO is used for all three entities. Especially for the processor role, which is enabled to modify, it is necessary to have a concurrency check. By using a master ETag on all entities, concurrent processing is enabled for the travel BO.

The static field control that was defined for the underlying BO cannot be modified.

All standard operations are used for the processor on all the root entity. The child entities can only be created via a `create_by_association`. The `delete` is not enabled for the view `Booking` and `BookingSupplement` as the determination to calculate the total flight price is not triggered on `delete`.

For the travel entity, the action to create a travel entry by a template is enabled for the processor. This action copies certain values from an existing travel entry to create a new travel entity.
5.2.4.2.2 Behavior for the Approver BO Projection

The behavior for the BO projection that defines the scope for the approver application id defined in a behavior definition with type projection.

5.2.4.2.2.1 Creating a Behavior Definition for the Approver BO Projection

The easiest way to create a projection behavior definition is to use the context menu in the project explorer by selecting the relevant projection root view /DMO/C_TRAVEL_APPROVER_M and choosing New Behavior Definition. The behavior definition always uses the same name as the corresponding root view.

For a more detailed description, see Creating Behavior Definitions [page 967].

As the behavior definition is created on the basis of the root projection view, the template with type projection is generated.

5.2.4.2.2.2 Defining the Behavior for the Approver BO Projection

When creating the behavior definition based on the projection, the template automatically creates the type projection and lists all available characteristics and operations of the underlying behavior definition. That means, if nothing is done explicitly the BO projection has exactly the same behavior as the underlying BO.

For the approver projection, only the following elements are used:

```plaintext
projection;
define behavior for /DMO/C_Travel_Approver_M alias Approver
use etag
{
  field (readonly) BeginDate, EndDate, TotalPrice, CustomerID;
  use update;
  use action acceptTravel;
  use action rejectTravel;
}
```

Explanation

Only the characteristics and operations that are relevant for the approver are used in the projection behavior definition. This is only a subset of the behavior that was defined in the underlying BO. See Developing Business Logic [page 268] to compare the projection BO to the underlying one.

The eTag that was defined in the underlying BO is used in the approver projection as well. The concurrency check is relevant for the approver. It must be ensured that the data has not been changed between checking the data and executing the action accept or reject travel.

The static field control that was defined for the underlying BO cannot be modified. However, new controls are added to correspond the approver role. The fields that are mandatory for the processor are set to read-only for
the approver. In the approver application, one can only change the fields **OverallStatus**, **AgencyID**, **BookingFee** and **Description**.

The update operation is enabled for the approver as a modification on the travel entries must be available. The actions **accept** and **reject** are enabled to change the status of the travel entry.

There is no behavior defined for the booking entity. All fields are read-only in this case. The booking supplement entity is not part of the approver BO projection, so there is no behavior for this entity either.

### 5.2.5 Defining Business Services Based on Projections

With the help of the previous sections, you developed a business object and its projection for two complementary business roles. The next step is to build a business service for both projections in order to consume the business object. The business service defines the scope of the service and binds it to a specific OData protocol. For more information, see [Business Service](page 192).

This scenario is designed to build a UI service for both business object projections. Follow the development steps to build an application for both BO projections. For a detailed step-by-step description, see [Creating an OData Service](page 22).

1. Create a service definition for the processor service and one for the approver service.
2. Expose the relevant CDS views for each service.

#### i Note

Only the projection CDS views of the business object projection must be exposed for the service. The delegation to the underlying BO is automatically done.

1. **Service Definition for Processor Service:**

   ```
   @EndUserText.label: 'Service definition for managing travels'
   define service /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_Processor_M {
      expose /DMO/C_Travel_Processor_M as Travel;
      expose /DMO/C_Booking_Processor_M as Booking;
      expose /DMO/C_BookSuppl_Processor_M as BookingSupplement;
      expose /DMO/I_Supplement as Supplement;
      expose /DMO/I_SupplementText as SupplementText;
      expose /DMO/I_Customer as Passenger;
      expose /DMO/I_Agency as TravelAgency;
      expose /DMO/I_Carrier as Airline;
      expose /DMO/I_Connection as FlightConnection;
      expose /DMO/I_Flight as Flight;
      expose I_Currency as Currency;
      expose I_Country as Country;
   }
   ```

   The complete composition hierarchy is exposed for the data processing service. In addition, the text and value help provider views are necessary components of the service scope to get the respective feature for the service.

2. **Service Definition for Approver Service**

   ```
   @EndUserText.label: 'Service definition for managing travels'
   ```
The approver service contains only two entities of the travel BO and a more limited number of text and value help provider views.

3. Create a service binding with binding type ODATA V2 – UI for both service definitions and activate the local service endpoints.

As soon as the service is activated, it is ready for consumption through an OData client such as an SAP Fiori app. You can use the preview function in the service binding to check how the UI of the Fiori application looks like.

5.3 Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps

This section explains the main development tasks required for enabling transactional processing in a business objects provider that integrates existing business logic.

Based on an end-to-end example, you create and implement all requisite artifacts for providing OData services that combine CDS data model and business object semantics with transactional processing from legacy application logic.

Introduction

The scenario described below focuses on an unmanaged [page 1037] implementation type of a business object provider in the context of the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model. For the unmanaged implementation type, the application developer must implement essential components of the REST contract itself. In this case, all required operations (create, update, delete, or any application-specific actions) must be specified in the corresponding behavior definition [page 1020] before they are manually implemented in ABAP.

In a managed implementation type, on the other hand, a behavior definition would on its own be sufficient to obtain a ready-to-run business object.

Architecture Overview

The underlying scenario reuses the existing business application logic and the existing persistence, which manages business data.

If you are running ABAP developments on SAP Cloud Platform, then you can introduce legacy business logic like this in the course of the custom code migration into ABAP Environment.
Prerequisites

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- You have access to and an account for **SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment**.
- You have installed **ABAP Development Tools (ADT)**. SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site [https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/](https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/).
- To recreate the demo scenario, the **ABAP Flight Reference Scenario** must be available in your ABAP system. You can download the complete reference scenario from GitHub: [Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario](page 12).

Remember

The namespace `/DMO/` is reserved for the demo content. Apart from the downloaded **ABAP Flight Scenario**, do not use the namespace `/DMO/` and do not create any development objects in the downloaded packages.

You can access the development objects in `/DMO/` from your own namespace.

However, if you want to recreate all development objects of this demo content, make sure that you use different names from this documentation.

Development Process in Overview

The development of new business services by integrating the transactional behavior of an existing (legacy) application mainly requires developers to perform the following fundamental activities:

1. **Defining a CDS Data Model and the Business Object Structure**

The formal structure of a business object consists of a tree of entities (Travel, Booking, Passenger, and so on) where the entities are linked using associations. Each entity of this tree structure is an element that is modeled with a CDS entity. Entities of this kind are CDS views that are generally defined on top of the underlying persistence layer, which in turn is based on the corresponding database tables or public interface CDS views.

The root entity is of particular importance: this is indicated in the source code of the CDS data definition by the keyword **ROOT**. The root entity is a representation of the business object and defines the top node in a business object’s structure.
The structure of the business object is projected in CDS projection views where you can define service-specifics for the data model. For the UI-related annotations, metadata extensions are used to separate data model from domain-specific semantics.

**More on this:** Providing CDS Data Model with Business Object Structure [page 354]

### 2. Defining and Implementing the Transactional Behavior of Business Objects

Each node of a business object can offer the standard operations `create()`, `update()`, and `delete()` and specific operations with a dedicated input and output structure known as actions. All operations provided by a business object are defined in the behavior definition artifact that is created as an ABAP repository object.

The implementation of the transactional behavior is done in specific class pools, which refer to the behavior definition. The concrete implementation of the business object provider is based on the ABAP language (which has been expanded from the standard with a special syntax) and the corresponding API for Implementing the Unmanaged BO Contract. The implementation tasks are roughly divided into an interaction phase and a save sequence.

The behavior that is relevant for the specific UI service is then projected in projection behavior definition.

**More on this:** Defining and Implementing Behavior of the Business Object [page 372]

### 3. Exposing the Relevant Application Artifacts for OData Service Enablement

For the service enablement, the relevant artifacts must be exposed to OData as a canonical OData service. This is implemented by data and behavior models, where the data model and the related behavior is projected in a service-specific way. This projection is separated into two different artifacts: the service definition and the service binding. The service definition [page 1021] is a projection of the data model and the related behavior to be exposed, whereas the service binding [page 1021] implements a specific protocol and the kind of service to be offered to a consumer.

**More on this:** Defining Business Service for Fiori UI [page 434]

### 4. Testing the OData (UI) Service

In ABAP Development Tools, you have the option of publishing the service to the local system repository. As soon as the service is published, it is ready for consumption through an OData client, such as an SAP Fiori app. The service binding editor offers a preview tool that you can use for testing the resulting app within your ABAP development environment.

**Note**

Via ABAPGit you can import the service including the related development objects into your development environment for comparison and reuse. You find the service in the package `/DMO/FLIGHT_UNMANAGED`. The suffix for development objects in this development guide is `_U`.

For information about downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, see Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].

### 5.3.1 Reference Business Scenario

The Managing of Flight Travels scenario used in this guide provides an example of an existing stateful business application whose business logic is reused in the new implementation for transactional apps. This
application represents only a part of the full *ABAP Flight Reference Scenario* (in short: Flight Scenario) that is intended to be used for demonstration and learning purposes in the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model.

The application demo provided (which represents a legacy stateful application) allows a user to create and manipulate flight bookings. It involves different data sources and entities such as travel, travel agencies, customers (passengers), flights, and bookings. Some of these are editable (that is, they can be created or manipulated) and some are not.

**Persistency and Data Model of an Existing Application**

The following table gives an overview of the different travel entities involved in the current scenario, including a categorization into editable and non-editable entities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Editable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Travel</td>
<td>A Travel entity defines general travel data, such as the agency ID or customer ID, status of the travel booking, and the price of travel. The travel data is stored in the database table /DMO/TRAVEL.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agency</td>
<td>An Agency entity defines travel agency data, such as the address and contact data. The corresponding data is stored in the database table /DMO/AGENCY. The flight data model defines a 1:n cardinality between Agency and Travel.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booking</td>
<td>The booking data is stored in the database table /DMO/BOOKING. The flight data model defines a 1:n cardinality between a Travel and the Booking entity.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight</td>
<td>The specific flight data for each connection is stored in the database table /DMO/FLIGHT. The flight data model defines a 1:n cardinality between a Connection and the Flight entity.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection</td>
<td>The flight connections are stored in the database table /DMO/CONNECTION.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier</td>
<td>The IDs and names of airlines are stored in the database table /DMO/CARRIER. Each airline has a number of flight connections. Therefore, the data model defines a 1:n cardinality between a Carrier and the Connection entity.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note**

All development objects referenced here are available in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_LEGACY. More on this: *ABAP Flight Reference Scenario* [page 984]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Editable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer</td>
<td>A Customer entity provides a detailed description of a flight customer (passenger) such as the name, the address, and contact data. The corresponding data is stored in the database table /DMO/CUSTOMER. The flight data model defines a 1:n cardinality between Customer and Travel.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booking Supplement</td>
<td>This entity is used to add additional products to a travel booking. The booking supplement data is stored in the database table /DMO/BOOK_SUPPL. The flight data model defines an n:1 cardinality between a Booking Supplement entity and a Booking entity.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplement</td>
<td>A Supplement entity defines product data that the customer can book together with a flight, for example a drink or a meal. The supplement data is stored in the database table /DMO/SUPPLEMENT. The flight data model defines a 1:1 cardinality between a Supplement entity and the Booking Supplement entity.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compositions and Associations**

The figure below shows the relationships between the travel, agency, customer, and booking entities, where the travel entity represents the root of the data model. Additional entities for currencies (I_Currency) and countries (I_Country) are generally available in your system and are included in our data model using associations.

For didactic reasons, we have kept the data model as simple as possible. We have hence reduced the number of entities in our end-to-end guide (compared with the predefined ABAP flight model) to a minimum set of entities.
Travel Entities Involved in the Present Scenario and Their Relationships

Business Logic

The following figure summarizes the essential elements of the business logic:

- The function group `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_API` is used to group all function modules that represent the application’s legacy code.
- The class `/DMO/CL_FLIGHT_LEGACY` provides the actual implementation of the business logic in a more convenient (object-oriented) way.
- The interface `/DMO/IF_FLIGHT_LEGACY` defines global types and constants for reuse.
- Exception class `/DMO/CX_FLIGHT_LEGACY`. 
5.3.2 Providing CDS Data Model with Business Object Structure

From a structural point of view, a business object consists of a tree of entities that are linked by special associations known as compositions. A composition is a specialized association that defines a whole-part relationship. A composite part only exists together with its parent entity (whole).

**Note**
For didactic reasons, we will demonstrate a one-level composition in our sample application, defining a root entity for the Travel BO and one child entity for bookings. This relationship also means that booking data can only be created to a given travel instance.

Every entity in this composition tree is an element that is modeled with a CDS entity. The root entity is of particular importance, since it defines the top node in a business object’s structure and serves as a representation of the business object. This is considered in the source code of the CDS data definition with the keyword ROOT when defining the corresponding CDS entity.
Syntax for Defining a Root Entity

```plaintext
@view_annotation_1
...
@view_annotation_n>
DEFINE ROOT VIEW ENTITY root_entity
  [parameter_list]
  AS SELECT FROM data_source [AS alias]
  COMPOSITION [min..max] OF child_entity AS _comp_name
  [additional_composition_list]
  [association_list]
  {
    element_list
  }
```

Effect:
Using this syntax, you define the `root_entity` as a root of the compositional hierarchy for the business object to be created.

With the keyword `COMPOSITION`, a `child_entity` is defined as a direct child entity to the business object’s root. The `child_entity` is a CDS entity, which is the target of the composition. `_comp_name` defines the name of the composition and must be added to the `element_list` (like associations). The cardinality to the child entity is expressed in the composition definition with square brackets `[min .. max]`.

For `min` and `max`, positive integers (including 0) and asterisks (`*`) can be specified:
- `max` cannot be 0.
- An asterisk `*` for `max` means any number of rows.
- `min` cannot be `*`.

The meaning of the other elements of the syntax is identical to that of `DEFINE VIEW ENTITY`.


ABAP CDS - DEFINE VIEW ENTITY (ABAP Keyword Documentation)

Syntax for Defining a Child Entity

```plaintext
@view_annotation_1
...
@view_annotation_n>
DEFINE VIEW ENTITY child_entity
  [parameter_list]
  AS SELECT FROM data_source [AS alias]
  ASSOCIATION TO PARENT parent_entity AS _assoc_name ON condition_exp
  [additional_association_list]
  {
    element_list
  }
```
Effect:
Using this syntax, you define a CDS entity `child_entity` that serves as a sub node in the compositional hierarchy of the business object structure. The sub node is a node in a business object's structure that is directly connected to another node when moving away from the root.

CDS entities that do not represent the root node of the hierarchy must have an association to their compositional parent entity `parent_entity` or `root_entity`. This relationship is expressed by the keyword `ASSOCIATION TO PARENT...`

The meaning of the other elements in the association syntax is identical to that of `ASSOCIATION` in the CDS `SELECT` statement.

Further information: ABAP CDS - SELECT, ASSOCIATION (ABAP Keyword Documentation)

Next Steps

Creating Data Definitions for CDS Views [page 356]
Defining the Data Model in CDS Views [page 358]

5.3.2.1 Creating Data Definitions for CDS Views

In this step you create a CDS views as the basis for the data model of our demo scenario. To do this, you create the appropriate data definitions as transportable ABAP repository objects, as specified in the table below.

Data Definitions and CDS Views to Create

i Note

**Naming CDS views**: Since CDS views are (public) interface views, they are prefixed with `I_` in accordance with the VDM (virtual data model) naming convention. In addition, we add the suffix `_U` to the view name in case it is specific for our unmanaged implementation type scenario. For detailed information, see: Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990]

→ Remember

The namespace `/DMO/` is reserved for the demo content. Therefore, do not use the namespace `/DMO/` when creating your own development objects and do not create any development objects in the downloaded packages.
### Data Definitions Required for the Root Node (Travel):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS View Name</th>
<th>Data Source</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>/DMO/TRAVEL</td>
<td>This CDS view defines the root entity. The root entity is a representation of the travel business object and defines the top node in a business object’s structure. It is used for managing general travel data, such as the booking status of a travel or the total price of a travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Travel_U</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_AGENCY</td>
<td>/DMO/AGENCY</td>
<td>This CDS view represents the travel agency in the data model of our demo scenario.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Agency</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_CUSTOMER</td>
<td>/DMO/CUSTOMER</td>
<td>This CDS view defines the data model for managing flight travel customers (passengers).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Customer</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Data Definitions Required for the Sub Node (Booking):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS View Name</th>
<th>Data Source</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_BOOKING_U</td>
<td>/DMO/BOOKING</td>
<td>This CDS view defines the flight booking entity. The booking entity is a sub node representation of the travel business object structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Booking_U</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td>It is used for managing flight booking data, such as the customer, the flight connection, or the price and flight date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_FLIGHT</td>
<td>/DMO/FLIGHT</td>
<td>This CDS view represents the concrete flights in the travel data model. In our demo scenario, the CDS view is used for value help definition for specific elements in the booking view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Flight</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_CONNECTION</td>
<td>/DMO/CONNECTION</td>
<td>This CDS view defines the data model for managing flight connections. In our demo scenario, the connection view is used to retrieve the text information for the associated elements in the booking view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Connection</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_CARRIER</td>
<td>/DMO/CARRIER</td>
<td>This CDS view defines the data model for managing the airline data (ID and the name).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Carrier</td>
<td>(DB table)</td>
<td>In our demo scenario, the carrier view is used to retrieve the text information for the associated elements in the booking view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Procedure: Creating a Data Definition

To launch the wizard tool for creating a data definition, do the following:

1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In your ABAP project (or ABAP cloud project), select the relevant package node in Project Explorer.
3. Open the context menu and choose [New] Other ABAP Repository Object > Core Data Services > Data Definition

Further information: (Tool Reference)

Results

This procedure creates a data definition as a transportable development object in the selected package. For each data definition, the related CDS view is created.

5.3.2.2 Defining the Data Model in CDS Views

Travel Root View /DMO/I_Travel_U

The listing 1 (below) provides you with the implementation of the CDS data model for managing flights, where the database table /dmo/travel serves as the data source for the corresponding CDS view /DMO/I_Travel_U (note the camel case notation).

This CDS view defines the root entity of the data model and represents the root of the compositional hierarchy for the travel business object to be created.

From a structural point of view, a business object consists of a tree of nodes that are linked by special associations known as compositions. To define a composition relationship from the root to a child entity the keyword COMPOSITION is used. In our example, you specify the /DMO/I_Booking_U as child entity of the composition _Booking. As a result, the booking node is defined as a direct sub node to the business object’s root. With cardinality [0 .. *] you express that any number of booking instances can be assigned to each travel instance.

To be able to access business data from semantically related entities, a set of associations is defined in the CDS source code. These associations refer to CDS views that are part of our demo application scenario. Some of these views are used primarily as text views for retrieving text information and as value help provider views for specific UI fields, see Projecting the Data Model in CDS Projection Views [page 364].

Except for the administrative fields createdby, lastchangedby, and createdat, all fields of the data source table /dmo/travel have been added to the element list in the CDS view. The database table provides several administrative fields that are used for administrative data which usually includes the user who created or last changed an instance and the corresponding timestamps. In this example however, the element
LastChangedAt plays a special part, as it is used for ETag checks to determine whether two representations of an entity are the same. If the representation of the entity ever changes, a new and different ETag value is assigned. ETags play a significant part in the lock lifetime when working with business objects.

For all elements, we can provide an alias to provide a readable name for the elements.

The price elements and the element CurrencyCode have a semantic relationship. This relationship is manifested in the business object view via the @semantics annotations. In a Fiori UI, the amount and the currency value can then be displayed together.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**Listing 1: Source Code of the CDS Root View /DMO/I_Travel_U**

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel view - CDS data model'
define root view entity /DMO/I_Travel_U
  as select from /dmo/travel as Travel -- the travel table is the data source
  for this view
  composition [0..*] of /DMO/I_Booking_U as _Booking
    association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Agency as _Agency on $projection.AgencyID =
    _Agency.AgencyID
    association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Customer as _Customer on $projection.CustomerID =
    _Customer.CustomerID
    association [0..1] to I_Currency as _Currency on
  }
  key Travel.travel_id as TravelID,
  Travel.agency_id as AgencyID,
  Travel.customer_id as CustomerID,
  Travel.begin_date as BeginDate,
  Travel.end_date as EndDate,
  ...
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  Travel.booking_fee as BookingFee,
  ...
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  Travel.total_price as TotalPrice,
  Travel.currency_code as CurrencyCode,
  ...
  Travel.status as Status,
  Travel.lastchangedat as LastChangedAt,
  /* Associations */
  _Booking,
  _Agency,
  _Customer,
  _Currency
```

**Booking View /DMO/I_Booking_U**

Listing 2 (below) provides you with a data model implementation of the booking entity. In the data definition of the root entity /DMO/I_Travel_U, you specified the booking entity /DMO/I_Booking_U as a child entity. This composition relationship requires an association to their compositional parent entity for the booking child entity to be specified in the data model implementation. This relationship is expressed by the keyword ASSOCIATION TO PARENT. Using this syntax, you define the CDS entity /DMO/I_Booking_U as a direct sub node in the compositional hierarchy of the travel business object structure.
The `SELECT` list includes all elements of a booking entity that are relevant for building the BO structure. These elements are provided with an alias. Like in the `Travel CDS view`, the semantic relationship between `Price` and `CurrencyCode` is established with the `@Semantics` annotation.

To be able to access data from other entities, a set of additional associations (`_Customer`, `_Carrier`, and `_Connection`) is defined in the CDS source code. These views are primarily used as text views for retrieving text information and as value help provider views for specific booking fields on the UI. Projecting the Data Model in CDS Projection Views [page 364].

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**Listing 2: CDS View /DMO/I_Booking_U**

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Booking view'
define view entity /DMO/I_Booking_U
  as select from /dmo/booking as Booking
  association        to parent /DMO/I_Travel_U     as _Travel     on
                   $projection.TravelID = _Travel.TravelID
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Customer            as _Customer   on
                   $projection.CustomerID = _Customer.CustomerID
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Carrier             as _Carrier    on
                   $projection.AirlineID = _Carrier.AirlineID
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Connection          as _Connection on
                   $projection.AirlineID   = _Connection.AirlineID
                   and
                   $projection.ConnectionID = _Connection.ConnectionID
  { key Booking.travel_id     as TravelID,
    key Booking.booking_id    as BookingID,
    Booking.booking_date     as BookingDate,
    Booking.customer_id      as CustomerID,
    Booking.carrier_id       as AirlineID,
    Booking.connection_id    as ConnectionID,
    Booking.flight_date      as FlightDate,
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    Booking.flight_price     as FlightPrice,
    Booking.currency_code    as CurrencyCode,
    /* Associations */
    _Travel,
    _Customer,
    _Carrier,
    _Connection
  }
```

**Travel Agency View /DMO/I_Agency**

Listing 3 (below) provides you with a data definition for handling travel agency data. The database table `/dmo/agency` is the data source for the corresponding CDS view `/DMO/I_Agency`.

All fields in table `/dmo/agency` have been added to the element list in the CDS view.

Since the travel agency's data can vary from one country to another, the data model refers to the `I_Country` view using the association `_Country`.

This CDS entity also serves as a text provider view. For this purpose, the annotation `@Semantics.text: true` is used to identify the `Name` element as a text element, which - in this case - points to a textual description.
of agency names. In the travel and the booking projection views, the associated text element is added as a field to the referencing entity. At runtime, this field is read from the database and filtered by the logon language of the OData consumer automatically.

In addition, the data model enables search capabilities on the Name element: The annotation
@Search.searchable: true marks the CDS view as searchable, whereas
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true specifies that the annotated Name element is to be considered in a full-text search. For detailed information, see: Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608]

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 3: Agency CDS View /DMO/I_Agency

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Agency view - CDS data model'
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/I_Agency
as select from /dmo/agency as Agency -- the agency table serves as the data source for this view
{  key Agency.agency_id        as AgencyID,
   @Semantics.text: true
   @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
   @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.8
   Agency.name                 as Name,
   Agency.street               as Street,
   Agency.postal_code          as PostalCode,
   Agency.city                 as City,
   Agency.country_code         as CountryCode,
   Agency.phone_number         as PhoneNumber,
   Agency.email_address        as EMailAddress,
   Agency.web_address          as WebAddress,
   /* Associations */
   _Country
}
```

Customer View /DMO/I_Customer

Listing 4 (below) is used as a data model implementation for managing passenger data. The database table /dmo/customer serves as the data source for the corresponding CDS view /DMO/I_Customer.

Except for the administrative fields (createdby, createdat, lastchangedat and lastchangedby), all fields of the table /dmo/customer have been added to the element list in the CDS view.

Since a passenger's data can vary from one country to another, the data model refers to the I_Country view using a corresponding association _Country.

The annotation @Semantics.text: true is added to the LastName element. This element serves as a text element, which - in this case - points to texts with customer names. This text annotation allows you to use this customer view as a text provider for the associated elements in the target views /DMO/I_Travel_U and /DMO/I_Booking_U.

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.
Listing 4: Customer CDS view /DMO/I_Customer

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Customer view - CDS data model'
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/I_Customer
  as select from /dmo/customer as Customer -- the customer table serves as the
data source
  association [0..1] to I_Country as _Country on $projection.CountryCode =
  _Country.Country
} key Customer.customer_id    as CustomerID,
@Semantics.text: true
@Search.defaultSearchElement: true
@Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.8
Customer.first_name         as FirstName,
Customer.last_name          as LastName,
Customer.title              as Title,
Customer.street             as Street,
Customer.postal_code        as PostalCode,
Customer.city               as City,
Customer.country_code       as CountryCode,
Customer.phone_number       as PhoneNumber,
Customer.email_address      as EMailAddress,
/* Associations */
.Country
}
```

Flight View /DMO/I_Flight

Listing 5 (below) provides you with a data definition for flights. The data of specific flights is stored in the
database table /dmo/flight, which serves as the data source for the corresponding CDS view /DMO/
I_Flight.

As demonstrated in listing 2 (above), you can implement the value help with additional binding. To define filter
conditions for the value help based on the same value help provider, the flight view /DMO/I_Flight is used to
filter the value help result list for the annotated elements.

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 5: CDS View /DMO/I_Flight

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@endUserText.label: 'Flight view'
define view entity /DMO/I_Flight as select from /dmo/flight as Flight
} key Flight.carrier_id          as AirlineID,
key Flight.connection_id       as ConnectionID,
key Flight.flight_date         as FlightDate,
@Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
Flight.price                   as Price,
Flight.currency_code           as CurrencyCode,
Flight.plane_type_id           as PlaneType,
Flight.seats_max               as MaximumSeats,
Flight.seats_occupied          as OccupiedSeats
```
**Flight Connections View** /DMO/I_Connection

Listing 6 (below) is used as a data definition for flight connections. The flight connections are stored in the database table /dmo/connection, which serves as the data source for the corresponding CDS view /DMO/I_Connection.

Except for the administrative fields, all fields in the table /dmo/connection have been added to the element list in the CDS view.

Using the annotation @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure, the DistanceUnit element is referenced as an element containing a unit of measure for the value stored in the element Distance.

*Expand the following listing to view the source code.*

**Listing 6: CDS View /DMO/I_Connection**

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Connection view'
define view entity /DMO/I_Connection as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  as select from /dmo/connection as Connection
  {
    key Connection.carrier_id              as AirlineID,
    key Connection.connection_id           as ConnectionID,
    Connection.airport_from_id         as DepartureAirport,
    Connection.airport_to_id           as DestinationAirport,
    Connection.departure_time          as DepartureTime,
    Connection.arrival_time            as ArrivalTime,
    @Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure: 'DistanceUnit'
    Connection.distance                as Distance,
    Connection.distance_unit           as DistanceUnit
  }
```

**Carrier View** /DMO/I_Carrier

The following data definition for the carrier CDS entity provides you with IDs and names of airlines that are stored in the database table /DMO/CARRIER.

This CDS entity mainly serves as a text provider view. It provides text data through text associations as defined in the travel and the booking views (Listing 1 and Listing 2).

For this purpose, a text annotation is required at element level in order to annotate the text elements from the view's element list: In this example, the Name element is identified as the text element.

*Expand the following listing to view the source code.*

**Listing 7: CDS View /DMO/I_Carrier**

```abap
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Carrier view'
define view entity /DMO/I_Carrier as select from /dmo/carrier as Airline
  {
    key Airline.carrier_id        as AirlineID,
    @Semantics.text: true
    Airline.name                  as Name,
  }
```
5.3.2.3 Projecting the Data Model in CDS Projection Views

You use CDS projection views to expose the general data model for a specific business service.

Whereas the general business object defines all available entities and elements, the Business Object Projection [page 194] defines those entities and elements that are used for a specific service, in our case a service that is exposed for UI consumption. That means, in the projection layer, we define the data model and its functionality that is needed for the use case of a UI service of the travel scenario. UI services include:

- value helps
- text elements
- search
- UI layout annotations

These UI enrichments are modeled via CDS annotations [page 1023] in the CDS projection view [page 1024]. It is best practice, to outsource the annotations related to UI layout in metadata extensions [page 1023], as these annotations can easily overload the projection view. A CDS metadata extension is always assigned to a layer such as industry, partner or customer to easily extend the scope of the metadata extension.

For more information, see Business Object Projection [page 194] and [page 1023].

Creating CDS Projection Views

For the Travel UI service, create projection views for those CDS entities that are part of the compositional hierarchy of the business object. These are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>root layer</th>
<th>1st child layer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDS views for BO structure</td>
<td>/DMO/ I_TRAVEL_U /DMO/ I_BOOKING_U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDS views for BO projection</td>
<td>/DMO/ C_TRAVEL_U /DMO/ C_BOOKING_U</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**i Note**

The names are assigned according to the naming conventions for projection views: Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

For more information, see Creating Projection Views [page 983] (tool reference).

The resulting CDS projection views must have the following syntax:

```
define [root] view entity <projection_view> as projection on <projected_view>
```

For more information about the syntax in projection views, see Syntax for CDS Projection Views [page 325].
Data Modeling for the Business Object Projection

The unmanaged scenario provides just one projection use case that reuses all elements that are defined in the business object views. In the projection layer the data model is enriched with UI functionality that is implemented via CDS annotations or keywords in the projection view and manifested in the service metadata.

Root Projection View /DMO/C_Travel_U

The listing 1 (below) provides you with the implementation of the CDS view projection, where the CDS view /DMO/I_Travel_U serves as the projection source for the corresponding CDS projection view /DMO/C_Travel_U. It projects every element from the underlying view.

The Travel projection view also exposes all associations that are defined in the underlying travel view /DMO/I_Travel_U. However, the composition to the child /DMO/I_Booking_U must be redirected to the newly created projection counterpart. The syntax for defining redirected compositions is described in CDS Projection View [page 197].

To define a relationship between the elements AgencyID and CustomerID and their corresponding texts or descriptions, the text elements must be denormalized in the CDS projection view. Therefore the elements of the associated text provider views (_Agency.Name and _Customer.LastName) are included in the select list of the projection view. Their corresponding ID elements are annotated with @ObjectModel.text.element. At runtime, the referenced element is read from the database and filtered by the logon language of the OData consumer automatically. For detailed information, see: Defining Text Elements [page 591]

Value helps are defined in the source code of the CDS projection view /DMO/C_Travel_U by adding the annotation @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition to the elements AgencyID, CustomerID and CurrencyCode. In this annotation, you specify the elements for which the value help dialog should appear on the UI. The value help annotation allows you to reference the value help provider view without implementing an association. You simply assign a CDS entity as the value help provider and specify an element for the mapping in the annotation. All fields of the value help provider are displayed on the UI. When the end user chooses one of the entries of the value help provider, the value of the referenced element is transferred to the corresponding input field on the UI. For detailed information, see: Simple Value Help [page 599]

**Note**

For the default implementation of value help, note that you can reuse any CDS entity that contains the required values of the element that corresponds to the input field on the UI. You do not need to explicitly define a CDS entity as the value help provider

In the projection view, you model the ability to search for specific values in the view. The entity annotation @Search.searchable is used in the travel projection to enable the general HANA search. This annotation also triggers the search bar in the Fiori elements UI. By using this annotation, you have to define elements that are primarily used as the search target for a free text search. These elements are annotated with @Search.defaultSearchElement. In addition, you can define a fuzziness threshold that defines the how exact the search values must be to be able to find element values. For more information on search, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].
The listing below does not include annotations that define the UI layout. They are outsourced to metadata extensions, see Adding UI Metadata to the Data Model [page 368].

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**Listing 1: Source Code of the CDS Root Projection View**

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel Projection View'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
define root view entity /DMO/C_Travel_U
    as projection on /DMO/I_Travel_U
    {     ///DMO/I_Travel_U
        key TravelID,
        @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name:    '/DMO/I_Agency',
            element: 'AgencyID' } }]
        @ObjectModel.text.element: ['AgencyName']
        Agency.Name          as AgencyName,
        @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name:    '/DMO/I_Customer',
            element: 'CustomerID' } }]
        @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']
        CustomerID,
        _Agency.Name          as AgencyName,
        _Agency.CustomerID,
        _Customer.LastName    as CustomerName,
        BeginDate,
        EndDate,
        BookingFee,
        TotalPrice,
        CurrencyCode,
        Memo,
        Status,
        LastChangedAt,
        /* Associations */
        ///DMO/I_Travel_U
        _Booking : redirected to composition child /DMO/C_Booking_U,
        _Agency,
        _Currency,
        _Customer     }
```

**Child Projection View**

The listing 2 (below) provides you with the implementation of the CDS view projection, where the CDS view /DMO/I_Booking_U serves as the projection source for the corresponding CDS projection view /DMO/C_Booking_U. It projects every element from the underlying view.

The Booking projection view also exposes all associations that are defined in the underlying booking view /DMO/I_Travel_U. However, the composition to the parent /DMO/I_Travel_U must be redirected to the newly created projection counterparts. The syntax for defining redirected compositions is described in CDS Projection View [page 197].

To access the corresponding texts or descriptions, the relationship between the elements AirlineID and ConnectionID and the text elements in the associated text provider views /DMO/I_Carrier and /DMO/
I_Connection are used in this example. Their corresponding ID elements are annotated with 
@ObjectModel.text.element. At runtime, the referenced element is read from the database and filtered by 
the logon language of the OData consumer automatically. For detailed information, see: Defining Text Elements
[page 591]

Value helpers are defined in the source code of the booking entity /DMO/C_Booking_U by adding the annotation 
@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition to the relevant elements. You simply assign a CDS entity as the 
value help provider to the elements CustomerID, AirlineID, and CurrencyCode, and specify an element for 
the mapping in the annotation. This simple value help approach is convenient if you only want to display values 
from the value help provider view for an input field. In this case, the annotation defines the binding to the value 
help providing entity. You only have to specify the entity name and the element providing the possible values for 
the annotated element. For detailed information, see: Simple Value Help [page 599]

Listing 2 also demonstrates how you can implement the value help with additional binding, which defines a 
filter condition. Different filter conditions for the value help on the same value help provider entity /DMO/ 
I_Flight are defined for filtering the value help result list for the elements ConnectionID and FlightDate. 
For detailed information, see: Value Help with Additional Binding [page 606]

The elements in the booking projection view are also searchable in a UI service. The annotations related to 
search are therefore also maintained in the booking view on entity level and on certain elements to mark them 
as primary search element. For more information on search, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori 
Apps [page 608].

The listing below does not include annotations that define the UI layout. They are outsourced to metadata 
exensions, see Adding UI Metadata to the Data Model [page 368].

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 2: Source Code of the CDS Projection View /DMO/C_Booking_U

```java
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking Projection View'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_Booking_U as projection on /DMO/I_Booking_U
{   ///DMO/I_Booking_U
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    key TravelID,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    key BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
        { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Customer',
                       element: 'CustomerID' } }
    ]
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']
    CustomerID,
    _Customer.LastName as CustomerName,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
        { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Carrier',
                    element: 'AirlineID' } }
    ]
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['AirlineName']
    AirlineID,
    _Carrier.Name as AirlineName,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
        { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Flight',
                    element: 'ConnectionID' },
        additionalBinding: [
            { localElement: 'FlightDate', element: 'FlightDate' },
            { localElement: 'AirlineID', element: 'AirlineID' }
        ]
    ]
    ConnectionID,
    ConnectionName,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
        { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Count',
                    element: 'Count' } }
    ]
    Count,
    CurrencyCode,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [
        { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Currency',
                    element: 'CurrencyCode' } }
    ]
    CurrencyCode
}
```
The other CDS views that are relevant for text provisioning and value helps to complete the data model structure do not have to be projected as they are not part of the business object.

**Related Information**

**Business Object Projection** [page 194]

### 5.3.2.3.1 Adding UI Metadata to the Data Model

Use @UI annotations to define the layout of the Fiori UI.

To enable the business service to be consumable by any UI client, UI relevant metadata are added to the backend service. These metadata are maintained with @UI annotations that are either added to the whole entity or, if it relates to a specific UI element, to the corresponding CDS element. Since these annotations can become excessive, it is recommended to maintain the UI annotations in metadata extensions.

Metadata extensions are used to define CDS annotations for a CDS view outside of the corresponding data definition. The use of metadata extensions allows the separation of concerns by separating the data model from domain-specific semantics, such as UI-related information for UI consumption. A CDS metadata extension is always assigned to a specific layer such as core, industry, partner or customer. These industries can extend the metadata for the data model.
Creating Metadata Extension for the Projection Views

For the Travel UI service, create metadata extensions for the CDS projection views that are part of the compositional hierarchy of the business object. These are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS views for BO structure</th>
<th>root layer</th>
<th>1st child layer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/ I_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>/DMO/ I_BOOKING_U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDS views for BO projection</th>
<th>root layer</th>
<th>1st child layer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/ C_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>/DMO/ C_BOOKING_U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metadata extension for UI annotations</th>
<th>root layer</th>
<th>1st child layer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/ C_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>/DMO/ C_BOOKING_U</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The names of metadata extensions are the same as their related CDS entities, according to the naming conventions for metadata extensions: Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

To create a metadata extension object, open the context menu in the project explorer of the related CDS entity and choose *New Metadata Extension*. Follow the steps in the wizard to get a metadata extension template that annotates the related projection view.

**Syntax:**

```abap
@Metadata.layer: layer
annotate view CDSProjectionView
  with
  { element_name;
  }
```

Define a metadata layer for your metadata extension and insert the elements that you want to annotate. The layering of metadata extension allows a stacking for each development layer, beginning with `#CORE`. Each layer can then add its own layer specific metadata to the service.

To enable the usage of metadata extensions for the projection views, add the annotation `@Metadata.allowExtensions:true` on entity level in your projection view. For more information, see .

### Annotating CDS Elements in Metadata Extensions

Any CDS element that you want to annotate in metadata extensions must be inserted in the element list.
The listing below (listing 1) provides you with the implementation of the metadata extension /DMO/C_Travel_U for the projection view with the same name. It annotates the projection view itself and its elements.

To specify the header texts for Fiori UIs, the annotation @UI.headerInfo is used at entity level. It specifies the list title as well as the title for the object page. The main building blocks of the UI are specified as UI facets. The annotation @UI.facet also enables the navigation to the child entity, which is represented as list in the page body of the object page.

The annotations on element level are used to define the position of the element in the list report and on the object page. In addition, they specify the importance of the element for the list report. If elements are marked with low importance, they are not shown on a device with a narrow screen. The selection fields are also defined on the elements that require a filter bar in the UI.

For actions, you can define an action button on the Fiori Elements UI. This scenario contains the action to set the travel status to booked. To expose the action on the list report page, the information for the action button is added to the @UI.lineItem annotation on an element.

Syntax to expose an action button on the UI:

```
@UI: { lineItem: { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'action_name', label: 'Button Label' } }
```

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 1: Source Code of the Metadata Extension /DMO/C_Travel_U

```java
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { type: 'Travel',
    typeNamePlural: 'Travels',
    title: { type: #STANDARD,
        value: 'TravelID' } } }

annotate view /DMO/C_Travel_U with
{
    @UI.facet: [ { id: 'Travel',
        purpose: #STANDARD,
        type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
        label: 'Travel',
        position: 10 },
    { id: 'Booking',
        purpose: #STANDARD,
        type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
        label: 'Booking',
        position: 20,
        targetElement: '_Booking' }]

    @UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 10,
        importance: #HIGH } ],
    identification: [ { position: 10 } ],
    selectionField: [ { position: 10 } ] }
TravelID;

    @UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 20,
        importance: #HIGH } ],
    identification: [ { position: 20 } ],
    selectionField: [ { position: 20 } ] }
AgencyID;
```
The listing below (listing 2) provides you with the implementation of the metadata extension `/DMO/C_Booking_U` for the projection view with the same name. It annotates the projection view itself and its elements.

To specify the header texts for Fiori UIs, the annotation `@UI.headerInfo` is used at entity level. It specifies the list title as well as the title for the object page. The main building blocks of the UI are specified as UI facets.

The annotations on element level are used to define the position of the element in the list report and on the object page. In addition, they specify the importance of the element for the list report. The selection fields are also defined on the elements that require a filter bar in the UI.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**Listing 2: Source Code of the Metadata Extension `/DMO/C_Booking_U`**

```plaintext
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: {
  headerInfo: {
    typeName: 'Booking',
    typeNamePlural: 'Bookings',
    title: {
      type: #STANDARD,
      value: 'BookingID'
    }
  }
  annotate view /DMO/C_Booking_U with
}
```
5.3.3 Defining and Implementing Behavior of the Business Object

Behavior of a Business Object

To specify the business object’s behavior, the behavior definition as the corresponding development object is used. A business object behavior definition (behavior definition for short) is an ABAP Repository object that describes the behavior of a business object in the context of the ABAP RESTful application programming model. A behavior definition is defined using the Behavior Definition Language (BDL).

A behavior definition always refers to a CDS data model. As shown in the figure below, a behavior definition relies directly on the CDS root entity. One behavior definition refers exactly to one root entity and one CDS root entity has at most one behavior definition (a 0..1 cardinality), which also handles all included child entities that are included in the composition tree. The implementation of a behavior definition can be done in a single ABAP class (behavior pool) or can be split between an arbitrary set of ABAP classes (behavior pools). The application developer can assign any number of behavior pools to a behavior definition (1..N cardinality).
Overview of Steps

1. Create the Behavior Definition Object
2. Model the Behavior for Managing Travels
3. Create the Behavior Pool
4. Implement the Transactional Behavior of the Travel Business Object

Related Information

Business Object [page 54]
Business Service [page 192]

5.3.3.1 Adding Behavior to the Business Object

Procedure: Creating a Behavior Definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_U

To launch the wizard tool for creating a behavior definition, do the following:
1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In the Project Explorer view of your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the node for the data definition that defines the root entity (/DMO/ I_TRAVEL_U).
3. Open the context menu and choose New Behavior Definition to launch the creation wizard.
4. In the creation wizard, choose implementation type unmanaged to get the template for the unmanaged behavior definition.

Further information: (Tool Reference) [page 967]

Remember

By creating a behavior definition, the referenced root entity and its compositions (child entities) gain a transactional character. The behavior definition is hence the implementation of the BO concept within the context of the current programming model. All supported transactional operations of a concrete business object must be specified in the same behavior definition.

Parenthesis: Syntax for Defining Transactional Behavior

The syntax of the Behavior Definition Language (BDL) is oriented to the Data Definition Language (DDL) used to define CDS entities (camel-case notation). Technically, the respective artifacts differ substantially: behavior definitions are managed in the ABAP compiler and not in ABAP Dictionary.

You use the following syntax to define the transactional behavior for a CDSEntity.

```
/* Header of behavior definition */
[implementation] {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
/* Definition of entity behavior */
define behavior for CDSEntity [alias AliasName]
/* Entity properties */
[implementation in class CLASS_NAME unique]
[persistent table DB_TABLE]
[late numbering]
[etag {master Field | dependent by _Association}]
[lock {master Field | dependent by _Association}]
[authorization {master(instance)|dependent by _Association}]
{
  /* Static field control */
  [field (readonly | mandatory) field1[, field2, ..., fieldn];]
  /* Standard operations */
  [internal] create;
  [internal] update;
  [internal] delete;
  /* Actions */
  [internal] [static] [factory] action ActionName;

  /* Associations */
  association AssociationName [abbreviation AbbreviationName] {[create;]}
  /* Mapping CDS view fields to db fields */
  mapping for DB_TABLE
  { CDSViewField1 = db_field1;
    CDSViewField2 = db_field2;
    ...
    CDSViewFieldn = db_fieldn; }
```
Explanation

A behavior definition consists of a header information and a set of definitions for entity behavior. Each entity of the composition tree can be referred in the behavior definition at most once.

→ Remember

Consider that if an entity does not occur in the behavior definition, then it would not be modifiable within the ABAP RESTful application programming model.

Within BDL source code, double slashes (//) introduce a comment that continues until the end of the line. Comments that span lines have the form: /*... */.

i Note

Keywords within the BDL source code are case-sensitive!

The header specifies the implementation type of the business object provider:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Implementation Type</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unmanaged</td>
<td>For this implementation type, the application developer must implement essential components of the REST contract itself. In this case, all required operations (create, update, delete, or any application-specific actions) must be specified in the corresponding behavior definition before they are implemented manually in ABAP. Use this implementation type when developing transactional apps that are based on existing legacy business logic. More on this: Business Object Provider API [page 925]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>managed</td>
<td>When using this implementation type, the behavior definition is already sufficient to produce a ready-to-run business object. Use this implementation type if you want to develop transactional apps from scratch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>You cannot use the BO Provider API to implement the behavior definition. An abstract behavior definition is only a metadata artifact for the representation of external services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The behavior description is divided into a section with entity properties, followed by information on any operations enclosed in the brackets (...).

The AliasName defined in the behavior definition for CDSEntity gives you the option of introducing a more concise name than the entity name that is hence easier to read. The AliasName becomes visible in the implementation part BO provider (method syntax of the BO Provider API). The length of the AliasName is restricted to 20 characters.

The BDL allows you to add the following properties to a behavior definition:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Behavior Characteristic</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| implementation in class ... unique     | In the behavior definition for an individual entity, you have the option of assigning a specific behavior pool that only implements the behavior for this entity. Behavior for the entity in question can only be implemented in a behavior pool with the specified name. Any other class that attempts this raises an ABAP compiler error.  
By including the restriction implementation in class ... unique in the behavior implementation, you can protect the application against multiple implementations so that each operation can only be implemented once for the relevant entity. |
| persistent table ...                   | In managed implementation type, this property specifies the database table for storing CDSEntity data changes that result from transactional behavior.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| late numbering                         | Newly created entity instances are given a definitive (final) key just before they are persisted on the database (when saving the object’s data). Until then, the business logic works with a temporary key (for example: $00000001) which must be replaced upon saving the data.  
For providing late numbering, the adjust_numbers() method from the save sequence is used. If you redefine the respective method in the saver class, the runtime will call this method.  
Late numbering plays a role whenever it is of business-critical importance to draw gap-free numbers.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                        | **i Note**                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                        | The current version of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model does not support late numbering.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| etag master/etag dependent by          | An ETag can be used for optimistic concurrency control in the OData protocol to help prevent simultaneous updates of a resource from overwriting each other.  
To use etag dependent by, you must define the respective associations explicitly in the behavior definition for parent and child entity.  
For more information, see Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161].                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| lock master/lock dependent by          | In the behavior definition, you can determine which entities support direct locking (lock master) and which entities depend on the locking status of a parent or root entity (lock dependent by). For lock dependents it is required to specify which association is used to determine the lock master. This association must be explicitly defined in the behavior definition with association _AssociationToLockMasterEntity.  
**i Note**  
The definition of lock master is currently only supported for root nodes of business objects.  
For more information, see Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking) [page 166].                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
Field Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>field (read only)</td>
<td>Defines that the specified fields must not be created or updated by the consumer. The BO runtime rejects modifying requests when creating or updating the specified fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field (mandatory)</td>
<td>Defines that the specified fields are mandatory. The specified fields must be filled by the consumer when executing modifying requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Standard Operations:

An important part of the transactional behavior of a business object are the standard operations `create`, `update` and `delete` (CUD). Whenever an entity can be created, updated, or deleted, these operations must be declared in the behavior definition.

To only implement an operation without exposing it to consumers, the option `internal` can be set before the operation, for example internal update.

Actions

Actions can be specified as non-standard operations in behavior definitions. For more information, see Actions [page 138].

Compositions

All compositions that form the business object’s structure must also be declared in the behavior definition as associations. An abbreviation `AbbreviationName` needs to be defined if the composition name in the CDS view is longer than 11 characters. The keyword `{create;}` is used to declare that the association is create-enabled, which means that instances of the associated entity can be created by the source of the association.

Mapping

The keyword `mapping` defines the mapping contract between database table fields and CDS view fields. This mapping contract solves the discrepancy between the names of database table fields and CDS view fields to facilitate writing records to the database table at runtime. Especially database tables that originate in the legacy application might contain quite short or cryptic field names. With the mapping specification in the behavior definition you can choose the names in the CDS data model independently from the names in the database tables.

Procedure: Defining the Transactional Behavior of the TRAVEL Business Object

As a quick glance shows you, the behavior definition looks quite easy in our case (see listing below).

It consists of a header information and two definitions for entity behavior: one for the root entity and one for the child entity – corresponding to the composition tree of the business object. Note that for each entity of the composition tree, the transactional behavior can be defined in the behavior definition at most once. All supported transactional operations of a concrete business object’s node must be specified in the same behavior definition (that is introduced by the keyword `DEFINE BEHAVIOR FOR ...`).

As expected, the header specifies the unmanaged implementation type of our business object’s contract provider since we are going to integrate the legacy business logic in the new app. For this implementation type,
you as application developer must implement the essential components of the business object’s itself. In this case, you must specify all required operations (create, update, delete, or any application-specific actions) in the corresponding behavior definition and implement them manually in ABAP.

Our TRAVEL business object refers to the underlying CDS data model, which is represented by root entity /DMO/I_Travel_U. Behavior for the root entity can only be implemented in the specified behavior pool /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U.

Static field control is defined in the behavior definition. In our scenario, the value for the key field TravelID is drawn by the function module for creating travel instances. Thus, the field must not be editable by the end user on the UI. Likewise, the field TotalPrice is set to read only. The total price is calculated by the price of the associated bookings and the booking fee in the function module. In this scenario the total price is not editable by the end user.

Mandatory fields are AgencyID, CustomerID, BeginDate and EndDate. These fields contain mandatory information for a travel instance.

The transactional handling of the business object’s root node is determined by the standard operations create, update, and delete, and an instance-related action set_status_booked. Using this action, the end user is able to set the status of selected travel instances to booked. The action in our example affects the output instances with the same entity type and one input instance is related to exactly one output instance. Therefore, the output parameter is defined with the predefined type $self and the cardinality [1]. The fact that in our scenario new instances of the booking sub node can only be created for a specific travel instance is considered by the addition of the _Booking association. The keyword {create;} declares that this association is create-enabled what exactly means that instances of the associated bookings can be created by a travel instance.

Dynamic operation control is defined for the create by association operation. That means, new bookings can only be created if the corresponding travel instance is not set to booked.

The names of the database table fields and the names of the CDS data model names differ. That is why, we specify the mapping contract for every field in the CDS data model. To map the control structure accordingly, the control structure /dmo/s_booking_intx is defined for the database table.

The sub node of TRAVEL business object refers to the corresponding data model for bookings that is represented by the child entity for /DMO/I_Booking_U. Behavior for the child entity can only be implemented in the specified behavior pool /DMO/BP_BOOKING_U. The transactional handling of the booking sub node of TRAVEL business object is determined by the standard operations update and delete. The creation of booking instances is handled by the create by association, that means bookings can only be created as a subnode of its travel parent.

Listing: Behavior Definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_U

```plaintext
implementation unmanaged;
// behavior definition for the TRAVEL root node
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U unique
etag master LastChangedAt
lock master
{  
  field (read only) TravelID, TotalPrice;
  field (mandatory) AgencyID, CustomerID, BeginDate, EndDate;
  create;
  update;
  delete;
}
```
action set_status_booked result [1] $self;
association _Booking { create {features: instance}; }

mapping for /dmo/travel control /dmo/s_travel_intx
{
    AgencyID = agency_id;
    BeginDate = begin_date;
    BookingFee = booking_fee;
    CurrencyCode = currency_code;
    CustomerID = customer_id;
    EndDate = end_date;
    LastChangedAt = lastchangedat;
    Memo = description;
    Status = status;
    TotalPrice = total_price;
    TravelID = travel_id;
}

// behavior definition for the BOOKING sub node
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_U alias booking
implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKING_U unique
etag dependent by _Travel
lock dependent by _Travel
{
    field (read only) TravelID, BookingID;
    field (mandatory) BookingDate, CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate;
    update;
    delete;
    association _Travel{}
}

mapping for /dmo/booking control /dmo/s_booking_intx
{
    AirlineID = carrier_id;
    BookingDate = booking_date;
    BookingID = booking_id;
    ConnectionID = connection_id;
    CurrencyCode = currency_code;
    CustomerID = customer_id;
    FlightDate = flight_date;
    FlightPrice = flight_price;
    TravelID = travel_id;
}

Related Information

Business Object [page 54]

5.3.3.2 Implementing the Behavior of the Business Object

Behavior Pool

The transactional behavior of a business object in the context of the current programming model is implemented in one or more global ABAP classes. These special classes are dedicated only to implementing
the business object’s behavior and are called **behavior pools**. You can assign any number of behavior pools to a behavior definition (a 1:n relationship). Within a single global class, you can define multiple local classes that handle the business object’s behavior. The global class is just a container and is basically empty while the actual behavior logic is implemented in local classes.

**Behavior Pool**

![Diagram of Behavior Pool]

**Parenthesis: Syntax Extension for Defining a Behavior Pool**

```abap
CLASS class_name DEFINITION PUBLIC
  ABSTRACT
  FINAL
  FOR BEHAVIOR OF MyRootBehavior.

  PUBLIC SECTION.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS class_name IMPLEMENTATION.
ENDCLASS.
```
Effect

The above syntax defines a special ABAP class (a behavior pool) for the behavior specified in the behavior definition `MyRootBehavior` (which in turn has the same name as the CDS root entity). This special property and relationship are persisted and transported using a corresponding system table. This specific information is assigned to the properties of the behavior pool and can no longer be changed. The behavior pool is dependent on the behavior definition, meaning the changes to the behavior definition cause it to be regenerated.

This global class is defined as abstract and final, which means there is no reason to instantiate or inherit this global behavior pool. In addition, such a ban prevents possible misuse.

A behavior pool can have static methods, namely `CLASS-DATA`, `CONSTANTS`, and `TYPES`. The application may place common or even public aspects of its implementation in these methods.

Distributing Behavior Pool Implementation

You can assign any number of behavior pools to a behavior definition (1: n relationship). This allows the application developers to distribute their implementations between multiple units, for example one global class (behavior pool) for each business object’s node, and one or more separate auxiliary classes for implementing helper methods. The figure below illustrates this distribution pattern for our sample application.

**Note**

**Best Practices:** Splitting the implementation into different global classes allows developers to work in parallel (distributed work mode). If operations on each node have to be forwarded to different APIs (function module calls), then we recommend using a separate global class (behavior pool) for each node of the business object’s compositional tree.
5.3.3.2.1 Creating the Behavior Pool for the Root Entity

In this step, you create a behavior pool that is the implementation artifact of the corresponding behavior definition that you created earlier.

In doing so, we apply the contribution pattern and split the behavior implementation into two different behavior pools, one for the travel root entity and the other for the booking child entity. In addition, we create a separate auxiliary class for implementing helper methods (such as for mapping and message handling) that can be reused in both behavior implementation classes.

Related Information

Business Object Provider API [page 925]
Handler Classes [page 926]
Saver Classes [page 937]
Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990]
The granularity of the existing application code influences the granularity of handler implementation. If the existing legacy application logic has different APIs (function modules) for create, update, delete, and other transactional operations, then we recommend spreading the operations across different handler classes.

If, for example, the called API only implements one operation for `CREATE` and another API implements one for `UPDATE`, it is advisable to implement each operation in a different local handler class.

If, on the other hand, the called API of your application code is able to process `multiple changes in one call`, the handler should reflect this to achieve the best performance. In such a case, we combine all operations supported by this API in one common handler class.

Otherwise the application code is called multiple times with different input, which can result in bad performance.

If the application code supports a `deep create` (for example creation for root and child entity in one step), then this should be reflected in the design of handler classes to achieve best performance.

→ Remember

Beyond the performance aspects, it is beneficial to implement operations in different `FOR MODIFY` methods, since the orchestration is then passed to the BO runtime and the code of the behavior implementation is more readable.

### Note

**Convention:** The saver class that implements the save sequence for data persistence is either a separate global class or a part of the root implementation (behavior pool for the root entity).

### Procedure 1: Create a Behavior Pool /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U

To launch the wizard tool for creating a behavior implementation, do the following:

1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the relevant behavior definition node (`/DMO/I_TRAVEL_U`) in Project Explorer.
3. Open the context menu and choose `New Behavior Implementation` to launch the creation wizard.

### Note

The behavior definition must be active to get the behavior implementation template that matches the modeled behavior.
Creating a Behavior Pool – Wizard

Further information:

- Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990]
- (Tool Reference) [page 970]

Results: Global Behavior Pool

The generated class pool (in our case /DMO/ BP_TRAVEL_U) provides you with an extension FOR BEHAVIOR OF.
New Global Behavior Pool

The real substance of a behavior pool is located in *Local Types*. Here you can define two types of special local classes, namely handler classes for the operations within the *interaction phase* and saver classes for the operations within the *save sequence*. These classes can be instantiated or invoked only by the ABAP runtime environment (virtual machine) [page 1018].

**Note**

All local class source code within a single global class is stored within a single include, the `CCIMP` include.

**Procedure 2: Define a Skeleton of Local Classes Corresponding to the Behavior Model**

Based on the declarations in the behavior definition `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_U`, and taking best practices for modularization and performance into account, adapt the generated skeleton of the local classes for the root entity accordingly to the listing below:

**Caution**

In the current version of ADT tools, the skeleton with the code generated by the class pool creation wizard differs from the source code in the listing below.

*Expand the following listing to view the source code.*

**Listing: Template for local classes of /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U**

```
**********************************************************************
* Handler class for managing travels ........................................
**********************************************************************
```
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS:
  create_travel     FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_travel_create FOR CREATE travel,
  update_travel     FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_travel_update FOR UPDATE travel,
  delete_travel     FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_travel_delete FOR DELETE travel,
  read_travel       FOR READ
    IMPORTING it_travel FOR READ travel
    RESULT et_travel,
  create_booking_ba FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_booking_create_ba FOR CREATE travel\_booking,
  read_booking_ba   FOR READ
    IMPORTING it_travel FOR READ travel\_Booking
    FULL iv_full_requested
    RESULT et_booking
    LINK et_link_table,
  lock              FOR LOCK
    IMPORTING it_travel_lock FOR LOCK travel,
  set_travel_status FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_travel_set_status_booked FOR ACTION travel~set_status_booked
    RESULT et_travel_set_status_booked,
  get_features      FOR FEATURES
    IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR travel
    RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD create_travel.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD update_travel.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD delete_travel.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD read_travel.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD create_booking_ba.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD read_booking_ba.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD lock.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD set_travel_status.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD get_features.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
**********************************************************************
* Saver class implements the save sequence for data persistence
**********************************************************************
CLASS lsc_saver DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS finalize REDEFINITION.
  METHODS check_before_save REDEFINITION.
  METHODS save REDEFINITION.
  METHODS cleanup REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lsc_saver IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD finalize.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD check_before_save.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD save.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
Procedure 3: Create an Auxiliary Class /DMO/CL_TRAVEL_AUXILIARY

Message handling can be reused by different behavior pools and is therefore outsourced in a separate helper class.

1. In your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the Source Code Library > Classes node of the relevant package.
2. To launch the creation wizard, open the context menu and choose New ABAP Class.

Creating ABAP Class – Wizard

5.3.3.2.2 Implementing the Interaction Phase and the Save Sequence

The business object runtime has two parts: The first part is the interaction phase where a consumer calls business object operations to change data and read instances with or without the transactional changes. The
A business object keeps the changes in its internal transactional buffer, which represents the state. This transactional buffer is always required for a business object, regardless of how it is implemented. After all changes are performed, the data should be persisted. This is implemented within the save sequence.

Further information: (Reference) [page 925]

![Diagram showing the Interaction Phase and the Save Sequence]

**Implementation Steps**

1. Implementing the CREATE Operation for Travel Instances [page 389]
2. Implementing the UPDATE Operation for Travel Data [page 396]
3. Implementing the READ Operation for Travel Data [page 400]
4. Implementing the DELETE Operation for Travel Instances [page 402]
5. Implementing the CREATE Operation for Associated Bookings [page 404]
6. Implementing the READ Operation for Associated Bookings [page 411]
7. Implementing the SET_STATUS_BOOKED Action [page 417]
8. Instance Feature Control Implementation: Dynamic Feature Control [page 107]
9. Implementing the UPDATE, DELETE, and READ Operations for Booking Instances [page 423]

**Related Information**

Handler Classes [page 926]
5.3.3.2.2.1 Implementing the CREATE Operation for Travel Instances

In this topic, you will be guided through all implementation steps required for creation of new travel instances. We will motivate the steps for the implementation, starting from the UI.

Preview

If you run the UI service based on SAP Fiori Elements Fiori Launchpad, the resulting UI provides you with a list of existing travel items, including all fields exposed for UI consumption. in the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travel ID</th>
<th>Agency ID</th>
<th>Customer ID</th>
<th>Starting Date</th>
<th>End Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>70041</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>Apr 29, 2018</td>
<td>Apr 29, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>70007</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>Apr 29, 2018</td>
<td>Apr 29, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>70046</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>Apr 28, 2018</td>
<td>Apr 29, 2018</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of Travel Items

To create a travel item, the end user must click the + (Create) button and fill all required fields in the related object page to specify the required information for a new travel instance.
As soon as the user clicks the **Save** button on the object page, the data is persisted in the corresponding database table and a travel instance with a new travel ID is created.

### Implementation Steps

1. **Defining the Handler Class for Creation of Travel Instances**

   Corresponding to the [template](page 385) for the root node behavior implementation, a local handler class `lhc_travel` is defined to implement each changing operation in one individual **FOR MODIFY** method. In this case, the `create_travel` **FOR MODIFY** method should only be used to implement the create operation for root instances. Therefore, the signature of this method includes only one import parameter `it_travel_create` for referring to the travel (root) instances to be created. To identify the root entity, the alias `travel` is used - according to the alias that is specified in the behavior definition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travel Status: N</th>
<th>3952</th>
<th>70007</th>
<th>99</th>
<th>Jul 12, 2018</th>
<th>Jul 19, 2018</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Travel Status: N</td>
<td>3953</td>
<td>70007</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>Nov 17, 2018</td>
<td>Nov 24, 2018</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   **Saved Data Displayed on Fiori UI**

   The local handler class `lhc_travel` inherits from class `cl_abap_behavior_handler` and is automatically instantiated by the framework.
In Note

Note that import parameter `it_travel_create` does not have fixed data type at the design time. At runtime, the data type is assigned by the compiler with the types derived from behavior definition.

### Further information:

<method> FOR MODIFY [page 928]

**LISTING 1: Signature of the create_travel FOR MODIFY (excerpt from template)**

```plaintext
**********************************************************************
* Handler class for managing travels
* **********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
    PRIVATE SECTION.
        METHODS:
            create_travel FOR MODIFY IMPORTING it_travel_create FOR CREATE travel,

ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
    METHOD create_travel.
    ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop PUBLIC 391
2. Implementing the `<method>` FOR MODIFY for Creation of New Travel Instances

As given in the listing below, the basic structure of the `<method>` FOR MODIFY implementation includes:

- A loop on all new travel instances to be created for the root node.
- Mapping the CDS view field names to the database table fields names by using the operator `MAPPING FROM ENTITY USING CONTROL`. This operator maps only the fields that are flagged in the control structure of the importing parameter.
- Call of the business logic function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_CREATE` for creation of new travel instances.
- Message handling for processing messages in case of failure. See step 3 Message Handling [page 393].

Each create action call can produce failed keys (`<fs_travel_create>-%cid`) and messages (`lt_messages`). Any failed keys are stored in the table `FAILED` [page 945] whereas the `REPORTED` [page 946] table includes all instance-specific messages.

Besides an ID of the relevant BO instance and the `%FAIL` [page 948] component, the failed tables also include the predefined component `%CID` [page 947]. It stands for the content ID and is used in an OData request to bind the result of an operation to a name so that it can be referenced in another operation later in the transactional processing.

Remember

In some use cases, it may happen that a consumer works with data that is not yet persisted and might not have a primary key yet. The primary key can be created in the `<method>` FOR MODIFY call or later in the save sequence (late numbering). In such cases, a temporary primary key, the content ID (`%CID`) for an instance, is used as long as no primary key was created by BO runtime. The content ID is consequently also used then as a foreign key.

In case of success (`lt_messages IS INITIAL`), the two values with the content ID `%CID` and the new key `travelid` are written into the `mapped-travel` table.
Remember

The **MAPPED** [page 946] tables comprise the components %CID and %KEY [page 947]. They include the information about which key values were created by the application for given content IDs.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**LISTING 2: Creating travel instances**

```
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD create_travel.
    DATA lt_messages   TYPE /dmo/t_message.
    DATA ls_travel_in  TYPE /dmo/travel.
    DATA ls_travel_out TYPE /dmo/travel.
    LOOP AT it_travel_create ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_create>).
      ls_travel_in = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_travel_create> MAPPING FROM ENTITY
          USING CONTROL ).
      CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_CREATE'
        EXPORTING
          is_travel   = CORRESPONDING /dmo/s_travel_in( ls_travel_in )
        IMPORTING
          es_travel   = ls_travel_out
          et_messages = lt_messages.
      IF lt_messages IS INITIAL.
        INSERT VALUE #( %cid = <fs_travel_create>%cid  travelid = ls_travel_out-
          travel_id )
        INTO TABLE mapped-travel.
      ELSE.
        /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_travel_messages( EXPORTING
          iv_cid       = <fs_travel_create>%cid
          it_messages  = lt_messages
          CHANGING
          failed       = failed-travel
          reported     = reported-travel
        ).
      ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
...
ENDCLASS.
```

3. Message Handling

When handling changing operations for travel instances, fault events may occur. For the processing of appropriate messages in such a case, the method **handle_travel_messages** is used. This method is defined in a separate auxiliary class `/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary` so that it can be called in different FOR MODIFY methods of the class pools. In order to use the message object from behavior processing framework, the auxiliary class inherits from the framework class `cl_abap_behv`. The helper method `get_message_object` is defined to retrieve the message object `obj` in various message handler methods.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**LISTING 3: Declaration of the method handle_travel_messages at the beginning of the helper class `/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary`**

```
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary DEFINITION
  INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behv
PUBLIC FINAL
```
CREATE PUBLIC 
PUBLIC SECTION.
  TYPES tt_travel_failed              TYPE TABLE FOR FAILED   /dmo/i_travel_u.
  TYPES tt_travel_mapped              TYPE TABLE FOR MAPPED   /dmo/i_travel_u.
  TYPES tt_travel_reported            TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED /dmo/i_travel_u.
CLASS-METHODS handle_travel_messages
  IMPORTING
    iv_cid       TYPE string   OPTIONAL
    iv_travel_id TYPE /dmo/travel_id OPTIONAL
    it_messages  TYPE /dmo/t_message
  CHANGING
    failed       TYPE tt_travel_failed
    reported     TYPE tt_travel_reported.
PRIVATE SECTION.
CLASS-DATA obj TYPE REF TO /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary.
CLASS-METHODS get_message_object
  RETURNING VALUE(r_result)         TYPE REF TO /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary.
ENDCLASS.

4. Implementing the Message Handling for Travels

The following listing represents the implementation of the method handle_travel_messages.

To refer to the data set where an error (msgty = 'E') or an abort (msgty = 'A') occurred, the failed table is used, whereas the instance-specific messages are stored in the reported table.

However, messages that originate from the legacy code must be mapped to the messages of the class-based BO framework.

The method new_message is used in this implementation to map the T100 messages (that originate from the legacy code) to the messages of the class-based BO framework. It returns a message object and is implemented in the framework class lcl_abap_behv.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

LISTING 4: Implementation of the method handle_travel_messages

CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD handle_travel_messages.
  LOOP AT it_messages INTO DATA(ls_message) WHERE msgty = 'E' OR msgty = 'A'.
    APPEND VALUE #( %cid = iv_cid  travelid = iv_travel_id )
      TO failed.
    APPEND VALUE #( %msg      = get_message_object( )->new_message( id       =
                     number   = ls_message-msgno
                     severity =
                     v1       = ls_message-msgv1
                     v2       = ls_message-msgv2
                     v3       = ls_message-msgv3
                     v4       = ls_message-msgv4 )
                     %key-TravelID = iv_travel_id
                     %cid     = iv_cid
                     TravelID = iv_travel_id )
      TO reported.
  ENDLINK.
ENDMETHOD.
METHOD get_message_object.
  IF obj IS INITIAL.
    CREATE OBJECT obj.
  ENDIF.
  r_result = obj.
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop
5. Performing a Final Commit and Releasing Caches

When the `save` method is called, the final commit is executed on the database and the data entered by the user is persisted to the new travel instance. As depicted in the listing below, the save method only executes a call to the function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_SAVE` from the legacy business logic.

Further information: Method `SAVE` [page 941]

To discard all changes after the last save, the `cleanup` method is used. This method delegates the call to the function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_INITIALIZE` from legacy code.

Add the definition for the cleanup method to `lsc_saver` and call the function module in the implementation.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

LISTING 5: Implemented save sequence

```abap
CLASS lsc_saver IMPLEMENTATION.
    ...
    METHOD save.
        CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_SAVE'.
    ENDMETHOD.
    METHOD cleanup.
        CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_INITIALIZE'.
    ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

Checking Results

At this point, you have the opportunity to check how does the resulting app work, and especially the new implementation of the `CREATE` operation. For this to happen, however, a suitable business service for UI consumption must first be defined and published.

For more information, see: Defining Business Service for Fiori UI [page 434]

Related Information

Handler Classes [page 926]
Saver Classes [page 937]
Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]
Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]
5.3.3.2.2.2 Implementing the UPDATE Operation for Travel Data

This topic guides you through the implementation steps required for data updates to an existing travel instance. In this case, however, in addition to the `<method> FOR MODIFY`, the `<method> FOR READ` must also be implemented. It provides read access to the application buffer, which is necessary for ETag comparison.

**Preview**

In our travel application scenario, the appropriate business data should be modifiable for all required items of the travel instance when, for example, the user clicks the `Edit` button on the Fiori UI.

In change mode, the end user is able to change the relevant travel fields as shown in the figure below. As soon as the user chooses the `Save` button on the object page, the changed travel data is saved in the corresponding tables and a new version of the related travel instance is created.
Implementation Steps

1. Defining the Method for Implementing Travel Data Update

Corresponding to the template [page 385] for the root node behavior implementation, a local handler class lhc_travel is defined to implement each changing operation. In this case, the update_travel FOR MODIFY method should only be used to implement the update operation for root instances. Therefore, the signature of this method includes only one import parameter it_travel_update for referring to the travel (root) instances to be updated.

LISTING 1: Signature of the <method> FOR MODIFY (excerpt from template)

```
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    ... update_travel FOR MODIFY 
    IMPORTING it_travel_update FOR UPDATE travel,
  ENDCLASS.
```

2. Implementing the <method> FOR MODIFY for Travel Data Update

The basic structure of the FOR MODIFY method implementation is very similar to that of the handler class for creation of travel instances:

- A loop on all new travel instances to be updated for the root node.
- Mapping the CDS view field names to the database table fields names using the operator MAPPING FROM ENTITY. This operator maps every field that is declared in the mapping specification in the behavior definition.
- Mapping of the %control structure of the importing parameter to the predefined flag structure ls_travelx. The control structure identifies which entity fields were changed by the client. It contains the key and the flag structure to the data fields and is used in BAPIs to flag each individual data field as changed.
- Call of the business logic function module /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE to update travel instances.
- Message handling for processing messages in case of failure.

Each update call can produce failed keys and messages (lt_messages). Failed keys are addressed by the content ID (<fs_travel_update>-%cid_ref) and the value <fs_travel_update>-travelid). In case of
failure, failed keys are saved in the `failed-travel` table, whereas the `reported-travel` table includes all instance-specific messages.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**LISTING 2: Updating data of travel instances**

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD update_travel.
    DATA lt_messages TYPE /dmo/t_message.
    DATA ls_travel   TYPE /dmo/travel.
    DATA ls_travelx TYPE /dmo/s_travel_inx. "refers to x structure (> BAPIs)
    LOOP AT it_travel_update ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_update>).
      ls_travel = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_travel_update> MAPPING FROM ENTITY ).
      ls_travelx-travel_id = <fs_travel_update>-TravelID.
      ls_travelx-_intx   = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_travel_update> mapping from entity ).
      CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE'
        EXPORTING
          is_travel   = CORRESPONDING /dmo/s_travel_in( ls_travel )
          is_travelx  = ls_travelx
        IMPORTING
          et_messages = lt_messages.
        /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_travel_messages(
          EXPORTING
            iv_cid     = <fs_travel_update>-%cid_ref
            iv_travel_id = <fs_travel_update>-travelid
            it_messages = lt_messages
          CHANGING
            failed   = failed-travel
            reported = reported-travel
          ).
      ENDLOOP.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```
3. Implementing the `<method>` FOR READ for ETag Handling

In the context of data updates to an existing travel data set, it is important to retrieve current data from the application buffer. As you remember, we specified an ETag for the root entity in the behavior definition:

```plaintext
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
etag master LastChangedAt
{
    ...
}
```

An ETag [page 1027] determines the changes to the requested data set to help prevent simultaneous updates of a data set from overwriting each other. This is precisely the reason why the ETag check requires data from the buffer. The `<method>` FOR READ is designed to return the data from the application buffer.

For more information on how to implement this method, see Implementing the READ Operation for Travel Data [page 400].

Related Information

Handler Classes [page 926]
Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]
5.3.3.2.2.3 Implementing the READ Operation for Travel Data

This topic guides you through the implementation steps required to read travel instances from the transactional buffer.

Context

In contrast to the CREATE, UPDATE, or DELETE operation, the READ does not have its direct trigger on a Fiori UI.

→ Remember

The GO button on the UI does not call the <method> FOR READ (the transactional READ) in the behavior pool. Instead, the GO button executes a query via the orchestration framework and reads data directly from the database.

The READ operation provides read access to the application buffer. It is used to retrieve data for further processing during the interaction phase [page 1029]. This is necessary, for example, for ETag [page 1027] comparison when executing an UPDATE. Before the to check the conditions for actions and decide if they are enabled or disabled. In the travel scenario, the action <method> for UPDATE is called, the ETag value in the application buffer must be compared to the value that is displayed on the UI. Only if these values correspond is the UPDATE triggered. This check ensures that the data the end user sees on the UI has not been changed by other consumers.

The READ is also necessary for dynamic action control [page 113] set_to_booked is disabled when the status is booked. Hence, the data from the transactional buffer must be read to display the action button correspondingly.

Both use cases are relevant for our travel scenario. Therefore it is necessary to implement a <method> FOR READ.

The READ is also necessary to complete the business object and make it accessible by EML [page 1027]. In this case, you can consume the business object directly from ABAP.

Implementation Steps

The READ operation cannot be declared in the behavior definition as it is always implicitly assumed that a READ is implemented.

i Note

If you use groups in your behavior definition, you must explicitly specify the READ operation in one of the groups. For more information, see Using Groups in Large Development Projects [page 634].
1. Defining the signature of the `<method>` FOR READ

In the definition part of the handler class for travel, define the method `read_travel` for READ with an importing parameter and a result parameter.

**LISTING 1: Signature of the `<method>` for READ**

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    ... read_travel FOR READ IMPORTING it_travel FOR READ travel
       RESULT et_travel,
    ...
  ENDCLASS.
```

For more information, see `<method>` FOR READ [page 933].

2. Implementing the `<method>` FOR READ

To return the actual data from the application buffer, the travel ID that is imported is passed to the reading function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ`. The function module returns the entity instance corresponding to the travel ID and messages if an error occurs. The result parameter `et_travel` is then filled with the keys and the values of the fields that the consumer has requested. These fields are flagged in the control structure of the importing parameter `it_travel`.

With the changing parameter `failed`, you specify the fail cause if something goes wrong. If, for example, the used function module returns the message number 16, the travel ID was not found. In this case, you can return the fail cause `not_found`. For all other errors, return fail cause `unspecific`.

* Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**LISTING 2: Reading travel instances from the application buffer**

```abap
**********************************************************************
* Read travel data from buffer                                        *
**********************************************************************
METHOD read_travel.
  DATA: ls_travel_out TYPE /dmo/travel,
       lt_message TYPE /dmo/t_message.
  LOOP AT it_travel INTO DATA(ls_travel_to_read)
    GROUP BY ls_travel_to_read-%key.
    CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ'
      EXPORTING
        iv_travel_id = ls_travel_to_read-travelid
      IMPORTING
        es_travel = ls_travel_out
        et_messages = lt_message.
    IF lt_message IS INITIAL.
      "fill result parameter with flagged fields
      INSERT CORRESPONDING #( ls_travel_out MAPPING TO ENTITY ) INTO TABLE
      et_travel.
    ELSE.
      "fill failed table in case of error
      failed-travel = VALUE #(
        BASE failed-travel
        FOR msg IN lt_message ( 
          %key = ls_travel_to_read-%key
          %fail-cause = COND #(
            WHEN msg-msgty = 'E' AND ( msg-msgno = '016' OR msg-msgno = '009' )
          )
        )
      )
    ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
```
THEN if_abap_behv=>cause-not_found
ELSE if_abap_behv=>cause-unspecific

ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.

Testing the READ

In contrast to the CREATE, UPDATE and DELETE operation, the READ cannot be easily tested using a Fiori UI, as there is no direct execution trigger for reading the data from the application buffer. Nevertheless, you can test your READ implementation by using EML.

Example

```abap
READ ENTITY /DMO/I_Travel_U FIELDS ( TravelID
AgencyID
CustomerID
BeginDate
EndDate
BookingFee
TotalPrice
CurrencyCode
Memo
Status
LastChangedAt )
WITH VALUE #( %key-TravelID = lv_travel_id )
RESULT   DATA(lt_received_travel_data)
FAILED   DATA(ls_failed).
```

To retrieve the complete entity instance for the respective travel ID, you have to flag every element explicitly. For more information about EML, see Consuming Business Objects with EML [page 640].

5.3.3.2.2.4 Implementing the DELETE Operation for Travel Instances

This topic guides you through the implementation steps required to delete an existing travel instance.

Preview

In our scenario, the appropriate travel instance should be deleted when, for example, the user clicks the Delete button on the Fiori UI.
Selecting a Travel Entry and Clicking the Delete Button

### Implementation Steps

1. **Defining the Handler Class for Deletion of Travel Instances**
   
   Corresponding to the template [page 385] for the root node behavior implementation, a local handler class is defined to implement each changing operation. In this case, the delete FOR MODIFY is used to implement the delete operation for root instances. As given in the listing below, the signature of the <method> FOR MODIFY includes only one import parameter it_travel_delete for referring to the travel (root) instances to be deleted.

   **LISTING 1**: Signature of the delete_travel FOR MODIFY (excerpt from template)

   ```abap
   CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
   PRIVATE SECTION.
   METHODS:
   ... delete_travel FOR MODIFY IMPORTING it_travel_delete FOR DELETE travel,
   ... ENDCLASS.
   ```

2. **Implementing the Deletion of Travel Instances**

   To delete travel instances, the function module /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_DELETE of the legacy business logic is called.

   Each delete operation call can produce failed keys and messages (lt_messages). Failed keys are addressed by the content ID (<fs_travel_delete>-%cid_ref [page 947]) and the key value <fs_travel_delete>-travel_id). In case of failure, failed keys are saved in the failed-travel table, whereas the reported-travel table includes all instance-specific messages.

   Expand the following listing to view the source code.

   **LISTING 2**: Deleting travel instances

   ```abap
   CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
   ...
   ```
METHOD delete_travel.
  DATA lt_messages TYPE /dmo/t_message.
  LOOP AT it_travel_delete ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_delete>).
    CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_DELETE'
      EXPORTING
        iv_travel_id = <fs_travel_delete>-travelid
      IMPORTING
        et_messages = lt_messages.
    /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_travel_messages(
      EXPORTING
        iv_cid = <fs_travel_delete>%cid_ref
        iv_travel_id = <fs_travel_delete>-travelid
        it_messages = lt_messages
      CHANGING
        failed = failed-travel
        reported = reported-travel
    ).
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.

Related Information

Handler Classes [page 926]
Saver Classes [page 937]
Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]
Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

5.3.3.2.2.5 Implementing the CREATE Operation for Associated Bookings

In this topic, you will be guided through all implementation steps required for creation of new bookings.

In our demo application, we assume that new bookings cannot be created separately but can only in conjunction with a given travel instance.

The fact that new instances of the bookings can only be created for a specific travel instance is considered in the behavior definition by the _Booking association:

```
  define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
  ...
  { ...
    association _Booking { create; }
  }
```

The keyword { create; } declares that this association is create-enabled what exactly means that instances of the associated bookings are created by a travel instance.
The figure below shows a list with booking items that belong to a travel instance.

To add a new booking to a selected travel instance, the end user must click the + icon and edit some fields to specify the required information for a new booking.

As soon as the user clicks the Save button on the Fiori object page, a booking data set with a new booking number is created.
Implementation Steps

1. Defining Method for Creation of Associated Bookings

Corresponding to the template [page 385] for the root entity, the local handler class lhc_travel is defined to implement each changing operation in one individual <method> FOR MODIFY. In this case, the create_booking_ba FOR MODIFY method should only be used to implement the create operation for booking instances by means of an association. The signature of the cba_travel FOR MODIFY includes only one import parameter it_booking_create_ba to refer to the associated booking instances to be created.

To identify the associated bookings, the aliases for the root entity and the child entity are used - according to the aliases specified in the behavior definition. The association is expressed in the form:

... FOR CREATE root\_child_entity.

LISTING 1: Signature of the create_booking_ba FOR MODIFY method (excerpt from template)

```
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    ... cba_booking FOR MODIFY IMPORTING it_booking_create_ba FOR CREATE travel\_booking.
ENDCLASS.
```

2. Implementing a FOR MODIFY Method for Creation of New Booking Instances

As reproduced in the listing below, the implementation of the FOR MODIFY method is initiated by a loop across all selected travel instances for which associated bookings are to be created. Each selected travel (root) instance is represented by the travel ID as a primary key (lv_travelid).

Even in a case like this, it can happen that a consumer works with data that is not yet persisted and might not have a primary key yet (for example, if the primary key is going to be created later in the save sequence (late numbering)). In such cases, a temporary primary key, the content ID (%CID) for the travel instance is used as long as no primary key was created by BO runtime. The content ID is then written to the mapped-travel table.
Before a new booking data set is created, we first need to retrieve all bookings (lt_booking_old) that already exist for the selected travel instance. This is done by calling the /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ function module.

In case of failure, the message is handled by means of the handle_travel_messages method, as we know from the implementation of FOR MODIFY in the previous topics.

In case of success (lt_messages IS INITIAL), the maximum booking number has to be determined. This is done by the condition COND #( WHEN ... ) where the last given booking number lv_last_booking_id is compared with the maximum booking ID lv_max_booking_id.

The creation of new bookings for a given travel instance takes place in a further loop across the booking instances to be created, which are addressed by the association <fs_booking_create_ba>-%target. This association includes the predefined component %target, which is used to address the target of composition.

To provide the incoming structure for bookings with data, the mapping between the element in CDS views and the original table fields is required. This mapping is implemented by the operator MAPPING FROM ENTITY USING CONTROL, which maps the CDS view fields to the database table fields based on the mapping specification in the behavior definition and the control structure.
Before the new booking data sets are created by calling the function module /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE, the booking ID for the booking instance to be created is easily determined by the statement `ls_booking-booking_id = lv_last_booking_id + 1`.

In case of success, the values with the content ID `%CID` and the key values `travelid`, and `bookingid` are written to the mapped-booking table.

The function call can produce failed keys (`<fs_booking_create>-%cid`) and messages (`lt_messages`). Any failed keys are stored in the table `failed-booking` whereas the `reported-booking` table includes all messages that are specific for the failed booking instance.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

LISTING 2: Creating booking instances by using association

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD create_booking_ba.
  DATA lt_messages TYPE /dmo/t_message.
  DATA lt_booking_old TYPE /dmo/t_booking.
  DATA ls_booking TYPE /dmo/booking.
  DATA lv_last_booking_id TYPE /dmo/booking_id VALUE '0'.
  LOOP AT it_booking_create_ba ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking_create_ba>).
    DATA(lv_travelid) = <fs_booking_create_ba>-travelid.
    CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ'
      EXPORTING
        iv_travel_id = lv_travelid
      IMPORTING
        et_booking = lt_booking_old
        et_messages = lt_messages.
    IF lt_messages IS INITIAL.
      IF lt_booking_old IS NOT INITIAL.
        lv_last_booking_id = lt_booking_old[ lines( lt_booking_old ) ]-
          booking_id.
      ENDIF.
    ENDIF.
    LOOP AT <fs_booking_create_ba>-%target ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking_create>).
      ls_booking = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_booking_create> MAPPING FROM ENTITY
        USING CONTROL ).
      lv_last_booking_id ++ 1.
      ls_booking-booking_id = lv_last_booking_id.
      CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE'
        EXPORTING
          is_travel = VALUE /dmo/s_travel_in( travel_id = lv_travelid )
          is_travelx = VALUE /dmo/s_travel_inx( travel_id = lv_travelid )
        IMPORTING
          et_messages = lt_messages.
      IF lt_messages IS INITIAL.
        INSERT VALUE #(
          %cid = <fs_booking_create>-%cid
          travelid = 'lv_travelid
          bookingid = ls_booking-booking_id
        ) INTO TABLE mapped-booking.
      ELSE.
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

408 PUBLIC

Develop
LOOP AT lt_messages INTO DATA(ls_message) WHERE msgty = 'E' OR msgty = 'A'.
    INSERT VALUE #( %cid = <fs_booking_create>-%cid ) INTO TABLE failed-booking.
    INSERT
    VALUE #( %cid = <fs_booking_create>-%cid
    travelid = <fs_booking_create>-TravelID
    %msg = new_message( id = ls_message-msgid
    number = ls_message-msgno
    severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
    v1 = ls_message-msgv1
    v2 = ls_message-msgv2
    v3 = ls_message-msgv3
    v4 = ls_message-msgv4
    )
    )
    INTO TABLE reported-booking.
ENDLOOP.
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ELSE.
/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_travel_messages( EXPORTING
   iv_cid       = <fs_booking_create_ba>-%cid_ref
   iv_travel_id = lv_travelid
   it_messages  = lt_messages
   CHANGING
      failed       = failed-travel
      reported     = reported-travel
 ).
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.

Related Information

Handler Classes [page 926]
Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]
Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]
5.3.3.2.2.5.1 Implementing Dynamic Operation Control for Create By Association

This topic guides you through the required implementation steps to dynamically enable and disable the create by association operation for bookings.

Context

Depending on the value of the Status field of the travel instance, the create by association operation is enabled or disabled on the corresponding travel instance.

The Fiori Elements app preview displays the create button for the associated bookings on the object page only if the operation is enabled.

Implementation Steps

1. Defining dynamic feature control in the behavior definition

In the behavior definition, the feature control for the create by association is defined as follows:

```plaintext
implementation unmanaged;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U unique
...
  ...
  association _Booking { create (features: instance); } ...}
```

2. Implementing dynamic feature control in the behavior pool

The <method> FOR FEATURES must be declared. For more information, see <method> FOR FEATURES [page 936].

The travel instance is read and, depending on the value of the Status field, the create by association is enabled or disabled.

```plaintext
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    ... get_features FOR FEATURES
      IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR travel
      RESULT result.
  ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  ...
  ************************************************************************
  * Implements the dynamic action handling for travel instances
  *
```
Related Information

Feature Control [page 96]

5.3.3.2.2.6 Implementing the READ Operation for Associated Bookings

This topic guides you through the implementation steps required to read booking instances associated to a travel instance from the buffer.

Context

Just like the READ for travel data, the READ by association does not have an explicit trigger on the UI. Nevertheless, the BO must be fully consumable by EML [page 1027] and therefore it is necessary to implement a method that reads the bookings that are associated to a specific travel ID in our travel scenario.

The READ by association operation provides read access to the application buffer by reading child entity instances of a parent entity. It is used to retrieve data for further processing during the interaction phase [page 1029].

Implementation Steps

The READ by association operation does not have to be declared in the behavior definition as it always implicitly assumed that READ by association is implemented. However, you can specify it explicitly:

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
```
i Note

If you use groups in your behavior definition, you must explicitly specify the READ by association operation in one of the groups. If CREATE by association is also enabled for the BO, the READ and the CREATE by association must be assigned to the same group due to its syntactical relation. For more information, see Using Groups in Large Development Projects [page 634].

1. Defining the signature of the <method> FOR READ by association

In the definition part of the handler class for travel, define the method read_booking_ba for READ travel \_Booking with the entity input parameters IMPORTING and FULL, and the output parameters, RESULT and LINK.

The boolean parameter FULL indicates whether the consumer requests complete entity instances or only the keys which are returned with the parameter LINK.

The parameter RESULT returns the complete set of associated entity instances based on the control structure of the importing parameter.

The parameter LINK returns the key of the source entity and of the associated target entities.

LISTING 1: Signature of the <method> FOR READ by association

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    ... read_booking_ba   FOR READ
      IMPORTING it_travel  FOR READ travel\_Booking
                        FULL iv_full_requested
      RESULT    et_booking
      LINK et_link_table,
    ... .
  ENDCLASS.
```

2. Implementing the <method> FOR READ by association

To return the actual data from the application buffer, the imported travel ID is passed to the reading function module /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ. The function module returns the entity instances of the associated bookings corresponding to the travel ID and possible messages if an error occurs. If no message is returned, for each associated booking, fill the output parameter et_link_table with the corresponding source key for the travel instance and the target key for the booking instance. The result parameter et_booking can then be filled with the matching values for the fields that are flagged in the control structure if the full parameter iv_full_requested is set.

In the changing parameter failed, you specify the fail cause if something goes wrong. If, for example, the used function module returns the message number 16, the travel ID was not found. In this case, you can return the fail cause not_found. For all other error, return fail cause unspecific.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.
LISTING 2: Reading associated booking instances from the application buffer

**********************************************************************
* Read booking data by association from buffer
**********************************************************************

METHOD read_booking_ba.
DATA:
ls_travel_out TYPE /dmo/travel,
lt_booking_out TYPE /dmo/t_booking,
ls_booking LIKE LINE OF et_booking,
lt_message TYPE /dmo/t_message.
LOOP AT it_travel ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_rba>).
CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ'
EXPORTING
iv_travel_id = <fs_travel_rba>-travelid
IMPORTING
es_travel = ls_travel_out
et_booking = lt_booking_out
et_messages = lt_message.
IF lt_message IS INITIAL.
LOOP AT lt_booking_out ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking>).
  'fill link table with key fields
  INSERT
  VALUE #(
    source-%key = <fs_travel_rba>-%key
    target-%key = VALUE #(
      TravelID = <fs_booking>-travel_id
      BookingID = <fs_booking>-booking_id
    )
  )
  INTO TABLE et_link_table.
  'fill result parameter with flagged fields
  IF iv_full_requested = abap_true.
    ls_booking = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_booking> MAPPING TO ENTITY ).
    ls_booking-lastchangedat = ls_travel_out-lastchangedat.
  ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ELSE.
  'fill failed table in case of error
  failed-travel = VALUE #(
    BASE failed-travel
    FOR msg IN lt_message {
      %key = <fs_travel_rba>-TravelID
      %fail-cause = COND #(
        WHEN msg-msgty = 'E' AND ( msg-msgno = '016' OR msg-msgno = '009' )
        THEN if_abap_behv=>cause-not_found
        ELSE if_abap_behv=>cause-unspecific
      )
    }
  ).
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Testing

Just like the READ operation, the READ by association cannot be easily tested using a Fiori UI, as there is no direct execution trigger for reading the associated booking from the application buffer. Nevertheless, you can test your READ by association implementation by using EML.
5.3.3.2.2.7 Implementing the LOCK Operation

This topic guides you through the implementation steps required to lock instances on the database.

**Context**

Locking prevents simultaneous changes on the database.

The lock operation is executed before modify operations. It locks the entity instance during the time of the modify operation and disables other clients to modify the specific instance and all its locking related instances. As soon as the modify operation is finished, the lock is released.

For more information, see [Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking)](page 166).

In our unmanaged scenario, the travel entity was defined as lock master and the booking entity as lock dependent. That means, the locking mechanism always locks the lock master instances and all its dependents. For example, if the lock operation is executed because a booking instance is updated, the parent travel instance and all its booking instances are also being locked.

To enable locking, the method `FOR LOCK` must be implemented. The legacy code of the unmanaged scenario includes a lock object, which must be called in the method `FOR LOCK` to lock the relevant entity instances.

**Preview**

In our scenario, it should not be possible to save changes on the database, while another entity instance of the same lock master entity instance is being changed at the same moment. In this case, the end user on the UI gets an error message:
Concurrent Changes of Entity Instances of the Same Lock Master Instance

Implementation Steps

The legacy code of the unmanaged scenario includes a lock object, which must be called in the method FOR LOCK to lock the relevant entity instances.

1. Defining the Handler Class for Locking Travel Instances

Corresponding to the template [page 385] for the root node behavior implementation, a local handler class is defined to implement each operation. In this case, the method lock FOR LOCK is used to implement the lock operation for the travel business object. As you can see in the listing below, the signature of lock FOR Lockheed includes only one importing parameter it_travel_lock for referring to the lock master’s key.

LISTING 1: Signature of the lock FOR LOCK (excerpt from template)

```
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    lock              FOR LOCK
      IMPORTING it_travel_lock FOR LOCK travel,
      ....
  ENDCLASS.
```

2. Implementing Locking of Travel Instances

To lock a travel instance and its lock dependents, instantiate the lock object /DMO/ETRAVEL of the legacy business logic. This is done by calling the factory method get_instance of cl_abap_lock_object_factory. This instantiation must not fail, except for technical errors. You can raise a short dump if this happens.

Call the enqueue method of the lock object and pass the imported travel ID to execute locking. If the instance is already locked, you will get an exception. This exception can be handled by the handle_travel_messages of the auxiliary class to fill failed and reported table. If the lock fails for technical reasons, raise a short dump.

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.
LISTING 2: Locking travel instances

CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD lock
  TRY.
"Instantiate lock object
  DATA(lock) = cl_abap_lock_object_factory=>get_instance( iv_name = '/DMO/ETRAVEL' ).
  CATCH cx_abap_lock_failure INTO DATA(lr_exp).
  RAISE SHORTDUMP lr_exp.
  ENDTRY.
  LOOP AT it_travel_lock ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel>).
    TRY.
      "enqueue travel instance
      lock->enqueue( 
        it_parameter = VALUE #( ( name = 'TRAVEL_ID' value = REF #( <fs_travel>-travelid ) ) )
      ).
      "exception is raised if foreign lock exists
      CATCH cx_abap_foreign_lock INTO DATA(lx_foreign_lock).
      /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_travel_messages(
        EXPORTING
        iv_travel_id = <fs_travel>-TravelID
        it_messages = VALUE #( ( msgid = '/DMO/CM_FLIGHT_LEGAC' msgty = 'E' msgno = '032' msgv1 = <fs_travel>-travelid msgv2 = lx_foreign_lock->user_name )
      ).
      CATCH cx_abap_lock_failure into lr_exp.
      RAISE SHORTDUMP lr_exp.
      ENDTRY.
    ENDLOOP.
  ENDMETHOD.
...
ENDCLASS.

Testing

To test if the locking mechanism works properly, open the preview twice and set a breakpoint after the method enqueue.

In the first preview application, delete or update any entity instance. The ADT debugger stops at the breakpoint. At this point, the enqueue lock is already set on the chosen entity instance’s lock master and its dependents. Try to do a modify operation with the other preview application on the same entity instance or any of its lock master’s dependents. Do not stop at the breakpoint this time. You will see that the modify operation is rejected because the entity instance is locked by the client of the first preview application.
5.3.3.2.2.8 Implementing the SET_STATUS_BOOKED Action

This topic describes the implementation of an action related to the travel instances. Using this action, the end user should be able to change the status of travel processing.

Preview

Again, we use the option of running the resulting app based on Fiori Elements to check the action execution. When we run the app, the UI screen provides the button *Set to Booked* for the action as shown in the figure below.

![Image of UI screen showing travel status change](image)

**Implementation Steps**

Once an action is defined in the behavior definition, it must be implemented in the behavior pool of the business object.

1. **Defining the Method for Action**

   As described in *Action Implementation [page 145]* the method `FOR ACTION` must be declared in the private section of the behavior pool.
The beginning of the source code excerpt in the following listing shows the declaration of two table types, one for **ACTION IMPORT** (the importing parameter) and the other for **ACTION RESULT** (the exporting parameter).

The importing parameter is a freely selected name (in our case: `it_travel_set_status_booked`). The action name `set_status_booked` refers to the name of the action defined in the behavior definition and the entity `travel`, on which the action is assigned. The result parameter is also a freely selected name (in our case: `et_travel_set_status_booked`).

**LISTING 1: Defining the signature of set_travel_status FOR MODIFY**

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS:
    ... 
    set_travel_status FOR MODIFY 
      IMPORTING it_travel_set_status_booked FOR ACTION travel~set_status_booked 
      RESULT et_travel_set_status_booked.
    ... 
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

2. **Implementing set_travel_status FOR MODIFY**

To execute the actual action, the function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_SET_BOOKING` of the legacy business logic is called.

The main implementation steps are the same as in the implementation of the CUD operations.

To fill the action result parameter accordingly to the action definition, a read must be executed.

*Expand the following listing to view the source code.*

**LISTING 2: Implementing the action set_travel_status**

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  ... 
  METHOD set_travel_status.
    DATA lt_messages TYPE /dmo/t_message.
    DATA ls_travel_out TYPE /dmo/travel.
    DATA ls_travel_set_status_booked LIKE LINE OF et_travel_set_status_booked.
    CLEAR et_travel_set_status_booked.
    LOOP AT it_travel_set_status_booked ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_set_status_booked>).
      DATA(lv_travelid) = <fs_travel_set_status_booked>-travelid.
      CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_SET_BOOKING' 
        EXPORTING 
        iv_travel_id = lv_travelid 
        IMPORTING 
        et_messages  = lt_messages.
      IF lt_messages IS INITIAL.
        CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ' 
          EXPORTING 
          lv_travel_id = lv_travelid 
          IMPORTING 
          es_travel   = ls_travel_out.
        ls_travel_set_status_booked-travelid        = lv_travelid.
        ls_travel_set_status_booked-%param          = CORRESPONDING 
          #( ls_travel_out MAPPING TO ENTITY ).
        APPEND ls_travel_set_status_booked TO et_travel_set_status_booked.
    ENDLOOP.
  ... 
ENDMETHOD.
```

PUBLIC SAP · ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Develop
3. Implementing Dynamic Action Control

For dynamic control of actions acting on individual entity instances, the option (features: instance) must be added to the action `set_status_booked` in the behavior definition. The required implementation must be provided in the referenced class pool. In the implementation handler of the class pool you can specify the condition on which the action is enabled or disabled.

More on this: Dynamic Feature Control: Actions [page 113]

Related Information

Handler Classes [page 926]
Saver Classes [page 937]
Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]
Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

5.3.3.2.2.8.1 Implementing Dynamic Action Control

This topic guides you through the required implementation steps to dynamically enable and disable actions.

Preview

The following figure shows the effect of dynamic control on the action button Set to Booked: Since the selected travel instance has a status of B (Booked), the action button is disabled.
Implementation Steps

1. **Defining dynamic feature control in the behavior definition**

In the behavior definition, the feature control for the action `set_status_booked` is defined as follows:

```abap
implementation unmanaged;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U unique
...
}{
    action ( features : instance ) set_status_booked result [1] $self;
}
```

2. **Adding dynamic feature control for actions to the method `get_features` in the behavior pool**

The feature control for actions must be added to the method `get_features` in the behavior pool. You can implement feature control for different actions or operations in the same method.

Depending on the value of `Status` field, the action `set_status_booked` is enabled or disabled.

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS:
    get_features      FOR FEATURES
        IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR
        travel
        RESULT result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_travel IMPLEMENTATION.
    ...%*******************************************************************************
    % Implements the dynamic action handling for travel instances
    %*******************************************************************************
    METHOD get_features.
        READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_U IN LOCAL MODE
        ENTITY Travel
        FIELDS ( TravelID Status )
        WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
        RESULT DATA(lt_travel_result)
        FAILED failed.
        result = VALUE #
Related Information

Feature Control [page 96]
Instance Feature Control Implementation: Dynamic Feature Control [page 107]

5.3.3.2.3 Creating the Behavior Pool for the Booking Child Entity

Procedure 1: Create a Behavior Pool /DMO/BP_BOOKING_U

To launch the wizard tool for creating a behavior implementation, do the following:

1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the relevant behavior definition node (/DMO/I_TRAVEL_U) in Project Explorer.
3. Open the context menu and choose New Behavior Implementation to launch the creation wizard.

Further information:
- Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990]
- (Tool Reference) [page 970]

Results: Behavior Pool for the Booking Child Entity

The generated behavior pool (in our case /DMO/CL_BOOKING_U) provides you with an extension FOR BEHAVIOR OF.
Procedure 2: Define a Skeleton of Local Classes Corresponding to the Behavior Model

Based on the declarations in the behavior definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_U and taking best practices [page 382] for modularization and performance into account, adapt the generated skeleton of the local classes for the child entity in accordance with the listing below:

⚠️ Caution
In the current version of ADT tools, the skeleton with the code generated by the class pool creation wizard differs from the source code in the listing below.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing: Template for local classes of /DMO/BOOKING_U

```
**********************************************************************
* Handler class implements UPDATE for booking instances
**********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
TYPES tt_booking_update TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE /dmo/i_booking_u.
METHODS:
  update_booking FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_booking_update FOR UPDATE booking,
  delete_booking FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_booking_delete FOR DELETE booking,
  read_booking FOR READ
    IMPORTING it_booking_read FOR READ booking
    RESULT et_booking,
  cba_supplement FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_supplement_create_ba FOR CREATE booking\_booksupplement,
PUBLIC SECTION.
```
5.3.3.2.3.1 Implementing the UPDATE, DELETE, and READ Operations for Booking Instances

This topic guides you through all implementation steps required for data updates and deletion of booking data sets.

The behavior definition in our demo application scenario requires the standard operations update, and delete for the booking child entity. Note that the read operation is not explicitly declared in the behavior definition, but implicitly expected. The create is handled in the travel behavior by a create_by_association. In addition, since we use different CDS view field names than in the database table, we need a mapping specification from CDS names to database fields names.

define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_U alias booking implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKING_U unique
{
    field ( read only ) TravelID, BookingID;
    field ( mandatory ) BookingDate, CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate;
    update;
    delete;
    mapping for /dmo/booking
    {
        AirlineID = carrier_id;
        BookingDate = booking_date;
        BookingID = booking_id;
        ConnectionID = connection_id;
        CurrencyCode = currency_code;
        CustomerID = customer_id;
        FlightDate = flight_date;
        FlightPrice = flight_price;
        TravelID = travel_id;
    }
}

The create operation is already implemented by using the association relation between the travel root entity and the booking child entity. Further information: Implementing the CREATE Operation for Associated Bookings [page 404]
Preview (Update of Booking Data Sets)

In our application scenario, the appropriate booking data sets should be modifiable for all required fields of the booking instance when, for example, the user clicks the *Edit* button on the object page of the Fiori UI.

![Booking UI](image)

General Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Information</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Booking Date:</td>
<td>Jul 29, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer ID:</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airline ID:</td>
<td>UA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Number:</td>
<td>1537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Date:</td>
<td>Aug 18, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight Price:</td>
<td>438.00 USD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Edit and Delete Buttons are Available for Each Booking Data Set**

In change mode, the end user is able to change the relevant travel fields as shown in the figure below. As soon as the user chooses the *Save* button on the object page, the changed booking data is persisted on the database and a new version of the related booking instance is created.
Implementation Steps

1. Defining and Implementing UPDATE for Booking Data

Corresponding to the template [page 422] for behavior implementation of the booking child entity, one local handler class lhc_booking is defined to implement each changing operation in one individual <method> FOR MODIFY, one for updating booking data sets and another one for deleting bookings.

The update_booking FOR MODIFY method of the handler lhc_booking implements the update operation for bookings. The signature of this method includes only one import table parameter it_booking_update for referring to the booking instances to be updated.

To update data of bookings, the function module /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE is called. In addition to the incoming parameters is_travel and it_booking, the corresponding flag structure is_travelx as well as the flag table type it_bookingx are used.

When updating booking data sets, we must first check which individual data was changed by the end user. This check is done by mapping the control structure of the importing parameter on a local structure that can be passed to the update function module.

Message handling for processing instance-specific messages in case of failure is implemented by the handle_booking_messages method. Failed keys are addressed by the booking content ID (<fs_booking_update>-%cid_ref) and the values for the travel ID <fs_booking_update>-travelid) and the booking ID <fs_booking_update>-bookingid. In case of failure, failed keys are saved in the failed-booking table, whereas the reported-booking table contains all instance-specific messages.

**LISTING 1: Handler class lhc_booking**

```
**********************************************************************
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop
PUBLIC 425
```
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.

PRIVATE SECTION.

TYPES:
  tt_booking_update           TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE `dmo/i_booking_u,

METHODS:
  update_booking FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING it_booking_update FOR UPDATE booking,
    ...

ENDCLASS.

CLASS lhc_booking IMPLEMENTATION.

**********************************************************************
*
* Implements the UPDATE operation for a set of booking instances
*
**********************************************************************

METHOD update_booking.

  DATA lt_messages TYPE `/dmo/t_message.
  DATA ls_booking  TYPE `/dmo/booking.
  DATA ls_bookingx TYPE `/dmo/s_booking_inx.

  LOOP AT it_booking_update ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking_update>).
    ls_booking = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_booking_update> MAPPING FROM ENTITY ).
    ls_bookingx-booking_id = <fs_booking_update>-BookingID.
    ls_bookingx-_intx      = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_booking_update> MAPPING FROM
                      ENTITY ).
    ls_bookingx-action_code = `/dmo/if_flightLegacy=>action_code-update.
    CALL FUNCTION `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE`
      EXPORTING
        is_travel   = VALUE `/dmo/s_travel_in( travel_id = <fs_booking_update>-
                        travelid )
        is_travelx  = VALUE `/dmo/s_travel_inx( travel_id = <fs_booking_update>-
                        travelid )
        it_booking  = VALUE `/dmo/t_booking_in( ( CORRESPONDING
                        #( ls_booking ) ) )
        it_bookingx = VALUE `/dmo/t_booking_inx( ( ls_bookingx )
        et_messages = lt_messages.
      /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_booking_messages(
        EXPORTING
          iv_cid           = <fs_booking_update>-%cid_ref
          iv_travel_id     = <fs_booking_update>-travelid
          iv_booking_id    = <fs_booking_update>-bookingId
          it_messages      = lt_messages
        CHANGING
          failed   = failed-booking
          reported = reported-booking ).
    ENDLOOP.

ENDMETHOD.

... ENDCLASS.

2. Adding Data Type Declarations for the Booking Entity in the Auxiliary Class

To use the required import, export, or changing parameters in the signature of methods to be defined for
handling booking operations (later on, in the booking behavior pool’s FOR MODIFY methods), we must first add
the appropriate type declarations to the PUBLIC section in the definition part of our auxiliary class.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

LISTING 2: Data type declarations in the auxiliary class `/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary`

CLASS `/dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary DEFINITION
  INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behv
PUBLIC
FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC .

PUBLIC SECTION.

* Type definition for import parameters --------------------------
TYPES tt_booking_failed     TYPE TABLE FOR FAILED    /dmo/i_booking_u.
TYPES tt_booking_mapped     TYPE TABLE FOR MAPPED    /dmo/i_booking_u.
TYPES tt_booking_reported   TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED  /dmo/i_booking_u.
...

ENDCLASS.

3. Implementing Message Handling

When handling changing operations for booking instances, fault events may occur. For the processing of instance-specific messages in such a case, the method handle_booking_messages is used.

To refer to an individual data set where an error (msgty = 'E') or an abort (msgty = 'A') occurred, the FAILED table is used, whereas the instance-specific messages are stored in the REPORTED table.

However, messages that originate from the legacy code must be mapped to the messages of the class-based BO framework. To be reused in different behavior pools, the corresponding message handler method is defined and implemented in the helper class /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

LISTING 3: Declaration and implementation of the method handle_booking_messages

CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary DEFINITION
  INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behv
PUBLIC
FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC .
PUBLIC SECTION.
...
CLASS-METHODS handle_booking_messages
IMPORTING
  iv_cid        TYPE string OPTIONAL
  iv_travel_id  TYPE /dmo/travel_id OPTIONAL
  iv_booking_id TYPE /dmo/booking_id OPTIONAL
  it_messages   TYPE /dmo/t_message
CHANGING
  failed        TYPE tt_booking_failed
  reported      TYPE tt_booking_reported.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD handle_booking_messages.
  LOOP AT it_messages INTO DATA(ls_message) WHERE msgty = 'E' OR msgty = 'A'.
  APPEND VALUE #( %cid      = iv_cid
                      travelid  = iv_travel_id
                      bookingid = iv_booking_id ) TO failed.
  APPEND VALUE #( %msg = get_message_object( )->new_message( id       = ls_message-msgid
                                                                  number   = ls_message-msgno
                                                                  severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
                                                                  v1       = ls_message-msgv1
                                                                  v2       = ls_message-msgv2
                                                                  v3       = ls_message-msgv3
                      ) ) TO reported.
ENDMETHOD.
4. Defining and Implementing the DELETE operation for Booking Instances

In this case, the FOR MODIFY method is used to implement the delete operation for booking data sets. Therefore, the signature of the <method> FOR MODIFY includes only one import parameter it_booking_delete for referring to the booking instance to be deleted. To identify the child entity for bookings, the alias booking is used - according to the alias specified in the behavior definition.

The basic steps within the method implementation are similar to those we got to know in the previous method update_booking. The function module /DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE is also called for the delete operation. Here, as in the previous case, the same incoming parameters are used, including the flag structure is_travelx as well as the flag table type it_bookingx. The appropriate action code for deleting bookings is defined by the statement action_code = /dmo/if_flight_legacy=>action_code-delete.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

LISTING 4: Method delete_booking

**********************************************************************
* Handler class for managing bookings
**********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  ...
  METHODS delete_booking FOR MODIFY
     IT_BOOKING_DELETE FOR MODIFY BOOKING.
ENDCLASS.
**********************************************************************
* Implements the DELETE operation for a set of booking instances
**********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_booking IMPLEMENTATION.
  ...
  METHOD delete_booking.
    DATA lt_messages TYPE /dmo/t_message.
    LOOP AT IT_BOOKING_DELETE INTO DATA(ls_booking_delete).
      CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_UPDATE'
        EXPORTING
          IS_TRAVEL = VALUE /dmo/s_travel_in( travel_id = ls_booking_delete-travelid)
          IS_TRAVELX = VALUE /dmo/s_travel_inx( travel_id = ls_booking_delete-travelid)
          IT_BOOKING = VALUE /dmo/t_booking_in( ( booking_id = ls_booking_delete-bookingid )
          IT_BOOKINGX = VALUE /dmo/t_booking_inx( ( booking_id = ls_booking_delete-bookingid
          ACTION_CODE = /dmo/if_flight_legacy=>action_code-delete
        )
      IMPORTING
        ET_MESSAGES = lt_messages.
      IF lt_messages IS NOT INITIAL.
        /dmo/cl_travel_auxiliary=>handle_booking_messages(
5. Defining and Implementing the READ operation for Booking Instances

The READ operation is not specified in the behavior definition. To complete the BO, it is expected that the READ for all entities is available to consume the BO via EML.

### i Note

If you use groups in your behavior definition, you must explicitly specify the READ operation in one of the groups. For more information, see Using Groups in Large Development Projects [page 634].

In the handler class for booking entities add the declaration of the method **read_booking** FOR READ with importing parameter `it_booking_read` and the result parameter `et_booking`.

For more information, see <method> FOR READ [page 933].

The implementation steps for reading booking entities are similar to those for reading travel entities, see Implementing the READ Operation for Travel Data [page 400]. The same function module is used. It reads the booking instances based on the travel ID that is passed to the function module. For performance reasons, we only call the function module once for all bookings with the same travel ID. That is why, the loop at the importing parameter is grouped by the travel ID. As the function module retrieves all available bookings for the travel ID, the output table must be read for the bookings that match the importing parameter `it_booking_read`. The read results are then be passed to the result parameter `et_booking` for those fields that are requested by the consumer. The key values are always passed to the result.

The error handling is separated for booking IDs that are not found for the respective travel IDs, for travel IDs that are not found by the function module, and for other fail causes that cannot be specified.

### i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

**LISTING 5: Method read_booking**

```bash
***********************************************************************
* Handler class for managing bookings
***********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
    ..
    METHODS read_booking FOR READ
       IMPORTING it_booking_read FOR READ booking
       RESULT et_booking.
  ENDCCLASS.

***********************************************************************
* Implements the READ operation for a set of booking instances
***********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_booking IMPLEMENTATION.
```
METHOD read_booking.
  DATA: ls_travel_out  TYPE /dmo/travel,
    lt_booking_out TYPE /dmo/t_booking,
    lt_message     TYPE /dmo/t_message.
  "Only one function call for each requested travelID
  LOOP AT it_booking_read ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_read>)
    GROUP BY <fs_travel_read>-travelid .
  CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ'
    EXPORTING
      iv_travel_id = <fs_travel_read>-travelid
    IMPORTING
      es_travel    = ls_travel_out
      et_booking   = lt_booking_out
      et_messages  = lt_message.
  IF lt_message IS INITIAL.
    "For each travelID find the requested bookings
    LOOP AT GROUP <fs_travel_read> ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking_read>)
      GROUP BY <fs_booking_read>-%key.
      READ TABLE lt_booking_out INTO DATA(ls_booking) WITH KEY travel_id =
        <fs_booking_read>-%key-TravelID
          booking_id =
            <fs_booking_read>-%key-BookingID
        "If read was successfull
        IF sy-subrc = 0.
        "fill result parameter with flagged fields
        INSERT
          VALUE #( travelid      =   ls_booking-travel_id
            bookingid     =   ls_booking-booking_id
            bookingdate   = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              BookingDate      = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-booking_date   )
            customerid    = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              CustomerID       = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-customer_id    )
            airlineid     = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              AirlineID        = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-carrier_id     )
            connectionid  = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              ConnectionID     = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-connection_id  )
            flightdate    = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              FlightDate       = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-flight_date    )
            flightprice   = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              FlightPrice      = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-flight_price   )
            currencycode  = COND #( WHEN <fs_booking_read>-%control-
              CurrencyCode     = cl_abap_behv=>flag_changed THEN ls_booking-currency_code  )
            %control-LastChangedAt    =   ls_travel_out-
              lastchangedat )
        INTO TABLE et_booking.
    ELSE.
      "BookingID not found
      INSERT
        VALUE #( travelid = <fs_booking_read>-TravelID
            bookingid = <fs_booking_read>-BookingID
            %fail-cause = if_abap_behv=>cause-not_found )
        INTO TABLE failed-booking.
    ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
  ELSE.
    "TravelID not found or other fail cause
    LOOP AT GROUP <fs_travel_read> ASSIGNING <fs_booking_read>.
      failed-booking = VALUE #( BASE failed-booking
        FOR msg IN lt_message ( %key-TravelID =
          <fs_booking_read>-TravelID
        %key-BookingID =
          <fs_booking_read>-BookingID
        %fail-cause =
          COND #( WHEN (msg-msgty = 'E' AND msg-msgno = '016' OR msg-msgno = '009')
          (msg-msgty = 'E' AND msg-msgno = '016' OR msg-msgno = '009')
          )
        INTO TABLE failed-booking.
      )
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
6. Defining and Implementing the READ Operation for the Associated Travel Instance

The read by association from booking instances to their parent travel instance is used to read the ETag master of the booking instances. That is why, it is essential to support complete ETag handling for the travel BO. In addition, the read by association must be implemented to complete the transactional handling for the BO, so that it is consumable via EML.

In order to use the association transactionally, in this case, via a transactional read, the association must be specified in the behavior definition for the booking instance:

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_U alias booking
    {
        ...
        association _Travel;
        ...
    }
```

In the handler class for booking entities, add the declaration of the method `read_travel_ba FOR READ` with importing parameter `it_booking`, FULL `iv_full_requested`, RESULT `et_travel` and LINK `et_link_table`.

For more information, see `<method> FOR READ By Association [page 935]`.

In the implementation for reading travel instances by association from booking entities, loop at the incoming booking and group by the incoming `TravelID`. This grouping optimizes the performance as the function call is only executed once for each travel ID. If the function call to read the associated travel instance is successful, group at the group `<fs_travel>` to fill the link table for each requested booking. If the all fields of travel are requested, fill the result parameter `et_travel` with the values that are read by the function module. To ensure that only those fields are filled that were requested (indicated by the %control structure of the importing parameter), the corresponding operator with the addition `MAPPING TO ENTITY` is used.

If the function modules returns messages, fill the `failed` table with the corresponding entries. The error handling is separated for booking IDs that are not found for the respective travel IDs, for travel IDs that are not found by the function module, and for other fail causes that cannot be specified.

`i Expand the following listing to view the source code.`

**LISTING 6: Method read_travel_ba**

```c
* **********************************************************************
* * Handler class for managing bookings
* **********************************************************************
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
    ...
    METHODS read_travel_ba FOR READ
      IMPORTING it_booking FOR READ booking\_travel FULL
      iv_full_requested
ENDMETHOD.
```
Endclass.  et_travel LINK et_link_table.

**********************************************************************
* Implements the READ operation for the travel instance
**********************************************************************

Class lhc_booking IMPLEMENTATION.

METHOD read_travel_ba.
  DATA: ls_travel_out  TYPE /dmo/travel,
       lt_booking_out TYPE /dmo/t_booking,
       ls_travel LIKE LINE OF et_travel,
       lt_message TYPE /dmo/t_message.

  "Only one function call for each requested travelid
  LOOP AT it_booking ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel>)
    GROUP BY <fs_travel>-TravelID.
    CALL FUNCTION '/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ'
      EXPORTING
        iv_travel_id = <fs_travel>-%key-TravelID
      IMPORTING
        es_travel = ls_travel_out
        et_messages = lt_message.
    IF lt_message IS INITIAL.
      LOOP AT GROUP <fs_travel> ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking>).
        "fill link table with key fields
        INSERT VALUE #( source-%key = <fs_booking>-%key
          target-%key = ls_travel_out-travel_id )
        INTO TABLE et_link_table.
        IF iv_full_requested = abap_true.
          "fill result parameter with flagged fields
          ls_travel = CORRESPONDING #( ls_travel_out MAPPING TO ENTITY ).
        INSERT ls_travel INTO TABLE et_travel.
      ENDIF.
      ELSE. "fill failed table in case of error
        failed-booking = VALUE #( BASE failed-booking
          %key-TravelID = <fs_travel>-%key-TravelID
          %key-BookingID = <fs_travel>-%key-BookingID
          %fail-cause = COND
          #( WHEN (msg-msgty = 'E' AND msg-msgno = '016' OR msg-msgno = '009' )
            THEN if_abap_behv=>cause-not_found
            ELSE if_abap_behv=>cause-unspecific )
          )).
      ENDIF.
      ENDLOOP.
  ENDMETHOD.

ENDCLASS.

Checking Results

At this point, you have the opportunity to check how the resulting app works for the CREATE and the UPDATE. For this to happen, however, a suitable business service for UI consumption must first be defined and published.

For more information, see: Defining Business Service for Fiori UI [page 434]

The READ cannot be easily tested using a Fiori UI, as there is no direct execution trigger for reading the data from the application buffer. Nevertheless, you can test your READ implementation by using EML.
5.3.3.3 Projecting the Behavior

You project the behavior to define the behavior for the specific business service.

Whereas the general business object defines and implements the behavior of what can be done in general with the data provided by the data model, the BO projection defines only the behavior that is relevant for the specific service. In this travel scenario, the BO projection does not define a specific role of the end user, but projects the entire behavior for the UI service.

In the behavior projection, you only define the behavior that is relevant for the specific service. The implementation of the individual characteristics is only done in the general BO. The projection behavior definition delegates to the underlying layer for the behavior that is defined in the projection layer.

For more information, see Business Object Projection [page 194].

Creating the Projection Behavior Definition for the Travel BO

To create a projection behavior definition, do the following:

1. Open the context menu of the root projection view /DMO/C_Travel_U.
2. Choose New Behavior Definition.
3. In the wizard to create a new behavior definition, choose the implementation type Projection to get the template for projection.

A new projection behavior definition is created that defines the behavior for the specific UI service. The behavior definition uses the same name as the root projection view.

For the UI service, the entire behavior that is defined in the underlying BO is exposed. This includes:

- the etag to prevent overwriting on simultaneous editing
- the standard operations create, update, delete for the root entity,
- the standard operations update and delete for the child entity,
- the operation create by association for the child entity,
- the action set_status_booked on the root entity.
The following listing displays the source code of the projection behavior definition.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 1: Source Code of the Projection Behavior Definition /DMO/C_Travel_U

```abap
projection;
define behavior for /DMO/C_Travel_U alias travel
use etag
{
    use create;
    use update;
    use delete;
    use action set_status_booked;
    use association _BOOKING { create; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/C_Booking_U alias booking
{
    use update;
    use delete;
}
```

For more information, see Projection Behavior Definition [page 199].

5.3.4 Defining Business Service for Fiori UI

This section explains how you can model an OData service based on the data model and the related behavior model. A service like this consists of two artifacts, a service definition and a service binding.

The service definition is a projection of the data model and the related behavior to be exposed, whereas the service binding implements a specific protocol and the kind of service offered to a consumer.

Further information: Business Service [page 192]

Steps Relevant to Developers

1. Create the service definition
2. Specify which CDS entities are exposed as a UI service
3. Create a service binding
4. Publish the UI service locally
5. [Optional] Run the resulting app

5.3.4.1 Exposing the Relevant CDS Views as a Service

To describe the consumer-specific perspective as a data model, you need to create a business service definition (service definition for short) as an ABAP Repository object. A service definition represents the service model that is derived from the underlying CDS-based data model.
Further information: Service Definition [page 201]

Procedure: Creating a Service Definition

To launch the wizard tool for creating a service definition, do the following:

1. Launch ABAP Development Tools.
2. In your ABAP project (or ABAP Cloud Project), select the relevant package node in Project Explorer.
3. Open the context menu and choose New Other ABAP Repository Object ➤ Business Services ➤ Service Definition to launch the creation wizard.

Creating a Service Definition

Further information: Creating Service Definitions [page 974] (Tool Reference)

Procedure: Define Which CDS Entities Are Exposed as a UI Service

As in the entries in the listing below, add the following entities for to expose as a service:

LISTING 1: Service Definition /DMO/TRAVEL_U

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'Service definition for managing travels'
```
The entire source code of a service definition for managing travels is included within the single bracket 
{ ... }. It groups all the related CDS entities which are to be exposed as part of the UI service - including 
their compositions and associations with the relevant entities. Note that the value help provider or text provider 
views must also be exposed for the OData service to make use of the value help and text associations.

Further information: Syntax for Defining a Service [page 201]

### 5.3.4.2 Creating a Service Binding

Using the business service binding (service binding for short), you can bind a service definition to a client-
server communication protocol.

Further information: Service Binding [page 204] (Concept Information)

**Procedure: Creating a Service Binding**

To launch the wizard tool for creating a service binding, do the following:

1. Launch **ABAP Development Tools**.
2. In your ABAP project (or **ABAP Cloud Project**), select the relevant package node in **Project Explorer**.
3. Open the context menu and choose **New Service Binding** to launch the creation wizard.
Procedure: Activating the New Service

After successful activation, the editor provides additional information about the entire entity set as well as about the navigation path of the respective entity.
[Optional] Procedure: Running the Resulting UI Service

As soon as the service is activated, it is ready for consumption through an OData client such as an SAP Fiori app.

In the course of the UI development in the SAP Web IDE, you have the option of testing the resulting app within the SAP Fiori launchpad environment.

Tip

Alternatively, you can use the preview function in the service binding to check how the UI of a Fiori application looks like. More on this: Previewing the Resulting UI Service [page 32]
5.3.5 Adding Another Layer to the Transactional Data Model

In this section, you get a brief overview on how you can proceed when going to add a further layer to the flight demo scenario. Specifically, a booking supplement entity is now to be added to the previous 2-tier layer of the travel business object.

Entities for Transactional Data

As depicted in the figure below, the 3-tier entity hierarchy for managing transactional data in our scenario consists of the following editable entities, with a 1: n cardinality on each level:

- Travel
- Booking
- BookingSupplement

That is, each travel instance has 0..n bookings and each booking has 0..n booking supplements.

Additional Entities for Master Data

To populate the booking supplement instances with business data, you also need to extend the data model for master data by the following entities:

- Supplement
- SupplementText
Data Model for 3-tier Entity Hierarchy

Note
With the knowledge so far, you can easily reproduce the concrete steps of this extension. Therefore, in this topic, we will only outline the implementation steps in a nutshell and refer to the full implementation as it is available in the demo ABAP package /DMO/FLIGHT/UNMANAGED.
1. Extending the Data Model

Adding the CDS Entities to Extend the Data Model

Extended Data Model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entity</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Editable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BookingSupplement</td>
<td>This entity is used to add additional products to a travel booking. The booking supplement data is stored in the database table /DMO/BOOK_SUPPL. The flight data model defines an n:1 cardinality between a Booking Supplement entity and a Booking entity.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplement</td>
<td>A Supplement entity defines product data that the customer can book together with a flight, for example a drink or a meal. The supplement data is stored in the database table /DMO/SUPPLEMENT. The flight data model defines a 1:1 cardinality between a Supplement entity and the Booking Supplement entity.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SupplementText</td>
<td>This entity mainly serves a text provider for the associated elements in the target entity BookingSupplement. By using a text association, you define the relationship between an element of the target entity and its corresponding texts or descriptions.</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The BookingSupplement entity is part of the compositional hierarchy of the travel business object. This composition relationship requires an association to their compositional parent entity. This relationship is expressed by the keyword ASSOCIATION TO PARENT. Using this syntax, you define the CDS entity BookingSupplement as a sub node in the compositional hierarchy of the travel business object structure. To access master data from other entities, additional associations _Product and _SupplementText are defined in the CDS source code. The associated views are primarily used as a text view for retrieving text information and as value help provider for specific product fields.

i Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 1: Source Code of the CDS View /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_U

```sql
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking Supplement view - CDS data model'
define view entity /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_U
  as select from /dmo/book_suppl as BookingSupplement
  association to parent /DMO/I_Booking_U as _Booking
  on $projection.TravelID  = _Booking.TravelID
  and
  $projection.BookingID = _Booking.BookingID
  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Supplement       as _Product
  on $projection.SupplementID = _Product.SupplementID
  association [1..*] to /DMO/I_SupplementText   as _SupplementText
  on $projection.SupplementID = _SupplementText.SupplementID
  {
    key BookingSupplement.travel_id             as TravelID,
    key BookingSupplement.booking_id           as BookingID,
    key BookingSupplement.booking_supplement_id as BookingSupplementID,
    BookingSupplement.price                 as Price,
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
```
Since the `BookingSupplement` entity is part of the compositional hierarchy of the business object, it is projected in a projection view. In the projection view, the text relationships, the search and value helps are defined via CDS annotations. In addition, the association to parent must be redirected to `/DMO/C_Booking_U`.

**Expand the following listing to view the source code.**

### Listing 2: Source Code of the CDS Projection View `/DMO/C_BookingSupplement_U`

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking Supplement Projection View'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_U
as projection on /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_U
{     ///DMO/I_BookingSupplement_U
  @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
  key TravelID,
  @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
  key BookingID,
  key BookingSupplementID,
@ObjectModel.text.element: ['SupplementText']
SupplementID,
_Booking : redirected to parent /DMO/C_Booking_U,
_Product,
_SupplementText
```

The `BookingSupplement` Entity also has a representation in the UI. It must therefore be equipped with UI annotations, which are outsourced to metadata extension as done with the other BO entities.

**Expand the following listing to view the source code.**

### Listing 3: Source Code of the Metadata Extension `/DMO/C_BookingSupplement_U`

```abap
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { typeName: 'Booking Supplement', typeNamePlural: 'Booking Supplements', title: { type: #STANDARD, label: 'Booking Supplement', value: 'BookingSupplementID' } } }
annotate view /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_U with
{
  @UI.facet: [ { id: 'BookingSupplement', purpose: #STANDARD,
```
To complete the compositional hierarchy of the business object, you need to add the composition to child in the Booking entity /DMO/I_Booking, as well as the redirected composition in the projection view /DMO/C_Booking.

In order to display and change booking supplement data on Fiori UI, you must add the corresponding UI facet in the booking metadata extension /DMO/C_Booking.

### Adding a CDS View for Supplements

Listing 4 (below) provides you with a data definition for additional products that a customer can book together with a flight booking.

**iNote**

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

#### Listing 4: CDS View /DMO/I_Supplement

```plaintext
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Supplement View - CDS Data Model'
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/I_Supplement
  as select from /dmo/supplement as Supplement
  association [0..*] to /DMO/I_SupplementText as _SupplText on $projection.SupplementID = _SupplText.SupplementID
  association [0..1] to I_Currency as _Currency on $projection.CurrenyCode = _Currency.CurrencyID
  
  { @ObjectModel.text.association: '_SupplText'
    key Supplement.supplement_id as SupplementID,
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    Supplement.price as Price,
    Supplement.currency_code as CurrencyCode,
    /* Associations */
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    _SupplText,
    _Currency
  }
```
Adding a Text Provider View for Supplements

Listing 5 (below) provides you with a data definition that serves as text provider. It provides text data through text associations as defined in the booking supplement view.

Expanding the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 5: CDS View /DMO/I_SupplementText

```
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Supplement Text View - CDS Data Model'
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/I_SupplementText
    as select from /dmo/suppl_text as SupplementText
    {
        @ObjectModel.text.element: ['Description']
        key SupplementText.supplement_id as SupplementID,
        @Semantics.language: true
        key SupplementText.language_code as LanguageCode,
        @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
        @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.8
        @Semantics.text: true
        SupplementText.description as Description
    }
```

2. Extending the Behavior Definition for the BookingSupplement Entity

The fact that in our scenario new instances of the booking supplement entity can only be created for a specific travel and booking instance is considered by the addition of the _BookSupplement association. The keyword {create;} declares that this association is create-enabled what exactly means that instances of the associated booking supplements can be created by an individual booking instance.

The sub node of travel business object refers to the corresponding data model for booking supplements that is represented by the child entity for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_U. The transactional behavior of the booking supplement sub node is determined by the standard operations create, update, and delete. In addition, since we use different CDS view field names than in the database table, we need a mapping specification from CDS names to database fields names.

Listing 6: Extended Behavior Definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_U

```
implementation unmanaged;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
{
    ...
}
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_U alias booking
{
    ...
    association _BookSupplement { create; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/I_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_U alias bookingsupplement
implementation in class /DMO/BP_BOOKINGSUPPLEMENT_U unique
etag dependent by _Travel
lock dependent by _Travel
{
    field (read only) TravelID, BookingID, BookingSupplementID;
    field (mandatory) SupplementID, Price;
```
3. Creating and Implementing the Behavior Pool for BookingSupplement

Creating a Behavior Pool for BookingSupplement Entity

Listing 7: Behavior Pool for BookingSupplement Child Entity

CLASS /dmo/bp_bookingsupplement_u DEFINITION
  PUBLIC
  ABSTRACT
  FINAL
  FOR BEHAVIOR OF /dmo/i_travel_u.
  PUBLIC SECTION.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS /dmo/bp_bookingsupplement_u IMPLEMENTATION.
ENDCLASS.

Implementing the Handler for UPDATE, DELETE, READ and READ BY ASSOCIATION

You will find the same basic structure when implementing the handler methods for update and delete:

- A loop on booking supplement instances to be updated or deleted.
- Call of the business logic function module.
- Error handling for processing messages in case of failure.

Listing 8: Updating data of booking supplements in lhc_supplement

CLASS lhc_supplement DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  TYPES tt_booking_update TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE /dmo/i_booking_u.
  METHODS update_bookingsupplement FOR MODIFY.
  IMPORTING it_bookingsupplement_update FOR UPDATE bookingsupplement.
  ...
ENDCLASS.

CLASS lhc_supplement IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD update_bookingsupplement.
  ...
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
Listing 9: Deleting booking supplements in *lhc_supplement*

```abap
CLASS lhc_supplement DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
 PRIVATE SECTION.
 ...  
 METHODS delete_bookingsupplement FOR MODIFY
 IMPORTING it_bookingsupplement_delete FOR DELETE bookingsupplement.
 ENDCCLASS.
CLASS lhc_supplement IMPLEMENTATION.
 ...  
 METHOD delete_bookingsupplement.
 ...  
 ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

Listing 10: Reading booking supplements in *lhc_supplement*

```abap
CLASS lhc_supplement DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
 PRIVATE SECTION.
 ...  
 METHODS read_bookingsupplement FOR READ
 IMPORTING it_bookingsupplement_read FOR READ bookingsupplement
 RESULT et_bookingsupplement.
 ENDCCLASS.
CLASS lhc_supplement IMPLEMENTATION.
 ...  
 METHOD read_bookingsupplement.
 ...  
 ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

Listing 11: Reading travel by association in *lhc_supplement*

```abap
CLASS lhc_supplement DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
 PRIVATE SECTION.
 ...  
 METHODS read_travel_ba FOR READ
 IMPORTING it_bookingsupplement FOR READ bookingsupplement\_Travel
 FULL iv_full_requested
 RESULT et_travel LINK et_link_table.
 ENDCCLASS.
CLASS lhc_supplement IMPLEMENTATION.
 ...  
 METHOD read_travel_by.
 ...  
 ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

Implementing the CREATE Handler for Associated Booking Supplements

In our demo scenario, we assume that new booking supplements cannot be created separately but only in conjunction with a given booking that, in turn, belongs to an individual travel instance.

To identify the associated booking supplements, the aliases for the parent entity and the child entity are used - according to the aliases specified in the behavior definition. The association is expressed in the signature of the implementing method *cba_supplement* of the booking behavior pool `/DMO/BP_BOOKING_U` in the form: ...

FOR CREATE parent\_child_entity.

Listing 12: Creating booking supplements in the *cba_supplement* method

```abap
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
```
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS cba_supplement FOR MODIFY
IMPORTING it_supplement_create_ba FOR CREATE booking
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_booking IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD cba_supplement
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Booking Supplement

Book. Supp. Number:

*Product ID: ML-0032
*Product Price: 4.50 EUR

Implementing the READ for Associated Booking Supplements

To complete the BO, you must implement a READ operation for associated bookings. The READ by association is implicitly defined in the behavior definition in the behavior for bookings by the definition of CREATE by association:

define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_U alias booking
The declaration and the implementation of the method to read booking supplements by association is done in the handler class for bookings `/DMO/BP_BOOKING_U` in the same manner as in Implementing the READ Operation for Associated Bookings [page 411]:

- Group the imported booking keys by travel ID
- Call the function module `/DMO/FLIGHT_TRAVEL_READ`
- Filter for the requested booking keys
- Fill the link table with the respective source and target keys
- Fill the result parameter, if the full parameter is set
- Handle errors

Listing 13: Read booking supplements in the `read_supplement_ba` method

```abap
CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS read_supplement_ba FOR READ
    IMPORTING it_booking FOR READ booking\_booksupplement FULL
    iv_full_requested
    RESULT et_booksuppl LINK et_link_table,
  ..
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_booking IMPLEMENTATION.
  ...
  METHOD read_supplement_ba
  ...
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

The READ by association can be tested by using EML.

### 4. Projecting the Behavior for the Booking Supplement Entity

As described in Projecting the Behavior [page 433], the behavior of the travel BO must be projected in the projection behavior definition `/DMO/C_Travel_U`.

The behavior that is relevant for the booking supplement entity is

- the standard operation `update` and `delete` on the behavior node `/DMO/C_BookingSupplement_U` and
- the operation `create_by_association` for booking supplements on the behavior node `/DMO/C_Booking_U`.

Expand the following listing to view the source code.

Listing 11: Projection Behavior Definition `/DMO/C_Travel_U`

```abap
projection;
define behavior for `/DMO/C_Travel_U` alias travel
use etag
{
  use create;
  use update;
```
5. Exposing New Entities in the Service Definition

Corresponding to the listing below, the following CDS entities are to be exposed with the UI service:

**Listing 12: Added Entities in the Service Definition**

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'Service definition for managing travels'
define service /DMO/TRAVEL_U {
  ...
  expose /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_U as BookingSupplement;
  expose /DMO/I_Supplement as Supplement;
  expose /DMO/I_SupplementText as SupplementText;
  ...
}
```

5.4 Developing Transactional Apps with Draft Capabilities

This chapter is a walk-through tutorial that guides you through the main implementation steps to develop an application with draft support. Draft-enabled applications provide the end user with the highest flexibility when working with the app.

From a technical perspective, the outcome of these chapters is a business service that is developed based on the implementation type `managed with draft` of the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model using UUID keys. The business object (BO) is exposed as a UI service. In this example scenario, the Fiori Elements App Preview is used to illustrate the examples. Yet, the same business object can also be consumed as a Web API.

**Introduction**

The standard use case for creating a managed transactional app with draft capabilities is the following:

You want to create a completely new transactional app for a Fiori Elements UI following the greenfield approach. That means, there is no legacy business application logic involved. You create everything from...
scratch. Following from that, you can benefit from the lightweight BO standard implementation of the managed implementation type, in which the RAP managed runtime framework assumes an extensive part of the standard implementation with out-of-the-box support for create, update, and delete. In addition, you may need to provide the end user with capabilities to store changed data at any time in the backend and proceed at a later point in time, or to recover such data from a different device, even if the application client has terminated unexpectedly. This use case is supported by the draft concept of the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model. Draft-enabled business objects persist the state of the transactional buffer after every transaction on a designated draft database table. This allows the end user to stop and continue work processes at any point in time, even with inconsistent data. For more detailed information about the draft concept, see Draft [page 60].

The example scenario uses a data model with UUID-key layout. In managed scenarios, UUIDs are beneficial as they can be drawn automatically by the RAP managed framework upon creating new instances. However, the draft scenario can also be developed with semantic primary keys.

Prerequisites

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.
- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT). SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/.
- To recreate the demo scenario, the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario must be available in your ABAP system. You can download the complete reference scenario from GitHub: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].

Involved Development Objects

The following figure provides an overview of all development objects that are involved to create and re-create the example scenario managed with draft. The basic business object is projected for two business services; one that supports all the draft capabilities that are included in the basic business object, and one that does not reuse the draft capabilities in the projection layer and behaves like a managed business service without draft.
Development Flow

The example development scenario is designed to support two approaches. On the one hand, it teaches you how to build a managed business object with draft from scratch. On the other hand, if you just want to add draft capabilities to your existing BO, you can leave out the first steps to create a managed business object and start directly with Draft-Enabling the Managed Business Object [page 515].

The development of an application with draft capabilities based on a managed business object requires the following activities:

1. **Providing the CDS Data Model based on UUID keys**
   The first chapter provides you with information on how to create suitable database tables and CDS view entities for the managed business object. The example scenario guides you to build a three-node business object, which illustrates how root and child entities are handled in the draft scenario. See Data Model and Business Object Structure [page 453].

2. **Developing Transactional Behavior for the Managed Business Object**
   In this section, you will equip the data model with transactional behavior. The business object framework for managed implementation type provides you with out-of-the-box support for standard implementation tasks. Other business-specific logic must be implemented using actions, determinations, and validations. See Developing Transactional Behavior [page 462].

3. **Exposing the Managed Business Object for a UI service**
   Consuming the managed business object via a UI requires defining the projection layer, where you define all service-specific features, like UI annotations for UI configuration, search capabilities or value helps. The projected BO and all its related entities must then be defined in the service definition and then bound to a...
protocol. This UI service remains stable even when you add draft capabilities later on. Whereas the underlying BO changes, the BO projection filters only the non-draft features. The steps will be explained in this section.

See Exposing the Managed Business Object for a UI Business Service [page 504].

4. Adding Draft Capabilities to the Managed Business Object

This section explains how you draft-enable the existing business object. On the one hand, draft-enabling requires the revision of all existing business logic. Sometimes the BO provider needs to distinguish if draft instances or active instances are processed. On the other hand, there are some draft features that you need to implement to add draft qualities to the business service.

See Draft-Enabling the Managed Business Object [page 515].

5. Exposing the Draft-Enabled Business Object for a UI service

To enable the consumption of the draft-enabled BO via a Fiori Elements UI, the projection layer must be defined. It reuses all the draft capabilities that are defined in the underlying layer. In addition, the service must be defined and bound to a protocol.

See Exposing the Draft Business Object for a UI Business Service [page 523].

5.4.1 Building a Managed Business Object with UUID Keys

The first part of the managed development scenario with draft describes setting up a managed business object from scratch.

The assumption in this scenario is that you do not have any data or legacy coding that you want to include in the new business object. Everything is created from scratch. Therefore, the first step is to create database tables to store the data that the business object consumes. We use a simplified approach to have one database table for each business object entity. In real-world scenario, this might rarely be the case, but this demo scenario mainly demonstrates how you handle the transactional behavior with draft for the business object and does not focus on database structures for business objects.

The key structure of the data model in this scenario is based on UUID keys. That means, every BO entity instance is uniquely identifiable by one single unique key.

Based on these database tables, the data model and structure for the business object is defined via CDS view entities. For more information about the basic structure of a business object, see Data Modeling and Behavior [page 45].

In a second step, the second component of a business object, the behavior, is defined and implemented for the business object. For more information about, the business object behavior, see Business Object [page 54]

1. Data Model and Business Object Structure [page 453]
2. Developing Transactional Behavior [page 462]
5.4.1.1 Data Model and Business Object Structure

The draft scenario uses the same data model as the other development scenarios. The final app processes travel data, primarily flight data, to create, update, and delete travel instances.

The travel business object consists of three entities that are structured in a hierarchy tree. Every entity in the BO-composition tree is modeled with a CDS view entity. The following entities are used for the transactional data model:

- **Travel**: The root entity comprises general travel data, like a trip’s start and end dates, and the relevant customer and agency data.
- **Booking**: The booking entity depicts which bookings are relevant for a certain travel. In the current data model, only flights are available as bookings.
- **BookingSupplement**: The booking supplement entity presents additional bookable supplement for a certain booking. These are meals and beverages for the flights.

The BO-entities are related to each other in a composition structure. They maintain a dependency relationship, which means that a child entity cannot exist without its parent entity. In addition, a parent entity can have one to many child entities. The following diagram illustrates this relationship.

![Diagram of the business object structure]

**Editable Entities of the Business Object**

The root entity is the head of the business object. You address a BO with the name of the root entity. It is also the root entity that receives special capabilities during runtime. In the managed scenarios, only root entities can be lock masters. That means, if one of the entities that are part of the composition tree is requested for lock, it is the lock master instance and its child instances that are locked for the request. In addition, in the draft scenario, the lock master, in this case the root entity, receives an additional field for optimistic concurrency control in the transition from draft to active data. This field is called total ETag. For more information about the locking mechanism and the total ETag, see Concurrency Control [page 161].

The composition tree includes child entities that are also part of the business object. They are connected via compositions, bidirectional connections by which the relationship to the root entity is defined.
Whereas the BO-entities are built up from scratch, as you create both, the database table and the related CDS entity, there are additional entities for master data that are reused from the demo content of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario. These entities are not part of the transactional BO-structure. Most of these entities are used primarily as value help provider views for individual input fields on the UI.

Non-Editable Entities Reused in the Data Model

Additional entities for currencies and countries are generally available in your system and are included in our data model using associations. These are I_Currency and I_Country.

Tasks for the Developer

1. Creating Persistent Database Tables [page 454]
2. Creating CDS View Entities [page 457]

5.4.1.1.1 Creating Persistent Database Tables

For the managed scenario with draft, create new database tables for the business object data model that match the transactional data structure of travel, booking and booking supplement.

Context and Procedure

In scenarios without existing legacy code, the first step is to create persistent database tables that store data. Create these tables by using the creation wizard for creating database tables in ADT. For a detailed step-by-step description, see .
i Note

The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix \_D. For the persistent database tables, we use the prefix A\_ to indicate the active persistence. For detailed information, see Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

When creating database tables for a managed business object with draft that use UUID key layout, the following considerations are relevant:

- The RAP managed runtime framework requires administrative data fields for internal processing of the BO entities. Especially, a field that denotes the timestamp when the instance was last changed is important for the ETag master handling on each entity. If the administrative fields on local instances are annotated in CDS with the relevant @Semantics annotations, they are automatically filled by the RAP managed runtime framework. For more information, see Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161].
- To check whether an active BO instance was changed by concurrent clients, the total ETag field requires an update whenever the active BO instance is changed. The total ETag field is only necessary on the lock master entity, as the control is done for the complete composition tree. If this field is a timestamp and is annotated with @Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt in the corresponding CDS view, the RAP managed runtime framework updates the field accordingly. As this field is only relevant in draft scenarios, we will add this field to the database table later in the demo scenario when the managed business object is draft-enabled. For more information, see Total ETag [page 66].

i Note

In most draft scenarios, it is best practice to control the concurrency on instance level (local ETag) and the concurrency for the transition between draft and active (total ETag). As both fields are not necessarily updated at the same time, you need two separate fields with timestamps that are updated at the relevant points in time.

- In UUID scenario, every entity needs a field for the UUID key. In addition, child entities must have a field for their parent's UUID. Otherwise, you cannot define associations for the composition relationship. In addition, any child entity that has no parent-child relationship with the lock master entity must have a field with the lock master’s UUID. Otherwise, you cannot define associations to the lock master entity, which is important for lock and ETag handling.
- Apart from the UUID key, each database table also has a semantic ID field. These fields are no technical keys, but are used to semantically distinguish the entity instance in the business object.

Table /dmo/a_travel_d: Persistent Table for Managing Travel Data

This table defines general travel data, data that describe the basic information of a trip, such as the travel ID, customer and agency ID, and dates. Since this scenario is based on a UUID key layout, the table also entails a field with a UUID data type. In addition, the fields for standard administration data, such as the respective user or the time of creation are added to the table. In managed business objects, these fields can be filled automatically by the RAP managed runtime framework if the corresponding @Semantics annotations are added to the fields in the CDS view entity. Administrative fields, in particular the field that determines when instance data is changed, are important for concurrency control.

i Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /dmo/a_travel_d.
Table `/dmo/a_booking_d`: Persistent Table for Managing Booking Data

This table defines the booking data for a specific travel instance. It contains general booking data, such as the booking ID, booking date, and general flight data. To identify a booking instance uniquely, the table must contain a UUID field for the booking. In UUID scenarios, the parent UUID must be used as a foreign-key field in the database for the child entity. For the ETag master handling, the booking database table receives a field to store the timestamp when the instance was updated.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of `/dmo/a_booking_d`.

```abap
define table /dmo/a_booking_d {  
  key client            : abap.clnt not null;  
  key booking_uuid      : sysuuid_x16 not null;  
  parent_uuid           : sysuuid_x16;  
  booking_id            : /dmo/booking_id not null;  
  booking_date          : /dmo/booking_date;  
  customer_id           : /dmo/customer_id;  
  carrier_id            : /dmo/carrier_id;  
  connection_id         : /dmo/connection_id;  
  flight_date           : /dmo/flight_date;  
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dмо/booking_data.currency_code'  
  flight_price          : /dмо/flight_price;  
}
```
Table /dmo/a_bksuppl_d: Persistent Table for Managing Booking Supplement Data

This table defines the supplement for a specific booking instance. It contains general booking supplement data, such as the booking supplement ID and price information. To identify a booking supplement instance uniquely, the table must contain a UUID field for the booking supplement. In UUID scenarios, the parent UUID and the lock master UUID (in our case the root UUID) must be used as a foreign-key field in the database. For the ETag master handling, the booking supplement database table receives a field to store the timestamp when the instance was updated.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /dmo/a_bksuppl_d.

```
@EndUserText.label : 'Active BookingSupplement Persistence for Draft Ref. Scenario'
@AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
@AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
@AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
@AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #RESTRICTED
define table /dmo/a_bksuppl_d {
  key client            : abap.clnt not null;
  key booksuppl_uuid    : sysuuid_x16 not null;
  root_uuid             : sysuuid_x16;
  parent_uuid           : sysuuid_x16;
  booking_supplement_id : /dmo/booking_supplement_id not null;
  supplement_id         : /dmo/supplement_id;
  price                 : /dmo/supplement_price;
  currency_code         : /dmo/currency_code;
  local_last_changed_at : timestamp;
}
```

5.4.1.1.2 Creating CDS View Entities

For the managed scenario with draft, create data definitions for CDS view entities to build the structure for the business object.

Context and Procedure

Previously, you have created persistent database table for the travel business object. The structure of the managed business object must now be defined by CDS data modeling.
Create data definitions for CDS view entities that represent the three transactional entities of the business object: Travel, Booking, and Booking Supplement.

**Note**

CDS view entities [page 1024] are the successor DDIC-based CDS views. CDS view entities offer many advantages, such as optimization and simplification of syntax checks, and improved performance during view activations.

In ADT, use the wizard for creating CDS data definitions. For a detailed step-by-step description, see .

Select the template Define Root View Entity for the travel entity.

Select the template Define View Entity with To-Parent Association for the booking and the booking supplement entity.

**Note**

The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix _D. Since CDS view entities are interface views, they are prefixed with I_ accordance with the VDM (virtual data model) naming convention. For detailed information, see Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

When using CDS view entities for a managed business object with draft that use UUID key layout, the following considerations are relevant:

- For a business object, you must define a root entity that represents the head of the business object and provides the name with which the BO is addressed.
- The composition structure of the managed business object must be defined in the CDS view entities by compositions to the child entity and associations to the parent entity. In addition, an association to the lock master entity (in our scenario, the root entity) must be available from all entities in the business object.
- The RAP managed runtime framework fills the administrative fields automatically if they are annotated with the corresponding @Semantics annotation. These fields are only necessary on the root entity of the business object. In particular, the field that is annotated with @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true is updated whenever the instance is changed. In our scenario, this field is used for ETag comparison.

**Data Definition** /DMO/I_Travel_D: Travel Root View

The data source for the travel root view is the database table /DMO/A_TRAVEL_D. All fields from the database table are used for the data model.

To retrieve master data for value helps from other entities, define the association to the CDS entities /DMO/I_Agency, /DMO/I_Customer, and /DMO/I_Currency. The former are part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, which you can download. The CDS view /DMO/I_Currency is generally available in your development system.

Annotate the price fields with the annotations @Semantics.amount.currencyCode to define which field is used as currency.
i Note

In contrast to DDIC-based CDS views, in CDS view entities, you do not need to specify the currency code field as a currency code if the field is already specified in the database table.

Use semantics annotations for the administrative fields. The ETag field `local_instance_last_changed_at` receives the annotation `@Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true`.

As soon as the entity of the composition structure exists, define the compositional relationship to the child entity `/DMO/I_Booking_D` with the keyword `composition`.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of `/DMO/I_Travel_D`.

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel View Entity for Draft Ref.Scen.'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
define root view entity /DMO/I_Travel_D
  as select from /dmo/a_travel_d
  composition [0..*] of /DMO/I_BOOKING_D as _Booking
  association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Agency as _Agency on
  $projection.AgencyID = _Agency.AgencyID
  association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Customer as _Customer on
  $projection.CustomerID = _Customer.CustomerID
  association [0..1] to I_Currency as _Currency on
{ ///dmo/a_travel_d
  key travel_uuid           as TravelUUID,
  travel_id             as TravelID,
  agency_id             as AgencyID,
  customer_id           as CustomerID,
  begin_date            as BeginDate,
  end_date              as EndDate,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  booking_fee           as BookingFee,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  total_price           as TotalPrice,
  currency_code         as CurrencyCode,
  description           as Description,
  overall_status        as OverallStatus,
  @Semantics.user.createdBy: true
  local_created_by      as LocalCreatedBy,
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.createdAt: true
  local_created_at      as LocalCreatedAt,
  @Semantics.user.lastChangedBy: true
  local_last_changed_by as LocalLastChangedBy,
  //local ETag field --> OData ETag
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
  local_last_changed_at as LocalLastChangedAt,
  //Associations
  _Booking,
  _Agency,
  _Customer,
  _Currency
}
```
Data Definition /DMO/I_Booking_D: Booking View

The data source for the booking view is the database table /DMO/A_BOOKING_D. All fields from the database table are used for the data model.

To retrieve master data for value helps from other entities, define the association to the CDS entities /DMO/I_Customer, /DMO/I_Carrier and /DMO/I_Connection. These CDS views are part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, which you can download.

Annotate the price fields with the annotations @Semantics.amount.currencyCode to define which field is used as currency.

**i Note**
In contrast to CDS views, in CDS view entities, you do not need to specify the currency code field as a currency code if the field is already specified in the database table.

Use semantics annotations for the administrative field. The local ETag field local_instance_last_changed_at receives the annotation @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true.

As soon as the entities of the composition structure exist, define the compositional relationship to the child entity /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D with the keyword composition, and define the compositional relationship to the parent entity /DMO/I_Travel_D with the keyword association to parent.

**i Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /DMO/I_Booking_D.**

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking View Entity for Draft RefScen'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
define view entity /DMO/I_Booking_D
  as select from /dmo/a_booking_d
    association to parent /DMO/I_Travel_D as _Travel on
    $projection.TravelUUID = _Travel.TravelUUID
    composition [0..*] of /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D as _BookingSupplement
    association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Customer as _Customer on
    $projection.CustomerID = _Customer.CustomerID
    association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Carrier as _Carrier on
    $projection.AirlineID = _Carrier.AirlineID
    association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Connection as _Connection on
    $projection.AirlineID = _Connection.AirlineID
    and
    $projection.ConnectionID = _Connection.ConnectionID

  { ///dmo/a_booking_d
    key booking_uuid as BookingUUID,
    parent_uuid as TravelUUID,
    booking_id as BookingID,
    booking_date as BookingDate,
    customer_id as CustomerID,
    carrier_id as AirlineID,
    connection_id as ConnectionID,
    flight_date as FlightDate,
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    flight_price as FlightPrice,
    currency_code as CurrencyCode,
    booking_status as BookingStatus,

    //local ETag field --> OData ETag
    @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
  }
```
Data Definition /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D: Booking Supplement View

The data source for the booking view is the database table /DMO/A_BKSUPPL_D. All fields from the database table are used for the data model.

To retrieve master data for value helps and texts from other entities, define the association to the CDS entities /DMO/I_Supplement and /DMO/I_SupplementText. These CDS views are part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, which you can download.

Annotate the price fields with the annotations @Semantics.amount.currencyCode to define which field is used as currency.

In contrast to CDS views, in CDS view entities, you do not need to specify the currency code field as a currency code if the field is already specified in the database table.

Use semantics annotations for the administrative field. The local ETag field local_instance_last_changed_at receives the annotation
@Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true.

As soon as the entities of the composition structure exist, define the compositional relationship to the parent entity /DMO/I_Booking_D with the keyword association to parent and define the compositional relationship to the root entity /DMO/I_Travel_D.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D.

```java
@EndUserText.label: 'BookSuppl View Entity fro Draft RefScen'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
define view entity /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D
   as select from /dmo/a_bksuppl_d
   association to parent /DMO/I_Booking_D as _Booking on
   $projection.BookingUUID = _Booking.BookingUUID
   association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Travel_D as _Travel on
   $projection.TravelUUID = _Travel.TravelUUID
   association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Supplement as _Product on
   $projection.SupplementID = _Product.SupplementID
   association [1..*] to /DMO/I_SupplementText as _SupplementText on
   $projection.SupplementTextID = _SupplementText.SupplementTextID
   ( //dmo/a_bksuppl_d
     key booksuppl_uuid
     root_uuid as BookSupplUUID,
     parent_uuid as BookingUUID,
   )
```
5.4.1.2 Developing Transactional Behavior

This topic describes the behavior that is used for the business object in the managed scenario with draft. The managed business object comprises the following behavior.

1. Root Entity Travel:
   1. You can create new instances of the travel entity.
      On creating travel instances, the following behavior is implemented:
      ○ The UUID key for new instances is automatically assigned.
      ○ The travel UUID, the travel ID, the overall status, the total travel price, and administrative fields cannot be provided by the consumer.
      ○ The semantic travel ID is calculated.
      ○ The overall status for new travel instances is set to initial.
      ○ The administrative fields are filled automatically.
      ○ The total travel price is calculated based on the booking fee of new travels.
      ○ The customer ID, the agency ID, the begin and the end date must be provided on creating new travel instances.
      ○ The agency ID is checked for existence.
      ○ The customer ID is checked for existence.
      ○ The travel dates are checked for consistency.

2. You can update instances of the travel entity.
   On updating travel instances, the following behavior is implemented:
   ○ The travel ID, the overall status, the total travel price, and administrative fields cannot be modified BO-externally.
   ○ You can only update the booking fee if the overall status is not set to accepted ('A').
   ○ If the customer ID, the agency ID or the travel dates are changed, they are checked for existence and consistency.
   ○ You can set the overall status to accepted ('A') by an action, if the travel does not already have this status.
   ○ You can set the overall status to rejected ('X') by an action, if the travel does not already have this status.
   ○ You can deduct a discount for the travel with a parameter action if the overall status is not already accepted ('A').
3. You can delete instances of the travel entity. Due to compositional relationship, all instances of child entities are deleted as well.

2. Child Entity **Booking**

   1. You can create new booking instances for travel instances.
      On creating booking instances, the following behavior is implemented:
      - The UUID key for new instances is automatically assigned.
      - The travel UUID, the booking ID, the booking date, and administrative fields cannot be provided by the consumer.
      - The travel UUID is set automatically.
      - The booking date is set automatically.
      - The administrative fields are filled automatically.
      - The customer ID, the airline ID, the connection ID, and the flight date must be provided on creating new booking instances.
      - The customer ID is checked for existence.
      - The airline ID is checked for existence and compatibility with the connection ID and the flight date.
      - The connection ID is checked for existence and compatibility with the airline ID and the flight date.
      - The flight date is checked for compatibility with the airline ID and the connection ID.

2. You can update instances of the booking entity.
   On updating booking instances, the following behavior is implemented:
   - The booking UUID, travel UUID, the booking ID, the booking date, and administrative fields cannot be modified BO-externally.
   - If the customer ID, the airline ID, the connection ID, or the flight date are changed, they are checked for existence and consistency.

3. You can delete instances of the booking entity. Due to compositional relationship, all instances of the child entity are deleted as well.

3. Child entity **BookingSupplement**

   1. You can create new booking supplement instances for booking instances.
      On creating booking supplement instances, the following behavior is implemented:
      - The UUID key for new instances is automatically assigned.
      - The travel UUID, the booking UUID, the booking supplement UUID, the booking supplement ID, and administrative fields cannot be provided by the consumer.
      - The booking supplement UUID is set automatically.
      - The semantic booking supplement ID is calculated.
      - The administrative fields are filled automatically.
      - The supplement ID must be provided on creating new booking supplement instances.
      - The supplement ID is checked for existence.

2. You can update instances of the booking supplement entity.
   On updating booking supplement instances, the following behavior is implemented:
   - The travel UUID, the booking UUID, the booking supplement UUID, the booking supplement ID, and administrative fields be modified BO-externally.
   - If the supplement ID is changed, it is checked for existence and consistency.

3. You can delete instances of the booking supplement entity.
5.4.1.2.1 Defining Standard Behavior

For the managed scenario with draft, create a behavior definition to define the behavior for the business object.

Context and Procedure

The behavior definition is the development object that defines the implementation type behavior for the business object. When using the implementation type `managed`, for some features, you only need to define behavior characteristics and standard operations in the behavior definition. The RAP managed runtime framework provides a generic solution for

- create
- update
- delete
- create by association
- lock handling
- ETag handling

For more information, see Defining Elementary Behavior for Ready-to-Run Business Object [page 258].

Create the behavior definition by using the creation wizard in ADT. By using the context menu on the root view (`/DMO/I_TRAVEL_D`), you can directly create a behavior definition for the travel data model. In the wizard, choose the implementation `Managed`. For a detailed description, see Creating Behavior Definitions [page 967].

For the demo scenario with a managed business object with draft, the following considerations are relevant.

- The behavior of each entity is implemented in a separate behavior class pool. Hence, the implementation class must be created for each entity separately. For more information, see Best Practises for Modularization and Performance [page 382].
- The managed implementation type requires the specification of lock master or lock dependent on each entity. For more information, see Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking) [page 166].
- In managed business objects, it is best practice to define a local ETag master on each entity. With an ETag master on every entity, you ensure that the ETag check is done for every entity independently. For more information, see Optimistic Concurrency Control [page 161].
- The RAP managed runtime framework is able to automatically draw primary key values in UUID scenarios. You use this functionality by defining early managed numbering in the behavior definition. Setting the primary key field to read only defines strict internal numbering. An external BO consumer is not allowed to provide the primary key values in this case. For more detailed information, see Automatically Drawing Primary Key Values in Managed BOs [page 626].
- If different names are used on the database table and in the CDS data model, you need to define the mapping for these fields. This is done via the mapping operator in the behavior definition.

Behavior Definition `/DMO/I_Travel_D`

The template for the managed implementation type provides the behavior definition for every entity in the composition tree of the root entity. In addition, it specifies the data source of the respective entities as...
persistent table. The behavior definition proposes to include the behavior characteristics lock, authorization and etag. The standard operations create, update and delete, as well as the association _Booking {create} are included in the template for each entity. The create in child entities is not supported in RAP scenarios. Instances of child entities can only be created by create by association.

Define the root entity as lock master. The current version of the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model only supports the specification of lock master on the root entity. Define the booking entity and the booking supplement entity as lock dependent. Lock dependents require an association to the lock master entity. In the CDS data model, you have specified the association to the travel entity _Travel. To use the association for the lock dependent, define the association as transaction-enabled in the behavior definition. For more information, see Lock Dependent [page 170].

As the TravelUUID is used for the lock dependent relationship, it must be set to readonly in the Booking and BookingSupplement entity behavior.

This demo scenario does not specify authorization control.

Define an ETag master field on each entity. Use the field LocalLastChangedAt that is part of the entity’s data model. Since this field is annotated with the annotation @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true, it is updated automatically by the RAP managed runtime framework.

Use early managed numbering for the primary key fields on every entity and set the fields to read only, so that the UUID values are drawn strictly internally.

Map the field names in the CDS data definition to the fields on the database table.

For each entity, define an alias and an implementation class. The behavior definition editor provides a quickfix to directly create the behavior class with the name that you specify in the behavior definition. As there is no behavior defined that needs implementation, the local types of the behavior pool are empty.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /DMO/I_Travel_D.

``` Sample Code ```

```managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_i_travel_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_travel_d
lock master
//authorization master ( instance )
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
  create;
  update;
  delete;
  association _Booking { create; }
field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) TravelUUID;
mapping for /dmo/a_travel_d
{
  AgencyID = agency_id;
  BeginDate = begin_date;
  BookingFee = booking_fee;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  CustomerID = customer_id;
  Description = description;
  EndDate = end_date;
  LocalCreatedAt = local_created_at;
  LocalCreatedBy = local_created_by;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
```
LocalLastChangedBy = local_last_changed_by;
OverallStatus = overall_status;
TotalPrice = total_price;
TravelID = travel_id;
TravelUUID = travel_uuid;
}
}
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
implementation in class /dmo/bp_i_booking_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_booking_d
lock dependent by _Travel
//authorization dependent by <association>
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
  update;
delete;
association _BookingSupplement { create; }
association _Travel {}
field (readonly) TravelUUID;
field (numbering: managed, readonly) BookingUUID;
mapping for /dmo/a_booking_d
{ AirlineID = carrier_id;
  BookingDate = booking_date;
  BookingID = booking_id;
  BookingStatus = booking_status;
  BookingUUID = booking_uuid;
  ConnectionID = connection_id;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  CustomerID = customer_id;
  FlightDate = flight_date;
  FlightPrice = flight_price;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  TravelUUID = parent_uuid; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D alias BookingSupplement
implementation in class /dmo/bp_i_bookingsupplement_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_bksuppl_d
lock dependent by _Travel
//authorization dependent by <association>
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
  update;
delete;
association _Travel {}
field (readonly) TravelUUID;
field (numbering: managed, readonly) BookSupplUUID;
mapping for /dmo/a_bksuppl_d
{ BookSupplPrice = price;
  BookSupplUUID = booksuppl_uuid;
  BookingSupplementID = booking_supplement_id;
  BookingUUID = parent_uuid;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  SuplementID = supplement_id;
  TravelUUID = root_uuid; }
}
5.4.1.2.2 Developing Actions

For the managed scenario with draft, add actions for nonstandard modify operations.

Context and Procedure

Actions are used to manifest business-logic-specific work-flows in one operation. You can implement simple status changes or a complete creation work-flow in one operation. For the UI, you can define action buttons that execute the action directly when the consumer chooses the button. For more detailed information, see Actions [page 138].

For this scenario, define and implement the following actions:

- For the travel entity, the following actions are described:
  - acceptTravel
    The action sets the travel status to Accepted (A).
    Technically speaking, this action is an instance action with return parameter $self. The value of the field OverallStatus is changed by executing a modify request to update this field with the value A.
  - rejectTravel
    The action sets the travel status to Rejected (X).
    Technically speaking, this action is an instance action with return parameter $self. The value of the field OverallStatus is changed by executing a modify request to update this field with the value X.
  - deductDiscount
    The action calculates a new travel price by deducting a discount for the BookingFee. The consumer can freely choose the percentage that is deducted. The value must be passed together with the action request. On the Fiori UI, the UI provides a pop-up window for the consumer to fill in the requested value. The action parameter is modeled with an abstract entity. Technically speaking, the action is an instance action with an importing action parameter and returns itself. The parameter is modeled with an abstract entity. The value of the field BookingFee is changed by executing a modify request to update this field with the calculated value.
  - reCalcTotalPrice
    The action calculates the total price for one travel instance. It adds up the prices of all bookings, including their supplements, and the booking fee of the travel instance. If different currencies are used, the prices are converted to the currency of the travel instance. Technically speaking, the action is an internal instance action. This action is invoked by determinations that are triggered when one of the involved fields is changed: BookingFee (travel entity), FlightPrice (booking entity), and Price (booking supplement entity).

For a detailed description on how to implement the actions for the travel entity, see Implementing Actions for the Travel Entity [page 468].
5.4.1.2.2.1 Implementing Actions for the Travel Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement actions on the travel entity.

**Actions** acceptTravel and rejectTravel

Both actions change the status of a travel instance. They are implemented exactly in the same way: Define the actions in the behavior definition and implement them in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

**Definition**

Define instance actions with result $self. The field OverallStatus is set to read only, so the consumer can only change the status via the actions acceptTravel and rejectTravel.

```
SAMPLE CODE

define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
...
  field ( readonly ) OverallStatus;
  action acceptTravel result [1] $self;
  action rejectTravel result [1] $self;
  ...

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

1. Define constants that are available for the travel status in the private section of the local types.

```
SAMPLE CODE

CLASS lhc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
    CONSTANTS:
      BEGIN OF travel_status,
        open     TYPE c LENGTH 1 VALUE 'O', "Open"
        accepted TYPE c LENGTH 1 VALUE 'A', "Accepted"
        rejected TYPE c LENGTH 1 VALUE 'X', "Rejected"
      END OF travel_status.
    ...
  ENDCLASS.

2. Update the field OverallStatus with a modify request for all instances with the given keys. Provide the value accepted for accepting the travel, and rejected for rejecting the travel.

3. The actions return $self. That means, they must return the updated instances in the result parameter. For that reason, read the updated instances from the buffer and fill an internal table.

4. Pass the internal table to the result parameter.

i Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Action acceptTravel.
Action `deductDiscount`

Define the action in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for `Travel`.

`deductDiscount` requires an importing parameter for entering the discount percentage. The value must be passed together with the action request. The action parameter is modeled with an abstract entity.

Creating an Abstract Entity for the Action Input Parameter
1. Create a data definition for a CDS abstract entity, as described in.
2. Define an element for the discount percentage with the type `abap.int1`.
Annotate the element with `@Consumption.defaultValue: '10'` to set the default value for the discount percentage to 10.

```abap
@Consumption.defaultValue: '10'
discount_percent : abap.int1;
```

Define the action in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for `Travel`.

**Definition**

Define an instance action with an action parameter `/DMO/A_Travel_Discount` and the result `$self`.

```abap
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
...
  action deductDiscount parameter /dmo/a_travel_discount result [1] $self;
... }
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

**i Note**

The input parameter of parameter actions is passed to the action method as the component `$param` in the importing parameter.

Calculate the new total price for the travel instance by deducting the provided discount percentages. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Define an internal table and pass the entries of the importing parameter `keys`. Loop at the internal table for the keys with parameter values that do not match the preconditions for percentage value:
   1. It must not be initial.
   2. It must be less than 100.
   3. It must be greater or equal than 0.
2. Append the transactional key to the failed table and append the corresponding message to the reported table if there are keys that do not match the preconditions. Delete the entries in the internal table that do not match the preconditions.
3. If there are still entries in the internal table that match the preconditions, read all travel instances with the imported `keys` into an internal `lt_travel` for the remaining entries. If the READ fails, add the failed keys to the `failed` table of the action.
4. Loop over the internal table and calculate the new reduced booking fee and append it to an internal table for update.
5. Execute a modify request to update the field `BookingFee` for the instances in the buffer.
6. To fill the action result, read the involved travel instances and fill the result correspondingly.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Action `deductDiscount`.

```
METHOD deductDiscount.
  DATA lt_update_travel TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE /DMO/I_Travel_D.
  DATA(lt_keys) = keys.
  LOOP AT lt_keys ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_key>) WHERE %param-
    discount_percent IS INITIAL
    OR %param-
    discount_percent > 100
    OR %param-
    discount_percent <= 0.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_key>-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_key>-%tky
                     %msg = new_message( id = '/DMO/
                                           number = '047')) TO reported-
    travel.
  DELETE lt_keys.
  ENDLOOP.
  CHECK lt_keys IS NOT INITIAL.
  "get total price
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Travel
      FIELDS ( BookingFee )
      WITH CORRESPONDING #( lt_keys )
    RESULT DATA(lt_travel)
    FAILED DATA(read_failed).
  "discount invalid
  if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
  %element=TotalPrice = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-
  travel.
  DELETE lt_keys.
  ENDLOOP.
  "update total price with reduced price
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Travel
    UPDATE FIELDS ( BookingFee )
    WITH lt_update_travel
  FAILED DATA(update_failed)
  REPORTED DATA(update_reported).
  "Read changed data for action result
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Travel
    ALL FIELDS WITH
    CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel_with_discount).
  result = VALUE #( FOR travel IN lt_travel ( %tky = travel-%tky
                                                                   %param = travel ) ).
ENDMETHOD.
```
**Action** reCalcTotalPrice

The action reCalcTotalPrice is called by determinations if changes on prices in the travel entity itself or in the child entities are executed. The total price on the travel entity is then recalculated.

**Definition**

Define the internal action in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

→ Remember

Internal actions can only be called from BO internal consumers.

In our demo scenario, the action is called from determinations on all three BO entities, whenever a price field or a currency code field is changed.

**Sample Code**

```abap
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
...{...
  internal action reCalcTotalPrice;
  ...
}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

To determine the total price of a travel, all prices must be converted to the travel currency and then summed up. This is done for each BO entity separately. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Define an internal standard table amount_per_currencycode to process amounts and the related currency code.
2. Read all the instances with the imported keys into an internal table lt_travel. Delete instances with empty CurrencyCode. For such instances, the total price cannot be calculated.
3. Loop at lt_travel and start filling the amounts per currency with the corresponding values from the travel instance.
4. Read all the bookings for this travel instance into lt_booking.
5. Loop at the bookings in lt_booking where the currency code is filled and add the price to the travel price in the table amount_per_currencycode if it has the same currency code. The ABAP statement COLLECT is useful in this case, as it sums the amounts with the same currency code and appends a new line if the currency codes differ.
6. Read all the booking supplement instances for all bookings in lt_booking into lt_bookingsupplement.
7. Loop at the booking supplements in lt_bookingsupplement where the currency code is filled and add the price to the travel price in the table amount_per_currencycode if it has the same currency code.
8. Clear the total price in this travel.
9. Loop at the table amount_per_currencycode and convert the amounts with currency codes other than the travel currency code into the currency code of the travel instance.
10. Sum up the converted amounts for one travel.
11. Modify the travel entity with the new total price for all requested travel instances.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Action `reCalcTotalPrice`.

### Sample Code

```abap
METHOD reCalcTotalPrice.
    TYPES: BEGIN OF ty_amount_per_currencycode,
        amount        TYPE /dmo/total_price,
        currency_code TYPE /dmo/currency_code,
    END OF ty_amount_per_currencycode.
    DATA: amount_per_currencycode TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF ty_amount_per_currencycode.

    " Read all relevant travel instances.
    READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
        ENTITY Travel
            FIELDS ( BookingFee CurrencyCode )
        WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
    RESULT DATA(lt_travel)
    FAILED failed.
    DELETE lt_travel WHERE CurrencyCode IS INITIAL.
    LOOP AT lt_travel ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel>).
        " Set the start for the calculation by adding the booking fee.
        amount_per_currencycode = VALUE #( ( amount = <fs_travel>-BookingFee
            currency_code = <fs_travel>-CurrencyCode ) ).

        " Read all associated bookings and add them to the total price.
        READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
            ENTITY Travel
                FIELDS ( FlightPrice CurrencyCode )
            WITH VALUE #( ( %tky = <fs_travel>-%tky ) )
        RESULT DATA(lt_booking).
        LOOP AT lt_booking INTO DATA(booking) WHERE CurrencyCode IS NOT INITIAL.
            COLLECT VALUE ty_amount_per_currencycode( amount = booking-FlightPrice
                currency_code = booking-CurrencyCode ) INTO amount_per_currencycode.
        ENDLOOP.

        " Read all associated booking supplements and add them to the total price.
        READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
            ENTITY Booking
                FIELDS ( BookSupplPrice CurrencyCode )
            WITH VALUE #( for rba_booking in lt_booking ( %tky = rba_booking-%tky ) )
        RESULT DATA(lt_bookingsupplement).
        LOOP AT lt_bookingsupplement INTO DATA(bookingsupplement) WHERE CurrencyCode IS NOT INITIAL.
            COLLECT VALUE ty_amount_per_currencycode( amount = bookingsupplement-BookSupplPrice
                currency_code = bookingsupplement-CurrencyCode ) INTO amount_per_currencycode.
        ENDLOOP.

    CLEAR <fs_travel>-TotalPrice.
    LOOP AT amount_per_currencycode INTO
        DATA(single_amount_per_currencycode).
        " If needed do a Currency Conversion
        IF single_amount_per_currencycode-currency_code = <fs_travel>-CurrencyCode.
            <fs_travel>-TotalPrice += single_amount_per_currencycode-amount.
        ELSE.
            /dmo/cl_flight_amdp=>convert_currency( EXPORTING
                iv_amount = single_amount_per_currencycode-

```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Develop PUBLIC 473
5.4.1.2.3 Developing Determinations

For the managed scenario with draft, add determinations to calculate values implicitly.

Context and Procedure

With determinations, you can generalize the calculation of values in the business logic of a managed BO. For more detailed information, see Determinations [page 152].

- For the travel entity, the following determinations are described:
  - setTravelNumber
    The semantic ID for the travel entity is drawn by the determination when a new instance is created. Since the semantic TravelID should not be provided by the client, the field must be set to read only.

  In this demo scenario, we use a simplified approach to determine new readable IDs for the BO instances. To ensure that gap-free and non-duplicate IDs are assigned, use a number range object.

  Technically speaking, this determination is a determination on save with the trigger operation create.
o setStatusToNew
The travel is set to Open when a new instance is created.
Technically speaking, this determination is a determination on modify with the trigger operation create.

o calculateTotalPrice
The determination adds the prices of the travel (BookingFee), the booking (FlightPrice), and the booking supplement entity (Price). The sum of these values is the total price of the travel. The determination is triggered whenever one of the fields or the corresponding currency field is changed, and when a travel instance is created. Since the recalculation should be triggered whenever one of the mentioned fields is changed, the calculation of the total price is outsourced to an action. This action is triggered by a determination on each entity.

Note
You can only define trigger fields for a determination from the same entity the determination is assigned to. A determination that is defined for the travel entity cannot have trigger fields from the booking entity.

Technically speaking, this determination is a determination on modify with the trigger operation create and with the field triggers BookingFee and CurrencyCode.

For a detailed description on how to implement the determinations for the travel entity, see Determining Values for the Travel Entity [page 476].

● For the booking entity, the following determinations are described:
  o setBookingNumber
The semantic ID for the booking entity is drawn by the determination when a new instance is created. Since the semantic BookingID should not be provided by the client, the field must be set to read only.
Technically speaking, this is a determination on save with the trigger operation create.

  o setBookingDate
The booking date is set when the booking instance is saved to the database. The booking date is only set internally by the determination and must not be changed after the instance is saved. Therefore, set the field BookingDate to read only.
Technically speaking, this is a determination on save with the trigger operation create.

  o calculateTotalPrice
See description above. Since the recalculation must also be triggered when the related fields of the booking entity are changed, the determination must be defined and implemented again.
Technically speaking, this is a determination on modify with the field triggers FlightPrice and CurrencyCode.

For a detailed description on how to implement the determinations for the booking entity, see Determining Values for the Booking Entity [page 480].

● For the booking supplement entity, the following determinations are described:
  o setBookSupplNumber
The semantic ID for the booking supplement entity is drawn by the determination when a new instance is created. Since the semantic BookingSupplementID should not be provided by the client, the field must be set to read only.
Technically speaking, this is a determination on save with the trigger operation create.

  o calculateTotalPrice
See description above. Since the recalculation must also be triggered when the related fields of the booking supplement entity are changed, the determination must be defined and implemented again.
Technically speaking, this is a determination on modify with the trigger operation create and the field triggers BookSupplPrice and CurrencyCode.

For a detailed description on how to implement the determination for the booking supplement entity, see Determining Values for the Booking Supplement Entity [page 484].

5.4.1.2.3.1 Determining Values for the Travel Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement determinations on the travel entity for implicit value calculation.

**Determination** setTravelNumber

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

**Definition**

Define a determination on modify with trigger operation create. Since the travel ID must not be changed externally, define the field TravelID as read only.

```
SAMPLE CODE
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
...
  field (readonly) TravelID;
  determination setTravelNumber on save { create; }
...
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Determine the number for a new travel instance by selecting the highest available number from the database and add 1. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Read all the travel instances with the imported keys into an internal table and delete the instances that already have a travel number (TravelID). Continue to work only with instances that do not have a travel
number yet. If the determination is executed several times, the travel numbers must not be calculated again. This is particularly important in order to stick to the rule of idempotence for determinations.

\[\rightarrow\text{Remember}\]

The determination result must not change if the determination is executed several times under the same conditions (idempotence). See Rules for Determinations [page 152].

2. Select the maximum travel number from the database table /dmo/a_travel_d.
3. Update the field TravelID of all involved instances with a modify request and assign a new TravelID by adding 1 to the max travel from before. Write messages in the request’s reported table.
4. Write the messages of the request’s reported table to the one of the determination. This passes the messages to the determination consumer.

\[i\] Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination setTravelNumber.

\[\text{Sample Code}\]

```abap
METHOD setTravelNumber.
  "Ensure idempotence
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( TravelID )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel).
  DELETE lt_travel WHERE TravelID IS NOT INITIAL.
  CHECK lt_travel IS NOT INITIAL.
  "Get max travelID
  SELECT SINGLE FROM /dmo/a_travel_d FIELDS MAX( travel_id ) INTO @DATA(lv_max_travelid).
  "Update involved instances
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
  UPDATE FIELDS ( TravelID )
  WITH VALUE #( FOR ls_travel IN lt_travel INDEX INTO i ( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
    TravelID = lv_max_travelid + i ) )
  REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
  "Fill reported
  reported = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_reported ).
ENDMETHOD.
```

\[\text{Determination setStatusToNew}\]

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

\[\text{Definition}\]

Define a determination on modify with trigger operation create. The overall status of the travel is only changed by the actions rejectTravel and acceptTravel, see Accept and Reject Travel [page 468]. Therefore the field is read only for the external consumer.
Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Set the status to *Open* when new instances are created. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Read all the travel instances with the imported keys into an internal table and delete the instances that already have an entry in the status field (*OverallStatus*). Continue to work only with instances that do not have a status yet. If the determination is executed after the status value is set by the consumer, the status must not be set to open.

2. For those instances, that have an initial value in *OverallStatus*, update the field *OverallStatus* with *open* by executing a modify request for all instances with the imported keys. The constant *open* was defined before in the private section of the local types. Write messages in the reported table of the modify request.

> **i Note**

Idempotence is not an issue in this determination. Even if the determination is executed several times and an instance already has the status *New*, the outcome of the determination does not change with the modify request execution.

3. Write the messages of the request's reported table to the one of the determination. This passes the messages to the determination consumer.

**Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination** `setStatusToNew`.

**Sample Code**

```abap
METHOD setStatusToNew.
  READ ENTITIES of /DMO/1_Travel_D in LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( OverallStatus )
    with CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT data(lt_travel)
  FAILED data(lt_failed).
  "If Status is already set, do nothing"
  DELETE lt_travel WHERE OverallStatus IS NOT INITIAL.
  CHECK lt_travel IS NOT INITIAL.
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/1_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
    UPDATE SET FIELDS
    WITH VALUE #( FOR key IN keys ( %tky = key-%tky OverallStatus = travel_status-open ) )
  REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
  reported = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_reported ).
ENDMETHOD.
```
Determination `calculateTotalPrice`

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for `Travel`.

**Note**

The actual calculation of the total price is done by the action `recalcTotalPrice`. The determination just executes the action. See Action `recalcTotalPrice` [page 472].

**Definition**

Define a determination on modify with operation trigger `create` and field triggers `BookingFee` and `CurrencyCode` and define the field `TotalPrice` as `read only`, as the value must not be defined externally.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel ...
{ ...
  field ( readonly ) TravelID; OverallStatus; TotalPrice;
  determination calculateTotalPrice on modify { create; field BookingFee, CurrencyCode; }
  ...
}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Execute the action `recalcPrice` when the trigger fields are changed. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Execute a modify request for action execution for all instances with the imported keys. Write messages in the reported table of the modify request.
2. Write the messages of the request's reported table to the one of the determination. This passes the messages to the determination consumer.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
METHOD calculateTotalPrice.
MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY Travel
  EXECUTE reCalcTotalPrice
  FROM CORRESPONDING #{ keys }
  REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
  reported = CORRESPONDING #{ DEEP lt_reported }.
ENDMETHOD.
```
5.4.1.2.3.2 Determining Values for the Booking Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement determinations on the booking entity for implicit value calculation.

**Determination** setBookingNumber

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

**Definition**

Define a determination on save with trigger operation create. Since the booking ID must not be changed externally, define the field BookingID as read only.

---

Sample Code

```abap
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
...
  field (readonly) BookingID;
  determination setBookingNumber on save { create; }
...}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Determine the number for a new booking instance by looping at all bookings for one booking and determine the greatest ID. Add 1 for every new booking instance. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Read all the corresponding travel instances for the incoming booking keys into an internal table. If multiple bookings of the travel are requested, the travel is returned only once.
2. Loop at the internal table and read the bookings for each travel instance into an internal table.
3. Define a variable for the maximum booking ID and set the value to '0000' (initial value).
4. Loop at the bookings for one travel and compare the booking ID with the maximum booking ID to determine the maximum booking ID available for the travel instance.
5. Provide a booking ID for all bookings of this travel that have none. Only the booking instances that have no booking ID assigned are taken into account. This is particularly important in order to stick to the rule of idempotence for determinations.

→ Remember

The determination result must not change if the determination is executed several times under the same conditions (idempotence). See Rules for Determinations [page 152].

Write the new booking IDs into a new internal table typed as table for update.

6. Update the booking entity with the entries of the internal update table.
   Write the messages of the request’s reported table to the one of the determination. This passes the messages to the determination consumer.
Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination `setBookingNumber`.

```abap
METHOD setBookingNumber.
    DATA max_bookingid TYPE /dmo/booking_id.
    DATA lt_booking_update TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE /DMO/I_Travel_D\Booking.
    "Read all travels for the requested bookings
    If multiple bookings of the same travel are requested, the travel is returned only once.
    READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
      ENTITY Booking BY \_Travel
        FIELDS ( TravelUUID )
        WITH CORRESPONDING #{ keys }
        RESULT DATA(lt_travel).
    " Process all affected travels. Read respective bookings for one travel
    LOOP AT lt_travel INTO DATA(ls_travel).
        READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_d IN LOCAL MODE
          ENTITY Travel BY \_Booking
            FIELDS ( BookingID )
            WITH VALUE #{ ( \%ty = ls_travel-\%ty ) } )
          RESULT DATA(lt_booking).
        " find max used BookingID in all bookings of this travel
        max_bookingid = '0000'.
        LOOP AT lt_booking INTO DATA(ls_booking).
          IF ls_booking-BookingID > max_bookingid.
            max_bookingid = ls_booking-BookingID.
          ENDIF.
        ENDLOOP.
    "Provide a booking ID for all bookings of this travel that have none.
    LOOP AT lt_booking INTO DATA(ls_booking).
      IF ls_booking-BookingID IS INITIAL.
        max_bookingid += 1.
        APPEND VALUE #{ \%ty = ls_booking-\%ty BookingID = max_bookingid } TO lt_booking_update.
    ENDLOOP.
ENDLOOP.
" Provide a booking ID for all bookings that have none.
MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_travel_d IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY booking
  UPDATE FIELDS ( BookingID ) WITH lt_booking_update
  REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
  reported = CORRESPONDING #{ DEEP lt_reported }.
ENDMETHOD.
```

**Determination `setBookingDate`**

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for `Booking`.

**Definition**

Define a determination on save with trigger operation `create`. Once the booking date is set, when a booking instance is saved to the database, the date should not be changed afterward. Therefore the field `BookingDate` is read only for the external consumer.

```abap
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
...
```
Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Set the system date for the booking date. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Read all the booking instances with the imported keys into an internal table and delete the instances that already have a booking date (BookingDate). Continue to work only with instances that do not have a booking date yet. If the determination is executed several times, the booking date must not be calculated again. This is particularly important in order to stick to the rule of idempotence for determinations.

    → Remember

    The determination result must not change if the determination is executed several times under the same conditions (idempotence). See Rules for Determinations [page 152].

2. Assign the system date sy-datum to BookingDate for every incoming booking instance.

3. Update the field BookingDate of all involved instances with a modify request. Write messages in the request's reported table.

4. Write the messages of the request's reported table to the one of the determination. This passes the messages to the determination consumer.

   Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination setBookingDate.

   **Sample Code**

   ```
   METHOD setBookingDate.
   
   READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
   ENTITY Booking
   FIELDS ( BookingDate )
   WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
   RESULT DATA(lt_booking).
   DELETE lt_booking WHERE BookingDate IS NOT INITIAL.
   CHECK lt_booking IS NOT INITIAL.
   LOOP AT lt_booking ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking>).
   <fs_booking>-BookingDate = cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ).
   ENDLOOP.
   MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
   ENTITY Booking
   UPDATE FIELDS ( BookingDate )
   WITH CORRESPONDING #( lt_booking )
   REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
   
   reported = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_reported ).
   
   ENDMETHOD.
   ```
**Determination calculateTotalPrice**

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for *Booking*.

**i Note**
The actual calculation of the total price is done by the action `recalcPrice`. The determination just executes the action. See *Action recalcTotalPrice [page 472]*.

**Definition**
Define a determination on modify with operation trigger `create` and field triggers `FlightPrice` and `CurrencyCode`.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
...
{ ...
  determination calculateTotalPrice on modify
  { create; field FlightPrice, CurrencyCode; }
  ...
}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**
Execute the action `recalcPrice` when the trigger fields are changed. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. To get the `TravelUUID`, read the travel instance by a read by association into an internal table. The key of the root instance is needed for the action execution.
2. Execute a modify request for action execution for all affected travel instances. Write messages in the reported table of the modify request.
3. Write the messages of the request’s reported table to the one of the determination. This passes the messages to the determination consumer.

**Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination calculateTotalPrice.**

```plaintext
METHOD calculateTotalPrice.
  " Read all parent UUIDs
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Booking BY \ Travel
    FIELDS ( TravelUUID )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #{ keys }
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel).
  " Trigger Re-Calculation on Root Node
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
  EXECUTE reCalcTotalPrice
  FROM CORRESPONDING #{ lt_travel }
  REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
  reported = CORRESPONDING #{ DEEP lt_reported }.
```
5.4.1.2.3.3 Determining Values for the Booking Supplement Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement determinations on the booking supplement entity for implicit value calculation.

**Determination** setBookSupplNumber

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for *BookingSupplement*.

**Definition**

Define a determination on save with trigger operation `create`. Since the booking supplement ID must not be changed externally, define the field `BookingSupplementID` as `read only`.

```plaintext
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D alias BookingSupplement
...{
  ...
  field ( readonly ) TravelUUID, BookingSupplementID;
  determination setBookSupplNumber on save { create; }
  ...
}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

The implementation for determining new booking supplement numbers is the same as the calculation for the booking. For a detailed step-by-step description, see Determination setBookingNumber [page 480].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Determination setBookSupplNumber.

```plaintext
METHOD setBookingNumber.
  DATA max_bookingid TYPE /dmo/booking_id.
  DATA lt_booking_update TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE /DMO/I_Travel_D\Booking.
  "Read all travels for the requested bookings
  " If multiple bookings of the same travel are requested, the travel is
  " returned only once.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Booking BY \_Travel
    FIELDS ( TravelUUID )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel).
```
" Process all affected travels. Read respective bookings for one travel
LOOP AT lt_travel INTO DATA(ls_travel).
  READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_d IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel BY \_Booking
  FIELDS ( BookingID )
  WITH VALUE #( ( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) )
  RESULT DATA(lt_booking).
" find max used bookingID in all bookings of this travel
  max_bookingid = '0000'.
  LOOP AT lt_booking INTO DATA(ls_booking).
    IF ls_booking-BookingID > max_bookingid.
      max_bookingid = ls_booking-BookingID.
    ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
" Provide a booking ID for all bookings of this travel that have none.
  LOOP AT lt_booking INTO ls_booking WHERE BookingID IS INITIAL.
    max_bookingid += 1.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_booking-%tky
                      BookingID = max_bookingid ) TO lt_booking_update.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDLOOP.
MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_travel_d IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY booking
  UPDATE FIELDS ( BookingID ) WITH lt_booking_update
REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
reported = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_reported ).
ENDMETHOD.

Determination calculateTotalPrice

Define the determination in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for BookingSupplement.

i Note
The actual calculation of the total price is done by the action recalcPrice. The determination just executes the action. See Action recalcTotalPrice [page 472].

Definition
Define a determination on modify with operation trigger create and field triggers BookSupplPrice and CurrencyCode.

‘% Sample Code

define behavior for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D alias BookingSupplement ...
  { ...
    determination calculateTotalPrice on modify { create; field BookSupplPrice, CurrencyCode; }
  } ...

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.
Implementation

Execute the action `reCalcTotalPrice` when the trigger fields are changed. The steps are exactly the same as in `Determination calculateTotalPrice` [page 483].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of `Determination calculateTotalPrice`.

```
METHOD calculateTotalPrice.
  " Read all parent UUIDs
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY BookingSupplement BY \_Travel
      FIELDS ( TravelUUID )
        WITH CORRESPONDING # ( keys )
    RESULT DATA(lt_travel).
  " Trigger Re-Calculation on Root Node
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Travel
      EXECUTE reCalcTotalPrice
        FROM CORRESPONDING # ( lt_travel )
      REPORTED DATA(lt_reported).
      reported = CORRESPONDING # ( DEEP lt_reported ).
ENDMETHOD.
```

5.4.1.2.4 Developing Validations

For the managed scenario with draft, add validations to check the values provided by the client.

Context and Procedure

Validations are used to check whether provided values by a client are consistent. They give direct feedback (messages) before the BO instance is saved to the database. For more detailed information, see `Validations` [page 157].

Note

You can assign validations to determine actions that are called by side effects. This enables immediate feedback after the user changes UI fields or field groups. For more detailed information, see `Action Definition` [page 140].

As validations verify the state of an instance, state messages are used to return messages.

Note

State messages reflect the business object state. Since validations check for data inconsistencies, they return state messages. State messages are stored on the database and can be retrieved together with the BO instance they relate to. In draft scenarios, state messages are used to describe data inconsistencies. As state messages are persisted, they must be invalidated in the implementation. For more information, refer to `State Messages` [page 180].
For messages that relate to a change of a BO instance, transition messages are used. Every modify request is a change of state. If a modify requests fails, transition messages are used to describe and explain the failure. Transition messages are not saved on a database. They disappear automatically once the failed operation is rolled back. For more information, refer to Transition Messages [page 176].

For the travel demo scenario, define and implement validation for all three BO entities:

- For the **travel entity**, the following validations are described:
  - **validateCustomer**
    - The provided customer ID is checked against the entries in /DMO/Customer. Saving instances with invalid or initial values for the customer ID is rejected. In such a case, the validation returns failed keys and a message.
    - The validation is triggered on create and on every update of the trigger field CustomerID.
  - **validateAgency**
    - The provided agency ID is checked against the entries in /DMO/Agency. Saving instances with invalid or initial values for the agency ID is rejected. In such a case, the validation returns failed keys and a message.
    - The validation is triggered on create and on every update of the trigger field AgencyID.
  - **validateDates**
    - The provided starting date is checked against the system date. It cannot be earlier than the system date. In addition, the starting and the end date are compared against it each other. The end date cannot be before the start date. If one of the conditions is not fulfilled, the saving is rejected and the validation returns failed keys and a message.
    - The validation is triggered on create and on every update of the trigger fields BeginDate and EndDate.

For a detailed description on how to implement the validation for the travel entity, see Validating Values for the Travel Entity [page 488].

- For the **booking entity**, the following validations are described:
  - **validateCustomer**
    - See validateCustomer [page 488] of travel entity.
  - **validateConnection**
    - The provided values for AirlineID, ConnectionID and FlightDate are checked against the flight data in /DMO/Flight. Only existing flights with valid connection and airline IDs can be added to the booking instance. If the condition is not fulfilled, the validation returns failed keys and a message.
    - The validation is triggered on create and every update of the trigger fields AirlineID, ConnectionID, and FlightDate.

For a detailed description on how to implement the validation for the booking entity, see Validating Values for the Booking Entity [page 493].

- For the **booking supplement entity**, the following validation is described:
  - **validateSupplement**
    - The provided supplement ID is checked against the entries in /DMO/I_supplement. Saving instances with invalid or initial values for the supplement ID is rejected. In such a case, the validation returns failed keys and a message.
    - The validation is triggered on create and on every update of the trigger field SupplementID.

For a detailed description on how to implement the validation for the booking supplement entity, see Validating Values for the Booking Supplement Entity [page 498].
5.4.1.2.4.1 Validating Values for the Travel Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement validations on the travel entity for value consistency checks.

**Validation validateCustomer**

Define the validation in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

**Definition**

Define a validation on save with trigger operation create and trigger field CustomerID. Since there must always be a customer assigned to a certain travel, define the field CustomerID as mandatory.

```
Sample Code

define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
...
{ ...
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID;
  validation validateCustomer on save { create; field CustomerID; }
  ...
}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Validate the customer ID by checking if the provided value is the ID of an entry in the customer database table. Raise adequate messages for the consumer if the value is initial or not valid. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Read all the instances with the imported keys into an internal table lt_travel. This table is the basis to check whether messages must be raised.
2. Pass the failed entries to the failed table of the validation.
3. Copy the entries to another internal table and delete all instances with an initial customer ID. If the resulting internal table is not initial, select the entries of /DMO/Customer with the given customer ID. If there is no corresponding entry in this database table, the provided customer ID is not valid.
4. Loop over the internal table lt_travel. To avoid duplicate state messages for the consumer, append an empty message to the reported table to clear the state area.
5. If the customer ID is initial, write the transactional key to the failed table and append the corresponding message to the state area VALIDATE_CUSTOMER. The RAP runtime framework provides the method new message, with which you can easily retrieve messages from message classes provide the respective parameters. The reported table includes the component %element. Here you can specify which CDS element is responsible for the state inconsistency. The Fiori Elements UI, evaluates this component and highlights the corresponding input field.
6. If there is no entry in the customer master data table, write the transactional key to the failed table and append the corresponding message to the state area VALIDATE_CUSTOMER.
The messages for the managed scenario with draft are stored in the message class /DMO/CM_FLIGHT_LEGAC that is part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Validation validateCustomer.

```
METHOD validateCustomer.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( CustomerID )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  FAILED DATA(lt_travel),
  failed = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_failed ).
  DATA lt_customer TYPE SORTED TABLE OF /dmo/customer WITH UNIQUE KEY customer_id.
  " Optimization of DB select: extract distinct non-initial customer IDs
  lt_customer = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel DISCARDING DUPLICATES MAPPING
  customer_id = CustomerID EXCEPT * ).
  DELETE lt_customer WHERE customer_id IS INITIAL.
  IF lt_customer IS NOT INITIAL.
    " Check if customer ID exists
    SELECT FROM /dmo/customer FIELDS customer_id
    FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_customer
    WHERE customer_id = @lt_customer-customer_id
    INTO TABLE @DATA(lt_customer_db).
  ENDIF.
  " Raise message for non existing customer id
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
  %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER' ) TO reported-travel.
  IF ls_travel-CustomerID IS INITIAL.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
    %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER'
    %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages ( 
      textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_CUSTOMER_ID
      severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  ELSEIF ls_travel-CustomerID IS NOT INITIAL AND NOT
  line_exists( lt_customer_db[ customer_id = ls_travel-CustomerID ] ).
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
    %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER'
    %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages ( 
      textid = ls_travel-customerid
      cm_flight_messages=>customer_unknown
      severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  ELSE
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
    %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER'
    %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages ( 
      textid = ls_travel-customerid
      cm_flight_messages=>customer_unknown
      severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
```
Validation  

Define the validation in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

**Definition**

Define a validation on save with trigger operation create and trigger field AgencyID. Since there must always be an agency assigned to a certain travel, define the field AgencyID as mandatory.

**Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Validation validateAgency.**

```abap
METHOD validateAgency.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( AgencyID )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel)
  FAILED DATA(lt_failed).

  failed = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_failed ).
  DATA lt_agency TYPE SORTED TABLE OF /dmo/agency WITH UNIQUE KEY agency_id.

  " Optimization of DB select: extract distinct non-initial customer IDs
  lt_agency = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel DISCARDING DUPLICATES MAPPING
  agency_id = AgencyID EXCEPT * ).
  DELETE lt_agency WHERE agency_id IS INITIAL.
  IF  lt_agency IS NOT INITIAL.
    " Check if customer ID exists
    SELECT FROM /dmo/agency FIELDS agency_id
      FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_agency
      WHERE agency_id = @lt_agency-agency_id
      INTO TABLE @DATA(lt_agency_db).
  ENDIF.
  " Raise message for non existing customer id
  LOOP AT lt_travel INTO DATA(ls_travel).
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_AGENCY' ) TO reported-travel.
    IF ls_travel-AgencyID IS INITIAL.
      APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_AGENCY'
      %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages( % )
    ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
```
Validation validateDates

Define the validation in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Travel.

Definition

Define a validation on save with trigger operation create and trigger fields BeginDate and EndDate. Since the travel dates are an essential part of the travel data, define the fields BeginDate and EndDate as mandatory.

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
...
{ ...
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID, AgencyID, BeginDate, EndDate;
  validation validateDates on save { create; field BeginDate, EndDate; }
  ...
}
```

Implementation

Validate the travel dates by comparing the value of the BeginDate with the EndDate. The end date must not be before the begin date and the begin date must be after the system date. Raise adequate messages for the consumer if the provided values are not valid. The following steps guide you through the implementation. The messages for the managed scenario with draft are stored in the message class /DMO/CM_FLIGHT_LEGAC that is part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario.

1. Read all the instances with the imported keys into an internal table lt_travel. This table is the basis to check whether messages must be raised.

```
ls_travel-travelid
cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_AGENCY_ID
if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  %element-AgencyID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.
ELSEIF ls_travel-AgencyID IS NOT INITIAL AND NOT line_exists( lt_agency_db[ agency_id = ls_travel-AgencyID ] ).
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky %state_area = 'VALIDATE_AGENCY' %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages( travel_id = ls_travel-travelid
cm_flight_messages=>AGENCY_UNKOWN
if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
reported-travel.
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
```
2. Pass the failed entries to the failed table of the validation.
3. Loop over the internal table lt_travel. To avoid duplicate state messages for the consumer, append an empty message to the reported table to clear the state area.
4. The travel date must fulfill four conditions:
   1. Begin date must not be initial.
   2. End date must not be initial.
   3. Begin date must not be before system date.
   4. End date must not be before begin date.

For all of the situations, check with an if-loop and append the transactional key to the failed table. In addition, append the corresponding message to the state area VALIDATE_DATES. The RAP runtime framework provides the method new_message, with which you can easily retrieve messages from message classes provide the respective parameters. The reported table includes the component %element. Here you can specify which CDS element is responsible for the state inconsistency. The Fiori Elements UI, evaluates this component and highlights the corresponding input field.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Validation validateDates.

```abap
METHOD validateDates.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
      ENTITY Travel
          FIELDS ( BeginDate EndDate )
          WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
      RESULT DATA(lt_travel)
      FAILED DATA(lt_failed).
  failed = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_failed ).
  LOOP AT lt_travel INTO DATA(ls_travel).
      APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
                      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_DATES' ) TO reported-travel.
      IF ls_travel-BeginDate IS INITIAL.
          APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
          APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
                          %state_area = 'VALIDATE_DATES'
                          %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
                              travel_id = ls_travel-travelid
                              textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_BEGIN_DATE
                              severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
                              %element-BeginDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.
      ENDIF.
      IF ls_travel-EndDate IS INITIAL.
          APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
          APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky
                          %state_area = 'VALIDATE_DATES'
                          %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
                              travel_id = ls_travel-travelid
                              textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_END_DATE
                              severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
                              %element-EndDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO reported-travel.
      ENDIF.
      IF ls_travel-EndDate < ls_travel-BeginDate AND ls_travel-BeginDate IS NOT INITIAL
```
AND ls_travel-EndDate IS NOT INITIAL.
APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky,
%state_area = 'VALIDATE_DATES',
%msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
  textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>BEGIN_DATE_BEF_END_DATE,
  begin_date = ls_travel-BeginDate,
  end_date = ls_travel-EndDate,
  travel_id = ls_travel-TravelId,
  severity =
  if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  %element-BeginDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
  %element-EndDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
) TO reported-travel.
ENDIF.

IF ls_travel-BeginDate < cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date() AND
ls_travel-BeginDate IS NOT INITIAL.
APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky ) TO failed-travel.
APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_travel-%tky,
%state_area = 'VALIDATE_DATES',
%msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
  travel_id = ls_travel-travelid,
  textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>BEGIN_DATE_ON_OR_BEF_SYSDATE,
  severity =
  if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  %element-BeginDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
  %element-EndDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
) TO reported-travel.
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.

5.4.1.2.4.2 Validating Values for the Booking Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement validations on the booking entity for value consistency checks.

Validation validateCustomer

Define the validation in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Booking.

Definition

Define a validation on save with trigger operation create and trigger field CustomerID. Since there must always be a customer assigned to a certain travel, define the field CustomerID is mandatory.
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking

{ ...
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID;
  validation validateCustomer on save { create; field CustomerID; }
...
}

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

Implementation

The validation for the customer ID field is done similarly to the validation for the customer ID in the travel entity. See Validation [page 488].

To retrieve the correct messages of validations in child entities and to display them on the UI, you have to define a path expression to the root entity. To fill the path expression with the correct keys, you have to read the keys of the parent entity first. This is done by a read by association. You do not need the full result of the read by association, but just the link table, which contains the key mappings of source and target entity.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Validation validateCustomer.

METHOD validateCustomer.

READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY Booking
  FIELDS ( CustomerID )
  WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
RESULT DATA(lt_booking)
FAILED DATA(lt_failed).
failed = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_failed ).
READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY Booking BY \\Travel
    FROM CORRESPONDING #( lt_booking )
    LINK DATA(lt_link).
DATA lt_customer TYPE SORTED TABLE OF /dmo/customer WITH UNIQUE KEY
customer_id.
" Optimization of DB select: extract distinct non-initial customer IDs
lt_customer = CORRESPONDING #( lt_booking DISCARDING DUPLICATES MAPPING
                      customer_id = CustomerID EXCEPT * ).
DELETE lt_customer WHERE customer_id IS INITIAL.
" Check if customer ID exists
SELECT FROM /dmo/customer FIELDS customer_id
    FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_customer
    WHERE customer_id = @lt_customer-customer_id
    INTO TABLE @DATA(lt_customer_db).
ENDIF.
" Raise message for non existing customer id
LOOP AT lt_booking INTO DATA(ls_booking).
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_booking-%tky
  %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER' ) TO reported-booking.
  IF ls_booking-CustomerID IS INITIAL.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_booking-%tky ) TO failed-booking.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = ls_booking-%tky
    %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER'
    %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
      textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_CUSTOMER_ID
    )
  cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_CUSTOMER_ID

  }
**Validation** validateConnection

Define the validation in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for Booking.

**Definition**

Define a validation on save with trigger operation create and trigger fields AirlineID, ConnectionID, and FlightDate. Since a booking instance must always entail this flight information, define these fields as mandatory.

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
...
{ ...
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate;
  validation validateConnection on save { create; field AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate; }
} ...
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Validate the flight-related fields by checking if the provided values match an entry in the master database table /dmo/flight. Raise adequate messages for the consumer if the values are initial or not valid. The following steps guide you through the implementation.
1. Read all the instances with the imported keys into an internal table `lt_booking`. This table is the basis to check whether messages must be raised.

2. Read the corresponding travel instances via a read by association. The parent keys are needed for the path expression `%path` in the reported table. It represents the path to the root entity and is important to display the messages correctly on the UI.

3. Loop over the internal table `lt_booking`. To avoid duplicate state messages for the consumer, append an empty message to the reported table to clear the state area.

4. If the airline ID is initial, write the transactional key to the failed table and append the corresponding message to the state area `VALIDATE_CONNECTION`.

   Messages are created with the `/dmo/cm_flight_messages` message exception class, with which you can easily retrieve messages from message classes and provide the respective parameters.

   The reported table contains the component `%path`, in which you have to maintain the keys of all parent instances, including the root entity. Use the key mappings in the link table to fill the path expression. Only if all parent keys are maintained is the message displayed correctly on the UI.

   The reported table includes the component `%element`. Here you can specify which CDS element is responsible for the state inconsistency. The Fiori Elements UI, evaluates this component and highlights the corresponding input field.

5. Repeat the step for the values in `ConnectionID` and `FlightDate`. Like `AirlineID`, they must not be initial.

6. If all related fields are not empty you can check if the values match an entry in the flight master data table. If the select finds a corresponding row (`sy-subrc <> 0`), write the transactional key to the failed table and append the corresponding message to the state area `VALIDATE_CONNECTION`.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of `validateConnection`.

```plaintext
METHOD validateConnection.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Booking
      FIELDS ( BookingID AirlineID ConnectionID FlightDate )
      WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
    RESULT DATA(lt_booking)
    FAILED DATA(lt_failed).
  failed = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP lt_failed ).
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Booking BY _Travel
    FROM CORRESPONDING #( lt_booking )
    LINK DATA(lt_link).
  LOOP AT lt_booking ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booking>).
    "overwrite state area with empty message to avoid duplicate messages
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky
      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CONNECTION' ) TO
    reported-booking.
    " Raise message for non existing airline ID
    IF <fs_booking>-AirlineID IS INITIAL.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky ) TO failed-booking.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky
      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CONNECTION'
      %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages( textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_AIRLINE_ID
        severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
        %path = VALUE #( travel-%tky = lt_link[ source-%tky = <fs_booking>-%tky ]-target-%tky )
        %element-AirlineID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO
    reported-booking.
```
ENDIF.

" Raise message for non existing connection ID
IF <fs_booking>-ConnectionID IS INITIAL.
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky ) TO failed-booking.
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky
  %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CONNECTION'
  %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
    textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_CONNECTION_ID
    booking_id =
    <fs_booking>-bookingid
    severity =
    if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  %path = VALUE #( travel-%tky =
    lt_link{ source-%tky = <fs_booking>-%tky }-target-%tky )
  %element-ConnectionID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO
  reported-booking.
ENDIF.

ENDIF.

" Raise message for non existing flight date
IF <fs_booking>-FlightDate IS INITIAL.
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky ) TO failed-booking.
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky
  %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CONNECTION'
  %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
    textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_FLIGHT_DATE
    severity =
    if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
  %path = VALUE #( travel-%tky =
    lt_link{ source-%tky = <fs_booking>-%tky }-target-%tky )
  %element-FlightDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO
  reported-booking.
ENDIF.

" check if flight connection exists
IF <fs_booking>-AirlineID IS NOT INITIAL AND
  <fs_booking>-ConnectionID IS NOT INITIAL AND
  <fs_booking>-FlightDate IS NOT INITIAL.
  SELECT SINGLE Carrier_ID, Connection_ID, Flight_Date   FROM /dmo/flight
  WHERE carrier_id    = @<fs_booking>-AirlineID
    AND
  connection_id = @<fs_booking>-ConnectionID
    AND
  flight_date   = @<fs_booking>-FlightDate
  INTO
    @DATA(ls_flight).
  IF sy-subrc <> 0.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky ) TO failed-booking.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booking>-%tky
      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_CONNECTION'
      %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
        textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>NO_FLIGHT_EXISTS
        carrier_id  =<fs_booking>-AirlineID
        flight_date =<fs_booking>-FlightDate
        %path = VALUE #( travel-%tky =
          lt_link{ source-%tky = <fs_booking>-%tky }-target-%tky )
        %element-FlightDate = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
        %element-AirlineID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on
        %element-ConnectionID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO
    reported-booking.
  ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.
5.4.1.2.4.3 Validating Values for the Booking Supplement Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, define and implement validations on the booking supplement entity for value consistency checks.

**Validation** validateSupplement

Define the validation in the behavior definition and implement it in the behavior implementation class for BookingSupplement.

**Definition**

Define a validation on save with trigger operation create and trigger field SupplementID. Since there must always be a booking supplement instance always needs a supplement, define the field SupplementID as mandatory.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D alias BookingSupplement
...
  field ( mandatory ) SupplementID
  validation validateSupplement on save { create; field SupplementID; }
...}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Implementation**

Validate the supplement ID by checking if the provided value is an entry in the supplement database table. Raise adequate messages for the consumer if the value is initial or not valid. The implementation steps are exactly the same as for the validation ValidateCustomer. For a detailed step-by-step description, see Validation validateCustomer [page 493].

To fill the %path component in the reported table, you have to provide the keys of all parent instances. Therefore you have to execute a ready by association to every entity in the business object structure. In this case, to Booking and to BookingSupplement.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Validation validateSupplement.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
METHOD validateSupplement.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY BookingSupplement
    FIELDS ( SupplementID )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #{ keys }
  RESULT DATA(lt_booksuppl)
  FAILED DATA(lt_failed).
  failed = CORRESPONDING #{ DEEP lt_failed }.
```
READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY BookingSupplement BY _Booking
   FROM CORRESPONDING #( lt_booksuppl )
   LINK DATA(lt_link_booking).
READ ENTITIES OF /dmo/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY BookingSupplement BY _Travel
   FROM CORRESPONDING #( lt_booksuppl )
   LINK DATA(lt_link_travel).

DATA lt_supplement TYPE SORTED TABLE OF /dmo/supplement WITH UNIQUE KEY
  supplement_id.
" Optimization of DB select: extract distinct non-initial customer IDs
lt_supplement = CORRESPONDING #( lt_booksuppl DISCARDING DUPLICATES
MAPPING supplement_id = SupplementID EXCEPT * ).
DELETE lt_supplement WHERE supplement_id IS INITIAL.
" Check if customer ID exists
SELECT FROM /dmo/supplement FIELDS supplement_id
FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_supplement
  WHERE supplement_id = @lt_supplement-
    supplement_id.
ENDIF.
LOOP AT lt_booksuppl ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_booksuppl>).
  APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky
    %state_area = 'VALIDATE_SUPPLEMENT' ) TO reported-
    bookingsupplement.
  IF <fs_booksuppl>-SupplementID IS INITIAL.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky ) TO failed-
    bookingsupplement.
    APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky
      %state_area = 'VALIDATE_SUPPLEMENT' 
      %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
        textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>ENTER_SUPPLEMENT_ID
        booking_supplement_id = <fs_booksuppl>-bookingSupplementID
        severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
    %path = VALUE #( booking-%tky = 
      lt_link_booking[ source-%tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky ]-target-%tky
      travel-%tky = 
      lt_link_travel[ source-%tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky ]-target-%tky
    %element-SupplementID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO
      reported-bookingsupplement.
    ELSEIF <fs_booksuppl>-SupplementID IS NOT INITIAL AND NOT
      line_exists( lt_supplement_db[ supplement_id = <fs_booksuppl>-
        SupplementID ] ).
      APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky ) TO failed-
        bookingsupplement.
      APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky
        %state_area = 'VALIDATE_SUPPLEMENT' 
        %msg = NEW /dmo/cm_flight_messages(
          textid = /dmo/cm_flight_messages=>SUPPLEMENT_UNKNOWN
          booking_supplement_id = <fs_booksuppl>-bookingSupplementID
          severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error )
      %path = VALUE #( booking-%tky = 
        lt_link_booking[ source-%tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky ]-target-%tky
        travel-%tky = 
        lt_link_travel[ source-%tky = <fs_booksuppl>-%tky ]-target-%tky
      %element-SupplementID = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) TO
        reported-bookingsupplement.
      ENDIF.
  ENDLOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
5.4.1.2.5 Developing Feature Control

For the managed scenario with draft, enable and disable functionality with feature control.

**Context and Procedure**

Feature control is used to define the availability of behavior components, like fields, actions, and operations. You can define if these components are always available for the client or only under certain circumstances (dynamic feature control). For more detailed information, see Feature Control [page 96].

For this demo scenario, define and implement field, operation and action control.

**Definition**

- Define **field control**.
  - **field (readonly)**
    - Fields that are filled by the RAP managed runtime framework (internally) are set to read only as the consumer is not allowed to change these. Marking these fields as read only in the behavior definition makes also has an effect on the UI. The end user cannot provide values for these fields. In the travel scenario, the fields that are set to read only are the administrative fields and fields that are filled internally, for example by determinations. These fields are:
      - On the travel entity: TravelID, OverallStatus, TotalPrice, LocalCreatedAt, LocalCreatedBy, LocalLastChangedAt, LocalLastChangedBy
      - On the booking entity: TravelUUID, BookingID, BookingDate, LocalLastChangedAt
      - On the booking supplement entity: TravelUUID, BookingUUID, BookingSupplementID, LocalLastChangedAt
  - The key fields whose values are set by the RAP managed runtime framework via managed numbering must also be set to read only. They also receive the attribute `numbering: managed`. These fields are:
      - On the travel entity: TravelUUID
      - On the booking entity: BookingUUID
      - On the booking supplement entity: BookSupplUUID
  - **field (mandatory)**
    - Fields whose values are checked by validations are set to mandatory. On a Fiori Elements UI, this provokes a consumer hint on the respective input fields. These fields are:
      - On the travel entity: CustomerID, AgencyID, BeginDate, EndDate
      - On the booking entity: CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate
      - On the booking supplement entity: SupplementID
  - **field (feature: instance)**
    - Fields whose logic depends on other circumstances are controlled by dynamic feature control. In this scenario, the BookingFee (on the travel entity) is set to read only if the instance’s status is **Accepted (A)**. The feature control condition must be implemented in the behavior class.
• Define **operation control**.
  ○ create (features : instance)
    Use dynamic operation control for the associations that are enabled for create. In this demo scenario, you can only create new booking instance for a travel if the overall status is not rejected ('X'). The feature control condition must be implemented in the behavior class.
  ○ On the travel entity:
    ```
    association _Booking { create (features : instance); }
    ```

• Define **action control**.
  ○ action (features: instance)
    Dynamic operation control is used for actions that are enabled depending on other states of the instance. These actions are
  ○ On the travel entity:
    The action `acceptTravel` can only be executed, if the overall status is not already set to `Accepted (A)`: action ( features: instance ) acceptTravel result [1] $self;
    The action `rejectTravel` can only be executed, if the overall status is not already set `Rejected (X)`: action ( features: instance ) rejectTravel result [1] $self; on the travel entity.
    The action `deductDiscount` can only be executed, if the overall status is not already set `Accepted (A)`: action ( features: instance ) deductDiscount result [1] $self; on the travel entity.

### 5.4.1.2.5.1 Adding Feature Control for the Travel Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, enable and disable functionality with feature control on the travel entity.

Define the static and dynamic feature control in the behavior definition and implement dynamic feature control in the behavior implementation class for `Travel`.

**Definition**

Define field, action, and operation control. For dynamic feature control, add `(feature: instance)` to the feature control definition.

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
  ...
  association _Booking ( create ( features : instance ); )
  field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) TravelUUID;
  field ( readonly ) TravelID, OverallStatus, TotalPrice, LocalCreatedAt,
  LocalCreatedBy, LocalLastChangedAt, LocalLastChangedBy;
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID, AgencyID, BeginDate, EndDate;
  field ( features : instance ) BookingFee;
  action ( features : instance ) acceptTravel result [1] $self;
  action ( features : instance ) rejectTravel result [1] $self;
  action ( features : instance ) deductDiscount parameter /dmo/
  a_travel_discount result [1] $self;
  ...
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration for the feature control implementation in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.
Dynamic Feature Control Implementation for the Travel Entity

Dynamic feature control must be implemented in the behavior implementation in the method `FOR FEATURES`. You can use the quick fix on one of the dynamic feature control features in the behavior definition for the method declaration. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Read all the instances with the imported `keys` into an internal table `lt_travel`. The fields that are relevant to decide whether features are available must be included in the read result. For the travel entity, only the field `OverallStatus` is relevant.

2. Fill the result table of the method with the respective feature. Use the transaction key `%tky` to identify the travel instance. The importing parameter `keys` contains the `%field,%action,%assoc` component to determine what kind of feature is controlled. Use a condition statement to define the circumstance and the outcome of each dynamically controlled feature. You can work with the constants, defined in the private section of the behavior class, to refer to the values of the overall status.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of `GET_FEATURES`.

```
METHOD get_features.
  READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
    ENTITY Travel
    FIELDS ( OverallStatus )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
    RESULT DATA(lt_travel)
  FAILED failed.
  result = VALUE #( FOR ls_travel IN lt_travel
      ( %tky                   = ls_travel-%tky
        %field-BookingFee      = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
          OverallStatus = travel_status-accepted
          THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-f-read_only
            ELSE
          OverallStatus = travel_status-unrestricted
          THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-f-unrestricted
            ELSE
          %action-acceptTravel   = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
            OverallStatus = travel_status-accepted
            THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
              ELSE
            OverallStatus = travel_status-rejected
            THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
              ELSE
            %action-deductDiscount = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
              OverallStatus = travel_status-accepted
              THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
                ELSE
            OverallStatus = travel_status-rejected
            THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
              ELSE
            %assoc-_Booking        = COND #( WHEN ls_travel-
              OverallStatus = travel_status-rejected
              THEN if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
                ELSE
          ) )
      ) )
  ).
ENDMETHOD.
```
5.4.1.2.5.2 Adding Feature Control for the Booking Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, enable and disable functionality with feature control on the booking entity.

Define static feature control in the behavior definition. For the Booking entity, there is no dynamic feature control.

**Definition**

Define field control.

---

**Sample Code**

```apl
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
...
  field (numbering : managed, readonly) BookingUUID;
  field (readonly) TravelUUID, BookingID, BookingDate, LocalLastChangedAt;
  field (mandatory) CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate;
  field (features : instance) BookingID;
...}
```

Via a quick fix, you can generate the method declaration for the feature control implementation in the behavior pool directly from the behavior definition editor.

**Dynamic Feature Control Implementation for the Booking Entity**

Dynamic feature control must be implemented in the behavior implementation in the method FOR FEATURES. You can use the quick fix on the dynamic feature control features in the behavior definition for the method declaration. The following steps guide you through the implementation.

1. Define constants that are available for the booking status in the private section of the local types.

   **Sample Code**
   ```apl
   CLASS lhc_booking DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
   PRIVATE SECTION.
   CONSTANTS:
     BEGIN OF booking_status,
     new TYPE c LENGTH 1 VALUE 'N', "New"
     booked TYPE c LENGTH 1 VALUE 'B', "Booked"
     END OF booking_status.
   ...
   ENDCLASS.
   ```

2. Read all the instances with the imported keys into an internal table lt_booking. The fields that are relevant to decide whether features are available must be included in the read result. For the travel entity, only the field BookingStatus is relevant.

3. Fill the result table of the method with the respective feature. Use the transaction key %tky to identify the travel instance. The importing parameter keys contains the %assoc component to determine what kind of feature is controlled. Use a condition statement to define the circumstance and the outcome of each dynamically controlled features. You can work with the constants, defined in the private section of the behavior class, to refer to the values of the overall status.

   iExpand the following code sample to view the source code of GET_FEATURES.
METHOD get_features.
   READ ENTITIES OF /DMO/I_Travel_D IN LOCAL MODE
   ENTITY Booking
      FIELDS ( BookingStatus )
      WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
   RESULT DATA(lt_booking)
   FAILED failed.
   result = VALUE #( FOR ls_booking IN lt_booking
      (  %tky                      = ls_booking-%tky
        %assoc-_BookingSupplement = COND #( WHEN ls_booking-
          BookingStatus = booking_status-booked
            THEN
            if_abap_behv=>fc-o-disabled
          ELSE
            if_abap_behv=>fc-o-enabled
          ) ) )).
ENDMETHOD.

5.4.1.2.5.3 Adding Feature Control for the Booking Supplement Entity

For the managed scenario with draft, enable and disable functionality with feature control on the booking supplement entity.

Define the static feature control in the behavior definition. For the BookingSupplement, there is no dynamic feature control.

**Definition**

Define field control.

```
\$ Sample Code

define behavior for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D alias BookingSupplement ...
{ ...
   field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) BookSupplUUID;
   field ( readonly ) TravelUUID, BookingUUID, BookingSupplementID,
   LocalLastChangedAt;
   field ( mandatory ) SupplementID;
   ...
}
```

5.4.2 Exposing the Managed Business Object for a UI Business Service

In the previous chapters, you have created a managed business object from scratch. To expose it as a business service the following steps are relevant:
5.4.2.1  Projecting the Managed BO for Non-Draft Exposure

For the managed scenario with draft, create a projection layer for the managed BO.

Context and Procedure

Whereas the business object that we have created so far is service agnostic, the business object projection is an approach to define a subset of this business object as service-specific for the UI use case. In this scenario, we want to publish a UI service, so UI-specifics are defined in the BO projection. For more information about the BO projection layer, see Business Object Projection [page 194].

For the travel demo scenario, define the data model and the behavior projection:

- For the **data model projection**, the following steps are relevant:
  - Create CDS projection views. In the CDS projection views define UI-service-specific features, such as search capabilities, text associations, and value helps.
  - Create metadata extensions. Metadata extensions are primarily used to define the annotations that are relevant for the UI design. They are outsourced in metadata extension to obtain an easy approach for layering.
  
  For a detailed description on how to define data model projection features, see Projecting the BO Data Model [page 505].

- For the **behavior projection**, the following steps are relevant:
  - Create a projection behavior definition.

  For a detailed description on behavior projection features, see Projecting the BO Behavior [page 513].

5.4.2.1.1  Projecting the BO Data Model

For the managed scenario with draft, create and implement CDS projection views and metadata extensions for the BO entities.

Context and Procedure

Create data definition for projection views for all three BO entities Travel, Booking, and Booking Supplement. In ADT, use the context menu on the underlying CDS view entity to open the wizard for creating CDS data definition. For a detailed step-by-step description, see .

Select the template Define Projection View.
The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix `_D`. Since the CDS projection views only represent the active UI service, we use the marker `_A` before the suffix to distinguish the active projection layer from the projection layer that includes draft. In addition, projection views carry the prefix `C_` as they represent the consumption layer. For more information, see Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].

For each projection view, create a metadata extension. In ADT, right-click on the data definition to open the creation wizard for metadata extensions. For more information, see .

According to the virtual data model (VDM) guidelines, the metadata extension use the same name as the related CDS view.

**Projection View** /DMO/C_Travel_A_D

The projection view is a projection on /DMO/I_Travel_D. Include the keyword root in the projection view.

Use all elements of the underlying BO travel entity. You do not need to use the administrative data in the projection view, except for the element representing the ETag master.

Enable the usage of a metadata extension with the annotation `@Metadata.allowExtension: true`.

Enable search capabilities for the travel entity, with the `@Search` annotations on the entity header and on designated elements. For more information, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

To indicate that TravelID is the semantic identifier of the BO-entity, use the annotation `@ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['TravelID']` in the header of the projection view.

To retrieve the long texts of the ID elements CustomerID and AgencyID, denormalize the text elements from the associated text provider view into the projection view. For more information, see Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views [page 595].

Define value helps for the elements CustomerID, AgencyID and CurrencyCode. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

As soon as all projection views of the composition structure of the business object are available, redirect the composition to child to the projection view of the booking entity.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_Travel_A_D.

```
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel Projection View with Draft'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
@ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['TravelID']
define root view entity /DMO/C_Travel_D_D
    as projection on /DMO/I_Travel_D
```
Define the metadata extension as extension of the CDS projection view /DMO/C_Travel_A_D.

Define the layer #CORE.

Use all the @UI annotations to design the user interface for the travel app. For more information, see Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692].

To trigger actions via action buttons on the UI, use @UI annotations for data action on both the list report page and the object page. It is not important which element is annotated with this annotation, the action button always appears on the upper right corner on the UI.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Metadata Extension /DMO/C_Travel_A_D.

**Sample Code**

```java
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: {
  typeName: 'Travel',
  typeNamePlural: 'Travels',
  title: { type: #STANDARD, value: 'TravelID' },
  sortOrder: [{ by: 'TravelID', direction: #DESC }] }
}

annotate entity /DMO/C_Travel_A_D with 
```
@UI.facet: [
  
  {
    id: 'Travel',
    purpose: #STANDARD,
    type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
    label: 'Travel',
    position: 10,
  },

  {
    id: 'Booking',
    purpose: #STANDARD,
    type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
    label: 'Booking',
    position: 20,
    targetElement: '_Booking'
  }
]

@UI.hidden: true

TravelUUID;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 10, importance: #HIGH },
    
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 10, label: 'Travel ID' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  selectionField: [
    { position: 10 }
  ]
}

TravelID;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 20, importance: #HIGH },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 20 }]
}

AgencyID;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 30, importance: #HIGH },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 30 }]
}

CustomerID;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 40, importance: #MEDIUM },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 40 }]
}

BeginDate;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 50, importance: #MEDIUM },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 50 }]
}

EndDate;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 60, importance: #MEDIUM },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 60 }]
}

BookingFee;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 70, importance: #MEDIUM },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 70 }]
}

TotalPrice;

// CurrencyCode;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 90, importance: #MEDIUM },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 90 }]
}

Description;

@UI: {
  lineItem: [
    { position: 99, importance: #HIGH },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'acceptTravel',
      label: 'Accept Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'rejectTravel',
      label: 'Reject Travel' },
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'deductDiscount',
      label: 'Deduct Discount' }
  ],

  identification: [
    { position: 99, label: 'Status' }]
}

OverallStatus;

@UI.hidden: true

LocalLastChangedAt;
}
**Projection View** /DMO/C_Booking_A_D

The projection view is a projection on /DMO/I_Booking_D.

Use all elements of the underlying BO travel entity, in particular the element representing the ETag master. Enable the usage of a metadata extension with the annotation @Metadata.allowExtension: true.

Enable search capabilities for the booking entity, with the @Search annotations. For more information, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

To retrieve the long texts of the ID elements CustomerID and CarrierID, denormalize the text elements from the associated text provider views into the projection view. For more information, see Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views [page 595].

Define value helps for the elements CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate, and CurrencyCode. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

As soon as all projection views of the composition structure of the business object are available, redirect the composition to child to the projection view of the booking entity and the association to the root entity to the respective projection view.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_Booking_A_D.

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking Proj View for Draft RefScen'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_Booking_A_D
  as projection on /DMO/I_Booking_D
  {
    key BookingUUID,
    TravelUUID,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    ConnectionID
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Customer',
      element: 'CustomerID' }}]
    CustomerID,
    _Customer.LastName as CustomerName,
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CarrierName']
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Carrier',
      element: 'AirlineID' }}
    AirlineID,
    _Carrier.Name as CarrierName,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Flight',
      element: 'ConnectionID'}},
    additionalBinding: [{localElement: 'FlightDate',
      element: 'FlightDate'},
    element: 'AirlineID'},
    element: 'Price', usage: #RESULT},
  ConnectionID,
  FlightDate,
```
Define the metadata extension as extension of the CDS projection view /DMO/C_Booking_A_D.

Define the layer #CORE.

Use all the @UI annotations to design the user interface for the travel app. For more information, see Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Metadata Extension /DMO/C_Booking_A_D.

```
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { typeName: 'Booking',
                     typeNamePlural: 'Bookings',
                     title: { type: #STANDARD, value: 'BookingID' } } }
annotate entity /DMO/C_Booking_A_D with
{
    @UI.facet: [ { id: 'Booking',
                    purpose: #STANDARD,
                    type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
                    label: 'Booking',
                    position: 10 },
                 { id: 'BookingSupplement',
                   purpose: #STANDARD,
                   type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
                   label: 'Booking Supplement',
                   position: 20,
                   targetElement: '_BookingSupplement' } ]

    @UI.hidden: true BookingUUID;
    @UI.hidden: true TravelUUID;
```
The projection view is a projection on /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D.

Use all elements of the underlying BO travel entity, in particular the element representing the ETag master.

Enable the usage of a metadata extension with the annotation @Metadata.allowExtension:true.

Enable search capabilities for the travel entity, with the @Search annotations. For more information, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

To retrieve the long texts of the ID element SupplementID, denormalize the text element from the associated text provider view into the projection view. For more information, see Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views [page 595].

Define value helps for the elements SupplementID and CurrencyCode. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

As soon as all projection views of the composition structure of the business object are available, redirect the association to the parent to the projection view of the booking entity and the association to the root entity to the respective projection view.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_A_D.
Define the metadata extension as extension of the CDS projection view `/DMO/C_BookingSupplement_A_D`. Define the layer `#CORE`.

Use all the `@UI` annotations to design the user interface for the travel app. For more information, see Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven Uls [page 692].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Metadata Extension `/DMO/C_BookingSupplement_A_D`.

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'BookingSuppl Proj View for Draft RefScen'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
define view entity /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_A_D
  as projection on /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D
  
  { 
    key BookSupplUUID,
    TravelUUID,
    BookingUUID,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    BookingSupplementID,
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['SupplementDescription'],
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_SUPPLEMENT', element: 'SupplementID'}},
    { localElement: 'BookSupplPrice',
      additionalBinding: [{ localElement: 'CurrencyCode',
        element: 'Price', usage: #RESULT },
        { localElement: 'CurrencyCode',
          element: 'Currency', usage: #RESULT }]]},
    SupplementID,
    _SupplementText.Description as SupplementDescription : localized,
    BookSupplPrice,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: 'I_Currency',
      element: 'Currency'}}],
    CurrencyCode,
    LocalLastChangedAt,
    /* Associations */
    _Booking : redirected to parent /DMO/C_Booking_A_D,
    _Product,
    _SupplementText,
    _Travel : redirected to /DMO/C_Travel_A_D
  }
```

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { typeName: 'Booking Supplement',
                      typeNamePlural: 'Booking Supplements',
                      title: { type: #STANDARD,
                                label: 'Booking Supplement',
                                value: 'BookingSupplementID' } } }

annotate entity /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_A_D
  with
  
```
5.4.2.1.2 Projecting the BO Behavior

For the managed scenario with draft, create a projection behavior definition for defining the projection behavior.

**Context and Procedure**

Create a projection behavior definition for the travel business object. In ADT, use the context menu of the root projection view to open the wizard for creating behavior definitions. The implementation type is prefilled with `Projection`. For a more detailed description, see Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966].

**Projection Behavior Definition** `/DMO/C_TRAVEL_A_D`

Use the complete behavior that was defined in the underlying behavior definition for the non-draft BO projection.

```plaintext
Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection Behavior Definition `/DMO/C_Travel_A_D`
```

```plaintext
Sample Code

projection;
define behavior for /DMO/C_Travel_A_D alias Travel
use etag
```
5.4.2.2 Defining and Publishing a UI Service

For the managed scenario with draft, define a UI service and bind it to a protocol.

Context and Procedure

To address the managed BO from the ABAP-external world, it must be exposed as a business service to OData. In the service definition, you define which artifacts are included in the service. The service binding defines the protocol with which the service is addressed. In addition, it provides the means to activate the service locally. The Fiori Elements App Preview can be used as soon as the service is activated.

Create a service definition for the non-draft business service. For more information, see Creating Service Definitions [page 974].

Based on the service definition, create a service binding. For more information, see Creating Service Binding [page 975]. You can choose between OData V2 and V4 protocol to expose a UI service.

i Note

The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix _D. To distinguish the active-only service from the service with draft, we use the addition _A before the suffix. For more information, see Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].
Service Definition /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_A_D

Include the projection views of the business object and all related CDS entities that are relevant for UI consumption into the service definition.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Service Definition /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_A_D.

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel Draft Scenario(active projection)'
define service /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_A_D {
  expose /DMO/C_Travel_A_D as Travel;
  expose /DMO/C_Booking_A_D as Booking;
  expose /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_A_D as BookingSupplement;
  expose /DMO/I_Supplement as Supplement;
  expose /DMO/I_SupplementText as SupplementText;
  expose /DMO/I_Customer as Passenger;
  expose /DMO/I_Agency as TravelAgency;
  expose /DMO/I_Carrier as Airline;
  expose /DMO/I_Connection as FlightConnection;
  expose /DMO/I_Flight as Flight;
  expose /DMO/I_Airport as Airport;
  expose I_Currency as Currency;
  expose I_Country as Country;
}
```

Service Binding /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_A_D_02

Expose the service as a UI service with OData protocol V2 and publish it locally. You can then use the preview to test the service.

### 5.4.3 Draft-Enabling the Managed Business Object

You can now draft-enable the managed business object with a few additions in the behavior definition.

In draft business objects, the implementation of the business logic must be able to handle request for draft and for active instances. Above all, the implementation must be able to differentiate those requests.

The business object receives the information if a request is aimed at draft or active instances via the draft indicator %IS_DRAFT. This draft indicator is a component of the primary key in all incoming requests in draft scenarios. The transactional key %tky includes the draft indicator. So in draft scenarios, it is best practice to use %tky for referring to the primary key, as the indicator for drafts or non-drafts is already included there. In non-draft scenarios, the transactional key %tky comprises just the primary key information.

If you consequently use the derived type %tky to refer to the key of instances in your implementation, draft-enabling is just done in the behavior definition with a few additional syntax elements. The draft indicator %is_draft is added as a key component to %tky in draft scenarios. This means, the implementation receives the information if the request is aimed at draft or active instances. So, you do not have to adjust your implementation in draft scenarios.
The following steps are necessary to draft-enable a managed business object: Adding Draft Capabilities to the Managed Business Object [page 516]

5.4.3.1 Adding Draft Capabilities to the Managed Business Object

For the managed scenario with draft, add draft behavior to the behavior definition.

Context and Procedure

In the previous sections of this development guide, you have developed a running business service with a managed business object. Draft capabilities are included to the business service by adding the syntax element with draft to the behavior definition. As soon as you use this keyword element in the behavior definition, you are guided through the follow-up steps in the behavior definition by tool support. Syntax warnings and quick fixes are available to adapt the managed business object to the draft prerequisites.

Draft-Enabled Business Objects Requirements

i Note

Business objects with implementation type unmanaged are draft-enabled in the same way.

Follow these steps to draft-enable the travel business object:

1. Add the syntax element with draft to the header of the behavior definition.

   i Note

   You receive a syntax error that there is no draft persistence available for the draft BO.

2. Create a draft database table for the Travel entity by using the quick fix in the behavior definition:
   ○ Define the draft database table in the behavior definition by using the keyword draft table and specify the name for the draft database table.
     In the example scenario, we use /dmo/d_travel_d.

   i Note

   The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix _D. For the draft database tables, we use the prefix d_ to indicate the draft persistence. For detailed information, see Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].
○ Use the quick fix to create a database table with the specified name.

```
create draft table /dmo/d_travel_d for entity /dmo/travel_d
```

Quick Fix: Draft Table Generation

The wizard for creating database tables opens. When you finish the database table generation wizard, the ADT tooling support automatically generates the table elements corresponding to the active persistence. In addition, the draft admin structure include `%admin` is included in the database table. For more information about the draft database table, see Draft Database Table [page 65].

○ Add the annotation `@AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true` to the elements that store user information. (Only relevant for the travel draft table.)

```
@AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
```

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Database Table `/dmo/d_travel_d`

```
@EndUserText.label : 'Draft table for entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_D'
@AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #EXTENSIBLE_ANY
@AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
@AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
@AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #RESTRICTED
define table /dmo/d_travel_d {
  key mandt : mandt not null;
  key traveluuid : sysuuid_x16 not null;
  travelid : /dmo/travel_id;
  agencyid : /dmo/agency_id;
  customerid : /dmo/customer_id;
  begindate : /dmo/begin_date;
  enddate : /dmo/end_date;
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/d_travel_d.currencycode'
  bookingfee : /dmo/booking_fee;
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/d_travel_d.currencycode'
  totalprice : /dmo/total_price;
  currencycode : /dmo/currency_code;
  description : /dmo/description;
  overallstatus : /dmo/overall_status;
  @AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
  localcreatedby : syuname;
  localcreatedat : timestampl;
  @AbapCatalog.anonymizedWhenDelivered : true
  locallastchangedby : syuname;
  locallastchangedat : timestampl;
  "%admin" : include sych_bdl_draft_admin_inc;
}
```

3. Repeat the creation of draft database tables for the `Booking` entity and the `BookingSupplement` entity. In the example scenario, we use the names `/dmo/d_booking_d` and `/dmo/d_bksuppl_d`

4. Define a total ETag field for the draft business object.
   The total ETag is used to enable optimistic concurrency checks during the transition from draft to active data.
   ○ Add a total ETag field to the persistent database table of the `Travel` entity.

   Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Database Table `/dmo/a_travel_d`
Add the element in the CDS view entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_D and annotate it with the annotation @Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt: true to allow the RAP runtime framework to update it automatically.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Database Table /DMO/I_Travel_D.
/**/total ETag field
@Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt: true
last_changed_at       as LastChangedAt,
//Associations
_Booking,
_Agency,
_Customer,
_Currency
}

** Note **
The total ETag field does not need to be included in the projection view. The ETag is only used for internal processing of draft data and does not need to be exposed for the business service.

○ Add the total ETag field to the mapping prescription in the behavior definition for the Travel entity.

** Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Database Table /DMO/I_Travel_D. **

```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_d unique...

mapping for /dmo/a_travel_d
{ AgencyID = agency_id;
  BeginDate = begin_date;
  BookingFee = booking_fee;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  CustomerID = customer_id;
  Description = description;
  EndDate = end_date;
  LastChangedAt = last_changed_at;
  LocalCreatedAt = local_created_at;
  LocalCreatedBy = local_created_by;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  LocalLastChangedBy = local_last_changed_by;
  OverallStatus = overall_status;
  TotalPrice = total_price;
  TravelID = travel_id;
  TravelUUID = travel_uuid; }
```

○ Regenerate the draft database table /dmo/d_travel_d to include the total ETag field. The behavior definition provides a quick fix for the regeneration.

Quick Fix: Regeneration Draft Table

○ Define the element LastChangedAt as total ETag in the behavior definition by using the keyword total etag.
The definition of the total ETag is only possible directly after the lock master definition in the behavior definition.

Sample Code

```abap
managed;
with draft;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_i_travel_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_travel_d
draft table /dmo/d_travel_d
lock master
total etag LastChangedAt

...}

5. Explicitly draft-enable the compositions within the draft BO. As soon as you draft-enable a business object by adding with draft to the behavior definition, all BO-internal associations are automatically draft-enabled. To make this behavior explicit, the behavior prompts you to specify the compositions within a draft BO with.

For more information, see Draft-Enabled Associations [page 69].

6. Define the validations and determinations for the draft determine action Prepare. The determinations and validations that are defined in the Prepare action are called before and during the Activate action to transfer draft to active instances. For more information, see Preparing Draft Instances for Activation [page 84].

- Define the Prepare action in the behavior definition.
- Include all validations that are defined for the travel BO in the Prepare

Note

It is not generally necessary to include all validations in the Prepare action, but only those that you want to check during the transition from draft to active.

Sample Code

```abap
managed;
with draft;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel ...
draft determine action Prepare {
  validation validateAgency;
  validation validateCustomer;
  validation validateDates;
  validation Booking-validateCustomer;
  validation Booking-validateConnection;
  validation Bookingsupplement-validateSupplement;}
```

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Behavior Definition /DMO/I_Travel_D.

Sample Code

```abap
managed;
```
with draft;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_D alias Travel
implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_travel_d
draft table /dmo/d_travel_d
lock master
total etag LastChangedAt
//authorization master ( instance )
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
  create;
  update;
  delete;
  association _Booking { create ( features : instance ); with draft; }
  field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) TravelUUID;
  field ( readonly ) TravelID, OverallStatus, TotalPrice, LocalCreatedAt,
  LocalCreatedBy, LocalLastChangedAt, LocalLastChangedBy;
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID, AgencyID, BeginDate, EndDate;
  field ( features : instance ) BookingFee;
  action ( features : instance ) acceptTravel result [1] $self;
  action ( features : instance ) rejectTravel result [1] $self;
  internal action reCalcTotalPrice;
  determination setTravelNumber on save { create; }
  determination setStatusToNew on modify { create; }
  determination calculateTotalPrice on modify { create; field BookingFee,
  CurrencyCode; }
  validation validateCustomer on save { create; field CustomerID; }
  validation validateAgency on save { create; field AgencyID; }
  validation validateDates on save { create; field BeginDate, EndDate; }
draft determine action Prepare
{
  validation validateAgency;
  validation validateCustomer;
  validation validateDates;
  validation Booking ~ validateCustomer;
  validation Booking ~ validateConnection;
  validation BookingSupplement ~ validateSupplement; }
mapping for /dmo/a_travel_d
{ AgencyID = agency_id;
  BeginDate = begin_date;
  BookingFee = booking_fee;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  CustomerID = customer_id;
  Description = description;
  EndDate = end_date;
  LastChangedAt = last_changed_at;
  LocalCreatedBy = local_created_by;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  LocalLastChangedBy = local_last_changed_by;
  OverallStatus = overall_status;
  TotalPrice = total_price;
  TravelID = travel_id;
  TravelUUID = travel_uuid; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_D alias Booking
implementation in class /dmo/bp_booking_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_booking_d
draft table /dmo/d_booking_d
lock dependent by _Travel
//authorization dependent by <association>
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
  update;
  delete;
  association _BookingSupplement { create ; with draft; }
association _Travel { with draft; }
field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) BookingUUID;
field ( readonly ) TravelUUID, BookingID, BookingDate, LocalLastChangedAt;
determination setBookingNumber on save { create; }
determination setBookingDate on save { create; }
determination calculateTotalPrice on modify { create; field FlightPrice,
CurrencyCode; }
validation validateCustomer on save { create; field CustomerID; }
validation validateConnection on save { create; field AirlineID,
ConnectionID, FlightDate; }
mapping for /dmo/a_booking_d
{ AirlineID = carrier_id;
  BookingDate = booking_date;
  BookingID = booking_id;
  BookingStatus = booking_status;
  BookingUUID = booking_uuid;
  ConnectionID = connection_id;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  CustomerID = customer_id;
  FlightDate = flight_date;
  FlightPrice = flight_price;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  TravelUUID = parent_uuid; }
}
define behavior for /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D alias BookingSupplement
implementation in class /dmo/bp_bookingsupplement_d unique
persistent table /dmo/a_bksuppl_d
draft table /dmo/d_bksuppl_d
lock dependent by _Travel
//authorization dependent by <association>
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{ update;
delete;
  association _Travel { with draft; }
  field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) BookSuppUUID;
  field ( readonly ) TravelUUID, BookingUUID, BookingSupplementID,
  LocalLastChangedAt;
  field ( mandatory ) SupplementID;
  determination setBookSuppNumber on save { create; }
determination calculateTotalPrice on modify { create; field CurrencyCode,
  BookSuppPrice; }
validation validateSupplement on save { create; field SupplementID; }
mapping for /dmo/a_bksuppl_d
{ BookSuppPrice = price;
  BookSuppUUID = booksuppl_uuid;
  BookingSupplementID = booking_supplement_id;
  BookingUUID = parent_uuid;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  SupplementID = supplement_id;
  TravelUUID = root_uuid; }
}

**iNote**

Draft-enabled business objects require a feature control method in the behavior pool. If you do not use dynamic feature control in your business logic, include the method declaration and an empty method implementation. In Draft BOs, feature control is called for every request to determine whether draft or active instances are requested.
**Result**

As soon as you activate the behavior definition, the business object is draft-enabled. In general, that means:

- Transactional requests are processed by the draft runtime,
- The importing structures for all methods in the behavior pool receive an additional component, the draft indicator `%is_draft`. In particular the transactional key `%tky` determines whether the operation is executed on a draft or on an active instance.
- The draft actions are implicitly available and applied during the draft life cycle.
- The existing UI service does not change as long as you do not include the draft capabilities in the projection behavior definition. It still behaves like a non-draft business service. The underlying draft BO processes every request with the draft indicator `is_draft` set to false.

For more information, see Draft Runtime [page 69].

The conversion to a draft business object sometimes requires follow-up activities of existing implementations in the business logic. In general, scan the existing code thoroughly to detect cases where you need to differentiate between active and draft processing.

If the transactional key `%tky` is used for referring to the key components, no adaptation is necessary for these implementations. The `%is_draft` is automatically added as key component to the `%tky` structure.

### 5.4.4 Exposing the Draft Business Object for a UI Business Service

In the previous chapters, you have created a draft business object by draft-enabling a managed business object. Since the managed business object projection without draft capabilities remains untouched, it continues to operate only on active instances.

If you want to have a business service with draft capabilities, you can either add the draft features to the existing business object projection or create a new projection for the draft service. This is done in this demo scenario. In the end, you have two parallel business services, one for active only and one that includes draft features. To expose the draft business as a business service the following steps are relevant:

- Projecting the Draft BO for Draft Exposure [page 523]
- Defining and Publishing a UI Service with Draft Capabilities [page 533]

#### 5.4.4.1 Projecting the Draft BO for Draft Exposure

For the managed scenario with draft, create a projection layer for the draft BO.

**Context and Procedure**

In the first part of this development guide, you have created a non-draft business service based on a managed business object. The business object projection includes all elements in the data model and the behavior
features that are relevant for the UI service. This projection remains stable, even when you add draft
capabilities to the basic business object. The projection layer filters out the elements and behavior features
that are draft-specific as they are not included in the projection.

To expose the draft business object for a UI service, it is necessary that you define a business object projection
that also includes the draft specific features. For more information about the BO projection layer, see Business
Object Projection [page 194].

For the travel demo scenario, define the data model and the behavior projection for the draft projection:

- For the **data model projection**, the following steps are relevant:
  - Create **CDS projection views**.
    - In the CDS projection views define UI-service-specific features, such as search capabilities, text
      associations, and value helps.
  - Create **metadata extensions**.
    - Metadata extensions are primarily used to define the annotations that are relevant for the UI design.
      They are outsourced in metadata extension to obtain an easy approach for layering.
    - For a detailed description on how to define data model projection features, see Projecting the BO Data
      Model [page 505].
- For the **behavior projection**, the following steps are relevant:
  - Create a **projection behavior definition**.
    - For a detailed description on behavior projection features, see Projecting the BO Behavior [page 513].

## 5.4.4.1.1 Projecting the Draft BO Data Model

For the managed scenario with draft, create and implement CDS projection views and metadata extensions for
the draft BO entities.

### Context and Procedure

Create data definition for projection views for all three BO entities *Travel, Booking, and Booking Supplement*. In
ADT, use the context menu on the underlying CDS view entity to open the wizard for creating CDS data
definition. For a detailed step-by-step description, see .

Select the template *Define Projection View*.

**Note**

The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix _D. Since the new CDS projection
views represent the UI service with draft capabilities, we use the marker _D before the suffix to distinguish
the active projection layer from the projection layer that includes draft. In addition, projection views carry
the prefix C_ as they represent the consumption layer. For more information, see Naming Conventions for
Development Objects [page 990].

For each projection view, create a metadata extension. In ADT, right-click on the data definition to open the
creation wizard for metadata extensions.
iNote

According to the virtual data model (VDM) guidelines, the metadata extension use the same name as the related CDS view.

Projection View /DMO/C_Travel_D_D

The projection view is a projection on /DMO/I_Travel_D. Include the keyword root in the projection view.

Use all elements of the underlying BO travel entity. You do not need to use the administrative data in the projection view, except for the element representing the ETag master.

Enable the usage of a metadata extension with the annotation @Metadata.allowExtension:true.

Enable search capabilities for the travel entity, with the @Search annotations on the entity header and on designated elements. For more information, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

For the OData V4 consumption of a draft business object via a Fiori Elements UI, the annotation @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['SemanticIdentifier'] must be used to ensure that draft indications on the instance are displayed.

To retrieve the long texts of the ID elements CustomerID and AgencyID, denormalize the text elements from the associated text provider view into the projection view. For more information, see Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views [page 595].

Define value helps for the elements CustomerID, AgencyID and CurrencyCode. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

In contrast to the ETag master field, which is necessary to ensure optimistic concurrency control in the OData consumption, you do not need to include the total ETag field in the draft business service projection. The total ETag is only necessary for internal draft processing.

As soon as all projection views of the composition structure of the business object are available, redirect the composition to child to the projection view of the booking entity.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_Travel_D_D.

```java
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel Projection View with Draft'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
@ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['TravelID']
define root view entity /DMO/C_Travel_D_D
  as projection on /DMO/I_Travel_D
  
  key TravelUUID,
  @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
  TravelID,
  @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
  @ObjectModel.text.element: ['AgencyName']
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity : {name: '/DMO/I_Agency',
    element: 'AgencyID' } }]
  AgencyID,
```
Metadata Extension /DMO/C_Travel_D_D

Define the metadata extension as extension of the CDS projection view /DMO/C_Travel_A_D.

Define the layer #CORE.

Use all the @UI annotations to design the user interface for the travel app. For more information, see Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Metadata Extension /DMO/C_Travel_D_D.

CDS Projection View /DMO/C_Travel_D_D

`_Agency.Name as AgencyName,`  
`@Search.defaultSearchElement: true`  
`@ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']`  
`@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Customer',`  
`element: 'CustomerID' } }]`  
`CustomerID,`  
`_Customer.LastName as CustomerName,`  
`BeginDate,`  
`EndDate,`  
`BookingFee,`  
`TotalPrice,`  
`@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: 'I_Currency',`  
`element: 'Currency' }}]`  
`CurrencyCode,`  
`Description,`  
`OverallStatus,`  
`LocalLastChangedAt,`  
`/* Associations */`  
`_Agency,`  
`_Booking : redirected to composition child /DMO/C_Booking_D_D,`  
`_Currency,`  
`_Customer`}
The projection view is a projection on /DMO/I_Booking_D.

Use all elements of the underlying BO travel entity, in particular the element representing the ETag master.

Enable the usage of a metadata extension with the annotation @Metadata.allowExtension: true.
Enable search capabilities for the booking entity, with the @Search annotations. For more information, see Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608].

To retrieve the long texts of the ID elements CustomerID and CarrierID, denormalize the text elements from the associated text provider views into the projection view. For more information, see Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views [page 595].

Define value helps for the elements CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate, and CurrencyCode. For more information, see Providing Value Help [page 597].

As soon as all projection views of the composition structure of the business object are available, redirect the composition to child to the projection view of the booking entity and the association to the root entity to the respective projection view.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_Booking_D_D.

```aspect
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking Proj View with Draft'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
@ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
define view entity /DMO/C_Booking_D_D
  as projection on /DMO/I_Booking_D
  
  { key BookingUUID,
    TravelUUID,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['CustomerName']
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    CustomerID,
    _Customer.LastName as CustomerName,
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Customer',
      element: 'CustomerID' }}]
    CustomerID,
    _Customer.LastName as CustomerName,
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Carrier',
      element: 'AirlineID' }}]
    AirlineID,
    _Carrier.Name      as CarrierName,
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    @ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingID']
    BookingID,
    BookingDate,
    
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Flight',
      element: 'ConnectionID'},
      additionalBinding: [{localElement: 'FlightDate'},
                        {localElement: 'AirlineID'},
                        {localElement: 'Price', usage: #RESULT},
                        {localElement: 'CurrencyCode', usage: #RESULT } ] } ]
    ConnectionID,
    FlightDate,
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Flight',
      element: 'ConnectionID'},
      additionalBinding: [{localElement: 'FlightDate'},
                         {localElement: 'AirlineID'},
                         {localElement: 'Price', usage: #RESULT },
                         {localElement: 'CurrencyCode', usage: #RESULT } ] } ]
  }
```
Define the metadata extension as extension of the CDS projection view `/DMO/C_Booking_D_D`. Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Metadata Extension View `/DMO/C_Booking_D_D`.

```
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { typeName: 'Booking',
                     typeNamePlural: 'Bookings',
                     title: { type: #STANDARD, value: 'BookingID' } } } }
annotate entity `/DMO/C_Booking_D_D` with
{
  @UI.facet: [ { id: 'Booking',
                 purpose: #STANDARD,
                 type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
                 label: 'Booking',
                 position: 10 },
               { id: 'BookingSupplement',
                 purpose: #STANDARD,
                 type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
                 label: 'Booking Supplement',
                 position: 20,
                 targetElement: '_BookingSupplement' } ]

  @UI.hidden: true
  BookingUUID;

  @UI.hidden: true
  TravelUUID;

  @UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 20, importance: #HIGH } ],
          identification: [ { position: 20 } ] }
  BookingID;

  @UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 30, importance: #HIGH } ],
          identification: [ { position: 30 } ] }
  BookingDate;

  @UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 40, importance: #HIGH } ],
          identification: [ { position: 40 } ] }
```
The projection view is a projection on `/DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D`. Use all elements of the underlying BO travel entity, in particular the element representing the ETag master. Enable the usage of a metadata extension with the annotation `@Metadata.allowExtension: true`. Enable search capabilities for the travel entity, with the `@Search` annotations. For more information, see [Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps](page 608).

To retrieve the long texts of the ID element `SupplementID`, denormalize the text element from the associated text provider view into the projection view. For more information, see [Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views](page 595).

Define value helps for the elements `SupplementID` and `CurrencyCode`. For more information, see [Providing Value Help](page 597).

As soon as all projection views of the composition structure of the business object are available, redirect the association to the parent to the projection view of the booking entity and the association to the root entity to the respective projection view.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View `/DMO/C_BookingSupplement_D_D`.

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'BookingSuppl Proj View for Draft RefScen'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@Metadata.allowExtensions: true
@Search.searchable: true
@ObjectModel.semanticKey: ['BookingSupplementID']
define view entity /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_D_D
  as projection on /DMO/I_BookingSupplement_D
```
Metadata Extension /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_D_D

Define the metadata extension as extension of the CDS projection view /DMO/C_BookSuppl_D_D.

Define the layer #CORE.

Use all the @UI annotations to design the user interface for the travel app. For more information, see Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692].

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_D_D.

Sample Code

```json
{  
    key BookSupplUUID,
    TravelUUID,
    BookingUUID,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    BookingSupplementID,
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['SupplementDescription'],
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [ {entity: {name: '/DMO/I_SUPPLEMENT', element: 'SupplementID'}},
        additionalBinding: [ { localElement: 'BookSupplPrice',
            element: 'Price', usage: #RESULT },
        { localElement: 'CurrencyCode',
            element: 'CurrencyCode', usage: #RESULT } ],
        SupplementID,
        _SupplementText.Description as SupplementDescription : localized,
        BookSupplPrice,
        @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [ {entity: {name: 'I_Currency',
            element: 'Currency'} } ],
        CurrencyCode,
        LocalLastChangedAt,
        /* Associations */
        _Booking : redirected to parent /DMO/C_Booking_D_D,
        _Product,
        _SupplementText,
        _Travel : redirected to /DMO/C_Travel_D_D
    }
}
```
5.4.4.1.2 Projecting the Draft BO Behavior

For the managed scenario with draft, create a projection behavior definition for defining the projection behavior.

Context and Procedure

Create a projection behavior definition for the travel business object. In ADT, use the context menu of the root projection view to open the wizard for creating behavior definitions. The implementation type is prefilled with Projection. For a more detailed description, see Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966].

Projection Behavior Definition /DMO/C_TRAVEL_D_D

Use the complete behavior that was defined in the underlying behavior definition for the draft BO projection. *(The template does not include everything, some features must be added manually.)*

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection Behavior Definition /DMO/C_Travel_D_D.

Sample Code

```abap
projection;
use draft;
define behavior for /DMO/C_TRAVEL_D_D alias Travel
use etag
{
  use create;
  use update;
  use delete;
  use action acceptTravel;
  use action rejectTravel;
  use action deductDiscount;
```
5.4.4.2 Defining and Publishing a UI Service with Draft Capabilities

For the managed scenario with draft, define a UI service and bind it to a protocol.

**Context and Procedure**

To address the draft BO from the ABAP-external world, it must be exposed as a business service to OData. In the service definition, you define which artifacts are included in the service. The service binding defines the protocol with which the service is addressed. In addition, it provides the means to activate the service locally. The Fiori Elements App Preview can be used as soon as the service is activated.

Create a service definition for the draft business service. For more information, see Creating Service Definitions [page 974].

Based on the service definition, create a service binding. For more information, see Creating Service Binding [page 975].

Ui services of draft business objects with Fiori Elements are only supported with OData V4. Fiori Elements cannot handle the full scope of draft services that are exposed with OData V2.

**i Note**

The draft scenario in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario uses the suffix _D. To distinguish the draft service from the service with draft, we use the addition _D before the suffix. For more information, see Naming Conventions for Development Objects [page 990].
**Service Definition** /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_D_D

Include the projection views of the business object and all related CDS entities that are relevant for UI consumption into the service definition.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of Projection View /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_D_D.

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel Draft Scenario(active projection)'
define service /DMO/UI_TRAVEL_D_D {
    expose /DMO/C_Travel_D_D as Travel;
    expose /DMO/C_Booking_D_D as Booking;
    expose /DMO/C_BookingSupplement_D_D as BookingSupplement;
    expose /DMO/I_Supplement as Supplement;
    expose /DMO/I_SupplementText as SupplementText;
    expose /DMO/I_Customer as Passenger;
    expose /DMO/I_Agency as TravelAgency;
    expose /DMO/I_Carrier as Airline;
    expose /DMO/I_Connection as FlightConnection;
    expose /DMO/I_Flight as Flight;
    expose /DMO/I_Airport as Airport;
    expose I_Currency as Currency;
    expose I_Country as Country;
}
```

**Service Binding**

Expose the service as a UI service with OData protocol V4 and publish it locally. You can then use the preview to test the service.

### 5.5 Developing a Web API

An OData service can be published as a web API. This enables the consumption of the service by any client, independent from a particular UI.

**Introduction**

A Web API [page 1039] is an OData service whose metadata does not entail any UI-specific annotations that are defined for the data model. It is published for the purpose of providing an API to access the service by an unspecified client. A Web API facilitates the exchange of business information between an application and any client, including from a different system or server.

In this development guide you will reuse the service that you created in Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348] and publish a Web API for it. Since a Web API is not being used directly in a UI context, the
consumer of a service of this type only requires a reduced set of metadata. The metadata lacks any kind of UI-relevant information.

The basis for the service remains identical to an OData service exposed for a UI. It is just the binding type in the service binding that differs, which can be seen in the subsequent figure. It is even possible to expose a service that was created originally as a UI service for API consumption. The metadata are automatically reduced to the relevant information for Web API, which means without UI-related annotations or value helps.

The procedure of consuming a remote Web API service like this from a foreign system is described in the following development guide: Developing a UI Service with Access to a Remote Service [page 539].

Prerequisites

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.
- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT).
  SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site: https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/.
- To recreate the demo scenario, the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario must be available in your ABAP system. You can download the complete reference scenario from GitHub: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].
- You have understood the development steps to create a transactional OData service for a UI as described in Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348].
  In particular, you are able to reuse the data model including the behavior of the existing OData service /DMO/TRAVEL_U to expose it for a Web API.
  Via ABAPGit, you can import the service /DMO/TRAVEL_U including the related development objects into your development environment. So you do not have to build the service to test the publishing as Web API. You find the service in the package /DMO/FLIGHT_UNMANAGED.
  For information about downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, see Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].
**Example Scenario**

As described above, the following guide reuses the data model and behavior of the service that was created in the transactional guide. This means that the following artifacts must be available in your system to follow the steps of this guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Artefact</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CDS Entities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>The Travel entity defines general travel data, such as the agency ID or customer ID, status of the travel booking, and the price of travel. The entity represents the root node of the business object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Booking_U</td>
<td>The Booking entity manages data for a booked flight for a certain travel instance. It is a composition of the Travel entity and is therefore dependent on its root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Agency</td>
<td>The Agency defines general data about the responsible agency for a travel. It is associated with the Travel entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_Customer</td>
<td>The Customer defines personal data about the customers involved in travel and booking. It is associated with the Travel entity and the Booking entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Behavior Artifacts</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/I_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>The behavior definition defines the capabilities of the business object involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/CL_TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>The behavior is implemented in the special ABAP classes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Business Service Artifact</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/DMO/TRAVEL_U</td>
<td>The service definition defines all the entities that are exposed for the service.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5.5.1 Publishing a Web API**

**Prerequisites**

You have an existing service definition for which you want to create a Web API service. In our example scenario we reuse the service definition /DMO/TRAVEL_U, which was already exposed as a UI service in the transactional scenario.

If no service definition is available, choose the entities that you want to expose as an API and create a service definition for these entities. For a description on how to create a service definition, refer to [Creating a Service Definition](#).
**Context**

You have defined the scope of the service that you want to expose in a service definition. The service must now be bound to an OData protocol and published as a Web API.

**Procedure**

1. In your ABAP project, open the context menu for the existing service definition `/DMO/TRAVEL_U` and choose New Service Binding to launch the creation wizard.

2. In addition to the Project and Package, enter the Name and the Description for the service binding you want to create.

   ![New Service Binding](image)

   **i Note**
   The maximum length for the name of a service binding is 26 characters.

3. Select the Binding Type ODATA V2 - Web API to bind the service to a V2 protocol and expose it as a Web API.

4. Verify that the correct Service Definition is preset in the wizard to be used as a base for your service binding.

5. Choose Next.

6. Assign a transport request and choose Finish.

   The ABAP back end creates a service binding and stores it in the ABAP Repository.
In the *Project Explorer*, the new service binding is added to the *Business Services* folder of the corresponding package node. As a result, the service binding form editor is opened and you can verify the information of the service.

![Service Binding Artifact Form Editor for a Web API](image)

7. **To expose the service, choose the button** *Activate*.

   The metadata document can be accessed by following the link *Service URL*. The UI preview is naturally not available.

**Results**

Except for UI features, the service including all implemented features is now exposed as an API. In particular, this means that the implemented behavior is also exposed in this API.

The difference to a service that is published for a UI client can best be seen in the service metadata. Whereas the metadata of a UI service carries information about the UI representation of the service, the Web API service does not contain any such information.

**Example**

In our example scenario this difference can be seen when comparing the annotation section that refers to the implemented value help.

The UI service lists every field of a value help provider view as *ValueListParameter* in the annotation section. The Web API on the other hand lacks any UI specific information, although the value help annotation is defined in the respective CDS views.
5.6  Developing a UI Service with Access to a Remote Service

Based on a remote OData service, you create a new service that enhances the remote service with additional information.

Introduction

In this scenario, you develop an OData service that consumes a Web API [page 1039]. This Web API represents a remote service from which you retrieve data. This data is then enhanced with additional data. That means, the new OData service has two data sources. One is the remote service, the other source is a database table in the consuming development system. You build a new SAP Fiori UI application that consumes the remote service from the provisioning tenant, and enhances the remote service with persistent data of the consuming tenant.

The data model for the new service is defined in a CDS custom entity [page 1023], which enables you to retrieve data from different sources. A CDS custom entity has an unmanaged query [page 1038], which has to be implemented manually in a related ABAP class, the query implementation class [page 1033]. In this ABAP class, data from different sources, including from another system, can be retrieved.

With the help of the service consumption model [page 1035], you can import the OData metadata of the remote service into the consuming system and create proxy artifacts of the remote service. This gives you a local representation of the remote data model in your tenant, which helps you to define a data model for the new service.

This guide also describes how you implement transactional behavior to modify the additional data on the local database table.

The following image gives an overview of the architecture of the service consumption scenario.
To be able to get data from a remote service, you build an OData client proxy in your implementation to forward and transform the requests for the remote service. The client proxy can only consume the remote service if a connection to the provisioning tenant is established. The configuration of such a destination is a precondition for developing this scenario.

**Development Steps to Create a New Service to Consume a Remote Service**

- Save the XML file of the remote service locally.
- Create proxy artifacts with the service consumption model wizard.
- Create a CDS custom entity as a data model for the new service.
- Implement the query in an ABAP class.
- Implement the transactional behavior for the local fields.
- Create an OData service.

**Prerequisites**

Developing the scenario that is described in the subsequent chapters requires the following:

- You have access to and an account for SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP environment.
- You have installed ABAP Development Tools (ADT). SAP recommends to use the latest version of the client installation. The ADT download is available on the update site https://tools.hana.ondemand.com/.
To recreate the demo scenario, the **ABAP Flight Reference Scenario** must be available in your ABAP system. You can download the complete reference scenario from *GitHub: Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12]*.

You know the URL of the remote service that you want to consume or have access to the CSDL XML file of the service. In this demo scenario, the service `/DMO/API_TRAVEL_U_V2` is used as remote service. You can download the service as part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario, see *Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12]*.

### Prerequisites for the Consumption of a Remote Service

- A cloud destination is configured in the Cloud Cockpit to connect to the provisioning system. For more information, see *Configure a Destination for the Sample Apps*.
- A communication arrangement for the destination service instance in the ABAP environment has been created in your consuming system (*SAP_COM_0276*). For more information, see *Creating a Communication Arrangement for the Destination Service Instance in the ABAP Environment*.

### Prerequisites to Consume a Remote Service from an S/4 HANA Cloud System

This scenario consumes a remote service from an S/4HANA Cloud System. You can consume any OData service, but different prerequisites might apply.

The following prerequisites apply for this consumption scenario:

- The remote OData service has been published in a communication scenario. For more information, see *Consuming Services in the Context of API with Technical Users*.
- A communication arrangement exists in the provisioning system. For more information, see *Implementation Steps in the SAP S/4HANA Cloud System*.

### 5.6.1 ☁ Scenario Description

#### Starting Point: Remote OData Service

In this development guide, we reuse the service that was built in *Developing a Web API [page 534]*. We only use the root node from the remote service for our consumption and the transactional behavior is ignored. The new service in the consuming system does not implement operations to create, update, or delete data from the provisioning system. Instead, it retrieves the data from there and enriches the service with additional fields. These additional fields, however, can be modified. Therefore, the new UI service contains transactional capabilities for these additional fields.

A Web API service is the prototypical example for this consumption scenario. It contains all the required information, but does not contain any metadata that is superfluous in the consumption scenario (for example, UI-relevant annotations). However, it is also possible to consume an OData service that was published as a UI service.

The available entity types of the remote service can be viewed in the metadata document when extended. We only consume the root node *Travel*. 
We want to consume the remote service in the local system and extend it with additional fields for discounts. The end user will be able to maintain possible discounts for each trip in an SAP Fiori application. These discount fields are persisted on a local database table and retrieved together with the data of the remote service. The end user UI does not show any difference between the persisted fields and the fields that are retrieved remotely.

The discount fields are:

- **Discount Percentage**: The end user can maintain a proportional discount for the total price of travel.
- **Discount Absolute**: The end user can maintain an absolute value as discount for the total price of the travel

In our scenario, these fields are persisted in the database table `/dmo/traveladd`, which consists of the two discount fields, the travel ID as the key, and administrative data to track changes.

In addition to the persistent fields, there is also a calculated field (**Total Price with Discount**) that displays the new total price including the possible discount. This field, however, is not persisted in the database, but is transient.

The following figure shows the end user UI with fields that are retrieved remotely from the provisioning system, persistent fields, and the transient field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Agency ID</th>
<th>Customer ID</th>
<th>Begin Date</th>
<th>End Date</th>
<th>Total Price</th>
<th>Discount</th>
<th>Discount Absolute</th>
<th>Total Price with Discount</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>70041</td>
<td>804</td>
<td>Aug. 4, 2018</td>
<td>Jun. 2, 2019</td>
<td>1,836.30 USD</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00 USD</td>
<td>1,836.30 USD</td>
<td>Vacation-2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>70016</td>
<td>903</td>
<td>Aug. 4, 2018</td>
<td>Jun. 2, 2019</td>
<td>3,645.14 USD</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00 USD</td>
<td>3,645.14 USD</td>
<td>Vacation</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>70042</td>
<td>665</td>
<td>Aug. 4, 2018</td>
<td>Jun. 2, 2019</td>
<td>1,871.00 USD</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00 USD</td>
<td>1,871.00 USD</td>
<td>Vacation</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>70007</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>Aug. 4, 2018</td>
<td>Aug. 4, 2018</td>
<td>992.00 USD</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.00 USD</td>
<td>992.00 USD</td>
<td>Business Trip for Kurt, Ida</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fiori Elements App for Managing Travel and Discounts
Procedure

To merge the locally and remotely retrieved data, the application developer must import the metadata of the remote service into the consuming system. Abstract entities that mirror the original data model of the remote service are generated by the service consumption wizard. It is then possible to access the service within the local ABAP code. To build a new OData service based on the remote service including additional database fields, a CDS custom entity is used to represent the data model, including both local and remote fields.

The program logic of a custom entity is not managed by ABAP runtime frameworks, but has to be implemented manually. The implementation includes the query itself and every query option as well as the transactional behavior for the local fields. The query is implemented in a query implementation class and the transactional runtime behavior is defined via a behavior definition and implemented in the related behavior pool. To access the data from the remote service, a destination to the provisioning system must be instantiated in the implementation classes.

To create the OData service, we expose the custom entity in a service definition and create a service binding to bind the service against a protocol. In our example case, this is a V2 UI service.

As a result, the existing remote read-only service and database fields with transactional capabilities are merged within the same SAP Fiori Elements app.

Related Information

Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348]
Developing a Web API [page 534]

5.6.2 Preparing Access to the Remote OData Service

In order to consume the remote service in your local system, you need a local representation of the remote service.

Context

To be able to access the remote OData service, you need to generate proxy artifacts for it. These abstract entities mirror the data model of the remote service.

The wizard that creates the proxy artifacts requires a CSDL XML [page 1024] document of the external service as a basis for the abstract entities.
5.6.2.1 Getting the OData Service Metadata

Context

A CSDL XML file can be retrieved from any service if the service URL is known. The following procedure describes the steps for saving a CSDL XML document on your local machine.

Procedure

1. Open your browser.
2. Call the external OData service metadata document.
   
   **Note**
   You get the metadata document by adding /$metadata to the service URL.
   
3. Save the metadata as an XML Document on your local machine.
Next Steps

You can now use this CSDL XML document in the service consumption wizard.

5.6.2.2 Generating Proxy Artifacts

Prerequisites

The metadata CSDL XML file of the service you want to consume is stored on your local machine.

Context

The proxy artifacts that represent the remote service in your system are required to access the remote service in your ABAP code. A wizard generates these proxy artifacts.

Procedure

1. In your ABAP package, open the context menu and choose New ➔ Other ➔ ABAP ➔ Business Services ➔ Service Consumption Model to launch the creation wizard.
2. In addition to the Project and Package, enter a Name for the new service consumption model and a Description.
   
   We use the name /DMO/TRAVEL_C_A in our example scenario. The suffix _c for consumption scenario and _A for abstract.

   i Note
   
   This name is also used for the service definition that will be generated.
4. Choose Next.
5. On the Mapping Names screen, deselect all service entity sets, except for Travel and edit the ABAP artifact name for this entity set to prevent name clashes with other artifacts.
In this example scenario, we only use the root node of the business object (Travel).

6. Choose Next.

On the ABAP Artifact Generation List screen, in addition to the selected entity set, the service definition that is generated is listed.

7. Choose Next and assign a transport request.


The service consumption model editor is opened, in which you can see and verify the generated artifacts. The wizard creates an abstract entity [page 1022] in your local system for each entity from the external service that you have chosen. If the source service contains creatable, updatable, or deletable entities, a behavior definition is created with the same name as the related abstract entity. These entities are found in the Core Data Services folder in ADT. Additionally, the generated service definition is created in the Business Services folder. It carries the same name as the service consumption model.
Remember
We only use the root node of the external service, which is now represented as /DMO/TRAVEL_C_A.

You can access any of the development objects directly from this editor.

The service consumption model also generated code samples with placeholders for CRUD operations, which facilitate your entity set consumption.

Results

The following codeblock displays the source code of the abstract entity /DMO/TRAVEL_C_A:

```abap
/********** Generation Administration Data**************/
@OData.entitySet.name: 'Travel'
@OData.entityType.name: 'TravelType'
define root abstract entity /DMO/TRAVEL_C_A
{
  key TravelID : abap.numc( 8 );
  AgencyID : abap.numc( 6 );
  AgencyID_Text : abap.char( 80 );
  CustomerID : abap.numc( 6 );
  CustomerID_Text : abap.char( 40 );
  BeginDate : abap.dats;
  EndDate : abap.dats;
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  BookingFee : abap.dec( 17, 3 );
  TotalPrice : abap.dec( 17, 3 );
  CurrencyCode : abap.cuky( 5 );
  Memo : abap.char( 1024 );
  Status : abap.char( 1 );
  LastChangedAt : tzntstmpl;
  ETAG__ETAG : abap.string( 0 );
}
```

Note
Element types, the semantics annotations, and the OData entity set name, which is referenced in the annotation, are taken from the service metadata document of the remote service. If an ETAG is maintained in the original service, an element for the ETAG is added. The text element for the elements that have a text association in the original service are also added to the abstract entity. We will not use them in the service consumption scenario.

This abstract entity serves as a template for the data model of the new service.
5.6.3 Creating a Database Table for the Persistent Fields

Context

The remote service is enriched with discount fields (discount_pct and discount_abs). These enable the end user to maintain discounts for trips. The discounts can be either absolute or relative to the total price of the trip. These fields are used to calculate the new price (TotalPriceWithDiscount) in a transient field.

To create the database table for the discount fields, follow the steps.

Procedure

1. In the Project Explorer, select the relevant Package node, open the context menu, and choose New Other ABAP Repository Object Dictionary.
2. Select Database Table to launch the creation wizard.

   The Creation wizard opens.

3. Enter the necessary information for the wizard to create the database table /dmo/traveladd.

   For a detailed description of how to use the wizard, see .

   Once you have completed the wizard, the initially generated source code is displayed and ready for editing.

4. Define the fields for the database table.

   ```
   @EndUserText.label : 'Travel Discount Information'
   @AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
   @AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
   @AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
   @AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #LIMITED
   define table /dmo/traveladd {
      key client    : abap.clnt not null;
      key travel_id : abap.numc(8) not null;
      discount_pct  : abap.dec(3,1) not null;
      discount_abs  : abap.dec(16,2);
      lastchangedat : timestampl;
   }
   ```

5. Save and activate.

5.6.4 Using a CDS Custom Entity for Data Modeling

Custom entities are used for data models whose runtime is implemented manually.

Context

This service consumption scenario retrieves its data partly from a remote service and partly from a local database table. In custom entities [page 1023], you define the elements and type them to be used in the local database table.
OData service. Custom entities do not come with a `select` on the data source. The implementation of the logic to retrieve the data is implemented in an ABAP class that is referenced in an entity annotation.

For more information, see Unmanaged Query [page 50].

### 5.6.4.1 Creating a CDS Custom Entity

**Procedure**

1. In your ABAP project, select the relevant package node in the Project Explorer. Open the context menu and choose `New > Other... > Core Data Services > Data Definition` to launch the creation wizard.
2. Enter the necessary information for the wizard to create the CDS custom entity. Choose Define Custom Entity with Parameters as the template. For a detailed description of how to use the wizard, see...

   A new data definition for a CDS custom entity is created and added to the Core Data Services folder of the corresponding package node. In our scenario, the name of the custom entity is `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C` (first suffix for consumption scenario, the second for custom entity).
3. Delete the `with parameters` statement. Parameters are not needed in the current scenario.

**Results**

Unlike CDS views, custom entities do not have a `select` statement to retrieve the data from a data source. The runtime of a custom entity must be implemented in a related ABAP class, which must be referenced using the annotation `@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy`.

**Next Steps**

The elements can now be defined in the editor. At least one element must be `key`. It is also necessary to determine a class for the query implementation in the annotation `@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy`. 
5.6.4.2 Defining the Data Model in a CDS Custom Entity

Context

As described in Scenario Description [page 541], the data for the new OData service is partly retrieved from a foreign S/4HANA system and partly taken from a local database. As we have already generated the proxy artifacts, we can copy the data structure and the data types from the abstract entity /DMO/TRAVEL_C_A. In addition, the additional discount elements are included, which have the same data types as declared in the database table /dmo/traveladd.

Procedure

1. If you have not already done so, open the new data definition for the CDS custom entity in the editor.
2. Define the data model for the new travel service. You can copy the elements from the abstract entity /DMO/TRAVEL_C_A.

   You do not have to use the same names as in the abstract entity, but if you do use a different name, you have to map this manually in the query implementation. For example, the element Memo is renamed to Description in the custom entity.

3. Delete ETAG_ETAG element and the text elements AgencyID_Text and CustomerID_Text.

   **Note**
   You do not need the element ETAG_ETAG from the remote service. We use a calculated eTag in this scenario, which contains the timestamp from the local database table and the time timestamp from the remote service to ensure that no data has changed, neither on the local database table nor in the remote service.

4. Include the additional discount fields from /dmo/traveladd.

   ```
   DiscountPct : abap.dec( 3, 1 );
   DiscountAbs : abap.dec( 16, 3 );
   ```

5. Add the element for the transient field that calculates the total price with discount.

   ```
   TotalPriceWithDiscount: abap.dec(17,3)
   ```

6. Add an element for the calculated eTag.

   ```
   CalculatedEtag : abap.string( 0 );
   ```

7. Define the semantic relation between the amount and currency fields with the relevant annotation.

   ```
   @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
   ```
Results

The following codeblock displays the custom entity elements with the right types and the semantic annotations.

```java
@EndUserText.label: 'CE for Service Consumption Scenario'
define custom entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C
{
    key TravelID               : abap.numc( 8 );
    AgencyID               : abap.numc( 6 );
    CustomerID             : abap.numc( 6 );
    BeginDate              : abap.dats;
    EndDate                : abap.dats;
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    BookingFee             : abap.dec( 17, 3 );
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    TotalPrice             : abap.dec( 17, 3 );
    CurrencyCode           : abap.cuky( 5 );
    Description            : abap.char( 1024 );   //renamed element
    Status                 : abap.char( 1 );
    LastChangedAt          : tzntstmpl;
    DiscountPct            : abap.dec( 3, 1 );
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    DiscountAbs            : abap.dec( 16, 3 );
    @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
    TotalPriceWithDiscount : abap.dec(17,3);
    CalculatedEtag         : abap.string( 0 );
}
```

Next Steps

Before you can activate the CDS custom entity, you need to create an ABAP class that implements the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`. This class needs to be referenced in the entity annotation `@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy`.

5.6.4.3 Creating the Query Implementation Class

Context

The runtime of a CDS custom entity must be implemented manually. Therefore, it requires an ABAP class that implements the `select` method of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` to handle query requests by the client. This class is referenced by the custom entity and is dedicated to implementing the OData client data requests.
Procedure

1. In the Project Explorer, select the relevant package node, open the context menu, and choose New ABAP Class to launch the creation wizard.

2. Follow the steps of the creation wizard and enter the necessary information. In the example scenario, we choose the name /DMO/CL_TRAVEL_C_Q for the query implementation class.

   Once you have completed the wizard, the initially generated source code is displayed and ready for editing.

3. Implement the select method of the query provider interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER.

   The custom entity can only be activated once the select method of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER is implemented in the query implementation class.

   ```
CLA$ /dmo/cl_travel_c_q DEFINITION
   PUBLIC
   FINAL
   CREATE PUBLIC.
   PUBLIC SECTION.
   INTERFACES if_rap_query_provider.
   PROTECTED SECTION.
   PRIVATE SECTION.
   ENDCLA$.
CLA$ /dmo/cl_travel_c_q IMPLEMENTATION.
   METHOD if_rap_query_provider~select.
   ENDMETHOD.
   ENDCLA$.
   ```

4. In the custom entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C, add the entity annotation @ObjectModel.query.implementedBy and reference the newly created query implementation class /DMO/CL_TRAVEL_C_Q.

   The reference to the ABAP class must start with ABAP:

   ```
   @ObjectModel.query.implementedBy: 'ABAP:/dmo/cl_travel_c_q'
   define custom entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C
   ```

5. Activate the custom entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C.

5.6.5 Consuming the Remote OData Service

Address a remote service in your ABAP code and implement the query contract and the transactional behavior for the business object to build a new OData service.

Our service consumption scenario includes the creation of a new OData service in the consuming tenant. You have defined a data model for this service in a CDS custom entity, and now, the unmanaged query must be implemented in a related ABAP class as the query is not managed by a framework.

Additionally, this scenario also illustrates how transactional behavior can be included for the new OData service. To update the discount data, the business object (consisting only of the custom entity in this case) must be equipped with the implementation of the transactional runtime in a behavior pool. This includes the implementation of the interaction phase and save sequence.
Both, the query and the behavior implementation need to retrieve data from the remote service. With the help of a remote client proxy, the connection to the provisioning system is established and read requests are delegated to consume the remote service. The client proxy implementation is done in an auxiliary class for reuse reasons.

Remember

The consumption of a Web API requires the configuration of the involved systems (provisioning and consuming system) to allow the communication between them.

See Prerequisites for the Consumption of a Remote Service [page 541].

The following sections guide you through the implementation steps to instantiate a remote client proxy to reach the provisioning system, to implement the query for read access to the remote service and to implement transactional access to the discount persistence layer.

- Creating a Remote Client Proxy [page 553]
- Implementing the Query for Service Consumption [page 556]
- Adding Transactional Behavior to the Business Object [page 571]

5.6.5.1 Creating a Remote Client Proxy

To enable data retrieval from a remote service, you must establish a connection to the provisioning system and instantiate a client proxy that passes the OData requests to the remote service.

Prerequisites

To be able to address a remote service, make sure that you meet the Prerequisites for the Consumption of a Remote Service [page 541].

Context

A remote client proxy is used when an OData service is consumed remotely using an HTTP request. For reuse reasons, it is useful to instantiate the client proxy in a separate helper class.

Exception and Message Handling

In the service consumption scenario, several types of errors might occur. The execution of query or transactional requests is quite complex, as one request must pass not only the consuming service but also the provisioning service. In different parts of your coding, errors can happen. For example, while trying to connect to the provisioning system, while instantiating the client proxy, while executing the unmanaged query, during the execution of the application logic or during the modification of the discount values. Every kind of error must be handled with a suitable exception and message. Therefore, it is convenient to unite all exceptions and their related message in one exception class and one message class.
Before starting with the implementation of the consumption of the remote service, create an exception and a message class. For more information about exception and message handling, see . . and .

The exception class must inherit from the superclass `CX_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`.

In the example scenario, the name of the exception class is `CX_TRAVEL_SERV_CONS`. The name of the message class is `CM_SERV_CONS`.

**Implementation Steps**

1. **Create an Auxiliary Class for the Client Proxy Implementation**

   - In the *Project Explorer*, select the relevant package node, open the context menu, and choose `New ABAP Class` to launch the creation wizard.
   - Follow the steps of the creation wizard and enter the necessary information. In the example scenario, we choose the name `/DMO/CL_TRAVEL_CP_AUX`. Once you have completed the wizard, the initially generated source code is displayed and ready for editing.
   - For a detailed description of how to use the wizard, see .
   - Declare a static method in the public section of the auxiliary class for the creation of a client proxy:
     
     ```plaintext
     CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_cp_aux DEFINITION
     PUBLIC
     FINAL
     CREATE PUBLIC .
     PUBLIC SECTION.
     CLASS-METHODS:
     get_client_proxy RETURNING VALUE(ro_client_proxy) TYPE REF TO /iwbep/if_cp_client_proxy
     RAISING /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons.
     PROTECTED SECTION.
     PRIVATE SECTION.
     ENDCLASS.
     CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_cp_aux IMPLEMENTATION.
     METHOD get_client_proxy.
     ENDMETHOD.
     ENDCLASS.
     ```

2. **Get the destination to the provisioning system and create an HTTP client**

   To be able to access the provisioning tenant, you must maintain a cloud destination for the foreign system and create an HTTP client. Use the code samples of the service consumption model for this.

   - Call the method `create_by_http_destination` of the class `CL_WEB_HTTP_MANAGER` to create an HTTP client.
   - Call the public static method `create_by_cloud_destination` of the class `CL_HTTP_DESTINATION_PROVIDER` to create a client proxy. Provide the name of the destination and the name of the service instance name. In our scenario, the destination is set up under the name `TRAVEL_BASIC` and the service instance name is `OutboundCommunication`.
   - The method has another input parameter, which relates to the authentication mode. If you do not fill this input parameter, the default authentication is BasicAuthentication with the user of the destination. This can be made explicit by using the parameter with the value `if_a4c_cp_service=>service_specific`.
Include error handling. Use the exception class `/DMO/CX_TRAVEL_SERV_CONS` to raise adequate exception message, for example `Access to remote system failed`. For information about how to work with exception classes and message classes, see.

```
" Getting the destination of foreign system
TRY.
" Getting the destination of foreign system
" Create http client
" Details depend on your connection settings
DATA(lo_http_client) =
cl_web_http_client_manager=>create_by_http_destination(
cl_http_destination_provider=>create_by_cloud_destination(
  i_name                  = 'Travel_Basic',
i_service_instance_name = 'OutboundCommunication' ) ).
" Error handling
CATCH cx_http_dest_provider_error INTO DATA(lx_http_dest_provider_error).
RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
EXPORTING
  textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>remote_access_failed
  previous = lx_http_dest_provider_error.
CATCH cx_web_http_client_error INTO DATA(lx_web_http_client_error).
RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
EXPORTING
  textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>remote_access_failed
  previous = lx_web_http_client_error.
ENDTRY..
```

3. Instantiate the Client Proxy

To consume the remote service from the provisioning system, we need a client proxy that delegates the requests to the remote service. Since our scenario works with OData V2, we need a V2 client proxy.

The service consumption model provides code templates for this.

- Create a client proxy by calling the method `create_v2_remote_proxy` of the class `CL_WEB_ODATA_CLIENT_FACTORY`. The client proxy is instantiated with the service definition generated by the service consumption model, the previously created HTTP client, and the URL path to the Web API.
- Use the exception class `/DMO/CX_TRAVEL_SERV_CONS` to raise adequate exception message, for example `Client Proxy could not be instantiated`. For information about how to work with exception classes and message classes, see.

```
" Instantiation of client proxy
TRY.
  ro_client_proxy = cl_web_odata_client_factory=>create_v2_remote_proxy(
    EXPORTING
    iv_service_definition_name = '/DMO/TRAVEL_C_A'
    io_http_client            = lo_http_client
    iv_relative_service_root   = '/sap/opu/odata/DMO/API_TRAVEL_U_V2' ).
CATCH cx_web_http_client_error INTO lx_web_http_client_error.
RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
EXPORTING
  textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>remote_access_failed
  previous = lx_web_http_client_error.
CATCH /iwbep/cx_gateway INTO DATA(lx_gateway).
RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
EXPORTING
  textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>client_proxy_failed
  previous = lx_gateway.
ENDTRY.
```
5.6.5.2 Implementing the Query for Service Consumption

The following topics guide you through the implementation steps required to execute a query request in a service consumption scenario.

Runtime Logic for the Query in the Service Consumption Scenario

Our scenario has two different data sources. One is a remote service from a possibly different system. To retrieve data from this service, you must have an appropriate connection to the provisioning tenant (see Prerequisites for the Consumption of a Remote Service [page 541]) and the select method in the query implementation class must instantiate a client proxy that executes requests for the remote service. Additionally, it must include the implementation of every query option you want to support. The other data source is a database table in the consuming system that stores the additional discount fields. To retrieve the data from this table, the select method includes an ABAP SQL SELECT.

The following figure illustrates how the query works in the service consumption scenario.

Apart from the simple data retrieval, the scenario also includes the query options filtering, selecting, sorting, and paging. All of these capabilities must be implemented in the query implementation class.

The client proxy is a powerful means to pass on OData requests to the provisioning tenant. It must be instantiated in the query implementation class. All the possible query options of the OData request in the consuming system must then be added to the request for the client proxy. This needs to be done for every
query option separately. After the actual execution of the request and the data retrieval, the data set from the remote service is extended with its matching discount data.

**i Note**
The query options can only be delegated to the client proxy if the query options only affect the elements from the remote service. If the query options are operated on local database fields, they must be implemented manually after the retrieval of the data set from the provisioning system. As this might cause serious performance issues, it is not demonstrated in this example scenario. Consider performance aspects for your use case, if you decide to implement this.

**Structure of the Query**
For every request that is sent to the remote service you need to instantiate the client proxy. The method to create a client proxy. With this client proxy, you create a read request (as you only want to execute a query on the remote service). Before sending this read request to the remote service, it must be equipped with all the necessary query options. For example, whenever the count is requested by the UI, the query option for count must be added to the read request. The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` provides methods to find out which query options are requested by the UI and hence must be delegated to the remote service.

**i Note**
When choosing the GO button on the UI to retrieve data, it always requests the count and paging. Therefore, the implementation for data retrieval must include at least counting and paging. Otherwise you will get a runtime error.

When all necessary query options are added to the request, it can be executed and the result must be given back to the UI.

The procedure for implementing the query implementation is described in the following in detail:

1. Implementing Data and Count Retrieval [page 558]
2. Implementing Filtering [page 564]
3. Implementing Column Selections [page 567]
4. Implementing Sorting [page 569]

**Related Information**

Query Runtime Implementation [page 49]
5.6.5.2.1  Implementing Data and Count Retrieval

To enable data retrieval from a remote service, you must establish a connection to the provisioning tenant and instantiate a client proxy that passes the OData requests to the remote service. The data sets from the remote service are then imported to the consuming tenant and can be merged with additional data.

Preview

Choosing the Go button on an SAP Fiori UI triggers the OData request for data and count retrieval. The UI automatically includes a paging query option with usually 25 data records per page.

Implementation Steps

1. Instantiate the Client Proxy

To send requests to the provisioning system, you need a remote client proxy.

- In the query implementation class, call the method get_client_proxy of the auxiliary class /DMO/CL_TRAVEL_CP_AUX in the select method.

```
METHOD if_rap_query_provider~select.
  "Instantiate Client Proxy"
  DATA(lo_client_proxy) = /dmo/cl_travel_cp_aux=>get_client_proxy( ).
  ...
ENDMETHOD.
```

2. Create a Read Request

To execute a query request on the remote service, a read request for the relevant entity set must be created. This read request will then be enhanced with query options.

- On the client proxy object, call the method create_resource_for_entity_set with the TRAVEL entity set name as importing parameter.

```
i Note
The OData entity set name can be found in the relevant abstract entity:
```
In our scenario, the alias \textit{Travel} is used.

\textbf{i Note}

Use uppercase for the OData entity set name of the entity for this method, since the internal ABAP representation of entity sets is in uppercase.

This method returns an object for the entity set resource.

- Create a read request by calling the method \texttt{create\_request\_for\_read} on the entity set resource.
- Surround the method call with a \texttt{TRY-CATCH} block and include error handling with a suitable error message.

```
TRY.
  "Create Read Request"
  DATA(lo_read_request) = lo_client_proxy->create_resource_for_entity_set( 'TRAVEL' )->create_request_for_read( ).
  CATCH /iwbep/cx_gateway INTO DATA(lx_gateway).
  RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons EXPORTING
      textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>query_failed
      previous = lx_gateway.
ENDTRY.
```

3. Request the Inline Count of the Remote Service

As a Fiori UI always requests the inline count of the service, this request must be delegated to the remote service to get the total number of records from there.

- Within the try-catch Block, check whether the total number of records is requested by the UI by calling the method \texttt{is\_total\_numb\_of\_rec\_requested} of the interface \texttt{IF\_RAP\_QUERY\_REQUEST}.
  For more information about \texttt{is\_total\_numb\_of\_rec\_requested}, see \textbf{Method is\_total\_numb\_of\_rec\_requested [page 951]}.

\textbf{i Note}

The same exception as previously defined can be used for all methods called on the read request.

- Call the method \texttt{request\_count} on the read request.

```
  "Request Count"
  IF lo_request->is\_total\_numb\_of\_rec\_requested( ).
      lo_read_request->request\_count( ).
  ENDIF.
```

4. Implement Paging if Data is Requested

Whenever the UI requests paging, the query framework checks that the query does not return more data records than requested. Therefore, you need to set the paging information for the read request the client proxy sends to the remote service.
Within the try-catch block, check whether data is requested. If data must be returned using the method set_data, the requested paging must be applied. If data does not have to be returned, if is_data_requested returns abap_false, paging is not relevant.

Get the paging information of the UI request into a local variable (ls_paging) by calling the method get_paging of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST. For more information about get_paging, see Method get_paging [page 952].

If the offset is >= 0, pass it to the read-request.

Pass the page size to the read request if it is not unlimited.

**Request Data**

```
IF io_request->is_data_requested().
  **Request Paging**
  DATA(ls_paging) = io_request->get_paging().
  IF ls_paging->get_offset() >= 0.
    lo_read_request->set_skip( ls_paging->get_offset() ).
  ENDIF.
  IF ls_paging->get_page_size() <> if_rap_query_paging=>page_size_unlimited.
    lo_read_request->set_top( ls_paging->get_page_size() ).
  ENDIF.
  ENDIF.
```

5. Execute the Request

The read request for the remote OData service is now equipped with the query options for count $inlinecount=allpages (if total number of records is requested) and for paging $skip and $top (if data is requested). At least, these two query options should be implemented in the query implementation class if the consuming service is a UI service.

**Remember**

By default, the UI sends the query options for counting and paging.

Now, the request can be sent. In other words, it is executed on the remote service.

- Execute the request and write it into a local variable lo_response.

```
**Execute the Request**
  DATA(lo_response) = lo_read_request->execute( ).
```

6. Provide the Count Result for the Response of the Unmanaged Query

The response parameter io_response of IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER~select must be filled with the total number of records that the count request to the remote service returns.

- Check if the total number of records is requested.
- Get the count from the response of the remote service by calling the method get_count on the remote service response object.
7. Provide the Result Data for the Response of the Unmanaged Query

The response parameter `io_response` of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER~select` must be filled with the requested data, which are returned by the remote service and enhanced with the local discount data.

- Check whether data is requested.
- Declare `lt_travel` with the same type as the generated abstract entity. The data from the remote service will be written into that table.
- Declare `lt_travel_ce` with the type of the custom entity. This table is used to fill the output parameter of the select method.
- Declare `lt_traveladd` with the type of the local database table. The data from the database table `/dmo/traveladd` is read into this table.
- Get the data from the response object of remote service request by calling the method `get_business_data` and write it into `lt_travel`.
- If `lt_travel` returns entries, provide a mapping for those elements in the custom entity that are not identical with the names of the abstract entity elements. In our scenario, this concerns the element `Description`.
- Select the local data (discounts) based on the entity sets that are retrieved from the remote service.
- Select the latest time stamp for the discount data.
- Calculate the eTag from the values of the `lastChangedAt` fields of the remote and local service.

**i Note**
The eTag is used to ensure that discount data has not changed. That is why, the retrieved value is overwritten with the initial timestamp for the field.

- Calculate the amount for the field `TotalPriceWithDiscount` if a discount exists.
- If no discount is maintained, fill the field `TotalPriceWithDiscount` with the value of `TotalPrice` without discount and set an initial value for the field `lastchangedat`.
- Set the returned data for the response to the unmanaged query by calling the method `set_data` on the response object of the unmanaged query.
<fs_travel_ce>-discountpct = lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discount_pct.
<fs_travel_ce>-travelid的就是 lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discount_abs.
<fs_travel_ce>-discountpct <= lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discounttabs.
<fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-totalprice * (1 - <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct / 100) - <fs_travel_ce>-discountabs.
<fs_travel_ce>-lastchangedat = lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-lastchangedat.
<fs_travel_ce>-calculatedetag = <fs_travel_ce>-calculatedetag & & '=' & & lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-lastchangedat.
ELSE.
<fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-totalprice.
<fs_travel_ce>-lastchangedat = '20000101120000'
ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDIF.
io_response->set_data( lt_travel_ce ).
ENDIF.

Results

Expand the following listing to view the source code of the query implementation for data retrieval and count:

**Query Implementation Class**

```
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_c_q DEFINITION
PUBLIC
FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC.
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES if_rap_query_provider.
PROTECTED SECTION.
PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_c_q IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD if_rap_query_provider~select.
*****Instantiate Client Proxy
DATA(lo_client_proxy) = /dmo/cl_travel_cp_aux=>get_client_proxy( ).
TRY.
*****Create Read Request
DATA(lo_read_request) = lo_client_proxy->create_resource_for_entity_set( 'TRAVEL' )->create_request_for_read( ).
*****Request Count
IF io_request->is_total_numb_of_rec_requested( ).
  lo_read_request->request_count( ).
ENDIF.
*****Request Data
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
*****Request Paging
  DATA(ls_paging) = io_request->get_paging( ).
  IF ls_paging->get_offset( ) >= 0.
    lo_read_request->set_skip( ls_paging->get_offset( ) ).
  ENDIF.
  IF ls_paging->get_page_size( ) <> if_rap_query_paging=>page_size_unlimited.
    lo_read_request->set_top( ls_paging->get_page_size( ) ).
  ENDIF.
  ENDIF.
```
Execute the Request
DATA(lo_response) = lo_read_request->execute( ).

Set Count
IF lo_request->is_total_numb_of_rec_requested( ).
  io_response->set_total_number_of_records( lo_response->get_count( ) ).
ENDIF.

Set Data
IF lo_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA: lt_travel    TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/travel_c_a,
       lt_travel_ce TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_c_c,
       lt_traveladd TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/traveladd.
  lo_response->get_business_data( IMPORTING et_business_data =
       lt_travel ).
  IF lt_travel IS NOT INITIAL.
    lt_travel_ce = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel MAPPING description =
       memo ).
    SELECT * FROM /dmo/traveladd FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_travel_ce WHERE
travel_id = @lt_travel_ce-travelid INTO TABLE @lt_traveladd.
    LOOP AT lt_travel_ce ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_ce>).
      IF line_exists( lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ] ).
        <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct        = lt_traveladd[ travel_id =
          <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discount_pct.
        <fs_travel_ce>-discountabs        = lt_traveladd[ travel_id =
          <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discount_abs.
        totalprice * ( 1 - <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct / 100 ) - <fs_travel_ce>-
          discountabs.                      totalprice * ( 1 - <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct / 100 ) - <fs_travel_ce>-
          discountabs.                      <fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-
          totalprice * ( 1 - <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct / 100 ) - <fs_travel_ce>-
          discountabs.                      <fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-
          totalprice * ( 1 - <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct / 100 ) - <fs_travel_ce>-
          discountabs.                      totalprice.      <fs_travel_ce>-lastchangedat      = lt_traveladd[ travel_id =
      <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-lastchangedat.
    ELSE.
      <fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-
        totalprice.      <fs_travel_ce>-lastchangedat      = '20000101120000' .
  ENDIF.
ENDLOOP.
ENDIF.
CATCH /iwbep/cx_gateway INTO DATA(lx_gateway).
  RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
    EXPORTING
      textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>query_failed
      previous = lx_gateway.
ENDTRY.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
CATCH /iwbep/cx_gateway INTO DATA(lx_gateway).
  RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
    EXPORTING
      textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>query_failed
      previous = lx_gateway.
ENDTRY.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDIF.
ENDERCLASS.

If you have defined a UI service for the custom entity (see Defining an OData Service [page 587]), you can test your implementation with the SAP Fiori Elements Preview. When you open the app and choose the Go button, you receive the data and the count from the remote service together with the matching discount data.

Related Information

Implementing an Unmanaged Query [page 672]
Implementing Paging in an Unmanaged Query [page 685]
Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST [page 950]
5.6.5.2.2  Implementing Filtering

Filter options can be delegated to the remote service. Fill the request that is passed to the OData client proxy with the query option $filter.

Preview

To retrieve the appropriate entries for the filter, you must implement a filter factory to get the filtered results from the remote service.

Implementation Steps

This scenario only implements filtering by fields of the remote service. The service proxy API provides a filter factory to delegate the filter to the remote service. Filtering by local fields is not supported in this scenario.

i Note

To filter by local fields, you would have to retrieve all available data sets of the remote service and merge the local fields to these first, to be able to filter by discount values then. In this case, paging could not be delegated to the remote service either and would have to be implemented after data retrieval manually. Hence filtering for discount values might cause serious performance issues and is therefore not exemplified in this scenario.

i Note

Filtering on an amount field only works if the end user also provides a filter on the unit field, in our case a currency code. In our scenario, the fields TotalPrice and BookingFee are amount fields. If a filter is entered for these fields, the currency code must be in the filter condition as well. Hence, the implementation must also include the currency every time a filter for the field TotalPrice is supplied.
The filter information is relevant for data and count retrieval. Therefore the implementation for the filter must be independent of the checks for data or count requests. The filter information must be added to the read request for the remote service. So the filter implementation must be called before executing the read request.

- The unmanaged query API provides a method to get the filter conditions from the UI OData request into a local variable. Use `io_request->get_filter()->get_as_ranges()` to get the filter conditions as ranges into a local variable `lt_filter`. Handle the exception if the filter cannot be converted into a ranges table.

  For more information about the unmanaged query filter API, see Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER [page 956].

- Loop over `lt_filter`.

  **Remember**
  
  Some filter requests require special handling before sending them to the remote service:
  
  - Filtering on local fields is not allowed.
  - For filtering on an amount field, the unit must be provided in the filter.

  - Raise an exception with an adequate message, for example `Filtering on &1 is not allowed if filter is requested for a local field.

  - For information about how to work with exception classes and message classes, see and .

  - Find out the currency code for filter requests on amount fields.

  - Raise an exception if currency code is not provided, for example `Currency code is not supplied for &1`.

  - Create the filter property to be passed to the remote service. Map the element `Description` to `Memo` for the remote service to match the data model of the remote service.

  - Create a filter factory to provide the filter request for the client proxy.

  - Create the filter ranges for the remote service by calling the method `create_by_range` of the filter factory and export the filter property, the filter range and, if necessary, the currency code.

  - If a filter is defined for more than one element, concatenate the filter condition.

  - Set the filter for the request.

```abap
TRY.
  DATA(lt_filter) = io_request->get_filter()->get_as_ranges().
  CATCH cx_rap_query_filter_no_range INTO DATA(lx_no_range).
  RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons
      EXPORTING
textid   = /dmo/cx_travel_serv_cons=>no_ranges
previous = lx_no_range.
```

```
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop PUBLIC 565
```
Results

If you have defined a UI service for the custom entity (see Defining an OData Service [page 587]), you can test your implementation with the SAP Fiori Elements Preview. You can define filters and check that the UI only retrieves data that matches the filter request.
Related Information

Implementing Filtering in an Unmanaged Query [page 679]
Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER [page 956]

5.6.5.2.3  Implementing Column Selections

Select options can be delegated to the remote service. Fill the request that is passed to the OData client proxy with the query option $select.

Preview

The SAP Fiori UI allows you to select columns.

![SAP Fiori UI columns selection](image)

To retrieve the appropriate data, you must transfer the selected properties to the read request for the remote service.
Implementation Steps

You can optimize the performance if you only select those elements from the remote service that are selected on the UI. The local fields are selected separately. Therefore, you must exclude the local fields from the requested data elements as they are not delegated to the remote service.

Considering the requested elements from the UI when delegating the request to the remote service is only necessary when data is requested. Therefore the implementation must only be called if data is requested before the execution of the read request.

- The unmanaged query API provides a method to get those elements that are requested by the UI. Use
  \[\text{DATA(lt\_req\_elements) = io\_request->get\_requested\_elements( ).}\]
  to get the elements into a local variable.
  For more information about the unmanaged query API, see Interface IF\_RAP\_QUERY\_REQUEST [page 950].
- Delete the local elements from the properties that are selected.

\[\rightarrow \text{Remember}\]
Local fields are not delegated to the remote service. They are selected manually.

- Loop over \text{lt\_req\_elements} and map the element Description to Memo for the remote service to match the data model of the remote service.
- Declare \text{lt\_select\_properties} and type it as a table of property paths. This table contains the properties that are given to the client proxy for creating the select query option.
- Fill the table \text{lt\_select\_properties} that is given to the client proxy with the elements to be selected from the remote service.
- Set the select properties for the OData request of the remote service.

```abap
"Request Elements
DATA(lt_req_elements) = io_request->get_requested_elements( ).
delete local fields out of the fields to be selected via OData Client Proxy
DELETE lt_req_elements WHERE table_line = 'DISCOUNTPCT' OR table_line = 'DISCOUNTABS' OR table_line = 'TOTALPRICEWITHDISCOUNT' OR table_line = 'CALCULATEDETAG'.

"map differing names
LOOP AT lt_req_elements ASSIGNING <fs_req_elements>. 
  DATA(lv_select_property) = COND /iwbep/
  if_cp_runtime_types=>ty_property_path( WHEN <fs_req_elements> = 'DESCRIPTION' THEN 'MEMO' ).
  ELSE <fs_req_elements> TYPE /iwbp/
  if_cp_runtime_types=>ty_t_property_path.
  APPEND lv_select_property TO lt_select_properties.
  ENDLOOP.

"set select properties
IF lt_select_properties IS NOT INITIAL.
  lo_read_request->set_select_properties( lt_select_properties ).
ENDIF.
```
Results

If you have defined a UI service for the custom entity (see Defining an OData Service [page 587]), you can test your implementation with the SAP Fiori Elements Preview. Trigger the selection by choosing columns on the SAP Fiori UI and check whether the request works.

Related Information

Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST [page 950]
Considering Requested Elements in an Unmanaged Query [page 688]

5.6.5.2.4 Implementing Sorting

Sorting options can be delegated to the remote service. Fill the request that is passed to the OData client proxy with the relevant query option $orderby.

Preview

To retrieve the data in the appropriate order, you must add sorting information to the request for the OData client proxy.

Implementation Steps

This scenario only implements sorting by fields of the remote service. The service proxy API provides the method set_order_by to delegate the sorting order to the remote service.

I Note

To sort by local fields, you would have to retrieve all available data sets of the remote service and merge the local fields to these first, to be able to sort by discount values then. In this case, paging could not be
delegated to the remote service either and would have to be implemented after data retrieval manually. Hence, sorting by discount values might cause serious performance issues and is therefore not exemplified in this scenario.

The sorting information is only relevant if you retrieve data. Therefore the implementation must only be called if data is requested to equip the read request for the remote service with this information.

- The unmanaged query API provides a method to get the sorting information. Use `DATA(lt_sort) = io_request->get_sort_elements( ).` to get the sorting information into a local variable.
  For more information about the unmanaged query API, see Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST [page 950].
- Loop over `lt_sort`.

  ```
  "Request Sorting
  DATA(lt_sort) = io_request->get_sort_elements( ).
  LOOP AT lt_sort ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_sort>).
    IF <fs_sort>-element_name = 'DISCOUNTPCT' OR 
      <fs_sort>-element_name = 'DISCOUNTABS' OR 
      <fs_sort>-element_name = 'TOTALPRICEWITHDISCOUNT' OR 
      <fs_sort>-element_name = 'CALCULATEDETAG'.
      RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_travel_query 
      EXPORTING 
      textid = /dmo/cx_travel_query=>sorting_failed 
      element = <fs_sort>-element_name.
    ENDIF.

  "map differing names
  DATA: lt_sort_properties TYPE /iwbep/ 
  if_cp_runtime_types=>ty_t_sort_order.
  APPEND VALUE #( property_path = COND #( WHEN <fs_sort>-element_name 
    = 'DESCRIPTION' THEN 'MEMO' 
    ELSE <fs_sort>-element_name ) 
    descending = <fs_sort>-descending ) 
  TO lt_sort_properties.
  ENDLOOP.

  "set sorting properties
  IF lt_sort_properties IS NOT INITIAL.
    lo_read_request->set_orderby( lt_sort_properties ).
  ENDIF.
  ENDIF.
  ```
Results

If you have defined a UI service for the custom entity (see Defining an OData Service [page 587]), you can test your implementation with the SAP Fiori Elements Preview. Try out the sorting on different elements and check whether the results are sorted or an exception is thrown.

Related Information

Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST [page 950]
Implementing Sorting in an Unmanaged Query [page 686]

5.6.5.3 Adding Transactional Behavior to the Business Object

The following steps guide you through the implementation steps to update a business object when a remote service is merged with local data.

Like in Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348], creating, updating, and deleting data requires a transactional runtime implementation. The service consumption scenario is also a use case for the unmanaged implementation type as the transactional logic is defined and implemented by the application developer. That means, the transactional behavior must be defined in a behavior definition [page 1019] and has to be implemented in ABAP classes of a behavior pool [page 1019].

\[Note\]
This scenario only supports transactional activities on the data that is persisted on a database table in the consuming tenant. Transactional operations on the remote service are not supported.

In this example scenario, only the discount data can be manipulated by the end user. The fields on the database table /dmo/traveladd that can be changed are discount_pct and discount_abs. The travel instance for which the discount is maintained is identified by the travel ID, which is retrieved from the remote service. Travel ID is a key field and therefore cannot be changed by the end user. For the eTag check, a distinct field CalculatedeTag is used. Its value is concatenated with the timestamp of the remote service and the timestamp from the local database table.

The following tasks are relevant to include transactional behavior for the business object:

- Defining a Behavior for the Business Object [page 572]
- Implementing the Behavior Pool for the Business Object [page 574]
5.6.5.3.1 Defining a Behavior for the Business Object

The transactional behavior of the travel business object must be defined in a behavior definition.

To get transactional access to the local data, the data model must be turned into a business object. The custom entity `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C` must be defined as root entity.

1. Open the custom entity `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C` and insert the keyword root. A behavior definition can only be created for a root entity.

```
define root custom entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C
```

2. Activate the root custom entity.

Creating a Behavior Definition `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C`

By creating a behavior definition [page 1020], the referenced root entity gains a transactional character. In the behavior definition, you define the transactional capabilities of your business object. It is directly related to the root custom entity and must therefore have the same name `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C`.

1. In the Project Explorer, select the relevant node for the data definition that contains the CDS root entity `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_C_C`, for which you want to create a behavior definition.
2. Open the context menu and select New Behavior Definition to launch the creation wizard.
3. Follow the steps of the creation wizard to create the behavior definition.

! Note

The implementation type of a custom entity can only be unmanaged. That is why, the wizard only allows this option.

Result

The created behavior definition object represents the root node of a new business object in ABAP RESTful application programming model.

In the Project Explorer, the new behavior definition is added to the Core Data Services folder.

For more information, see Creating Behavior Definitions [page 967].

Defining the Behavior for the Travel Business Object with Discount Data

For the service consumption scenario, only the implementation type unmanaged [page 375] is supported. That means, you as an application developer must implement the essential components of the business object yourself.

→ Remember

Our scenario is limited to modifying the data that is stored on the database table `/dmo/traveladd`. 
Looking at the data model of the custom entity and its data sources, that means that only the discount data can be modified.

```json
{
  "key": {
    "TravelID": "abap.numc(8)",
    "AgencyID": "abap.numc(6)",
    "AgencyID_Text": "abap.char(80)",
    "CustomerID": "abap.numc(6)",
    "CustomerID_Text": "abap.char(40)",
    "BeginDate": "abap.dats",
    "EndDate": "abap.dats",
  }
  "data from remote service": {
    "@Semantics.amount.currencyCode": "CurrencyCode",
    "BookingFee": "abap.dec(17,3)",
    "TotalPrice": "abap.dec(17,3)",
    "CurrencyCode": "abap.cuhy(5)",
    "Description": "abap.char(1024)" //renamed element
  }
  "data from local database table": {
    "DiscountPct": "abap.dec(3,1)",
    "DiscountAbs": "abap.dec(16,3)",
    "TotalPriceWithDiscount": "abap.dec(17,3)",
    "LastChangedAt": "timestamp"
  }
}
```

The description of modifying the data that is exposed by the remote service is out of scope of this document. Nevertheless, each manipulation of the persistent data requires the retrieval of the remote data, as the discount data can only be stored in conjunction with the travel ID to match the discount to the relevant travel entry of the remote service. That is why, the creation of new discounts for a travel entry is considered as an update on a certain travel instance of the business object. In the case of creating a data set of discount data, you change the discount from the initial value but the key entry (TRAVEL_ID) is already there.

Compare the UI when retrieving the travel data merged with the discount data. The discount fields are displayed with the initial values if no discount data is maintained for the relevant travel instances.

The modification of discount data is an UPDATE. Hence, we do not need to implement neither the CREATE nor the DELETE operation to maintain discount data.

A distinct field must be indicated as ETag [page 376] in the behavior definition. The eTag checks that the data the end user sees that on the UI is consistent with the data on the database and has not been changed in the meantime. The element CalculatedEtag is used for this purpose and calculated with data from the database table /dmo/traveladd and the remote service. This ensure that neither the remote data nor the local data can be changed without the end user knowing the change.

The newly created behavior definition requires
• defining an update (delete the definitions of create and delete if they are generated)
• defining the field for the eTag

The following code block displays the behavior definition with the definitions that are relevant for the transactional behavior of the business object.

```abap
implementation unmanaged;
define behavior for /DMOI_/TRAVEL_C_C alias Travel_CE
etag calculatedetag
{
  update;
}
```

**i Note**

For better usability in the behavior implementation, you can define an alias for the business object in the behavior definition.

**Related Information**

Adding Behavior to the Business Object [page 373]

### 5.6.5.3.2 Implementing the Behavior Pool for the Business Object

The implementation of behavior is done in the local types of an ABAP class.

**Creating a Behavior Pool** /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_C_C

A behavior pool [page 1019] for a behavior implementation is needed to implement the behavior that was defined in a behavior definition. A behavior pool is a special ABAP class that is equipped with the extension FOR BEHAVIOR OF and references the root entity of the relevant business object.

1. In the **Project Explorer**, select the relevant behavior definition for which you want to create a behavior implementation class.
2. Open the context menu and select **New Behavior Implementation** to launch the creation wizard.
3. Follow the steps of the creation wizard and check if the suggested entries are correct.

**Result**

The generated global class pool provides you with the extension FOR BEHAVIOR OF with reference to the behavior definition. This statement determines the connection to the business object. One behavior implementation can only define the behavior for one business object.
In the local types, a handler class with an **UPDATE method for modify** [page 928] is generated. The generated saver class contains the methods **FINALIZE**, **CHECK BEFORE SAVE**, and **SAVE**, the predefined standard methods for the save sequence.

For more information, see *Creating Behavior Implementations* [page 970].

### Runtime Logic for Transactional Behavior in the Service Consumption Scenario

In a service consumption scenario, the transactional behavior for the business object (the updating of discount data) must be implemented in the local types of a behavior pool. The implementation includes the data retrieval from the remote service, merging the remote data with the local discount data and finally updating the local discount data. Hence, the logic of how to access a foreign system also comes into play when updating local data. To keep performance expenses on a low level, it is indispensable to work with a transactional buffer and retrieve the remote data only once in one unit of work. Therefore we use a local buffer class to work actively with a transactional buffer.

The runtime of an update operation of the discount data is displayed in the following diagram. It illustrates how the methods for **READ**, **MODIFY**, and **SAVE** and the local buffer class interact with each other and how the OData client proxy is used to request the necessary data from the remote service.

**SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model**

**Develop**

**PUBLIC** 575
• **get_data**
  To receive data the Client Proxy is used. To instantiate the client proxy object, the method `get_client_proxy` is called. With this request object, you can define the resource object of the entity set and define the HTTP operation. After the execution, the data can be read from the response object returned by the execution.
  In case of an error, the FAILED table is filled and can be used to raise an application error.

• **get_client_proxy**
  This method establishes a cloud destination to the provisioning tenant and instantiates the client proxy. The destination is used at runtime for retrieving data from the remote service.

• **put_data**
  This method calls `get_data` to retrieve the remote data. Additionally, it updates the local discount data for the retrieved entity and calculates the total price with discount. Finally, the method merges the remote and local data.
  If there is an error, the FAILED table is filled and can be used to raise an application error.

A detailed step-by-step description for the implementation of the local buffer class is given in Implementing the Buffer Class [page 577].

**read_travel** FOR READ

For the ETag check (which is necessary for the UPDATE operation), a method for the READ operation must be implemented.

The latest timestamp of the field `lastchangedat` from `/dmo/traveladd` is used to compare with the data in `Last changed on` that is displayed on the UI. Only if these timestamps are equal is the UPDATE triggered.

← Remember

The field `lastchangedat` is filled with the time stamp of the last modification of the discount data. In our example scenario, only the timestamp from the database table `/dmo/traveladd` is relevant as only these fields can be updated.

The eTag field is filled with the initial value if no discount is maintained for a certain travel instance.

→ Note

The example implementation in this guide does not only retrieve the data from the relevant ETag fields, but reads the whole data set when the READ operation is executed, including the merge with the persistent data. This is done for performance reasons. To calculate the total price with discount, the value of the field `TotalPrice` from the remote instance is needed. Therefore it is more convenient to read the whole data set once, store it in the buffer and use this data set for the calculation on the update.

A detailed step-by-step description for the implementation of the READ is given in Implementing the READ [page 582].

For general information about the READ method, see `<method>` FOR READ [page 933].

**update_discount** FOR MODIFY

The real update takes place during the MODIFY operation. The method `update_discount` calls the buffer method `put_data`, which uses the method `get_data` to retrieve the data from the buffer (if available). The discount data is updated and the entry for the transient field `TotalPriceWithDiscount` is calculated.
The method `update_discount` also calls the method `_map_messages`, which wraps the messages to write them in the `REPORTED` table.

A detailed step-by-step description for the implementation of the `MODIFY` is given in Implementing the `MODIFY` [page 583].

For general information about the `MODIFY` method, see `<method>` FOR MODIFY [page 928].

**SAVE**

The save method writes the updated data to the database. It uses the method `get_data` to retrieve the updated data from the buffer. It generates a new time stamp to fill the field `lastchangedat` on the database table `/dmo/traveladd`. At last, it persists the updated data on the database table.

A detailed step-by-step description is given in Implementing the `SAVE` [page 586].

For general information about the `SAVE` method, see Method `SAVE` [page 941].

### Implementation Steps

In this service consumption scenario, the `READ` and the `MODIFY` method, including a `_map_messages` method are treated in one handler class, as the retrieved data from the `READ` is reused in the `MODIFY` method. This relies to the Best Practices for Modularization and Performance [page 382].

This guide starts with the implementation of the buffer and consequently describes calls of the buffer methods from the predefined methods `READ`, `MODIFY`, and `SAVE`.

- [Implementing the Buffer Class][page 577]
- [Implementing the `READ`][page 582]
- [Implementing the `MODIFY`][page 583]
- [Implementing the `SAVE`][page 586]

---

### 5.6.5.3.2.1  Implementing the Buffer Class

The local buffer class serves as intermediate storage for the data processing in the service consumption scenario. It is a separate local class in the behavior pool.

#### Creating a Buffer Class

The buffer must be accessed from the predefined methods `READ`, `MODIFY`, and `SAVE`.

1. Create a local buffer class `lcl_buffer` in the local types of the behavior implementation pool.
2. Set the local class to `PRIVATE`.

**Listing: Local Buffer Class**

```abap
CLASS lcl_buffer DEFINITION CREATE PRIVATE.
ENDCLASS.
```

```abap
CLASS lcl_buffer IMPLEMENTATION.
```

---
Creating a Buffer Instance

When working with a transactional buffer to store and process data, an instance of the buffer must be created at first. The singleton pattern is used to ensure that there is only one existing buffer instance of the application buffer.

1. Declare the static method `get_instance` which returns a buffer instance in the public section of the buffer class
2. Implement `get_instance` to receive a buffer instance if no instance exists

Listing: Declaration and Implementation of `get_instance`

```abap
CLASS lcl_buffer DEFINITION CREATE PRIVATE.
  PUBLIC SECTION.
    CLASS-METHODS get_instance
      RETURNING VALUE(ro_instance) TYPE REF TO lcl_buffer.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
    CLASS-DATA: go_instance TYPE REF TO lcl_buffer.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS lcl_buffer IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD get_instance.
    IF go_instance IS NOT BOUND.
      go_instance = NEW #( ).
    ENDIF.
    ro_instance = go_instance.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

Retrieving Data from the Remote Service

The following listing represents the signature and implementation of the method `get_data` that retrieves data from the remote service, if it is not already in the buffer. The implementation of the method includes

1. checking whether the travel instance for which discount data is to be updated is already in the buffer and writing it to the exporting parameter `et_travel`, if available in the buffer. If not in the buffer, the `travel_id` has to be collected to retrieve the relevant data from the persistence.
2. the instantiation of a client proxy, by calling the method `get_client_proxy` of the auxiliary class `/DMO/CL_TARVEL_CP_AUX`, see Creating a Remote Client Proxy [page 553].
3. a reading request for the client proxy with a filter for only requesting the data set for the specific `travel ID`
4. a select to get and calculate the matching discount data from the database table `/dmo/traveladd` and to process the time stamp for the ET ag field. A concatenated eTag from the fields `lastchangedat` of both, the remote and the local service, is used.
5. calculating the `TotalPriceWithDiscount` and setting an initial time stamp if no discount data has changed.
6. filling the `FAILED` table if the `travel id` is not found.
7. error handling if the access to the remote system fails.

→ Remember

The eTag is used to ensure that discount data has not changed. That is why, the retrieved value is not used for the eTag check but the concatenated value is passed to the UI.
If you want to display a suitable message, you need to create a message class. For example, here, the message `Access to remote system cannot be established` is convenient. It is retrieved from the message class `/DMO/CM_SERV_CONS`.

For information about how to create a message class, see the SAP ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model.

**Listing:** Declaration and Implementation of `get_data`

```abap
CLASS lcl_buffer DEFINITION CREATE PRIVATE.
  PUBLIC SECTION.
  CLASS-METHODS get_instance
    RETURNING VALUE(ro_instance) TYPE REF TO lcl_buffer.
  TYPES:
    BEGIN OF ts_message,
      travelid TYPE /dmo/i_travel_c_c-travelid,
      symsg TYPE symsg,
      fields TYPE string_table,
    END OF ts_message,

tt_travel_ TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_c_c,

tt_travel_in TYPE TABLE FOR READ IMPORT /dmo/i_travel_c_c,

tt_travel_out TYPE TABLE FOR READ RESULT /dmo/i_travel_c_c,

tt_travel_failed TYPE TABLE FOR FAILED /dmo/i_travel_c_c,

tt_message TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF ts_message.

METHODS get_data
  IMPORTING
    it_travel TYPE tt_travel_in OPTIONAL
  EXPORTING
    et_travel TYPE tt_travel_out
    et_travel_failed TYPE tt_travel_failed
    et_message TYPE tt_message
  RAISING
    /DMO/cx_travel_query.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  CLASS-DATA: go_instance TYPE REF TO lcl_buffer.
  DATA: mt_travel TYPE tt_travel.

ENDCLASS.

CLASS lcl_buffer IMPLEMENTATION.

METHOD get_data.
  DATA: lt_travel TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/travel_c_a.
  DATA: ls_result LIKE LINE OF et_travel.
  DATA: lt_travel_id TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_c_c-travelid.
  DATA: lt_filter TYPE RANGE OF /dmo/i_travel_c_c-travelid.
  DATA: ls_filter LIKE LINE OF lt_filter.
  DATA: lt_travel_ce TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_c_c.
  DATA: lt_traveladd TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/traveladd.
  FIELD-SYMBOLS: <fs_travel_ce> LIKE LINE OF lt_travel_ce.

  IF it_travel IS SUPPLIED.
    LOOP AT it_travel ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel>).
      IF line_exists( mt_travel[ travelid = <fs_travel>-travelid ] ).
        ls_result = CORRESPONDING #( mt_travel[ travelid = <fs_travel>-travelid ] ).
      ELSE.
        "collect to retrieve from persistence
        APPEND <fs_travel>-travelid TO lt_travel_id.
      ENDIF.
    ENDLOOP.
    IF lt_travel_id IS NOT INITIAL.
      TRY.
        DATA(lo_client_proxy) = /dmo/cl_travel_cp_aux=>get_client_proxy( ).
        DATA(lo_request) = lo_client_proxy->create_resource_for_entity_set( 'TRAVEL' )->create_request_for_read( ).
      ENDTRY.
      IF lt_travel_id IS NOT INITIAL.
        TRY.
          ...
lt_filter = VALUE #( FOR travel_id IN lt_travel_id ( sign = 'I'
option = 'EQ' low = travel_id ) ) -
DATA(lo_filter) = lo_request->create_filter_factory()
>create_by_range( iv_property_path = 'TRAVELID'
    it_range         = lt_filter ).
lo_request->set_filter( lo_filter ).
DATA(lo_response) = lo_request->execute( ).
get relevant data sets
lo_response->get_business_data( IMPORTING et_business_data =
lt_travel ).
" add local data
IF lt_travel IS NOT INITIAL.
    lt_travel_ce = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel MAPPING description =
    memo ).
    SELECT * FROM /dmo/traveladd FOR ALL ENTRIES IN @lt_travel_ce
WHERE travel_id = @lt_travel_ce-travelid INTO TABLE @lt_traveladd.
    LOOP AT lt_travel_id ASSIGNING <fs_travel_id>.
        IF line_exists( lt_travel_ce[ travelid = <fs_travel_id> ] ).
            ASSIGN lt_travel_ce[ travelid = <fs_travel_id> ] TO
<fs_travel_ce>.
            IF line_exists( lt_traveladd[ travelid = <fs_travel_ce>-
travelid ] ).
                <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct = lt_traveladd[ travelid
= <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discount_pct.
                <fs_travel_ce>-discountabs = lt_traveladd[ travelid
= <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-discount_abs.
<fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-totalprice
* ( 1 - <fs_travel_ce>-discountpct / 100 ) - <fs_travel_ce>-
discountabs.
                <fs_travel_ce>-lastchangedat = lt_traveladd[ travelid
= <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-lastchangedat.
                <fs_travel_ce>-calculatedetag = <fs_travel_ce>-
calculatedetag && '-' && lt_traveladd[ travel_id = <fs_travel_ce>-travelid ]-
lastchangedat.
            ELSE.
                <fs_travel_ce>-totalpricewithdiscount = <fs_travel_ce>-
totalprice.
                <fs_travel_ce>-lastchangedat = '20000101120000'. "initial
value Jan 1, 2000, 12:00:00 AM
            ENDIF.
            1s_result = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_travel_ce> ).
            APPEND <fs_travel_ce> TO mt_travel.
            APPEND 1s_result - TO et_travel.
            ELSE.
                APPEND VALUE #( travelid = <fs_travel_id> ) TO
et_travel_failed.
                APPEND VALUE #( travelid = <fs_travel_id>
symsg-msgty = 'E'
symsg-msgid = '/DMO/CM_SERV_CONS'
symsg-msgno = '004'
symsg-msgv1 = <fs_travel_id> )
TO et_message.
            ENDIF.
        ELSE.
            APPEND VALUE #( travelid = <fs_travel_id> ) TO
et_travel_failed.
            APPEND VALUE #( travelid = <fs_travel_id>
symsg-msgty = 'E'
symsg-msgid = '/DMO/CM_SERV_CONS'
symsg-msgno = '001'
symsg-msgv1 = <fs_travel_id> )
TO et_message.
            ENDIF.
        ENDLOOP.
    ENDLOOP.
CATCH /iwbep/cx_gateway.
    et_travel_failed = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel_id MAPPING travelid =
table_line ).
    et_message = CORRESPONDING #( lt_travel_id MAPPING travelid =
table_line ).
    LOOP AT et_message ASSIGNING FIELD-Symbol(<fs_message>).
        <fs_message>-symsg-msgty = 'E'.
        <fs_message>-symsg-msgid = '/DMO/CM_SERV_CONS'.
        <fs_message>-symsg-msgno = '001'.
    ENDLOOP.
ENDTRY.
Updating the Discount Data

With the preceding method, the data is retrieved from the remote service into the buffer. The essence of the `UPDATE` operation, however, is done with the method `put_data`. It uses the data in the buffer, which is already enriched with the additional discount data from the database table `/dmo/traveladd`, and writes the new discount data in the buffer. This is done by

1. calling the method `get_data` to retrieve the data from the buffer
2. looping at `it_travel_upd` to identify the changed fields
3. overwriting the changed fields with the new discount data
4. calculating the data for `TotalPriceWithDiscount`
5. filling the `FAILED` table in case the total price with discount is negative after discount calculation.

---

### Note

If you want to display a suitable message, you need to add a message to the message class `/DMO/CM_SERV_CONS`. In this case, an exception needs to be thrown if the `Total Price with Discount` is negative. For example, here, the message `Total Price with Discount must be greater than 0` is convenient.

For information about how to create a message class, see...

6. writing the updated data set to the buffer.

**Listing: Declaration and Implementation of `put_data`**

```abap
CLASS lcl_buffer DEFINITION CREATE PRIVATE.
PUBLIC SECTION.
  "types used in put_data
  TYPES:
    tt_travel_upd    TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE /dmo/i_travel_c_c,
    tt_travel_mapped TYPE TABLE FOR MAPPED /dmo/i_travel_c_c.
METHODS put_data
  IMPORTING it_travel_upd    TYPE tt_travel_upd
  EXPORTING et_travel        TYPE tt_travel Failed
  et_message       TYPE tt_message.
...
ENDCLASS.

CLASS lcl_buffer IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD put_data.
  get_data(
    EXPORTING it_travel        = CORRESPONDING #( it_travel_upd mapping %key =
      %key except * )
    IMPORTING et_travel        = data(lt_travel)
    et_travel_failed = DATA(lt_travel_failed)
    et_message       = DATA(lt_message)
  ).
  LOOP AT it_travel_upd ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel_upd>).
    CHECK line_exists( lt_travel[ KEY entity COMPONENTS travelid =
      <fs_travel_upd>-travelid ] ).
    ASSIGN lt_travel[ KEY entity COMPONENTS travelid = <fs_travel_upd>-travelid ] TO FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel>).
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Develop

PUBLIC  581
The READ method processes reading requests. Hence, it is necessary to retrieve the data from the field `lastchangedat`.

This implementation does not only retrieve the time stamp, which is used for the eTag check, but the whole data set to store it in the buffer and use it in the actual UPDATE phase without retrieving the data again. The implementation must ensure that this data is retrieved and handed over to the framework, which handles the comparison with the time stamp of the UI. It is also the framework that prevents the update if the time stamps do not match.

See `<method>` FOR READ [page 933] for information about parameters of the READ.

**Declaring a method for READ**

A code template for the READ method is generated automatically if an update is declared in the behavior definition.

1. Rename the method for read in the definition part of the handler class with the importing parameter `it_travel_read` and the result parameter `et_traveladdinfo`, which is used for the ETag check. The implementation.

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel_update DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
```
Implementing the method for **READ**

The actual **READ** is done by the method `get_data` in the buffer class. It either retrieves the data from the remote system into the buffer or reads the data from the buffer. The data is provided with the result parameter `et_traveladdinfo`. The method `read_travel` instantiates the buffer and calls the method `get_data`.

1. Instantiate the buffer with the method `get_instance`.
2. Call the `get_data` method of the buffer class to get the data into `et_traveladdinfo`. If the **READ** does not return the requested instance, the key of the instance to be read must be written in the `failed` table.

→ Remember

The `failed` table is an implicit changing parameter of the **READ** method.

```
METHOD read_travel.
  DATA(lo_buffer) = lcl_buffer=>get_instance( ).
  lo_buffer->get_data(
    EXPORTING
      it_travel          = it_travel_read
    IMPORTING
      et_traveladdinfo   = et_traveladdinfo
      et_travel_failed   = failed-travel_ce
  ).
ENDMETHOD.
```

**5.6.5.3.2.3** 🌋 Implementing the **MODIFY**

The **MODIFY** updates data.

The **MODIFY** method is called by the framework when an **UPDATE** is defined in the behavior definition. It modifies the data in the application buffer. In this consumption scenario, the buffer method `put_data` is called to do this. To return adequate messages, the **MODIFY** method also includes a mapping method for messages.

Declaring a method for **MODIFY**

The declaration of the **MODIFY** method is generated by the template for the behavior implementation as the **UPDATE** was declared in the behavior definition.

1. Change the name of the **MODIFY** method to the more transparent name `update_discount`. Change the name of the importing parameter into `it_travel_update`.

```
CLASS lhc_travel_update DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
  ...  METHODS update_discount FOR MODIFY
        IMPORTING it_travel_update FOR UPDATE travel_ce.
  ...
```
Implementing the method for **MODIFY**

The real update is done by the method `put_data` in the buffer class. This method firstly calls the method `get_data` to retrieve the data from the buffer or get it from the remote service. Then it updates the discount data for the selected travel instance and calculates the amount for `TotalPriceDiscount`.

For the processing of the appropriate messages if there is a fault event, the method `_map_messages` is called within the method `update_discount`.

1. Instantiate the buffer with the method `get_instance`.
2. Call the `put_data` method of the buffer class to update the discount data for the selected travel ID.
   - If the `UPDATE` does not work, the key of the failed travel instance must be written in the `failed` table.

   → **Remember**

   The `failed` table is an implicit changing parameter of the method for **MODIFY**.

   Write the messages of `put_data` into a local table `lt_message`.
3. Call the `_map_messages` method to map `lt_message` to the `reported` table.

   → **Remember**

   The `reported` table is an implicit changing parameter of the method for **MODIFY**.

   ```abap
   METHOD update_discount.
   DATA(lo_buffer) = lcl_buffer=>get_instance( ).
   lo_buffer->put_data(
      EXPORTING
      it_travel_upd      = it_travel_update
      IMPORTING
      et_travel_failed   = failed-travel_ce
      et_message         = DATA(lt_message)
   ).
   _map_messages(
      EXPORTING
      it_message         = lt_message
      IMPORTING
      et_travel_reported = reported-travel_ce
   ).
   ENDMETHOD.
   ```

**Message Handling**

In case of failure, the issue has to be transferred to the `REPORTED` table, which includes all instance-specific messages. For the processing of such messages, the method `_map_messages` is used. In the consumption scenario, it is defined in the local handler class, as it is only used in the **MODIFY** method.
Declare \_map\_messages

1. Declare the method \_map\_messages with an importing parameter \_it\_message that is compatible to the type the method put\_data returns for messages, and an exporting parameter \_et\_travel\_reported that is compatible to the reported table of the travel entity.

```abap
CLASS lhc_travel_update DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.

PRIVATE SECTION.

... TYPES: tt_travel_reported TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED /dmo/i_travel_ce.

METHODS: \_map\_messages IMPORTING it_message TYPE lcl_buffer=>tt_message EXPORTING et_travel_reported TYPE tt_travel_reported.

... ENDCLASS.
```

Implement \_map\_messages

To write messages to the REPORTED table, they have to align with a fixed structure. Messages for this structure are created via the method \_new\_message, which is inherited from the interface IF_ABAP_BEHV\_MESSAGE.

1. For each message in \_it\_message, create a new message for the REPORTED table by calling the method \_new\_message.
2. Fill the relevant fields in \_ls\_travel\_reported with the travel\_id of the message and change the flag for the element which causes the message.

```abap
METHOD \_map\_messages.

DATA: ls_travel_reported LIKE LINE OF et_travel_reported.

FIELD-SYMBOLS: <fs_element> TYPE data.

LOOP AT it_message ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_message>).

CLEAR ls_travel_reported.

ls_travel_reported-%msg = new_message( id = <fs_message>-symsgmsgid
number = <fs_message>-symsgmsgno
severity = if_abap_behv_message=>severity-error
v1 = <fs_message>-symsgmsgv1
v2 = <fs_message>-symsgmsgv2
v3 = <fs_message>-symsgmsgv3
v4 = <fs_message>-symsgmsgv4
).

IF <fs_message>-travelid IS NOT INITIAL.

ls_travel_reported-%key-travelid = <fs_message>-travelid.

ls_travel_reported-travelid = <fs_message>-travelid.

LOOP AT <fs_message>-fields ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_field>).

ASSIGN COMPONENT <fs_field> OF STRUCTURE ls_travel_reported-%element TO <fs_element>.

CHECK sy-subrc = 0.

<fs_element> = if_abap_behv=>mk-on.

ENDLOOP.

APPEND ls_travel_reported TO et_travel_reported.

ENDIF.

ENDLOOP.

ENDMETHOD.
```
Implementing the SAVE

The template for the behavior implementation provides you with the method declarations for redefinitions of the save sequence.

```
CLASS lsc_travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
    METHODS finalize          REDEFINITION.
    METHODS check_before_save REDEFINITION.
    METHODS save              REDEFINITION.
  ENDCLASS.
```

**Note**

In this consumption scenario, we do not exemplify the implementation for `finalize` and `check_before_save` as both of the implementations are optional and not required in our sample scenario.

In the method `SAVE`, the transactional buffer is saved to the database. The following listing illustrates the procedure for the `SAVE` implementation. The saving action includes:

1. instantiating of the buffer instance
2. calling the method `get_data` to get the updated data set
3. retrieving the latest time stamp
4. modifying the database table `/dmo/traveladd`

```
CLASS lsc_travel_update IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD finalize.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD check_before_save.
  ENDMETHOD.
  METHOD save.
    DATA: ls_traveladd TYPE /dmo/traveladd.
    DATA(lo_buffer) = lcl_buffer=>get_instance( ).
    lo_buffer->get_data( _
      IMPORTING
        et_travel = DATA(lt_travel) )
    LOOP AT lt_travel ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_traveladdinfo>).
      ls_traveladd = CORRESPONDING #( <fs_traveladdinfo> MAPPING travel_id = travelid
      discount_pct = discount_pct
      discount_abs = discount_abs
      discountabs )
      GET TIME STAMP FIELD ls_traveladd-lastchangedat.
      MODIFY /dmo/traveladd FROM @ls_traveladd.
    ENDLOOP.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```
5.6.6 Defining an OData Service

In order to be able to consume the service with an SAP Fiori UI, you need to create an OData service.

1. Follow the development steps as described in Creating an OData Service [page 22].
   Create a service definition and a service binding to expose the CDS custom entity including its query implementation for a service. You only need to include the custom entity in the service definition, its implementation is included implicitly.
   You can then test the resulting UI service by using the Fiori Elements Preview in the service binding.

2. Follow the steps described in Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34]
   Use @UI annotations to define the UI of the SAP Fiori app. UI annotations are maintained in the CDS custom entity in exactly the same way as in CDS views.
   For this consumption scenario, it is convenient to label the element for line items and identification annotations as the data element information is not retrieved from the remote service.

   **Note**
   For selection fields, it is not possible to maintain a label in the @UI annotations. Use the @EndUser.label annotation instead for elements with selection fields.

   **Expand the following listing to view the source code of the travel CDS view.**

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'CE for Service Consumption Scenario'
@QueryImplementedBy: '/DMO/CL_TRAVEL_C_Q'  //reference to query implementation class
@UI.headerInfo:{ typeName: 'Trip',
                 typeNamePlural: 'Trips'}

define root custom entity /DMO/TRAVEL_C_C
{
    @UI.facet
    { id : 'Travel',
      purpose : #STANDARD,
      type : #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
      label : 'Travel',
      position : 10 }]
    @UI
    {lineItem: [ { position: 10, label: 'Travel ID',
                  importance: #HIGH } ],
     selectionField: [ { position: 10 },
                       identification: [ { position: 10, label: 'Travel ID' } ] ],
     @EndUserText.label: 'Travel ID',
     @UI
     {lineItem: [ { position: 20, label: 'Agency ID',
                   importance: #HIGH } ],
     selectionField: [ { position: 20 },
                       identification: [ { position: 20, label: 'Agency ID' } ] ],
     @EndUserText.label: 'Agency ID',
     @UI
     {lineItem: [ { position: 30, label: 'Customer ID',
                   importance: #HIGH } ],
     selectionField: [ { position: 30 },
                       identification: [ { position: 30, label: 'Customer ID' } ] ],
     @EndUserText.label: 'Customer ID',
     @UI
     {lineItem: [ { position: 40, label: 'Starting Date',
                   importance: #MEDIUM } ],
     selectionField: [ { position: 40, label: 'Starting Date' } ]}
}
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
3. Add static feature control for attributes to set them read-only or mandatory. The only attributes that are modifiable are DiscountPct and DiscountAbs. They need to be filled with values. Set all other attributes as mandatory. For further information, see Feature Control [page 96].

Expand the following listing to view the source code of the behavior definition with the relevant feature control additions.

```abap
unmanaged;
define behavior for /DMO/TRAVEL_C_C alias Travel_CE
etag LASTCHANGEDAT
{ update;
  field (readonly) TRAVELID, AGENCYID, CUSTOMERID,
  BEGINDATE, ENDDATE, DESCRIPTION,
```
Related Information

Creating an OData Service [page 22]
Designing the User Interface for a Fiori Elements App [page 34]
6  Common Tasks

In the common tasks section you find self-contained development tasks that you can apply in any develop scenario.

**Data Model**
- Defining Text Elements [page 591]
- Providing Value Help [page 597]
- Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps [page 608]
- Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps [page 612]
- Using Virtual Elements in CDS Projection Views [page 620]

**Business Objects**
- Automatically Drawing Primary Key Values in Managed BOs [page 626]
- Using Type and Control Mapping [page 630]
- Using Groups in Large Development Projects [page 634]
- Consuming Business Objects with EML [page 640]

**Query**
- Implementing an Unmanaged Query [page 672]

**UI Semantics**
- Adding Field Labels and Descriptions [page 691]
- Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692]
6.1 Data Model

6.1.1 Defining Text Elements

This section describes how to determine and provide related text for a CDS view element within the context of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model.

Example

Contents

You have different options to provide text for CDS view elements:

- **Providing Text by Text Elements in the Same Entity** [page 591]
  Use this option if the identifier element and the text element are part of the same entity. You can establish a direct link between the two elements.

- **Getting Text Through Text Associations** [page 593]
  Use this option if the identifier element and the text element are not part of the same entity, or if the text element is language-dependent and shall be displayed in the system log-on language in scenarios without projection layer.

- **Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views** [page 595]
  Use this option if you are working with a projection layer.

**Note**

You cannot combine text associations with projection scenarios.

6.1.1.1 Providing Text by Text Elements in the Same Entity

Language independent text elements can be maintained in the same entity as the identifier element.

Within the context of CDS views, the text elements establish the link between identifier elements (code values) of the view and its descriptive language-independent texts. For example, you can define a link between a company code and the (descriptive) company name, or between currency code and the currency name if these elements are part of the one CDS view. These kinds of descriptive texts are language-independent. That means, they do not contain text that is to be translated.
Relevant Annotation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@ObjectModel.text.element[]</td>
<td>Establishes the link between the annotated element (that defines an identifier element) and its descriptive language-independent texts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**i Note**  
The usage of this annotation excludes the usage of @ObjectModel.text.association in the same CDS entity.

More on this: ObjectModel Annotations [page 764]

**i Note**  
Runtime Behavior: In scenarios with exposure via OData, only the first text element listed in the annotation array will be handled as a descriptive text of the annotated field.

Example

In the listing below, the CDS view /DMO/I_SupplementText defines the fields Description that serves as language-independent descriptions for the view field SupplementID.

```abap
define view /DMO/I_SupplementText
  as select from /dmo/suppl_text as SupplementText
  
  {  
    key SupplementText.supplement_id as SupplementID,
    ...  
    SupplementText.description as Description  
  
    ....
  }
```

Related Information

Getting Text Through Text Associations [page 593]  
Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views [page 595]
6.1.1.2 Getting Text Through Text Associations

Context

Using the CDS text association, you can define the relationship between an element (field) and its corresponding texts or descriptions. The texts are usually language-dependent and are displayed in the end user’s language. If you annotate an element with a text association (as described below), the associated text or description field is added as a field to the referencing entity. At runtime, this field is read from the database and filtered by the logon language of the OData consumer automatically. It is not necessary to use session properties or view parameters in your CDS view.

i Note

In scenarios, in which you use projection views, getting text through text associations is not supported.

To retrieve texts by direct use of text associations, proceed as follows:

Procedure

1. Create a data definition with a CDS view that serves as text provider

   The following annotations are required at element level in the text provider view to annotate the language key element and the text elements of the view’s element list:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Values</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@Semantics.language: true</td>
<td>The annotated element identifies the language field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@Semantics.text: true</td>
<td>Identifies view elements as text elements (fields pointing to a textual description)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   i Note

   In general, you can annotate more than one view field as a text field. However, only the first annotated field will be considered in the text consumer view for OData exposure.

   More on this: Semantics Annotations [page 804]

2. Create a text association from your consumer CDS view to the text provider view.

   The following CDS annotation is relevant when creating text associations:
Annotation and Values | Effect
--- | ---
@ObjectModel.text.association: '<_AssocToTextProvider>' | Name of an association with a text view that provides descriptive texts for the annotated element. In other words: the annotation indicates that the description for the annotated element is available using the text association `_AssocToTextProvider`.

More on this: [ObjectModel Annotations](#) [page 764]

The view `/DMO/I_BookSuppl_T` serves as a consumer for the text provider view `/DMO/I_SupplText_T`. For this purpose, the association `_SupplementText` with the text provider view as target is defined. To indicate the field for which a text should be made available through the association `_SupplementText`, the annotation `@ObjectModel.text.association` is added. Note that only the first text element (Description) from the text provider, which is annotated with `@Semantics.text: true`, will be considered for OData exposure. In Fiori Elements apps, the supplement ID will then be displayed together with the long text in description of the text provider view.

**Text Provider View** `/DMO/I_SupplText_T`

```java
define view /DMO/I_SupplText_T as select from /dmo/suppl_text as SupplementText
{
  key SupplementText.supplement_id as SupplementID,
  @Semantics.language: true
  key SupplementText.language_code as LanguageCode,
  @Semantics.text: true
  SupplementText.description   as Description
  @Semantics.text: true
  SupplementText.alt_Description   as AlternativeDescription
}
```

**Text Consuming View** `/DMO/I_BookSuppl_T`

```java
define root view /DMO/I_BookSuppl_T as select from /dmo/book_suppl as BookingSupplement
  association [1..*] to /DMO/I_SupplText_T as _SupplementText on $projection.supplement_id = _SupplementText.SupplementID
{
  key travel_id,
  key booking_id,
  key booking_supplement_id,
  @ObjectModel.text.association: '_SupplementText'
  supplement_id,
  /* Associations */
  _SupplementText
}
```

Related Information

- [Providing Text by Text Elements in the Same Entity](#) [page 591]
- [Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views](#) [page 595]
6.1.1.3 Getting Language-Dependent Text in Projection Views

The denormalization of language-dependent text in projection views is done via the keyword `localized` for the text elements, which are included in the projection view and referenced with the annotation `@ObjectModel.text.element: '<text_element>'`.

**Context**

You have a text provider view, in which text for unreadable elements is maintained. To get the text from there you do not need any preparation in the text provider view.

To establish a connection to this text provider view, the projected view must have an association to the text provider view.

**i Note**

To use the denormalization in projection views, you must not use the indicator for text associations `@ObjectModel.text.association: '<text_association>'` in the projected view.

You can then include the text element via the association in the projection view. The relationship between identifier elements and the respective text is defined in the projection view via the annotation `@ObjectModel.text.element: '<text_element>'`. See CDS Projection View [page 197]. If the keyword `localized` is used, the text in the system log-on language is drawn.

The following diagram illustrates the modeling of text denormalization in projection views.
Prerequisites

- The text provider view has a key element indicating the language of the text.
- The projected CDS view has an association to the text provider view, but does not use the annotation `ObjectModel.text.association`.

Procedure

1. Include the text element from the text provider view into the projection view.
2. Annotate the element in the projection view, for which you want to provide the text with `@ObjectModel.text.element: <text_element>` and reference the text element.
3. To get language-dependent texts use the keyword `localized` on the text element.

Example

Text Provider View

The text provider view selects from a database table, in which the description texts in different languages are stored.

```plaintext
define view /DMO/I_SupplText_T as select from /dmo/suppl_text as SupplementText
  { key SupplementText.supplement_id as SupplementID,
    key SupplementText.language_code as LanguageCode,
    SupplementText.description as Description
  }
```

Projected View

```plaintext
define root view /DMO/I_BookSuppl_T as select from /dmo/book_suppl as BookingSupplement
  association [1..*] to /DMO/I_SupplText_T as _SupplementText on $projection.supplement_id = _SupplementText.SupplementID
  { key travel_id,
    key booking_id,
    key booking_supplement_id,
    /* Associations */
    _SupplementText
  }
```

Projection View

The projection view denormalizes the supplement description and filters the relevant values based on the requested language.

! Note

It depends on the language configuration of your cloud system, which language is allowed.

```plaintext
define root view entity /DMO/C_BookSuppl_T as projection on /DMO/I_BookSuppl_T
```
If you create a UI service for this example, you can check the results when sending the request in different languages.

**Related Information**

- Getting Text Through Text Associations [page 593]
- Providing Text by Text Elements in the Same Entity [page 591]

### 6.1.2 Providing Value Help

The implementation of a value help in CDS enables the end user to choose values from a predefined list for input fields on a user interface.

**Why and When to Use Value Help**

You can define value helps in the CDS data layer for any input field on the UI (for example, selection fields, parameters, or writable fields in transactional scenarios). A value help is useful when the values for the input field have to be taken from a predefined set of values. When you call the value help, it displays all the available values from the value help provider. It appears on the UI when you choose the button ⬤ in the input field or.
press the \[F4\] key. The end user can filter by related information to identify the correct value. This makes it easier to find the desired value, especially if the value itself contains little or no identifying information, for example, an ID number.

Example
To help the end user to enter the right customer ID to create a new booking, the application developer defines a value help that enables the user to enter the name or any other element from the value help provider to help find the correct number. The value help provider view in this case is a CDS view that manages customer information. As shown below, the end user is searching for a particular customer ID. The value help offers to filter by the customer last name, so that the end user can choose from the available entries. The value of the customer ID field is then transferred to the respective input field.

Expand the following figure to view the procedure of calling the value help on a Fiori Elements UI.

How are Value Helps Implemented?
Value helps are defined in CDS with an annotation on the element or parameter for which the value help dialog is to appear on the UI. The annotation \@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition allows you to reference the value help provider without implementing an association. You simply assign a CDS entity as the value help provider and provide an element for the mapping in the annotation. All fields of the value help provider are displayed on the UI. When you choose one of the entries of the value help provider, the value of the referenced element is transferred to the input field.

For the default implementation of the value help, you can use any CDS entity that contains the desired values of the element for the input field. You do not need to explicitly define a CDS entity as the value help provider. However, the value help provider must be exposed for the OData service to make use of the value help.
Any annotation that is maintained in the value help provider is evaluated. This means that associated entities, value helps, and text associations of the value help provider view are also displayed and can be used in the value help. This means that you can have a value help in the value help.

The following value help options are available within the programming model:

- Simple Value Help [page 599]
- Multiple Value Helps on One Element [page 604]
- Value Help with Additional Binding [page 606]

**Related Information**

- Providing Value Help for the Selection Fields [page 231]
- Consumption Annotations [page 760]

### 6.1.2.1 Simple Value Help

A simple value help is convenient if you want to display values from the value help provider for an input field.

**Context**

You want to provide a value help for an input field on the UI.

The following steps implement a value help for a customer ID field, using a booking CDS view as an example.

**Procedure**

1. Create a data definition for a CDS view that serves as a value help provider. It must contain a field with the available values for the input field in the source view.

   ```
   define view /DMO/I_Customer_VH as select from /dmo/customer
   { key_customer_id,
     first_name,
   } 
   ```

   The value help provider view contains the customer ID and fields to identify the customer ID, such as the customer’s name or address. The end user can then filter by these fields to find the right customer ID.
last_name,
        title,
        street,
        postal_code,
        city,
        country_code,
        phone_number,
        email_address
    )

To retrieve the full value list when invoking the value help, annotate the value help view with the annotation
@Consumption.valueHelpDefault.fetchValues: #AUTOMATICALLY_WHEN_DISPLAYED. To
explicitly disable loading the full list, use @Consumption.valueHelpDefault.fetchValues:
#ON_EXPLICIT_REQUEST.

2. In your CDS source view, add the following annotation to the element for which you want to provide the
value help on the UI.

    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{
        entity: {
            name: 'entityRef',
            element: 'elementRef'
        }
    }]

The annotation defines the binding for the value help to the value help providing entity. You must specify
the entity name and the element providing the possible values for the annotated element.

Example

The following code example shows how an annotation is used on the element CustomerID in /DMO/I_Booking.
It references the value help provider view (/DMO/I_CUSTOMER_VH) for the customer ID
and the element providing the possible values (customer_id) in the value help provider view.

    define view /DMO/I_Booking as select from /dmo/booking
    {--
        @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{entity: {
            name: '/DMO/I_CUSTOMER_VH',
            element: 'customer_id'
        }},
        customer_id as CustomerID,
    - ]

Results

If you expose the source view in an OData service, the value help provider view is automatically exposed with it.
You do not have to list value help provider views in the service definition.

On a Fiori UI, choosing F4 in the selection field opens a search mask and the end user can filter by any field in
the value help provider view. Selecting an entry transfers the value of the element that is referenced in the
annotation to the annotated element in the source view.

The metadata of the OData service displays the value help implementation for the following properties:

- The property in the CDS source view for which a value help is implemented (sap:value-
  list="standard")
- The value help provider entity type (sap:value-list="true")
The value help provider entity is marked as Target in the Annotations property. The value list enumerates every property in the value help provider that is exposed for the value help (Annotation Term="Common.ValueList").

The element that is defined in the mapping condition is marked as an inbound and outbound parameter Record Type="Common.ValueListParameterInOut".

Expand to view the extracts of the metadata document of a service exposing a booking CDS view and the value help provider for the element CustomerID.

This value help provider is also search supported.

Metadata Document

Restriction

If you associate the value help provider to your source view, the metadata of the value help provider view do not have sap:value-list="true". As a result, the request <service_url>/$metadata?sap-value-list=<service_namespace>.<entity>Type/<element> (where <element> is the element that is referenced in the annotation @Consumption.ValueHelpDefinition in your CDS view) does not work. This can lead to problems when invoking value helps.
To avoid this clash, separate your value help information in value help provider views that do not coincide with other associated views, for example text provider views.

**Other Value Help Options**

**Other Capabilities for the Value Help Provider**

Any annotation that is maintained in the value help provider is evaluated. This means that the following capabilities are possible for the value help:

- **Associations:** If the target of the association is included in the OData service, the elements of entities associated with the value help provider are also displayed as additional input fields.
- **Search Capabilities:** Including search capabilities in your value help provider enables the end user to search for any detail in an input field.
- **Value Helps:** The value help can itself contain value helps.
- **Text:** Text that is provided for the value help provider is also displayed.

**Value Help as Dropdown List**

If you want to show the possible values for the input field as a dropdown list only, instead of a search mask with all other elements of the value help provider, annotate the value help provider with @ObjectModel:

```javascript
{ resultSet.sizeCategory: #XS }
```
on the view level.

For dropdown value lists, the OData $metadata document includes the annotation `sap:value-list="fixed-values"` instead of `standard` on the property in the source view for which the value help is implemented.

The UI displays the possible values for the input field in a dropdown list. The following image shows a value help list for the carrier ID field in the booking scenario.
**Value Help Typeahead in the Selection Field**

The entries of the value help provider view can be displayed while typing in the selection field. From the list that opens you can choose an entry to fill the selection field with the desired value:

The UI displays the possible values for the input field while typing values from the value help provider:

![Typeahead Example](image)

To enable the typeahead functionality enable the value help provider entity with search capabilities. This is done by using the annotation `@Search.searchable: true` at value help level. The value help typeahead only finds values from the value help provider that are annotated with `@Search.defaultSearchElement: true`.

**Example**

If you want to display customer information of customers with first names, last names and cities starting with V, the corresponding elements in the value help provider entity must be annotated with `@Search.defaultSearchElement: true`.

To limit the value help list to certain elements, annotate the elements that you want to display with `@UI.lineItem.importance: #HIGH`. Then, the other elements with lower importance are not taken into consideration for the value help list.

**Value Help Via Association**

If the value help provider is already associated with the source entity, you can use the association `@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.association: 'Assoc'` and reference the association instead of the entity. The binding condition is then already given in the on-condition of the association.

**Example**

The following code example shows how the annotation is used on the element `CustomerID` in `/DMO/I_Booking`. It references the association to the value help provider view (`_Customer`).

```java
define view /DMO/I_Booking as select from /dmo.booking
```
association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Customer_VH as _Customer on
$projection.CustomerID = _Customer.customer_id
{
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.association: '_Customer'
  customer_id as CustomerID,
  ...
  _Customer
}

**i Note**

When using the option of consuming value helps via an association, it is not ensured that the value help works properly, see Restriction [page 601].

### 6.1.2.1.1 Multiple Value Helps on One Element

**Context**

It is possible to provide more than one value help on one element. The end user selects which value help to use to find the correct value.

The following image displays the value helps for the carrier ID element in the booking CDS view. One value help provider is defined by a carrier CDS view and one by a connection CDS view that also contains the carrier ID field.

![Two Value Helps on one Element](image)

**Procedure**

1. To implement two value helps on one element, proceed as described in Simple Value Help [page 599] and add another entity as a value help provider.

    define view /DMO/I_Booking as select from /dmo/booking
You can define more than two value helps on one element.

2. Assign labels to the different value helps to differentiate them on the UI.

   ```
   define view /DMO/I_Booking as select from /dmo/booking
   {...
   @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Carrier_VH',
     element: 'carrier_id' }},
   { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Connection_VH',
     element: 'carrier_id' }},
   label: 'Carrier VH'}
  载体id as CarrierID,
   ...
   }
   ```

3. Equip one value help with a qualifier.

   ```
   define view /DMO/I_Booking as select from /dmo/booking
   {...
   @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Carrier_R',
     element: 'carrier_id' },
   label: 'Carrier VH'},
   { entity: { name: '/DMO/I_Connection_VH',
     element: 'carrier_id' },
   label: 'Connection VH',
   qualifier: 'Secondary Value Help'}
  载体id as CarrierID,
   ...
   }
   ```

If you have more than one value help, it is important that all except one are equipped with a qualifier. The default value help is the one without a qualifier. The qualifier marks the value helps that are less important. If all value helps are annotated with the qualifier argument, then none of them are displayed as there is no default.

**Results**

Choosing F4 in the input field opens a search mask with the fields of the default value help. The default value help is the one without a qualifier. The end user can select which value help to use from a dropdown menu.
6.1.2.2 Value Help with Additional Binding

A preset filter condition can be established by an additional binding for the value help.

Context

You use an additional binding to define more than one binding condition between the source view and the value help provider. The value help is then automatically filtered by the additional binding. It proposes only entries that match the additional binding. This additional binding can either be another element or a parameter. These need to be present in the source view and in the value help provider view. When an entry is selected in the value help provider, the values of both binding elements are transferred to the input fields of the source CDS view.

Example

In our booking scenario, we can apply the value help with an additional binding on the field ConnectionID. The value help provider is a view that manages connections. This value help provider contains not only the field for the connection IDs, but also a field for carrier IDs, which is also in the consumer view. We can establish a second binding condition so that the value help provider only displays connections with the prechosen carrier ID.

![Diagram](value-help-additional-binding)

Procedure

1. Create a data definition for a CDS view that serves as a value help provider. It must contain a field with the available values for the input field in the source view. In addition, it must contain the field for which the additional binding is established.

   The value help provider view contains the connection ID and the carrier ID, for which a mapping condition is defined.

```abap
define view /DMO/I_Connection_VH as select from /dmo/connection 
  { 
    key carrier_id, 
    key connection_id, 
    airport_from_id, 
    airport_to_id, 
    departure_time, 
  } 
```
2. In your CDS source view, add the following annotation to the element for which you want to provide the value help on the UI.

```plaintext
@Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{
  entity: {name: 'entityRef', element: 'elementRef'},
  additionalBinding: [{
    element: 'elementRef' | parameter: 'paramRef', localElement: 'elementRef' | localParameter: 'paramRef', usage: #FILTER | #RESULT | #FILTER_AND_RESULT }
  }
}
```

The additional binding defines a second condition for the value help on the same target value help provider entity for filtering the value help result list and/or returning values from the selected value help record. The additional binding can be defined for an additional element or parameter. Depending on the value provided in `usage`, the additional binding works as a filter, result or filter and result condition:

- **#Filter**: The value of the referenced element or parameter in `localElement` or `localParameter` is used as a filter for the value help. The value help only displays filtered results.

  - **Note**: For numerical data types of local elements, the value help is always filtered for 0 (initial value) if the local elements are empty.

- **#Result**: The referenced element or parameter in `localElement` or `localParameter` is filled with the value provided by the value help. When creating an instances, you can fill various fields with this option.

- **#Filter_and_Result**: The value help works in both directions. It filters the value help and takes over the values for the corresponding fields.

  - #Filter_and_Result is the default if no usage type is specified.

The following code example shows the usage of the annotation on the element `ConnectionID` in `/DMO/I_Booking`. It references the value help provider view (`/DMO/I_Connection_VH`) and the element providing the possible values (`connection_id`) in the value help provider view, as well as the matching condition on the elements `CarrierID` and `carrier_id` in the consumer view and the value help provider view, respectively.

```plaintext
define view /DMO/I_Booking_VH as select from /dmo/booking
  {...
    @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{
      entity: {name: '/DMO/I_Connection_VH', element: 'connection_id'},
      additionalBinding: [{
        localElement: 'CarrierID', element: 'carrier_id', usage: #Filter }
      }
    ]
    connection_id as ConnectionID,
    ...
  }
```

### Results

Choosing `F4` in the selection field opens a search mask and the end user can display all available entries in the value help provider or filter by a field, for example, the destination airport. If the carrier ID is already filled in the
consumer view, the value help provider is prefiltered by that value. Selecting an entry in the value help transfers the connection ID as well the carrier ID to the CDS consumer view.

The metadata of the OData service displays the value help implementation on the following properties:

- The property in the CDS source view for which a value help is implemented (sap:value-list="standard")
- The value help provider entity type (sap:value-list="true")
- The value help provider entity is marked as Target in the Annotations property. The value list enumerates every property in the value help provider that is exposed for the value help (Annotation Term="Common.ValueList").
- The elements that are defined in the mapping conditions are marked as inbound and outbound parameters Record Type="Common.ValueListParameterInOut".

**Restriction**

If you associate the value help provider to your source view, the metadata of the value help provider view do not have sap:value-list="true". As a result, the request `<service_url>/$metadata?sap-value-list=<service_namespace>.<entity>Type/<element>` (where `<element>` is the element that is referenced in the annotation @Consumption.ValueHelpDefinition in your CDS view) does not work. This can lead to problems when invoking value helps.

To avoid this clash, separate your value help information in value help provider views that do not coincide with other associated views, for example text provider views.

### 6.1.3 Enabling Text and Fuzzy Searches in SAP Fiori Apps

The descriptions in this topic refer to the range of functions for text and fuzzy searches that are provided in the context of SAP HANA.

**Text and Fuzzy Searches**

The full text searching (or just text search) provides you with the capability to identify natural language terms that satisfy a query and, optionally, to sort them by relevance (ranking) to the query. The most common type of search is to find texts that contain the term specified and return them in the order of their similarity to these terms.

Fuzzy search is a fast and fault-tolerant search feature of SAP HANA. The basic concept behind the **fault-tolerant search** is that a database query returns records even if the search term (user input) contains additional or missing characters, or even spelling errors. Fuzzy search can be used in various applications -- for example, to trigger a fault-tolerant search in a structured database content, like a search for a product called 'coffe krisp biscuit' and you find 'Toffee Crisp Biscuits'.
Providing Freestyle Search Capabilities in SAP Fiori UI screen

Within the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model, you only need to enable the text and fuzzy search functionality in your data model definitions. For this purpose, you implement it in designated CDS views using appropriate text and fuzzy search annotations (listed below).

**i Note**

As an application developer however, you must ensure that your CDS views are suitable for text and fuzzy search enabling. For more information take a look at the corresponding topics in the SAP HANA Search Developer Guide.

Annotations for Text- and Fuzzy Search

As the name suggests, search annotations enable the search feature on the CDS view elements.

First of all, you need the following CDS annotation at the **view level**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Value</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@Search.searchable: true/false</td>
<td>Defines whether a CDS view is generally relevant for search scenarios. This annotation provides a general switch and a means to quickly detect whether a view is search-relevant or not. Set to value true in order to enable search support by means of @Search annotations. Here, at least one view field must be defined as @defaultSearchElement at element level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The annotations (required) at the **element level** are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Values</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@Search.defaultSearchElement: true/false</td>
<td>Specifies that the annotated element is to be considered in a full-text search</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**i Note**

At least one element has to be defined for the default full-text search. Searching in views without default full-text search elements is not supported!

All view elements that are annotated for the default search define the search scope. (The search will be performed on all elements that have this annotation.).

**Caution**

Such a search must not operate on all elements – for performance reasons and because not all elements qualify for this kind of access.
### Annotation and Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Values</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>@Search.fuzzinessThreshold : &lt;value&gt;</code></td>
<td>This annotation specifies the least level of fuzziness the element has to have in order to be considered in a fuzzy search at all. The <code>&lt;value&gt;</code> defines the threshold for a fuzzy search (how fuzzy scores are calculated when comparing two strings or two terms). Possible values are: 0..1 The default value is 1. The fuzzy search algorithm calculates a fuzzy score for each string comparison. The higher the score, the more similar the strings are. A score of 1.0 means the strings are identical. A score of 0.0 means the strings have nothing in common.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `@Search.ranking: <value>` | This annotation specifies how relevant the values of an element (view field) are for ranking, should the freestyle search terms match the element’s value. The ranking can have the following values:  
- **HIGH** - The element is of high relevance; typically, this is useful for IDs and their descriptions.  
- **MEDIUM** - The element is of medium relevance; designated usually for important elements.  
- **LOW** - Although the element is relevant for a freestyle search, a hit for this element has no real significance for the ranking of a result item. |

---

### Tip

For the fuzzy search threshold, we recommend using the default value 0.7 to start with. Later on, you can fine-tune the value based on your experiences with the search. You can also fine-tune the search using feedback collected from your users.

---

### Example

The listing below implements a search model for searching products. The model definition results from the data source `db_pd` that already specifies the persistence layer for searching. The data source provides product data and text reference fields.

The annotation `@Search.searchable: true` marks the view as searchable. In addition, the elements `Name` and `Category` are annotated with `@Search.defaultSearchElement: true`. This means that a freestyle search is enabled on the search UI where it is possible to search for the annotated elements. The annotation `@Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7 (0.8)` defines that the text search should be applied to the element `Category` with a similarity value of 70% and to the element `Name` with a similarity value of 80%.

```xml
...  
@Search.searchable : true  
define view SearchForPuducts as select from db_pd  
   key pd_id as ID,  
   @Search.defaultSearchElement : true
```
Results

If you expose a CDS view with search annotations for an OData service, the OData entity set receives the annotation sap:searchable: true.

The following image display a Fiori UI that consumes an OData service with the example CDS view.

Standard filter allows to search for product category and product name

Related Information

Search Annotations [page 800]
6.1.4 Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps

This topic explains how you can provide aggregate data for your SAP Fiori application. The available aggregate functions operations are sum, minimum, maximum, and average. Alongside this, the framework also provides options for counting.

What is Aggregate Data?

We speak of aggregate data when numerical values are combined to form a single value that signifies meaning. General assumptions can be drawn from this value that is representative for all values that were included in the calculation of the value.

The classic aggregate functions are:
- sum
- minimum
- maximum
- average

These functions determine a value from which you can assume information relating to all the values that were included in the calculation.

Apart from these functions, there is also a counting function available to count distinct values:
- distinct count.

This counting option determines a natural number based on the number of entries in the calculation.

All of these functions are supported and evaluated by the SADL framework.

Aggregate Data in your SAP Fiori App

Aggregate data calculated by the SADL framework provides additional and enhanced information for your list reporting app.

To display aggregate data in your application, annotate the respective elements in CDS with the annotations described in Annotating Aggregate Functions in CDS [page 613]. These annotations cause the CDS entity to be respected as an aggregated entity by OData. A thorough description of how OData interprets the annotations is provided in OData Interpretation of Aggregation Annotations [page 616].

i Note

Aggregate functions are not supported in scenarios with projection CDS views. Aggregation annotations in projection view cause an error on service compilation. Aggregation annotations in projected entities are ignored.

Based on the entity that calculates aggregate data, the SAP Fiori user interface displays aggregate data depending on the settings you choose. The aggregated values are displayed in your list reporting app as an additional field in the relevant column.
List Reporting App of Sales Order Items with Aggregate Data

6.1.4.1 Annotating Aggregate Functions in CDS

The elements for which you want to display aggregate data in your SAP Fiori App must be annotated in the CDS entity with the relevant annotation for the aggregate function.

Metadata for Aggregations

The annotation `@Aggregation.Default: #<AGGR_FUNCTION>` enables the aggregation of the values of the annotated element.

Only measures can be annotated with an aggregation annotation. Measures are elements that either represent numerical values, which means they can be summed, averaged, or otherwise mathematically manipulated. Typically, measures are units that express the size, amount, or degree of something, for example prices. In addition, elements with date values, can also be compared with each other to determine the maximum or minimum. That means date values can also be measures for calculating the minimum or the maximum.

The other elements in a CDS entity are called dimensions. Dimensions provide structured labeling information about otherwise unordered numeric measures. They are relevant for the grouping and the order of the elements in the Fiori App.

The SADL framework supports the following aggregating functions for measures. As soon as one element is annotated with one of these annotations, the CDS entity is considered an analytical entity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Value</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>@Aggregation.Default: #SUM</code></td>
<td>Calculates the sum of the values of the annotated element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>@Aggregation.Default: #MAX</code></td>
<td>Calculates the maximum of the values of the annotated element. You can also annotate elements with date types with this annotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>@Aggregation.Default: #MIN</code></td>
<td>Calculates the minimum of the values of the annotated element. You can also annotate elements with date types with this annotation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Annotation and Value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Value</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@Aggregation.Default: #AVG</td>
<td>Calculates the average of the values of the annotated element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@Aggregation.Default: #COUNT_DISTINCT</td>
<td>Counts the number of distinct values of the annotated element. In combination with the annotation @Aggregation.ReferenceElement: ['elementRef'], you can count the number of distinct values of another element that is referenced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Note

Since the distinct count of the referenced element is naturally 1 for single data records, the value of the annotated element is 1 regardless of the actual value of the element. In grouped records the annotated element counts the distinct values of the referenced element. So the actual value of the annotated element is ignored.

For this reason, it is recommended that a new element for the counting of elements be created. Make sure that you use an adequate numerical type for this element.

#### Example

```plaintext
@Aggregation.referenceElement: ['CustomerID']
@Aggregation.default: #COUNT_DISTINCT
cast( 1 as abap.int4 ) as DistinctCustomers,
```

This example counts the number of distinct customers into the element DistinctCustomers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>@Aggregation.ReferenceElement: ['elementRef']</th>
<th>References the element that is used for distinct counts.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Note

Can only be used in combination with @Aggregation.Default: #COUNT_DISTINCT.

Only one aggregate function can be used on one element. You cannot display different aggregated values of the same element.

### Aggregations in Fiori Elements UIs

In a Fiori Elements UI, records are always grouped by the dimensions that are selected by `$select` in an OData request. The elements for `$select` in OData requests are the column elements that are selected in the Fiori UI.
If the key elements are selected in the Fiori UI, the records are grouped by these key elements, which means there is no grouping, as there are no records that can be grouped by the same key element. If not all key elements are requested, the records are grouped by the dimensions that are requested and the selected measures are aggregated according to the groups.

If you want to suppress the behavior, that the records are grouped automatically if not all key elements are selected, you can use a @UI annotation that triggers the key elements to be always selected implicitly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation and Value</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.presentationVariant: ['&lt;TECHNICAL_KEY&gt;']</td>
<td>Defines the properties that must always be included in the result of the queried collection if no grouping is desired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The UI offers the option to group explicitly. On the UI, go to settings and define the dimensions to group by or click on a dimension column and choose Group.

For more information on grouping, see OData Interpretation of Aggregation Annotations [page 616].

Example

The following listing displays a CDS entity in which all the necessary annotations for analytical operations are used. This view describes sales order combined with associated product and customer information.

```define view ZDEMO_C_SOI_ANLY
  as select from <data source> as Item
    association [0..1] to SEPM_I_Product_E as _Product on $projection.Product = _Product.Product
    association [0..1] to ZDEMO_C_SO_ANLY as _SalesOrder on $projection.SalesOrderID = _SalesOrder.SalesOrder
    { key SalesOrder as SalesOrderID,
      key SalesOrderItem as ItemPosition,
      _SalesOrder.Customer as CustomerID,
      _SalesOrder._Customer.CompanyName as CompanyName,
      @ObjectModel.foreignKey.association: '_Product' _Product.ProductCategory as Product,
      @Semantics.currencyCode: true TransactionCurrency as CurrencyCode,
      @Semantics.currencyCode: true cast( 'EUR' as abap.cuky ) as TargetCurrency,
      @Aggregation.Default: #SUM @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'TargetCurrency'
      CURRENCY_CONVERSION( amount => Item.GrossAmountInTransacCurrency, source_currency => Item.TransactionCurrency, target_currency => cast( 'EUR' as abap.cuky ), exchange_rate_date => cast( '20180315' as abap.dats ), error_handling => 'SET_TO_NULL' ) as ConvertedGrossAmount,
```
Aggregate functions only respect values with the same semantics. This means that, if you have prices in different currencies that are annotated with an aggregation annotation, you receive aggregated data for each currency.

The following figure displays the maximum tax amount with regard to the respective currency.

### Related Information

- Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps [page 612]
- OData Interpretation of Aggregation Annotations [page 616]

### 6.1.4.2 OData Interpretation of Aggregation Annotations

The following sections provide an overview of the most prominent features of aggregated entities in OData. Data models with aggregation annotations are considered as aggregated entities by OData. The behavior of these aggregated OData entities differs from non-aggregated entities.
OData Annotations

The OData entity is given multiple annotations based on the aggregate annotation you use in CDS for your data model. The following figure displays the metadata of an aggregated entity that processes sales order items. The annotations specific to aggregations are highlighted and labeled. Further descriptions of the annotations in OData are given below.

Aggregated OData Entity

Metadata of an Aggregated Entity

Aggregated OData Entities

As soon as one element in the CDS view is annotated with the aggregation annotation @Aggregation.Default: #<AGGR_FUNCTION>, the OData entity is annotated with sap:semantics="aggregate". Hence, the OData entity is identified as an aggregated entity.

In the example of the screenshot above, this OData annotation can be found in the first line of the extract of the metadata.

Measures

The aggregated entity is characterized by measures and dimensions. Measures are those properties that are annotated with the annotation relevant for aggregating data in CDS. Measures are given the OData annotation sap:aggregation-role="measure".

In the example of the screenshot above, there are six properties which are marked as measures: ConvertedGrossAmount, GrossAmount, NetAmount, TaxAmount, AllItems, and DistinctProducts.

Dimensions

Dimensions are all properties that are neither marked as measures nor as attributes. Dimensions are given the OData annotation sap:aggregation-role="dimension".

In the example of the screenshot above, there are six OData properties which are marked as dimensions: SalesOrderID, ItemPosition, Customer ID, Product, CurrencyCode, and TargetCurrency.
Each dimension can have a maximum of one text property. A text property is an element that is defined as a text element in CDS, as described in Defining Text Elements [page 591]. Dimensions with a text property are annotated by OData with sap:text="<TEXTPROPERTY>".

In the example of the screenshot above, the dimension Product has a text property.

**Generated ID for Aggregated OData Entities**

An aggregated OData entity is given an additional property for a generated ID (<Property Name="ID"/>). The generated ID for the aggregate entity uniquely identifies each record so that every entity request for a given ID always returns the same values.

In the example of the screenshot above, the property for the generated ID can be found as the first property on the list.

The ID is also generated for every group record when it is requested for the first time. Following from this, you can use this ID in a further request.

### Example

This behavior is exemplified by a request on the entity that supplies the metadata above. It retrieves sales order items. The following request selects the generated ID (ID), the dimension Product, and some aggregated measures related to the selected dimension.

```sql
.../sap/opu/odata/SAP/<service_name>/ZDEMO_C_SOI_ANLY?
$select=ID,Product,GrossAmount,NetAmount,TaxAmount,AllProducts
```

This request retrieves the following result:

```
Aggregate Data of Group Record with Generated ID for Group Record
```

Each group record is given its own generated ID which retrieves the same results when requested again. Based on this group ID, you can also execute other requests, as in `/sap/opu/odata/SAP/<service_name>/ZDEMO_C_SOI_ANLY(4=HT%26c1002.6~USD)'?$select=AllProducts, which will only retrieve the count of this group, which is 9.
Requesting Data from an Aggregated Entity

Results of requesting data from aggregated entities depend on the elements you select in your OData request. Grouping and aggregation are both driven by the elements you request with the parameter $select in entity set queries. The result of a query consists of aggregated entities with distinct values for the requested dimension properties and requested measures are aggregated using the aggregate function with which the measure elements are annotated in CDS.

If an attribute is requested, the result is grouped by its corresponding dimension and within that group it is grouped by the attribute itself.

**i Note**

If you use a SAP Fiori app, the $select statement of the OData request directly depends on the columns you select in the list reporting app. The following descriptions of requesting data with OData can also be managed by selecting the respective columns in your Fiori App.

**Requests that Contain All Primary Key Elements**

If all primary key elements of the requested CDS entity are included in the query option $select, no grouping is possible since every record is unique. Hence, an OData request with all key elements behaves just like a non-aggregated entity. Consequently, no aggregate data is calculated.

**Requests that Do not Contain All Primary Key Elements**

If not all key elements are included in the OData request, the requested dimensions are grouped and the requested measures are aggregated according to their annotated aggregate function. For every distinct combination of dimension values (after evaluating $filter), the result includes an aggregated entity with aggregated values for the requested measures.

**i Note**

Each group record is given its own generated ID, which can be reused in requests to retrieve the same results.

Only if no dimension and no attribute are requested does the result show the aggregate data of measures for the whole entity set.

You can still execute other query options, such as $filter or $orderby on grouped requests. The filtering is executed before the grouping, so that the groups are created from the available records after the filtering. The ordering is executed after the grouping, which means the records within a group are ordered according to the query option.

**i Note**

You can filter for properties that you do not select, but you cannot order by properties that are not included in the $select due to the order of executing query options mentioned above.

**Navigating and Expanding from a Group Record**

You can navigate directly from a group record to one of the properties that are included in the group, for example properties that you have selected previously.
Example

Assume you have an aggregated entity of sales order items and you group them by product. From this group record, you can navigate directly to the associated entity of products if the association exists in CDS.

The same holds true for the query option $expand. Only properties that are selected can be expanded.

Note

The target entity of the navigation or the expand is also given an aggregated ID if the underlying data model is also aggregated.

Related Information

Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps [page 612]
Annotating Aggregate Functions in CDS [page 613]

6.1.5 Using Virtual Elements in CDS Projection Views

With virtual elements, you define additional CDS elements that are not persisted on the database, but calculated during runtime using ABAP classes that implement the virtual element interface.

What Are Virtual Elements, and Why Do I Need Them?

For some business use cases, it may be necessary to add new elements to the data model of an application whose values cannot be fetched from the database. Virtual elements are used if these elements are not provided as part of the original persistence data model but can be calculated using ABAP resources during runtime.

Virtual elements represent transient fields in business applications. They are defined at the level of CDS projection views as additional elements within the SELECT list. However, the calculation of their values is carried out by means of ABAP classes that implement the specific virtual element interface provided for this purpose. The ABAP implementation class is referenced by annotating the virtual element in the CDS projection view with @ObjectModel.virtualElementCalculatedBy: 'ABAP:<CLASS_NAME>'. With data retrieval via OData, the query framework calls the ABAP implementation class of the virtual element to retrieve the value for it.

The OData service metadata do not differentiate between regular CDS elements with database persistence and virtual elements. Consequently, the virtual element appears in an application UI equal to any other element.
**Definition of Virtual Element in CDS Projection View and Implementation in Referenced ABAP Class**

You can use virtual elements only in CDS projection views.

- In the current version of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model, you cannot add implementations for filtering or sorting by virtual elements.
- Virtual elements cannot be keys of the CDS projection view.
- Virtual elements cannot be used together with the grouping or the aggregation function.
- Data from virtual elements can only be retrieved via the query framework. In particular this means that the following options to retrieve data from CDS are not possible for virtual elements:
  - ABAP SQL `SELECT` on CDS views return initial values for the virtual element,
  - EML `READ` on BO entities is not possible as EML does not know virtual elements.

**Example**

In an application that processes flight bookings, we want to include a field that calculates how many days are left until the flight date, or how many days have passed since the flight date. The following booking app UI provides the booking information with an additional field **Days to Flight** that calculates the days that have passed since the flight or the days that are left until the flight. The value is calculated by comparing the flight date with the system date.

**Flight Bookings List with Virtual Element to Calculate Days to Flight**

**Developer Activities**

1. Adding the virtual element and corresponding annotations to the relevant CDS projection view.
For a more detailed description, see Modeling Virtual Elements [page 622].

2. Creating and implementing an ABAP class that implements the virtual element calculation. For more detailed information, see Implementing the Calculation of Virtual Elements [page 623].

6.1.5.1 Modeling Virtual Elements

Virtual elements are defined in the select list of CDS projection views. Their values are calculated in a referenced ABAP class. This topic explains how you can model virtual elements in CDS.

Context

A virtual element is declared in the CDS projection view. It enables you to have additional fields that are not persisted on the database in your application scenario. You can also have different virtual elements in different BO projections. With those, you are flexible in providing an accurately tailored projection layer for one specific service without affecting the basic business object.

You can use virtual element for read-only, as well as for transactional scenarios.

The following steps model a virtual element in a CDS projection view using the CDS view /DMO/I_BOOKING_U as an underlying CDS view. The projection CDS view defines the subset of the CDS view that is relevant to the respective service and is extended with a virtual field for this service.

Syntax for Defining a Virtual Element in CDS Projection View

```plaintext
define view entity CDSProjView
  as projection on CDSEntity
  
  key      elem_1          as Element1,
      [@EndUserText.label: 'Element Label']
      [@EndUserText.quickInfo: 'Quick Information']
  virtual  ElemName : {DataElement | ABAPType },
  ...
```

Explanation

To define a virtual element, use the keyword virtual and specify a name for the virtual element. Aliases for virtual elements are not allowed, as you can choose the name of the element freely. Since a virtual element does not have database persistence and therefore does not have a defined data type, you have to specify the type of the element. Predefined data elements can be used as well as ABAP types.

For more information about the syntax in CDS projection views, see CDS Projection View [page 197].

Annotate the virtual element with the annotation @ObjectModel.virtualElementCalculatedBy, and reference the ABAP class that calculates the values for the virtual element.
As the @ObjectModel annotation references an ABAP resource from CDS, you must use the exact syntax 'ABAP:<class_name>' as the value for the annotation. No space between colon and <class_name> is allowed.

If you use a basic ABAP type for your virtual element, define end-user information for the element with the @EndUser.Text annotation.

The label you choose for the end-user text is used in the metadata of an OData service that uses the CDS views. It is also used as a fallback if no label is maintained in @UI annotations to display the element on a UI.

If the virtual element uses a predefined data element, the OData metadata deduces the information from the data element.

Example

define view entity /DMO/C_Booking_VE
as projection on /DMO/I_Booking_U
{ ...
  @ObjectModel.virtualElementCalculatedBy: 'ABAP:/DMO/
  CL_DAYS_TO_FLIGHT'
  @EndUserText.label: 'Days to Flight'
  @EndUserText.quickInfo: 'Calculates the Relative Flight Date'
  virtual DaysToFlight : abap.int2,
  ...}

Next Steps

1. Creating and implementing an ABAP class that implements the virtual element contract.
   More on this: Implementing the Calculation of Virtual Elements [page 623].

6.1.5.11 Implementing the Calculation of Virtual Elements

The values of virtual elements are calculated in a referenced ABAP class. This topic explains how you calculate their values by means of an example implementation.

Context

By using a virtual element in a CDS projection view, you define an additional field for your OData service. As this additional field is not persisted in the database layer, its value must be calculated during runtime. The calculation is implemented in an ABAP class that is referenced in an annotation on the virtual element in the CDS projection view.

The calculation class must implement the interface IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ. This interface provides two methods for the calculation implementation:
- **get_calculation_info**: This method is called before the actual data retrieval. It ensures that all the relevant elements that are needed for the calculation of the virtual element are selected.
- **calculate**: This method is called after the data retrieval. It uses the values of the relevant elements to calculate the value for the virtual element.

**Prerequisites**

- The virtual element is modeled in the CDS projection view as explained in *Modeling Virtual Elements* (page 622).
- The virtual element uses the annotation `@ObjectModel.virtualElementCalculatedBy` which references an existing ABAP class.

**Procedure**

1. Add the interface `IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ` to the public section of your calculation class and add the two method implementations.

   ![Example](/dmo/cl_days_to_flight DEFINITION PUBLIC FINAL CREATE PUBLIC . PUBLIC SECTION.
   INTERFACES if_sadl_exit_calc_element_read.
   PROTECTED SECTION.
   PRIVATE SECTION.
   ENDCCLASS.
   CLASS /dmo/cl_days_to_flight IMPLEMENTATION.
   METHOD if_sadl_exit_calc_element_read-get_calculation_info.
   ENDMETHOD.
   METHOD if_sadl_exit_calc_element_read-calculate.
   ENDMETHOD.
   ENDCCLASS.

2. Implement the method **get_calculation_info**.
   With this method, you can check that the calculation for the virtual element is only executed if the relevant element is requested. In addition, you must provide a list of elements that are required for the calculation. You can only add elements of the requested CDS entity.
   For more information, see the method description of **get_calculation_info** (page 962).
   If an entity or a virtual element other than the intended is requested, raise adequate exceptions. For more information on application-specific message handling, see , , and .

   ![Example](At first, we check if the requested entity is the entity that contains the virtual element for which the calculation is intended. To calculate the remaining time or the passed time compared to the flight date, we need the element FlightDate. This element is added to the requested elements list to ensure that the value is available to calculate the virtual element.)
It is possible to calculate the values for more than one virtual element in the same ABAP class. Depending on the virtual element, you might have to append different elements to the list of requested elements.

```abap
CLASS /dmo/cl_days_to_flight IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD if_sadl_exit_calc_element_read-get_calculation_info.
    IF iv_entity <> '/DMO/C_BOOKING_VE'.
      RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_virtual_elements
        EXPORTING
          textid = /dmo/cx_virtual_elements=>entity_not_known
          entity = iv_entity.
    ENDIF.
    LOOP AT it_requested_calc_elements ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_calc_element>).
      CASE <fs_calc_element>.
        WHEN 'DAYSTOFLIGHT'.
          APPEND 'FLIGHTDATE' TO et_requested_orig_elements.
        WHEN 'ANOTHERELEMENT'.
          APPEND '' ...
        WHEN OTHERS.
          RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_virtual_elements
            EXPORTING
              textid  = /dmo/cx_virtual_elements=>virtual_element_not_known
              element = <fs_calc_element>
              entity  = iv_entity.
      END_CASE.
    ENDDO.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

**i Note**

The methods of the interface IF_SADL_CALC_ELEMENT_READ import and export their parameters as strings in upper case. The CDS entity and element names must therefore be in upper case as well, so they can be mapped correctly.

3. Implement the method `calculate`.
   
   * `it_original_data` With this method, you must as they are previously retrieved. The parameter `it_requested_calc_elements` contains one or more virtual elements. In the changing parameter `ct_calculated_data`, you must provide the calculated value for the virtual element.
   
   For more information, see the method description of `calculate` [page 963].

**Example**

In our example, we want to calculate how many days are left before the flight or how many days have passed since the flight, so we compare the value of `FLIGHTDATE` with today’s date to calculate the value for the virtual element.

The system date can be retrieved via `cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( )`.

ABAP is able to calculate with date types as long as the date context is clear. The actual calculation is therefore quite easy: We just subtract the today’s date from the flight date. The returning parameter can then be filled with the calculated days to flight.

```abap
METHOD if_sadl_exit_calc_element_read-calculate.
  DATA (lv_today) = cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ).
  DATA lt_original_data TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/c_booking_proc_ve WITH DEFAULT KEY.
  DATA lt_calculated_data = CORRESPONDING #( it_original_data ).
  LOOP AT lt_calculated_data ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_calculated_data>).
```
Related Information

Interface IF_SADL_EXIT CALC_ELEMENT_READ [page 962]

6.2 Business Objects

6.2.1 Automatically Drawing Primary Key Values in Managed BOs

In managed scenarios with UUID keys, the values for primary key fields can be automatically generated by the managed runtime framework.

Context

Values for primary key fields can be generated automatically for managed business objects. This so-called Managed Early Numbering [page 92] is defined in the behavior definition of the business object. During the CREATE operation, the managed runtime framework draws the UUID automatically for the defined key fields. The newly created BO instance is immediately uniquely identifiable after the CREATE operation and saved with the given key during the save sequence.

For more information, see Numbering [page 91].

Prerequisites

- The primary key field has the ABAP type `raw(16)` (UUID).
- The implementation type of the RAP BO is managed.
Syntax

You define managed early numbering for primary key fields in the behavior definition by using the following syntax:

```
[implementation] managed [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]];  
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]  
  lock {master|dependent()}  
  ...  
  ...  
  field { [read only,] numbering:managed } KeyField1, [KeyField2];  
  ...  
```

The key field must be read-only if you intend the key fields to be filled internally only. If you do not set the key field to read-only, the key value can also be given by the consumer. However, use cases for this optional external numbering [page 93] are rare, as it is untypical for the consumer to fill in a UUID value.

Example

The following simplified BO exemplifies the use case to have the framework generate a UUID key for a managed BO.

1. **Database table** /dmo/travel_uuid
   
   The basis for the data model is a database table similar to /DMO/travel (that is included in the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 984]). To demonstrate managed numbering, we need a key field with UUID type (raw(16)).

   ```
   @EndUserText.label : 'Flight Reference Scenario: Managing Travels'
   @AbapCatalog.enhancementCategory : #NOT_EXTENSIBLE
   @AbapCatalog.tableCategory : #TRANSPARENT
   @AbapCatalog.deliveryClass : #A
   @AbapCatalog.dataMaintenance : #LIMITED
   define table /dmo/travel_uuid {  
     key client : abap.clnt not null;
     key travel_uuid : sysuuid_x16 not null;
     travel_id : /dmo/travel_id;
     agency_id : /dmo/agency_id;
     customer_id : /dmo/customer_id;
     begin_date : /dmo/begin_date;
     end_date : /dmo/end_date;
     @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/travel_uuid.currency_code'
     booking_fee : /dmo/booking_fee;
     @Semantics.amount.currencyCode : '/dmo/travel_uuid.currency_code'
     total_price : /dmo/total_price;
     currency_code : /dmo/currency_code;
     description : /dmo/description;
     overall_status : /dmo/overall_status;
     created_by : syuname;
     created_at : timestampl;
     last_changed_by : syuname;
     last_changed_at : timestampl;
   }
   ```

2. **CDS root view** /DMO/I_TRAVEL_UUID
   
   The data model for the simplified travel scenario is defined in a CDS view that is similar to /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M. The difference in the UUID scenario is that the UUID key field is obligatory. In addition to the
UUID key field, the travel CDS view also defines the non-key field `travel_id`, which assigns an additional semantic identifier. This semantic is not a key element in the scenario. It simply serves as an additional, more simple, identifier that is easier to read by consumers. The value for this field is defined via a determination in the behavior pool.

```sql
@AbapCatalog.sqlViewName: '/dmo/traveluuid'
@AbapCatalog.compiler.compareFilter: true
@AbapCatalog.preserveKey: true
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
@EndUserText.label: 'Root View with Travel UUID'
define view /dmo/travel_uuid as select from /dmo/travel_uuid
{ ///dmo/travel_uuid
  travel_uuid,
  travel_id,
  agency_id,
  customer_id,
  begin_date,
  end_date,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
  booking_fee,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'currency_code'
  total_price,
  @semantics.currencyCode: true
  currency_code,
  description,
  overall_status,
  @Semantics.user.createdBy: true
  created_by,
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.createdAt: true
  created_at,
  @Semantics.user.lastChangedBy: true
  last_changed_by,
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt: true
  last_changed_at
}
```

3. **Behavior Definition /DMO/I_TRAVEL_UUID**

   For the root CDS view `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_UUID`, the following behavior definition defines managed numbering for the UUID key field `travel_uuid`.

   The key UUID field is defined as read only. Not setting the key field to read only causes optional external numbering [page 93], in which it is also possible for the consumer to set the value manually. In this scenario, we want to set the value for the additional identifier `travel_id` by a determination. Because of that, this field is also set to read-only.

   ```
   managed;
   define behavior for /dmo/i_travel_uuid alias Travel
   implementation in class /dmo/bp_i_travel_uuid unique
   persistent table /DMO/TRAVEL_UUID
   lock master
   etag master last_changed_at
   {   
      field ( read only, numbering : managed ) travel_uuid;
      field ( read only ) travel_id;
      create;
      update;
      delete;
      /** optional determination to determine the travel ID
      determination CreateKeys on modify { create; }
   }
   ```

4. **Optional: Determination to determine the value for semantic travel identifier**
The value for the travel_id field is assigned via a determination. In this way, the consumer does not have to enter the semantic identifier manually. It is assigned on CREATE.

The determination is defined in the behavior definition and implemented in the behavior pool. For more information, see Determinations [page 152].

For the implementation, get a new travel id and execute an EML modify on the newly created instance to assign the new travel ID to the instance. To make sure that the determination result does not change in case it is executed twice under the same circumstances, we have to make sure that a new travel id is only assigned if the the travel id field is initial.

### Note

To ensure that one travel ID is only assigned once, you can use a number range object.

The following code example does not show how to get this new travel ID. It is just suggested by the method call of get_number.

```abap
CLASS lhc_Travel_UUID DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS CreateKeys FOR DETERMINATION Travel~CreateKeys IMPORTING keys FOR Travel.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS lhc_Travel IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD CreateKeys.
  " Read entity to check if travel id is initial
  READ ENTITIES OF zmv_i_travel_uuid IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY travel
     FIELDS ( travel_id )
     WITH CORRESPONDING #( keys )
  RESULT DATA(lt_travel_result).

  " only modify entities where no travel_id is given
  DELETE lt_travel_result WHERE travel_id IS NOT INITIAL.
  LOOP AT lt_travel_result ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_travel>).
    " get a new travel ID
    DATA(lv_travel_id_new) = get_number( ).
    <fs_travel>-travel_id = lv_travel_id_new.
  ENDLOOP.
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF zmv_i_travel_uuid IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY travel
    UPDATE FROM VALUE #( FOR travel IN lt_travel_result
      ( travel_uuid  = travel-%key-travel_uuid
        travel_id   = travel-travel_id
        %control-travel_id = if_abap_behv=>mk-on ) )
    )
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

5. **UI Preview**

The following figure shows the creation of a new travel instance when using managed numbering for the UUID key field and a determination to assign the semantic identifier on CREATE.

For this example to run like it is shown below, you must add UI annotations to the elements in the CDS view.

### Note

This example scenario to automatically draw UUID values for primary key fields is highly simplified. Basic important elements of a travel scenario, such as eTag or BO projection, are left aside to focus on the principle of managed early numbering.
Managed Numbering in UUID Scenario

Related Information

Numbering [page 91]

6.2.2 Using Type and Control Mapping

Whenever existing legacy code and data types are to be reused in behavior pools of business objects, then you need to perform a mapping between CDS field names and types and corresponding legacy field names and types.

Use Case

You can use this kind of mapping in applications that include unmanaged or managed business objects based on CDS entities on the one hand, and legacy data types (ABAP Dictionary types) (and functionality) that are generally older.

This is particularly significant for the unmanaged implementation type, which essentially represents a kind of wrapper for existing legacy functionality.

Also with the managed implementation type, it can happen that, for example, the code for a determination or validation already exists, but is based on "old" (legacy) data types.

When accessing the legacy code, the developer would normally have to use "corresponding with mapping" in many places to map input derived types [page 1025] (type table for create, type table for
action import) to legacy types and vice versa to map legacy results to output derived types [page 1025] (type table for action result, type table for read result, failed).

In addition, the types used to represent the control information also can differ significantly in the legacy code and the current ABAP programming model:

In some legacy scenarios (especially the ones using BAPIs), in addition to the dictionary type directly corresponding to the entity, there is another one that contains (ideally) the same fields as that type, but these all have the type C(1) (like the control structures in BAPIs). This type has the same function as the $CONTROL [page 947] structure in derived types [page 1025], which indicates that fields in the main structure that are accessed by an operation (update, read, and so on) Such type pairs are often used in BAPIs, for example BAPIAD2VD/BAPIAD2VDX. The control data element is BAPIUPDATE with the type C(1).

The solution is now to introduce a central, declarative mapping within the behavior definition instead of many individual corresponding statements. This improves maintainability of the application’s source code.

**Defining Type and Control Mapping in the Behavior Definition**

A mapping sets the entity in relation to any other structured ABAP Dictionary type (legacy type). It is introduced in the behavior definition for an unmanaged [page 1037] or managed [page 1030] implementation type with the keyword mapping for.

**Syntax: Mapping statement in the behavior definition**

```plaintext
[implementation] unmanaged|managed [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]];
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
  ...
  {mapping for ...}
  ...
}
```

**Variant 1: Field Mapping**

The simplest form for mapping definition is the following:

**Syntax: Field mapping with corresponding**

```plaintext
mapping for LegacyType corresponding
  {EntityField1 = LegacyField1;
   EntityField2 = LegacyField2;
   ...
  }
```

The addition corresponding automatically maps fields of the same name to each another. The corresponding fields of different names can be specified through explicitly listed field pairs.

The corresponding addition can also be omitted, which is not recommended in general, because then the automatic mapping of fields with the same name is lost.
If no renaming of the fields is required, the short form can be used:

**Syntax (short form):**

```plaintext
mapping for LegacyType corresponding;
```

**Note**

Mapping can be partial (legacy type contains fields that do not match any fields in CDS).

**Variant 2: Field and Control Type Mapping**

Using the following syntax, a mapping definition can be made simultaneously for a main field type `{LegacyType}` and a control type `{ControlType}`:

**Syntax: Field type and control mapping with corresponding**

```plaintext
mapping for LegacyType control ControlType corresponding
{
    EntityField1 = LegacyField1;
    EntityField2 = LegacyField2;
    ...
}
```

If no renaming of the fields is required, the short form can be used:

**Syntax (short form):**

```plaintext
mapping for LegacyType control ControlType corresponding;
```

Usually, it is assumed that the fields in the main and control type have the same name.

A different field mapping in `{ ... }` is specified as:

```plaintext
EntityField = LegacyField control ControlField;
```

**Note**

For all control type fields, the type `C(1)` or `X(1)` is expected.

**Using Type Mapping in ABAP**

The reference to mappings that are defined in a behavior definition is done by some special variants of the ABAP `corresponding` operator.

**Syntax: Input mapping (entity type to legacy type)**

```plaintext
data:
    legacy_var type LegacyType,
    entity_var type structure|table for create|update|delete entity.
    ...
    legacy_var = corresponding #( entity_var mapping from entity ).
```
The addition from entity assigns entity_var field-wise to data object legacy_var according to the mapping definition for LegacyType in the behavior definition.

This mapping works fine if the type of entity_var is an input derived type, or the entity type itself, or the table type of the entity.

**Syntax: Output mapping (from legacy type to entity type)**

```plaintext
data:
  legacy_var type LegacyType,
  entity_var type table for read result entity.
...
entity_var = corresponding #{ legacy_var mapping to entity }.
```

The addition to entity assigns legacy_var field-wise to data object entity_var according to the mapping definition for LegacyType in the behavior definition.

This mapping works fine if the type of entity_var is an output derived type, or the entity type itself, or the table type of the entity.

### Using Control Type Mapping in ABAP

Control mapping is about supporting the actual semantics of the %control fields: They indicate which of the fields should be, for example, changed by an update or read by a read operation.

For the move between an input derived type (type table for create, type table for action import) and a target structure, this means that only the fields for which the corresponding control field is set should be moved.

**Syntax: Using control**

```plaintext
target = corresponding #{ source using control }.
```

The structure or table source must be a derived type that also includes the %control structure.

For example, if the source has a field amount, then %control-amount decides whether to move the value of amount to the corresponding field of target – only if the value of the corresponding control field is non-initial.

By combining with the additional mapping from entity described above, also field mapping specified in the behavior definition is effective:

**Syntax: Using control with field mapping**

```plaintext
target = corresponding #{ source mapping from entity using control }.
```
Conversely, there is an addition changing control that allows the %control fields of a derived type to be set from a %control-less source structure - based on the criterion of whether the corresponding field is non-initial.

**Syntax: Changing control**

```
    target = corresponding #( source changing control ).
```

**Related Information**

Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]
Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 6.2.3 Using Groups in Large Development Projects

This section introduces the concept of groups that can be used to divide operations, actions and other implementation-relevant parts of the business logic into several groups for behavior implementation.

**Use Case**

Generally, the implementation of business object entity’s operations and actions is done in the Local Types include of the behavior pool (ABAP class that implements business object’s behavior) associated with that entity – unless the control of the implementation classes using the IMPLEMENTATION IN CLASS syntax (at entity level) has been completely dispensed.

Since the Local Types include can only be changed by one developer at a time, the efficiency of development would be significantly reduced in case of larger implementations. Let us think about large business objects with extensive business logic implementations, with many entities, each of which may contain a variety of elements.

As a solution, the operations and actions of an entity can be divided into several groups, whereby each of these groups can then be assigned a different behavior pool as implementation class.

Especially in large development projects the responsibilities for the implementation of application logic, are assigned to different members of a development team. To support this approach technically, we introduce the concept of groups. This approach enables that a team of developers can implement parts of business logic independent from each other. In addition, the group concept allows to tailor the functionality of business objects according to semantic considerations.

![Relationship Between Entities, Groups and Implementing Classes](image)

**Relationship Between Entities, Groups and Implementing Classes**
Syntax: Defining Groups for Unmanaged Business Objects

Groups can be defined within a behavior definition for a business object of type unmanaged by using the following syntax:

```abap
[implementation] unmanaged [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]]; define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
    lock (master|dependent() )
... 
{
    group groupName_1 implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_1 unique
    {
        // Implementation-relevant content of the entity
    }
    group groupName_2 implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_2 unique
    {
        // Implementation-relevant content of the entity
    }
    // It is possible to assign the same behavior pool as the implementation class in different groups
    group groupName_3 implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_1 unique
    {
        // Implementation-relevant content of the entity
    }
    group ...
}
```

Syntax: Defining Groups for Managed Business Objects

Groups can be defined within a behavior definition for a business object of type managed by using the following syntax:

```abap
[implementation] managed [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]]; define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]
    persistent table DB_TABLE
... 
{
    [create;]
    [update;]
    [delete;]
    [read;]
    [association AssociationName [abbreviation AbbreviationName] [[create;] ] ]
    group groupName_1 implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_1 unique
    {
        // Implementation-relevant content of the entity
    }
    group groupName_2 implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_2 unique
    {
        // Implementation-relevant content of the entity
    }
    // It is possible to assign the same behavior pool as the implementation class in different groups
    group groupName_3 implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_1 unique
    {
        // Implementation-relevant content of the entity
    }
```
Explanatory Notes

(1) The group name is defined locally within the entity’s behavior definition and must not conflict with actions, determinations, or validations of the same name.

(2) The implementation in class syntax can only be used on groups, but no longer on individual entity’s behavior definition itself. A group requires a behavior pool ABAP_CLASS_* and the addition of unique.

**Note**

With the addition implementation in class ABAP_CLASS in the header of the behavior definition, you have the option to implement the remaining functionality for all entities in a common behavior pool. For example, the save sequence for all entities of a business object could be implemented in a single behavior pool ABAP_CLASS.

It is possible to specify the same behavior pool as the implementation class in different groups. In the syntax above, the implementation-relevant content of groupName_1 and of groupName_3 must be implemented in ABAP_CLASS_1.

(3) The implementation-relevant content of an entity can be:

- Actions
- Instance-based feature control
- Determinations - for managed implementation type only
- Validations - for managed implementation type only.

**Note**

In the case of unmanaged implementation type, the standard operations (CREATE, UPDATE, DELETE) as well as READ and CREATE by association must be assigned to a group. In the managed case however, the standard operations (that are implemented by the framework) and READ and CREATE for associations can be specified either inside or outside groups.

(4) Information on mapping (which is never relevant to implementation) must always be specified outside of groups.

(5) Implicit standard operations (defined automatically and did not have to be explicitly specified) must be explicitly specified within one and the same group in the unmanaged case (where they are implementation-relevant):

- read; - for READ operations of an entity
- lock; - for LOCK operations of an entity that is defined as lock master.

Examples

**Listing:** Groups in the behavior definition of an unmanaged business object

```plaintext
implementation unmanaged implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U;
// behavior definition for the TRAVEL root entity
```
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_U alias travel
etag LastChangedAt
lock master
{
group travel_cud implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_cud unique
{
  field ( read only ) TravelID;
  field ( mandatory ) AgencyID, CustomerID, BeginDate, EndDate;
  field(features:instance) overall_status;
  create;
  update(features:instance);
  delete;
  read; // read and lock must be assigned explicitly to a group
  lock;
}
group travel_cba implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_cba unique
{
  association _Booking { create; }
}
group travel_main_actions implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_main_a unique
{
  action(features : instance) set_status_booked result [1] $self;
  action getTravel result [1] $self;
  action copyTravel result [1] $self;
}
group travel_aux_actions implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_aux_a unique
{
  action(features:instance) getMaxDate result [1] $self;
  action(features:instance) getminDate result [1] $self;
}
mapping for /dmo/travel
{
  ...
}
// behavior definition for the BOOKING child entity
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_U alias booking
lock dependent ( travel_id = travel_id )
{
  group booking_rud implementation in class /dmo/bp_booking_rud unique
  {
    read;
    update;
    delete;
  }
group booking_fc implementation in class /dmo/bp_booking_fc unique
{
  field ( read only ) TravelID, BookingID;
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate;
  action(features:instance) confirmBooking result [1] $self;
}
mapping for /dmo/booking
{
  ...
}
}

Listing: Groups in the behavior definition of a managed business object
authorization master ( instance )
etag LastChangedAt
{
create;
delete;
association _Booking { create; }
group travel_fc implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_fc unique
{
  field ( read only ) TravelID;
  field ( mandatory ) AgencyID, CustomerID, BeginDate, EndDate;
  field(features:instance) overall_status;
}
group travel_cba implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_cba unique
{
  association _Booking { create; }
}
group travel_actions implementation in class /dmo/bp_travel_a unique
{
  action(features : instance) set_status_booked result [1] $self;
  action getTravel result [1] $self;
  action ( authorization : none ) copyTravel result [1] $self;
  action(features:instance) getMaxDate result [1] $self;
  action(features:instance) getminDate result [1] $self;
}
group booking_det_val implementation in class /dmo/bp_booking_det_val unique
{
  determination determineDiscount on modify { create; }
  validation validateAgency on save { field Agency_ID; }
  validation validateCustomer on save { field Customer_ID; }
  validation validateDates on save { field Begin_Date, End_Date; }
  validation validateStatus on save { field overall_Status; }
}
mapping for /dmo/travel
{
  ...
}
// behavior definition for the BOOKING child entity
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
{
  read;
  update;
  delete;
  mapping for /dmo/booking
  {
    ...
  }
group booking_fc implementation in class /dmo/bp_booking_fc unique
{
  field ( read only ) TravelID, BookingID;
  field ( mandatory ) CustomerID, AirlineID, ConnectionID, FlightDate;
  action(features:instance) confirmBooking result [1] $self;
}
group booking_det_val implementation in class /dmo/bp_booking_det_val unique
{
  determination totalBookingPrice on modify { field Flight_Price; }
  determination determineCustomerStatus on modify { create; }
  // internal action: triggered by determination
  internal action SetCustomerStatus;
}
Implementation-Related Aspects

(1) The name of the group and which operations are associated with this group do not matter to external users (and can therefore be changed retrospectively by the developer). This means that external operations and actions are still accessed by the usual syntax, in which only the name of the entity, the operation, and, if applicable, the action/determination/validation or association plays a role, but not the name of the group.

However, there are exceptions: the name of the group is relevant for the implementation of instance-based feature control - the corresponding implementations then control only those features that are associated with their respective group. (The framework merges the information for the external consumers.) The corresponding syntax entity-group can only be used within the implementation class associated with that group. Specifically, the following declarations are concerned:

Syntax for methods ... for features

```
methods method_name for features key_param
  request request_param for entity-group_name
  result result_parameter.
```

Syntax for types/data ... for features

```
type|data ... type table|structure for features key|request|result
entity-group_name.
```

iNote

This declaration can also be done in the public section of the implementation class to make the group-dependent type public outside. Because it makes the changes to group assignment incompatible with external users, such publishing is not recommended.

Example: Declaration of local handler for feature control implementation

Within the implementation class, the syntax methods ... for features for instance-based feature control can only be defined by specifying the group name:

```
class lhc_travel_fc definition inheriting from cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  private section.
    methods get_features for features
      importing keys request requested_features for travel-group_name result
      result.
  endclass.
```

(2) Because associations with the usual association syntax can only be assigned as a whole to a group, it is not possible to implement the association’s CREATE operation in an implementation class other than the READ operation.

Example: Local behavior implementation of create by association

```
class lhc_travel_cba definition inheriting from cl_abap_behavior_handler.
  private section.
    methods create_bookings for modify
```
importing entities for create travel\_Booking.
methods read_bookings for read
importing keys for read travel\_Booking full result_requested
result result link association_links.
endclass.
class lhc_travel_cba implementation.
method create_bookings.
...
endmethod.
method read_bookings.
...
endmethod.
endclass.

6.2.4 Consuming Business Objects with EML

Business objects can be consumed not only by means of the OData protocol (for example, in Fiori UIs) but also directly in ABAP by using Entity Manipulation Language (EML).

This topic offers some code samples to demonstrate how you can access our Travel business object with EML syntax in a simple consumer class. You will get to know the core structure of EML at this point.

Contents:
EXAMPLE 1: Implementing UPDATE for Travel Data [page 640]
EXAMPLE 2: Executing an Action [page 642]
EXAMPLE 3: Implementing DELETE for Travel Instances and Their Child Instances [page 643]
EXAMPLE 4: Creating Instances Along the Composition Hierarchy ("deep create") [page 644]

EXAMPLE 1: Implementing UPDATE for Travel Data

In this example, two fields agencyid and the memo text should be changed to a given travel instance.

Prerequisites
The entity instances can only be updated in a MODIFY call if the update operation is specified for each relevant entity in the behavior definition and is implemented in the behavior pool accordingly.

Because the change will only affect one entity, we use the short form of the MODIFY syntax:

Syntax for UPDATE

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITY EntityName
   UPDATE FIELDS ( field1 field2 ...) WITH it_instance_u
   [FAILED ls_failed | DATA(ls_failed)]
   [REPORTED ls_reported | DATA(ls_reported)].
```
The `UPDATE` call allows to trigger delta updates on consumer side where only the key field and the fields with new values need to be supplied. From provider side, it allows to identify which fields are overwritten and which need to be kept according to the DB data. The fields to be updated are specified in the field list through addition

FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ).

The following listing provides you with the source code of an executable consumer class. To enable the classrun mode, the consumer class implements the `if_oo_adt_classrun` interface.

Since the result data is not exported as part of the `UPDATE` statement, a subsequent `READ ENTITY` call is required to read the changed data from transactional buffer. The result data of the read operation is specified in the target variable `lt_received_travel_data`.

Listing 1: Implementing `UPDATE` for Travel Data

```abap
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_update DEFINITION
PUBLIC FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC .
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES if_oo_adt_classrun.
PROTECTED SECTION.
PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_update IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD if_oo_adt_classrun~main.
DATA(lv_travel_id)     = '00000011'. " Valid travel ID
DATA(lv_description)   = 'Changed Travel Agency'.
DATA(lv_new_agency_id) = '070017'.   " Valid agency ID
" UPDATE travel data
MODIFY ENTITY /DMO/I_Travel_U
  UPDATE FIELDS ( agencyid memo ) WITH VALUE # ( {
    travelid  = lv_travel_id
    agencyid  = lv_new_agency_id
    memo      = lv_description
  )
FAILED   DATA(ls_failed)
REPORTED DATA(ls_reported).
" Read travel data from transactional buffer
CLEAR: ls_reported, ls_failed.
READ ENTITY /DMO/I_Travel_U
  FIELDS ( agencyid memo ) WITH VALUE # ( { travelid = lv_travel_id } )
RESULT   DATA(lt_received_travel_data)
FAILED   ls_failed.
" Output result data on the console
OUT->WRITE( lt_received_travel_data ).
" Persist changed travel data in the database
COMMIT ENTITIES.
" Check criteria of success
IF SY-subrc = 0.
  out->write( 'Successful COMMIT!' ).
ELSE.
  out->write( 'COMMIT failed!' ).
ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

Checking Results

To check the results of the `MODIFY` call, run the main method of the consumer class `/dmo/cl_eml_travel_update` by pressing `F9` key and view the received `RESULT` data (`lt_received_travel_data`) on the console output. This data contains all fields of the target travel instance (in this example, with the travel ID = 11).
EXAMPLE 2: Executing an Action

All modify operations in EML that cannot be implemented by standard operations (create, update, delete) are handled by actions.

This example demonstrates the implementation of an action related to a given travel instance. The consumer class (see Listing 2 below) is implemented to change the status of the travel processing to booked.

Prerequisites

The SET_STATUS_BOOKED action is specified in the behavior definition at the root entity level and is implemented in the behavior pool accordingly.

The MODIFY statement uses the following general syntax for executing an action:

**Syntax for UPDATE (short form)**

```plaintext
MODIFY ENTITY EntityName
  EXECUTE action_name FROM it_instance_a
  [RESULT result_action | DATA(result_action)]
  [FAILED ls_failed | DATA(ls_failed)]
  [REPORTED ls_reported | DATA(ls_reported)].
```

The `action_name` refers to the name of an action as it is defined in the behavior definition for the corresponding entity. The input parameter `it_instance_a` contains the keys of the entities on which the action has to be executed.

The syntax for executing an action allows exporting of result data. The result data of an action execution is specified in the target variable `result_action`.

The following listing provides you with the source code of an executable consumer class implementing the execution of `set_status_booked` action for a selected travel instance. Again, to enable the class-run mode, the consumer class `/dmo/cl_eml_travel_action` implements the `if_oo_adt_classrun` interface.

**Listing 2: Executing the SET_STATUS_BOOKED Action**

```plaintext
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_action DEFINITION
  PUBLIC
  FINAL
  CREATE PUBLIC .
  PUBLIC SECTION.
    INTERFACES if_oo_adt_classrun.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
```
PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_action IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD if_oa_adt_classrun~main.
    DATA(lv_travel_id) = '00000026'. " Valid travel ID
    " EXECUTE action for travel data
    MODIFY ENTITY /DMO/I_Travel_U
      EXECUTE set_status_booked
      FROM VALUE #(( travelid = lv_travel_id ) )
      RESULT DATA(lt_set_status_booked)
      FAILED   DATA(ls_failed)
      REPORTED DATA(ls_reported).
    " Output result data on the console
    OUT->WRITE( lt_set_status_booked[ 1 ]-%param ).
    " Persist changed travel data in the database
    COMMIT ENTITIES.
    " Check criteria of success
    IF SY-subrc = 0.
      out->write( 'Successful COMMIT!' ).
    ELSE.
      out->write( 'COMMIT failed!' ).
    ENDIF.
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Checking Results
To check the results of the MODIFY call, run the main method of the class from listing above by pressing F9 key and then view the received RESULT data (lt_set_status_booked) on the console output.

EXAMPLE 3: Implementing DELETE for Travel Instances and Their Child Instances

This example demonstrates how you can implement multiple DELETE operations for different entities in one MODIFY call. In this case, we use the long form of the MODIFY statement that allows you to collect multiple operations on multiple entities of one business object that is identified by RootEntityName.

Prerequisites
The entity instances can only be deleted in a MODIFY call if the delete operation is specified for each relevant entity in the behavior definition and is implemented in the behavior pool(s) accordingly.

Syntax for DELETE (long form)

MODIFY ENTITIES OF RootEntityName
  ENTITY entity_1_name
    DELETE FROM it_instance1_d
  ENTITY entity_2_name
    DELETE FROM it_instance2_d
  ...
  [FAILED   DATA(it_failed)]
  [REPORTED DATA(it_reported)].
To delete individual instances of entities, the keys of the entity must be specified in the \texttt{FROM} clause of the \texttt{MODIFY} statement.

Each \texttt{DELETE} operation has a table of instances as input parameters: \texttt{it_instance1_d} and \texttt{it_instance1_d}, which provide the \texttt{MODIFY} call with key information.

The following listing provides you with the source code of an executable consumer class that implements the deletion of a given travel instance \texttt{lv_travel_to_delete} and a booking supplement \texttt{lv_booksuppl_to_delete}.

\textbf{Listing 3: Implementing \texttt{DELETE} for Travel and Booking Supplement Instances}

\begin{verbatim}
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_delete DEFINITION PUBLIC FINAL CREATE PUBLIC.
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES if_oo_adt_classrun.
PROTECTED SECTION.
PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_delete IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD if_oo_adt_classrun~main.
  DATA(lv_travel_to_delete)    = '00000077'.  " Valid IDs
  DATA(lv_travel_id)           = '00000101'.
  DATA(lv_booking_id)          = '0002'.
  DATA(lv_booksuppl_to_delete) = '04'.
  MODIFY ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_U
    " Delete travel and all child instances (booking, booking supplements)
    ENTITY travel
      DELETE FROM VALUE #( ( travelid            = lv_travel_to_delete ) )
    " Delete booking supplement with the ID =04
    ENTITY bookingsupplement
      DELETE FROM VALUE #( ( travelid            = lv_travel_id
                      bookingid           = lv_booking_id
                      bookingsupplementid = lv_booksuppl_to_delete )
                        REPORTED DATA(ls_reported)
  FAILED   DATA(ls_failed).
    " Persist changed travel data in the database
  COMMIT ENTITIES.
    " Check criteria of success
  IF SY-subrc = 0.
    out->write( 'Successful COMMIT!' ).
  ELSE.
    out->write( 'COMMIT failed!' ).
  ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Checking Results}

To check the results of the \texttt{MODIFY} call, run the \texttt{main} method of the class from listing above by pressing \texttt{F9} key in the class editor and then search for data of selected instances in the data preview tool (\texttt{F8} on the CDS root view \texttt{DMO/I_TRAVEL_U}.)
EXAMPLE 4: Creating Instances Along the Composition Hierarchy ("deep create")

This example demonstrates how you can implement a direct CREATE and multiple CREATE BY association operations for different entities in one MODIFY call. In this case, the long form of the MODIFY statement is used to collect multiple operations on multiple entities of one business object that is identified by the RootEntityName.

Prerequisites

The instances of entities (root or child) can only be directly created in a MODIFY call if the create operation is specified for the relevant entities in the behavior definition (and is implemented in the behavior pool accordingly - in case of unmanaged implementation type).

The same applies to instances of child entities that are created by association. In this case however, an association to the child entity must be specified in behavior definition (and implemented in a handler method of the behavior pool - in case of unmanaged implementation type).

Syntax for CREATE (BY association)

```
MODIFY ENTITIES OF RootEntityName " name of root CDS view
    ENTITY entity_1_name
        CREATE FIELDS ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH it_instance1_c
        CREATE BY \association1_name ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH it_instance1_cba
        ...
    ENTITY entity_2_name
        CREATE BY \association2_name ( field1 field2 ... ) WITH it_instance2_cba
        ...
    [FAILED   DATA(it_failed)]
    [MAPPED   DATA(it_mapped)]
    [REPORTED DATA(it_reported)].
```

→ Remember

When multiple entity instances are created by one MODIFY statement, then it is required to provide the content ID %CID [page 947] information for all instances to be created.

In addition to the content ID, the required field values for the instance to be created must be populated. This is done by the input parameter it_instance_c in the CREATE FIELDS ( ) WITH statement.

If the instances of child entities should to be created by an association, besides the parent key, also the new values for the child entity to be created, must be populated in the create operation. The input parameter it_instance_cba in the CREATE BY \association1_name... statement is therefore a table type containing the parent key (reference to content ID in case the parent instance is created in the same MODIFY call) and the target sub-table that refers to the child instance to be created.

The following listing provides you with the source code of an executable consumer class that implements the creation of a new travel instance including a new booking and the associated booking supplement.

Listing 4: Creating Instances with %CIDs

```
CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_subnodes DEFINITION
PUBLIC FINAL
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Common Tasks
PUBLIC 645
CREATE PUBLIC.
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES if_oo_adt_classrun.
PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS /dmo/cl_eml_travel_subnodes IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD if_oo_adt_classrun-main.
TYPES: BEGIN OF ts_flight,
carrier_id    TYPE /dmo/carrier_id,
connection_id TYPE /dmo/connection_id,
flight_date   TYPE /dmo/flight_date,
price         TYPE /dmo/flight_price,
currency_code TYPE /dmo/currency_code,
END OF ts_flight.
DATA gv_booking_date TYPE /dmo/booking_date.
DATA gv_customer_id TYPE /dmo/customer_id.
DATA gs_flight TYPE ts_flight.
DATA(lv_description) = 'Intro to EML'.
DATA(lv_agency_id) = '070048'.
DATA(lv_my_agency_id) = '070017'.

" Get current date
gv_booking_date = cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ).
" Get valid customer ID
SELECT SINGLE customer_id FROM /dmo/customer INTO @gv_customer_id..
" Get valid flight data
SELECT SINGLE FROM /dmo/flight FIELDS * INTO @DATA(ls_flight).
" Get valid supplement data
SELECT SINGLE FROM /dmo/supplement FIELDS * INTO @DATA(ls_supplement).
" Create a new travel > booking > booking supplement
MODIFY ENTITIES OF /dmo/i_travel_u ENTITY travel
CREATE FIELDS ( agencyid customerid begindate enddate memo status )
VALUE #( ( %cid       = 'CID_100' " Preliminary ID
agencyid = lv_agency_id
customerid = gv_customer_id
begindate = '20191212'
enddate = '20191227'
memo = lv_description
status = CONV #( /dmo/
if_flight_legacy=>travel_status-new ) )
" Update data of travel instance
UPDATE FIELDS ( agencyid memo status ) WITH
VALUE #( ( %cid_ref = 'CID_100' " Refers to travel
agencyid = lv_my_agency_id
memo = 'Changed Agency and Status!'
status = CONV #( /dmo/
if_flight_legacy=>travel_status-planned ) )
" Create a new booking by association
connectionid flightdate flightprice currencycode ) WITH
VALUE #( ( %cid_ref = 'CID_100' "refers to the
bookingdate = gv_booking_date
customerid = gv_customer_id
airlineid = ls_flight-
carrier_id
connection_id
flight_date
"Create a booking supplement by association
ENTITY booking
CREATE BY \_booksupplement FIELDS ( supplementid price currencycode )
WITH
VALUE #( ( %cid_ref = 'CID_200'
    %target = VALUE #( (
      %cid = 'CID_300'
      supplementid = ls_supplement-supplement_id
      price = ls_supplement-price
      currencycode = ls_supplement-currency_code
    ) ) )
MAPPED DATA(ls_mapped)
FAILED DATA(ls_failed)
REPORTED DATA(ls_reported).
COMMIT ENTITIES.
" Check criteria of success
IF SY-subrc = 0.
  out->write( 'Successful COMMIT!' ).
ELSE.
  out->write( 'COMMIT failed!' ).
ENDIF.
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.

Checking Results
To check the results, run the main method of the consumer class /dmo/cl_eml_travel_subnodes from listing above by pressing F9 key in the class editor and then search for the newly created travel, booking and booking supplement instances in the data preview tool (F8 on the travel root CDS view /DMO/I_TRAVEL_U.)

Related Information
Entity Manipulation Language (EML) [page 209]
6.2.5 Adding Authorization Control to Managed Business Objects

Transactional business applications based on business objects require an authorization concept for their data and for the operations on their data. Display and create, update and delete (CUD) operations, as well as specific business-related activities, must be protected from unauthorized access and are therefore allowed for authorized users only.

In a transactional development scenario, you can add authorization checks to various components of an application. In this case, different mechanisms are used to implement the authorization concept.

The following topics deal with authorization control for read and modify operations in the context of managed business objects.

**Authorizations Checks for Read Operations**

To protect data from unauthorized read access, the ABAP CDS already provides its own authorization concept based on a data control language (DCL [page 1025]). The authorization and role concept of ABAP CDS uses conditions defined in CDS access control objects to check the authorizations of users for read access to the data in question. In other words, access control allows you to limit the results returned by a CDS entity to those results you authorize a user to see.

In addition, DCL is also automatically evaluated in case of transactional read access, that is when using EML-based read and read by association operations, as well as when processing feature control.

More on this:

**Authorizations Checks for Modify Operations**

For managed business objects, also modifying operations such as standard operations create, update, delete, create by associations, and actions must be checked against unauthorized access.

The availability of authorization control is modeled in the behavior definition. The authorization control requires not only a definition but also an implementation in a handler class of the corresponding behavior pool.

The authorization control is checked by the business object runtime as soon as the relevant operation is executed.

Restriction: With the current release, only instance-based authorization control (authorization master(instance)) is supported. That means, static authorization is not available. Therefore, you cannot apply authorization checks to create operations (static operations).

**Activities Relevant to Developers**

1. Modeling Authorization Control [page 649]
2. Implementing Authorization Control [page 651]
### 6.2.5.1 Modeling Authorization Control

**Restriction**

With the current release, only instance-based authorization control is supported: `(authorization master(instance))`. This means, static authorization (that does not depend on an instance) is not yet available. Therefore, you cannot apply authorization checks to the create operation (that is a static operation).

To define the instance-based authorization control on a CDS entity for managed implementation type, the following syntax is used in the behavior definition:

**Syntax for Defining Instance-Based Authorization Control**

```
[implementation] managed;
define behavior for RootEntity [alias RootAliasedName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_FOR_ROOT [unique]
authorization master(instance)
...
{ /* (1) Authorization checks cannot be applied on create operation (static operation) */
  create;
  /* (1') Authorization check: is always enabled for update */
  update;
  /* (1'') Authorization check can be disabled for delete */
  delete (authorization : none);
  /* (2) Authorization check: enabled for Action1 */
  action Action1 [...]
  /* (2') Authorization check: disabled for Action2 */
  action (authorization : none) Action2 [...]
  /* (3) Authorization check: enabled for _Assoc1 */
  association _Assoc1 ( create; )
  /* (3') Authorization check: disabled for create by _Assoc2 */
  association _Assoc2 ( create ( authorization : none); )
}
define behavior for ChildEntity [alias ChildAliasedName]
implementation in class ABAP_CLASS_FOR_CHILD [unique]
authorization dependent( key_field_of_child_entity = key_field_of_root_entity )
...
{ /* (4) Operations that are treated as an update operation on the authorization master */
  update;
  delete;
  /* (5) Authorization check: enabled for Action11 */
  action Action11 [...]
  /* (5') Authorization check: disabled for Action12 */
  action (authorization : none) Action12 [...]
  /* (6) Treated as an update operation on the authorization master */
  association _AssocName11 ( create; )
}

The root entity is always defined as `authorization master`. To enable instance-based authorization control, the parameter `(instance)` is added to the definition of master. The authorization check can then be...
implemented in the local handler class of the corresponding behavior pool `ABAP_CLASS_FOR_ROOT`. More on this: [Implementing Authorization Control](page 651)

For standard operations such as `update`, `delete`, as well as for `create by association` and actions, the authorization control is then checked by the business object runtime as soon as the relevant operation is executed (default behavior). For each relevant operation, you can specify the following values in the implementing handler of the class pool:

- **auth-allowed** ([page 654]): if the consumer is allowed to execute the operation on the current instance
- **auth-unauthorized** ([page 654]): if the consumer is not allowed to execute the operation on the current instance.

However, for selected operations you have the option of suppressing the authorization check execution so that the consumer can access them. To disable the authorization check, the parameter `(authorization: none)` must be added to the operation in question in the behavior definition.

With the current release, the root entity is always defined as `authorization master`, whereas all child entities are defined as `authorization dependent`. If a child entity is modified (`update, delete, create by association`) on that entity, the authorization check (that is implemented in the corresponding behavior class) of the master is triggered to check if the operation is allowed for being accessed.

The operations `update, delete, create by association` on child entities are treated as an update on the corresponding root entity (authorization master). Thus, the authorization check implementation is triggered to check the authorization for update at master level - despite of the fact that it was a `update, delete, create by association` request at dependent child entity level. In other words: `create by association`, `update` and `delete` operations on the authorization dependent child entity are checked on their `authorization master` entity as `update`. For example, the `delete` operation of `ChildEntity` instance invokes the authorization method of the `RootEntity` and checks the corresponding root instance with `update` operation.

However, actions on the `authorization dependent` child entity are checked by the authorization handler of the `authorization dependent` entity instead.

### Example

In the following behavior definition, the `travel` (root) entity acts as `authorization master`, whereas the child entities `booking` and `booksuppl` are defined as `authorization dependent`.

To disable the authorization check for the `createBooking` action of the root entity, the parameter `(authorization: none)` is added to the action definition. The same applies to the `createBookingSupplement` action in the behavior definition of the `booking` entity.

```plaintext
managed;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel ...
 authorization master(instance)
 {  
 create;
 update;
 delete;
 association_Booking { create; }
 action (authorization : none) createBooking result [1] $self;
 ... 
 }
define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_M alias booking
```
Related Information

Implementing Authorization Control [page 651]

6.2.5.2 Implementing Authorization Control

Implementing Instance-Based Authorization Control in the Handler Class of the Behavior Pool

Signature of Authorization Handler Method

```abap
CLASS lhc_authorization_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
  METHODS check_authority_for_entity FOR AUTHORIZATION
      IMPORTING it_entity_key REQUEST is_request FOR entity
      RESULT rt_result.
ENDCLASS
```

The instance-based authorization control of a business object’s entity is implemented in the behavior pool that is specified in the behavior definition by the keyword implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique].

The implementation of authorization control is based on the ABAP language and is done in a local handler class (lhc_authorization_handler) as part of the behavior pool. As depicted in the listing below, each such local class inherits from the base handler class cl_abap_behavior_handler.

The signature of the handler method check_authority_for_entity(method name is freely selectable) is introduced by the keyword FOR AUTHORIZATION, followed by the input parameter it_entity_key, which
specifies the set of keys of entity instances that are included in the consumer’s authorization request 
is_request.

**Example for authorization request parameter** is_request:

```
REQUEST is_request FOR travel RESULT result.
```

The output parameter rt_result (parameter name is freely selectable) is used to return a result containing information whether the consumer is allowed using the relevant operation for the current instance or not.

The output parameters failed and reported for errors or messages are added implicitly (automatically). They can, however, be declared explicitly as **CHANGING** parameters in the method signature using the generic type DATA:

```
CHANGING failed   TYPE DATA
reported TYPE DATA.
```

**Template for Implementing the Authorization Handler Method**

```
CLASS lhc_authorization_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
...
METHOD check_authority_for_entity.
  DATA ls_result LIKE LINE OF rt_result.
  LOOP AT it_entity_key INTO DATA(ls_entity_key).
    ls_result = VALUE #(
      entity_key = ls_entity_key
      %update    = if_abap_behv=>auth-allowed
      %delete    = if_abap_behv=>auth-
      unauthorized
      %action-Action1 = if_abap_behv=>auth-allowed
      ...
      %action-ActionN = if_abap_behv=>auth-unauthorized
      %assoc_Association = if_abap_behv=>auth-allowed
    ).
    APPEND ls_result to rt_result.
  ENDELOOP.
ENDMETHOD.
...
ENDCLASS.
```

The authorization method is implemented in a generic manner. For each instance, the output parameter rt_result contains the result with information whether the consumer is allowed using the relevant operation for the current instance or not.

In general, it contains the following components:
The components in the result depend on the consumer’s authorization request. If an operation is disabled for authorization check by adding the parameter (authorization : none) to the operation in question, then it is neither included in the authorization request nor in the output parameter.

Example of a result table type `rt_result` for an authorization master.

> F2 information for the output parameter

**Example**

**UI Preview**

The following figure shows the effect of the authorization control for an action that is triggered by the consumer using the `Reject Travel` button (the consumer is not authorized to trigger the action).

![UI Preview](image-url)
The BO runtime returns a generic message

Definition

In the behavior definition, the authorization control for the root entity may be defined as follows:

```apl
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_M alias travel
implementation in class /DMO/BP_TRAVEL_M unique ...
authorization master(instance)
  { ...
  create;
  update;
  delete (authorization : none);
  action acceptTravel result [1] $self;
  action rejectTravel result [1] $self;
  action createTravelByTemplate result [1] $self;
  action (authorization : none) createBooking result [1] $self;
  association _Booking { create; }
}
```

Implementation

The following example shows the implementation of authorization control for various operations to be executed on travel instances:

The authorization control is checked by the business object runtime as soon as the relevant operation is executed. For each relevant operation, the authorization check must be enabled so that one of the following values can be assigned in the implementing handler method:

- **if_abap_behv=>auth-allowed** - the consumer is allowed to execute the operation on the current instance (for example: `update` operation)
- **if_abap_behv=>auth-unauthorized** - the consumer is not allowed to execute the operation on the current instance (for example: `rejectTravel` action).

Corresponding to the behavior definition in our example, the authorization check is disabled for `delete` operation and `createBooking` action (authorization : none). The consumer can access these operations without any authorization check execution.

Listing: Implementing Authorization Control in a Local Handler Class

```apl
CLASS lhc_auth_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
METHODS check_authority_for_travel FOR AUTHORIZATION
IMPORTING it_travel_key REQUEST is_request FOR travel
```
RESULT rt_result.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS lhc_auth_handler IMPLEMENTATION.
  ******************************************************************************
  *
  * Implements what operations and actions are (not) allowed for travel instances
  *
  ******************************************************************************
  METHOD check_authority_for_travel.
    DATA ls_result LIKE LINE OF rt_result.
    LOOP AT it_travel_key INTO DATA(ls_travel_key).
      ls_result = VALUE #( travel_id                      = ls_travel_key-
                       %update                        = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       allowed                      = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       %action-rejectTravel           = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       unauthorized                 = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       %action-acceptTravel           = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       allowed                      = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       %action-createTravelByTemplate = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       unauthorized                 = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       %assoc_Booking                = if_abap_behv=>auth-
                       allowed                      = if_abap_behv=>auth-
        ).
      APPEND ls_result to rt_result.
    ENDLOOP.
  ENDMETHOD.
  ...
ENDCLASS.

6.2.6 Handling Messages

Messages

Messages offer an important way to guide and validate consumer and user actions, and help to avoid and resolve problems. Thus, messages are important to communicate problems to a consumer or user. Well-designed messages help to recognize, diagnose, and resolve issues. That’s why it’s important to always use messages consistently and optimize the interaction as a whole. Consequently, errors and warnings that require action should be clearly stated and described in a way that helps to resolve the issue quickly and efficiently. It’s recommended to provide a message for each entry in the fail structure to provide additional information.

Example Business Object Structure [page 656]

Mapping Messages Between Business Objects [page 670]

This topic explains end-to-end how to receive and adapt messages from a different business object.
6.2.6.1 Example Business Object Structure

Example

The data model for the following message implementation examples is based on the data model for a business object with draft capabilities, but was reduced to highlight the important points regarding messages. The business object model for this example contains the two entities Travel and Booking. For more contextual information about annotations and syntax, refer to Creating CDS View Entities [page 457]. This example focuses on the relevant points for messages.

Data Definition: */DMO/I_Travel_Messages*

The data source for the travel root view is the database table */DMO/A_TRAVEL_D*. All fields from the database table are used for the data model.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code Of */DMO/I_Travel_Messages*.

```abap
@EndUserText.label: 'Travel View Entity for Messages.'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
define root view entity /DMO/I_Travel_Messages
    as select from /dmo/a_travel_d
    composition [0..*] of /DMO/I_BOOKING_Messages as _Booking
    association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Agency as _Agency on
    $projection.AgencyID = _Agency.AgencyID
    association [0..1] to /DMO/I_Customer as _Customer on
    $projection.CustomerID = _Customer.CustomerID
    association [0..1] to I_Currency as _Currency on
    ( //dmo/a_travel_d
        key travel_uuid as TravelUUID,
        travel_id as TravelID,
        agency_id as AgencyID,
        customer_id as CustomerID,
        begin_date as BeginDate,
    }
```
Data Definition: /DMO/I_Booking_Messages

The data source for the booking view is the database table /DMO/A_BOOKING_D. All fields from the database table are used for the data model.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /DMO/I_Booking_D.

Sample Code

```
@EndUserText.label: 'Booking View Entity for Messages'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
define view entity /DMO/I_Booking_Messages
as select from /dmo/a_booking_d
  association to parent /DMO/I_Travel_Messages as _Travel
  on $projection.TravelUUID = _Travel.TravelUUID

  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Customer as _Customer
    on $projection.CustomerID = _Customer.CustomerID

  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Carrier as _Carrier
    on $projection.AirlineID = _Carrier.AirlineID

  association [1..1] to /DMO/I_Connection as _Connection
    on $projection.AirlineID = _Connection.AirlineID
    and $projection.ConnectionID = _Connection.ConnectionID

{ ///dmo/a_booking_d
  key booking_uuid as BookingUUID,
  parent_uuid as TravelUUID,
  booking_id as BookingID,
  booking_date as BookingDate,
  customer_id as CustomerID,
  carrier_id as AirlineID,
  connection_id as ConnectionID,
  flight_date as FlightDate,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  flight_price as FlightPrice,
  currency_code as CurrencyCode,
  end_date as EndDate,
  booking_fee as BookingFee,
  total_price as TotalPrice,
  currency_code as CurrencyCode,
  description as Description,
  overall_status as OverallStatus,
  local_created_by as LocalCreatedBy,
  local_created_at as LocalCreatedAt,
  local_last_changed_by as LocalLastChangedBy,
  local_last_changed_at as LocalLastChangedAt,
  //local ETag field --> OData ETag
  @Semantics.systemDateTime.localInstanceLastChangedAt: true
}
Behavior Definition: /DMO/I_Travel_Messages

This data model focuses on illustrating how messages work in different contexts. Consequently, the behavior definition uses a reduced function scope for both entities. Each entity implements an action and a validation to illustrate state messages and transition message behavior for each of these cases.

Travel
The travel entity implements:
- **Validation validateCustomer**: Checks if the customer ID that is entered by the consumer is valid
- **Action setToBooked**: Changes the booking status from \( N \) (new) to \( B \) (booked)

Booking
The booking entity implements:
- **Validation validateDates**: Checks if the entered BookingDate is valid
- **Determination validateBookingDate**: Checks whether the selected booking date is between the StartDate and EndDate of the parent travel entity.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of /DMO/I_Travel_Messages.

```abap
managed;
with draft;
define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel_Messages alias Travel
implementation in class dmo_travel_messages_demo unique
persistent table /dmo/a_travel_d
draft table zfdtravelmessage
lock master
total etag LocalLastChangedAt
//authorization master ( instance )
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
create;
update;
delete;
association _Booking { create; with draft; }
field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) TravelUUID;
validation validateCustomer on save { field CustomerID; }
validation validateDates on save { create; field BeginDate, EndDate; }
```
action setToBooked result [1] $self;
draft determine action Prepare
{
  validation validateCustomer;
  validation validateDates;
  validation booking-validateDates ;
  determination booking-setBookingDate;
}
mapping for /dmo/a_travel_d
{ AgencyID = agency_id;
  BeginDate = begin_date;
  BookingFee = booking_fee;
  CurrencyCode = currency_code;
  CustomerID = customer_id;
  Description = description;
  EndDate = end_date;
  LocalCreatedAt = local_created_at;
  LocalCreatedBy = local_created_by;
  LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
  LocalLastChangedBy = local_last_changed_by;
  OverallStatus = overall_status;
  TotalPrice = total_price;
  TravelID = travel_id;
  TravelUUID = travel_uuid; }
}

define behavior for /DMO/I_Booking_Messages_DEMO alias Booking
implementation in class DMO_i_booking_messages_demo unique
persistent table /dmo/a_booking_d
draft table zfdbookinmessage
lock dependent by _Travel
//authorization dependent by <association>
etag master LocalLastChangedAt
{
  update;
  delete;
  association _Travel { with draft; }
  field ( readonly ) TravelUUID;
  field ( numbering : managed, readonly ) BookingUUID;
  validation validateDates on save { field BookingDate; create; }
  determination setBookingNumber on save { create; }
  mapping for /dmo/a_booking_d
  { AirlineID = carrier_id;
    BookingDate = booking_date;
    BookingID = booking_id;
    BookingStatus = booking_status;
    BookingUUID = booking_uuid;
    ConnectionID = connection_id;
    CurrencyCode = currency_code;
    CustomerID = customer_id;
    FlightDate = flight_date;
    FlightPrice = flight_price;
    LocalLastChangedAt = local_last_changed_at;
    TravelUUID = parent_uuid; }
}
6.2.6.2 Exposing Messages on the UI

6.2.6.2.1 Creating a Message Exception Class

This topic explains end-to-end how to create a message-wrapper class using a specific implementation example.

Context

You want to provide and expose messages on the UI. The procedure is identical for business objects of all types, however the message behavior of state messages may vary if your business object doesn’t have draft capabilities. For more information about how state messages behave in different contexts, refer to State Messages [page 180].

For more information about the example business object structure, refer to Example Business Object Structure [page 656].

Procedure

1. Create your messages in a T100-message class as described in . This example uses the following T100-messages from the message class /DMO/CM_TRAVEL_MESSAGES:

2. Create an ABAP-class as message-wrapper to wrap the T100-messages as message constants. This wrapper-class takes care of formatting message variables in accordance with their data type, especially date and time types. The date and time formatting is derived from backend user settings. If front- and backend user settings differ, messages always reflect the backend user settings. The wrapper-class inherits from CX_STATIC_CHECK which takes care of the type formatting. For more information about CX_STATIC_CHECK, refer to Exception Categories. Furthermore, the class implements the relevant message interfaces IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE, IF_T100_DYN_MSG and IF_T100_MESSAGE. For more details about the interfaces, refer to Messages - System Interfaces.

```abap
CLASS DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER DEFINITION
PUBLIC
INHERITING FROM CX_STATIC_CHECK
FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC .
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE .
INTERFACES IF_T100_DYN_MSG .
INTERFACES IF_T100_MESSAGE .
```
3. Create variables for all fields of the data definition you want to pass as message variables with the same type as the fields in the data definitions and add them as optional importing parameters to the message constructor. For this example, the fields travel_id, end_date, begin_date, flight_date, Customer_ID and booking_id are relevant for the message texts. The variable types are derived from the data definition the fields were contained in. The message severity can be set with the severity variable severity TYPE if_abap_behv_message=>t_severity in the message constructor.

//Relevant fields from the data definitions
DATA:
  mv_attr1                 TYPE string,
  mv_attr2                 TYPE string,
  mv_attr3                 TYPE string,
  mv_attr4                 TYPE string,
  mv_travel_id             TYPE /dmo/travel_id,
  mv_booking_id            TYPE /dmo/booking_id,
  mv_customer_id           TYPE /dmo/customer_id,
  mv_connection_id         TYPE /dmo/connection-connection_id,
  mv_begin_date            TYPE /dmo/begin_date,
  mv_end_date              TYPE /dmo/end_date,
  mv_booking_date          TYPE /dmo/booking_date,
  mv_flight_date           TYPE /dmo/flight_date.

METHODS constructor
  IMPORTING
    textid                LIKE if_t100_message=>t100key OPTIONAL
    attr1                 TYPE string OPTIONAL
    attr2                 TYPE string OPTIONAL
    attr3                 TYPE string OPTIONAL
    attr4                 TYPE string OPTIONAL
    previous              LIKE previous OPTIONAL
    travel_id             TYPE /dmo/travel_id OPTIONAL
    booking_id            TYPE /dmo/booking_id OPTIONAL
    customer_id           TYPE /dmo/customer_id OPTIONAL
    connection_id         TYPE /dmo/connection-connection_id OPTIONAL
    begin_date            TYPE /dmo/begin_date OPTIONAL
    end_date              TYPE /dmo/end_date OPTIONAL
    booking_date          TYPE /dmo/booking_date OPTIONAL
    flight_date           TYPE /dmo/flight_date OPTIONAL
    severity              TYPE if_abap_behv_message=>t_severity OPTIONAL.

4. Implement the constructor and map the importing parameters to the variables. Set the severity and the textID.

CLASS DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD CONSTRUCTOR.
    SUPER->CONSTRUCTOR( PREVIOUS = PREVIOUS ).
    MV_ATTR1               = ATTR1.
    MV_ATTR2               = ATTR2.
    MV_ATTR3               = ATTR3.
    MV_ATTR4               = ATTR4.
    MV_TRAVEL_ID           = TRAVEL_ID.
    MV_BOOKING_ID          = BOOKING_ID.
    MV_CUSTOMER_ID         = CUSTOMER_ID.
    MV_CONNECTION_ID       = CONNECTION_ID.
    MV_BEGIN_DATE          = BEGIN_DATE.
    MV_END_DATE            = END_DATE.
    MV_BOOKING_DATE        = BOOKING_DATE.
5. Create message constant for each T100-message text you have created in the T100-message class.

A generic message constant consists of the following elements:

```plaintext
CONSTANTS:
  GC_MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'Message_Class',
  BEGIN OF Message_Constant,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'Message_Class',
    MSGNO TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE 'Message_Number',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
  END OF Message_Constant,
```

A message constant begins and end with the constant name. Ideally, the name reflects the message content to make the message usage easier. `MSGID TYPE SYMSGID` has the message class assigned as value and `MSGNO TYPE SYMSGNO` has the message number assigned as value. You can pass message variables with the `ATTR 1-4`.

A specific implementation for message 001 ("Enter Customer ID for Travel\&1.") with the message variable `TravelID` is implemented analogously to the generic message constant implementation:

```plaintext
CONSTANTS:
  GC_MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
  BEGIN OF CUSTOMERID_NOT_INITIAL,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGNO TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '001',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'TRAVEL_ID',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF CUSTOMERID_NOT_INITIAL,
```

Results

You have created message-wrapper class for your T100-Messages. The following source code shows the sample implementation of a message-wrapper.

```
CLASS DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER DEFINITION
  PUBLIC
    INHERITING FROM CX_STATIC_CHECK
  FINAL

  SAMPLE Code

  CLASS DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER DEFINITION
    PUBLIC
      INHERITING FROM CX_STATIC_CHECK
  FINAL
```

`Expand the following code sample to view the source code of DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER.`
CREATE PUBLIC
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE.
INTERFACES IF_T100_DYN_MSG.
INTERFACES IF_T100_MESSAGE.
CONSTANTS:
  GC_MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
  BEGIN OF CUSTOMER_ID_NOT_INITIAL,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '001',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'TRAVEL_ID',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Message_Variable',
  END OF CUSTOMER_ID_NOT_INITIAL,
  BEGIN OF CUSTOMERID_NOT_EXIST,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '002',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'Customer_id',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF CUSTOMERID_NOT_EXIST,
  BEGIN OF BEGIN_DATE_MISSING,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '003',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'TRAVEL_ID',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF BEGIN_DATE_MISSING,
  BEGIN OF END_DATE_MISSING,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '004',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'TRAVEL_ID',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF END_DATE_MISSING,
  BEGIN OF END_DATE_BEF_BEGIN_DATE,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '005',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'BEGIN_DATE',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'TRAVEL_ID',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF END_DATE_BEF_BEGIN_DATE,
  BEGIN OF BEGIN_DATE_WRONG,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '006',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'BEGIN_DATE',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF BEGIN_DATE_WRONG,
  BEGIN OF AIRLINE_ID_IS_INITIAL,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '007',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'BOOKING_ID',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  END OF AIRLINE_ID_IS_INITIAL,
  BEGIN OF CONNECTION_ID_IS_INITIAL,
    MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
    MSGN0 TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '008',
    ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'BOOKING_ID',
    ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
    ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
END OF COMMON TASKS.
ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
END OF CONNECTION_ID_IS_INITIAL,

BEGIN OF FLIGHT_NOT_EXIST,
  MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
  MSGNO TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '009',
  ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'FLIGHT_DATE',
  ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
END OF FLIGHT_NOT_EXIST,

BEGIN OF ACTION_SUCCESSFUL,
  MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
  MSGNO TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '010',
  ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
END OF ACTION_SUCCESSFUL,

BEGIN OF INCORRECT_BOOKING_DATE,
  MSGID TYPE SYMSGID VALUE 'DMO_TRAVEL_MESSAGES',
  MSGNO TYPE SYMSGNO VALUE '011',
  ATTR1 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE 'TRAVEL_ID',
  ATTR2 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR3 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
  ATTR4 TYPE SCX_ATTRNAME VALUE '',
END OF INCORRECT_BOOKING_DATE.

DATA:
  MV_ATTR1         TYPE STRING,
  MV_ATTR2         TYPE STRING,
  MV_ATTR3         TYPE STRING,
  MV_ATTR4         TYPE STRING,
  MV_TRAVEL_ID     TYPE DMO_I_Travel_Messages_DEMO-travelUUID OPTIONAL,
  MV_BOOKING_ID    TYPE DMO_I_Booking_Messages_DEMO-BookingUUID OPTIONAL,
  MV_CUSTOMER_ID   TYPE /DMO/CUSTOMER_ID,
  MV_CONNECTION_ID TYPE /DMO/CONNECTION-CONNECTION_ID,
  MV_BEGIN_DATE    TYPE /DMO/BEGIN_DATE,
  MV_END_DATE      TYPE /DMO/END_DATE,
  MV_BOOKING_DATE  TYPE /DMO/BOOKING_DATE,
  MV_FLIGHT_DATE   TYPE /DMO/FLIGHT_DATE.

METHODS CONSTRUCTOR
IMPORTING
  TEXTID LIKE IF_T100_MESSAGE=>T100KEY OPTIONAL
  ATTR1 TYPE STRING OPTIONAL
  ATTR2 TYPE STRING OPTIONAL
  ATTR3 TYPE STRING OPTIONAL
  ATTR4 TYPE STRING OPTIONAL
  TRAVEL_ID TYPE DMO_I_Travel_Messages_DEMO-travelUUID OPTIONAL
  BOOKING_ID TYPE DMO_I_Booking_Messages_DEMO-BookingUUID OPTIONAL
  CUSTOMER_ID TYPE /DMO/CUSTOMER_ID OPTIONAL
  CONNECTION_ID TYPE /DMO/CONNECTION-CONNECTION_ID OPTIONAL
  BEGIN_DATE TYPE /DMO/BEGIN_DATE OPTIONAL
  END_DATE TYPE /DMO/END_DATE OPTIONAL
  BOOKING_DATE TYPE /DMO/BOOKING_DATE OPTIONAL
  FLIGHT_DATE TYPE /DMO/FLIGHT_DATE OPTIONAL
  SEVERITY TYPE IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>T_SEVERITY OPTIONAL.

PROTECTED SECTION.
PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD CONSTRUCTOR ##ADT_SUPPRESS_GENERATION.
SUPER->CONSTRUCTOR( PREVIOUS = PREVIOUS ).
6.2.6.2.2 Exposing Messages for a Sample Business Object with Draft Capabilities

This topic explains how to integrate messages in your behavior implementation.

Prerequisites

You’ve created a message-wrapper class for all of your T100-messages relevant for the business object. This example uses the message texts and the message-wrapper class created in Creating a Message Exception Class [page 660].

For more information about the example business object structure, refer to Example Business Object Structure [page 656].

The implementation examples list the message implementation - and at the bottom of each section you can find the complete source code for each method to see how the message implementation is integrated in the context of the source code.

i Note

It’s strongly recommended to add all validations to the PREPARE action. Since validation return state messages, the state messages are only rendered according to their properties when triggered during the PREPARE and before the ACTIVATE. Even though validations are triggered a second time during the ACTIVATE, the state message handling differs: Validation included in the PREPARE run on the draft instance and render state messages as such, because no rollback is triggered if the validation fails. However, if a validation fails later during the ACTIVATE, a rollback is triggered and all state messages triggered until this point are converted to transition messages by the framework. For more information about the PREPARE, see Preparing Draft Instances for Activation [page 84].
Sample Implementation: validateCustomer (Travel)

This example shows the message implementation for validateCustomer of the Travel entity.

This validation checks whether a CustomerID entered by the user exists in the /DMO/CUSTOMER table. Since the validation checks the consistency of business object state, it returns state messages in the reported structure of the travel entity. To implement a state message, the component %state_area must be filled in with a string. ValidateCustomer essentially checks for two conditions of which only one can be true at a time - either the user entered a CustomerID that is unknown or the user didn’t enter any value. Consequently, both messages can have the same %state_area, so that only one invalidation statement is required at the beginning of the implementation. The %state_area has the same name as the validation. The target field in both cases is the field CustomerID. As the messages are returned after an entry in the failed structure, all messages are categorized with the severity error.

**i Note**

It’s recommended to use the same %state_area within the implementation of a validation. If the %state_area differs, each %state_area must be invalidated separately.

```
PUBLIC
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Common Tasks

Sample Code

METHOD validateCustomer.
READ ENTITIES OF DMO_I_Travel_Messages IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY Travel
FIELDS ( CustomerID )
WITH CORRESPONDING # ( KEYS )
RESULT DATA ( LT_TRAVEL )
FAILED DATA ( LT_FAILED ).
FAILED = CORRESPONDING # ( DEEP LT_Failed ).
DATA LT_CUSTOMER TYPE SORTED TABLE OF /DMO/CUSTOMER WITH UNIQUE KEY
CUSTOMER_ID.
```

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of validateCustomer.
Sample Implementation: `setToBooked` (Travel)

This example shows the message implementation for `setToBooked` of the Travel entity.

This action sets the overall_status field to B (booked). Usually, actions return transition messages, because they trigger a change in the business object. Consequently, this action returns a transition message: This message to confirm the successful transition of the overallStatus. The transition message is categorized as success and it's allocated to the reported-travel since it's semantically related to a request triggered on this entity. The target field is overallStatus.

```abap
" Return transition message in case of successful request
APPEND VALUE #( %TKY = RESULT[1]-%TKY
  %MSG = NEW DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER( TEXTID = DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER=>ACTION_SUCCESSFUL
  %STATE_AREA = 'VALIDATE_CUSTOMER' ) ) TO REPORTED-TRAVEL.
```
SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-SUCCESS  
%ELEMENT-OverallSTATUS = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON  
} TO REPORTED=Travel.

Expand the following code sample to view the source code of setToBooked.

```
/* Sample Code */

" Modify travel instance
MODIFY ENTITIES OF Z_FD_I_Travel_Messages_Demo IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY TRAVEL
UPDATE FIELDS ( OverallStatus )
WITH VALUE #( FOR KEY IN KEYS ( %TKY = KEY-%TKY
OverallStatus = 'B' ) ) "Booked
FAILED FAILED
REPORTED DATA(LT_REPORTED) .
* Read changed data for action result
READ ENTITIES OF DMO_Travel_Messages IN LOCAL MODE
ENTITY TRAVEL ALL FIELDS WITH
CORRESPONDING #( KEYS )
RESULT DATA(LT_TRAVEL).
RESULT = VALUE #( FOR TRAVEL IN LT_TRAVEL ( %TKY = TRAVEL-%TKY
%PARAM = TRAVEL ) ).
REPORTED = CORRESPONDING #( DEEP LT_REPORTED ).
* Add success message at the end of the action
APPEND VALUE #( %TKY = RESULT[1]-%TKY
%MSG = NEW DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER( TextID = DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER=>ACTION_SUCCESSFUL
SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-
SUCCESS )
%ELEMENT-OverallSTATUS = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON
) TO REPORTED=Travel.
ENDMETHOD.
```

Sample Implementation: validateBookingDate (Booking)

This example shows the message implementation for validateBookingDate of the Booking entity.

The validation checks whether the selected booking date is between the StartDate and EndDate of the parent travel entity. In this example, the validation is included in the determine action PREPARE, so that the validation is triggered before the ACTIVATE. This validation returns a state message in case the selected BookingDate doesn’t lie in between Start-and Enddate. The message has the severity error and the target field BookingDate. Since the booking entity is a direct child of the travel entity, it’s required to fill in the %path component with the path to the travel entity by mapping both draft instances. This state message is bound to the REPORTED-booking structure.

*Note

If you have external numbering in your business object and pass the ID as a message variable, the message-wrapper class doesn’t take care of omitting leading zeros.

```
"Return state message when bookingdate is not in of selected time frame
APPEND VALUE #( %tky = <LS_BOOKING>-%TKY
```
Expand the following code sample to view the source code of validateDates.

### Sample Code

```abap
METHOD validateDates.
  CHECK KEYS IS NOT INITIAL.
  READ ENTITIES OF Z_FD_I_Travel_Messages_Demo IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Booking
    FIELDS ( BookingUUID TravelUUID BookingID BookingDate )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( KEYS )
  RESULT DATA(LT_BOOKING).
  READ ENTITIES OF Z_FD_I_Travel_Messages_Demo IN LOCAL MODE
  ENTITY Booking BY _Travel
    FIELDS ( TravelUUID TravelID BeginDate EndDate )
    WITH CORRESPONDING #( LT_BOOKING )
  RESULT DATA(LT_TRAVEL).
  LOOP AT LT_BOOKING ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<LS_BOOKING>) WHERE BookingDate IS NOT INITIAL.
    ASSIGN LT_TRAVEL[ KEY ENTITY COMPONENTS TravelUUID = <LS_BOOKING>-TravelUUID ] TO FIELD-SYMBOL(<LS_TRAVEL>).
    IF <LS_TRAVEL>-BeginDate IS NOT INITIAL AND <LS_TRAVEL>-EndDate IS NOT INITIAL.
      DATA( LV_STATE_AREA ) = 'VAL_BOOKING_DATE'.
      IF <LS_BOOKING>-%TKY-%IS_DRAFT = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON.
        APPEND VALUE #( %TKY = <LS_BOOKING>-%TKY %STATE_AREA = LV_STATE_AREA ) TO REPORTED-BOOKING.
      ENDIF.
      IF <LS_BOOKING>-BookingDate < <LS_TRAVEL>-BeginDate OR <LS_BOOKING>-BookingDate > <LS_TRAVEL>-EndDate.
        APPEND VALUE #( %TKY = <LS_BOOKING>-%TKY ) TO FAILED-BOOKING.
        APPEND VALUE #( %TKY = <LS_BOOKING>-%TKY %STATE_AREA = LV_STATE_AREA %PATH = VALUE #( TRAVEL-%IS_DRAFT = TRAVEL-TRAVELUUID ) %MSG = NEW DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER( TEXTID = DMO_MESSAGEWRAPPER=>INCORRECT_BOOKING_DATE TRAVEL_ID = <LS_BOOKING>-TravelUUID SEVERITY = IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE=>SEVERITY-ERROR ) %ELEMENT-BookingDate = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>MK-ON ) TO REPORTED-BOOKING.
      ENDIF.
    ENDIF.
  ENDFIND.
ENDMETHOD.
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Common Tasks

PUBLIC 669
6.2.6.3 Mapping Messages Between Business Objects

This topic explains end-to-end how to receive and adapt messages from a different business object.

Message Mapping

A business object determination may trigger an operation of another business object that then returns messages. To receive and adapt the messages from a foreign business object, you register the foreign business object to extend the reported structure of the receiving business object. You can adapt the received messages to your requirements and the messages are then mapped during the SAVE sequence.

1. To handle messages of other business objects, you reference the foreign business object as foreign entity in the behavior definition of your business object with the following syntax:

   ```
   implementation {unmanaged | managed | abstract};
   [with draft];
   foreign entity EntityName alias Alias;
   ```

   The foreign entity reference requires a redefinition of the MAP_MESSAGES method in the behavior implementation of the root entity. This method has changing parameter reported of type response for reported late. The reported structure contains all entities of the source business object and all entities of the referenced foreign business object.

   ❖ Example

   In the following example, a Travel business object with the child entity Booking references the foreign business object /DMO/I_Flight_M in the behavior definition:

   ```
   implementation managed;
   with draft;
   foreign entity /DMO/I_Flight_M alias Flight;
   define behavior for /DMO/I_Travel alias travel
   implementation in class /DMO/TRAVEL_MESSAGES unique ...
   ```

   This triggers the redefinition of the MAP_MESSAGES method in the behavior definition of the root view if not specified otherwise in the behavior definition - in this example, the behavior implementation of travel. The saver class inherits from the CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER class. For more information about CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER, refer to Saver Classes [page 937].
### Sample Code

```abap
CLASS LSC_DMO/I_Travel DEFINITION INHERITING FROM CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS MAP_MESSAGES REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS LSC_DMO/I_Travel IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD MAP_MESSAGES.
    //Message mapping implementation
  ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```

The *reported* structure is extended with the entities of the referenced foreign business object. In this example, the *reported* structure is extended with the *flight* entity:

![Diagram of flight entity structure](image)

This gives you access to the messages that are returned in the *reported* structure of the *flight* entity.

2. You can map the returned messages to your business object according to your requirements, for example by:
   - Mapping messages to your business object instance key (%tky)
   - Adapting the path for messages on child instances (%path)
   - Adapting the targets of your messages (%element)
   - Omitting messages that do not fit certain criteria (for example: Success messages are omitted)
6.3 Queries

6.3.1 Implementing an Unmanaged Query

An unmanaged query uses an ABAP interface to implement read-only access to persistent or non-persistent data. It enables a more flexible data retrieval than using the SQL push down by the query framework to retrieve data from a database table.

Context

An unmanaged query is implemented for read-only access to a data source whenever the standard SQL push-down by the query framework is not sufficient or not usable at all; or if there is no persistent data source at all.

Use cases for unmanaged queries are

- the data source for an OData request is not a database table, but, for example another OData service, which is reached by an OData client proxy,
- performance optimization with application specific handling,
- using AMDPs with some query push-down parameters in the SQL script implementation,
- forwarding the call to the analytical engines, or
- enrichment of query result data on property or row level, for example when splitting rows for intermediate sums or condensing the filter result.

In these cases, the data model is defined in a custom entity, which references a query implementation class, where the query is implemented using a query provider interface. The runtime of an unmanaged query is illustrated in the following diagram.

For more background information about the unmanaged query and the custom entity, see Unmanaged Query [page 50].
Example Scenario

The following sections offer an example for the implementation of the query provider interface. It is aimed to give an understanding on how to work with the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`. The example query implementation retrieves data from a database table, which is not a typical use case.

**i Note**

Do not use the custom query in the straight-forward case of retrieving data from a database table. The example is only used for demonstration purposes, as no background information about another technology (for example in AMDP implementations) is necessary to understand the example. The recommended implementation for such a scenario is to use a CDS view and the underlying query implementation of the SQL select by the orchestration framework.

The data model is defined in a custom entity. Expand the following codeblock to view the data model of the example scenario. For simplification reasons, the same element names as in the data source are used. (If you use differing names, you must map the elements of the custom entity to the corresponding table fields in the query implementation. Make sure that the types are compatible.)

**Custom Entity** /DMO/I_TRAVEL_U

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'Custom entity for unmanaged travel query'
@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy:'ABAP:/dmo/cl_travel_uq'
define custom entity /DMO/I_TRAVEL_UQ

{    key Travel_ID     : abap.numc( 8 );
    Agency_ID     : abap.numc( 6 );
    Customer_ID   : abap.numc( 6 );
    Begin_Date    : abap.dats;
    End_Date      : abap.dats;
    Booking_Fee   : abap.dec( 17, 3 );
    Total_Price   : abap.dec( 17, 3 );
    Currency_Code : abap.cuky;
    Status        : abap.char( 1 );
    LastChangedAt : timestampl;
}
```

The annotation `@ObjectModel.query.ImplementedBy` references the query implementation class. Learn how you implement the unmanaged query for this example scenario in the following section.

The data source in the example scenario is the database table `/dmo/travel`, see ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 984].
Implementation

Every method provided by IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER is used and explained in this implementation. The complete source code of the query implementation with every method is displayed after the implementation steps.

Prerequisites

- The custom entity references the query implementation class in the annotation `@ObjectModel.query.implementedBy`.
- The query implementation class implements the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER with its select method.

**i Note**

To avoid high resource consumption when calling an OData service without using `$top` each OData service, based on the ABAP RESTful Programming Model uses a default paging. This includes:

- Setting a default paging if the client does not provide `$top`
- Reducing the response to the default limit if `$top` exceeds this limit
- Adding a `__next` link with a `skiptoken` to the response if the response represents a partial listing, which is a subset of all available data records. See [https://www.odata.org/documentation/odata-version-2-0/json-format/#](https://www.odata.org/documentation/odata-version-2-0/json-format/#) – 6. Representing Collections of Entries.

**i Note**

In scenarios, in which you expose your custom entity for a Fiori UI, you have to include at least the implementation for counting and paging as the UI always requests the count and sets the query options `$top` and `$skip` for paging. If the corresponding methods are not implemented and the unmanaged query does not return the respective information, there will be an error during runtime.

**i Note**

Associations with custom entity as source or target support only attribute bindings (A1 = A2 and B1 = B2), but no:

- OR, NOT
- Other operators than `=`
- Using something else than CDS elements as operands (e.g. no literals or variables)

Implementation Steps

- Check that the query is only executed when the requested entity set matches the custom entity.
  For implementation details, see Returning Requested Entity in an Unmanaged Query [page 677].
Separate your implementation for data retrieval and count. For implementation details, see Requesting and Setting Data or Count in an Unmanaged Query [page 678].

Implement filter conditions according to
- a requested filter,
  For implementation details, see Implementing Filtering in an Unmanaged Query [page 679]
- a requested search term,
  For implementation details, see Implementing Search in an Unmanaged Query [page 683]
- requested parameters.
  For implementation details, see Using Parameters in an Unmanaged Query [page 681].

Get the paging information and retrieve data according to the requested page. For implementation details, see Implementing Paging in an Unmanaged Query [page 685].

Get the sorting information and order the retrieved data according to the sort elements and direction. For implementation details, see Implementing Sorting in an Unmanaged Query [page 686].

Get the requested elements and select only the relevant elements from the data source. For implementation details, see Considering Requested Elements in an Unmanaged Query [page 688].

Get the aggregated and the grouped elements and aggregated and group the records accordingly. For implementation details, see Implementing Aggregations in an Unmanaged Query [page 689].

Expand the following listing to view the source code of query implementation class for the demo example.

```
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_uq DEFINITION
  PUBLIC
  FINAL
  CREATE PUBLIC.
  PUBLIC SECTION.
    INTERFACES if_rap_query_provider.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  PRIVATE SECTION.
ENDCLASS.
CLASS /dmo/cl_travel_uq IMPLEMENTATION.
  METHOD if_rap_query_provider~select.
    TRY.
      CASE io_request->get_entity_id( ).
        WHEN /DMO/I_TRAVEL_UQ` .
          **query implementation for travel entity**
          **filter**
            DATA(lv_sql_filter) = io_request->get_filter( )->get_as_sql_string( ).
            TRY.
              DATA(lt_filter) = io_request->get_filter( )->get_as_ranges( ).
              CATCH cx_rap_query_filter_no_range.
              "handle exception
             ENDTRY.
            DATA(lt_parameters) = io_request->get_parameters( ).
            DATA(lv_next_year) = CONV
              syst_datum( cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ) + 365 )
              .
            DATA(lv_par_filter) = | BEGIN_DATE >=
              '{ cl_abap_dyn_prg=>escape_quotes( VALUE #( lt_parameters[ parameter_name =
                'P_START_DATE' ])-value
              | AND | & &
              | END_DATE <=
              '{ cl_abap_dyn_prg=>escape_quotes( VALUE #( lt_parameters[ parameter_name =
                'P_END_DATE' ])-value
```

---

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Common Tasks
DEFAULT lv_next_year = |( |( lv_sql_filter } AND { lv_par_filter } )| |. 
ELSE.
  lv_sql_filter = |( |( lv_sql_filter } AND { lv_par_filter } )| |. 
ENDIF.
**search
DATA(lv_search_string) = io_request->get_search_expression( ).
DATA(lv_search_sql) = |DESCRIPTION LIKE '%
{ cl_abap_dyn_prg=>escape_quotes( lv_search_string ) }%'.
IF lv_sql_filter IS INITIAL.
  lv_sql_filter = lv_search_sql.
ELSE.
  lv_sql_filter = |( |( lv_sql_filter } AND { lv_search_sql } )| |. 
ENDIF.
**request data
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
**paging
DATA(lv_offset) = io_request->get_paging( )->get_offset( ).
DATA(lv_page_size) = io_request->get_paging( )->get_page_size( ).
DATA(lv_max_rows) = COND #( WHEN lv_page_size =
  if_rap_query_paging=>page_size_unlimited
  THEN 0 ELSE lv_page_size ).
**sorting
DATA(sort_elements) = io_request->get_sort_elements( ).
DATA(lt_sort_criteria) = VALUE string_table( FOR sort_element IN
  sort_elements
    sort_element-
    element_name && COND #( WHEN sort_element-descending = abap_true THEN `descending` ELSE `ascending` )
  ELSE `primary key` ).
ELSE `ascending` ).
DATA(lv_sort_string) = COND #( WHEN lt_sort_criteria IS INITIAL
  THEN `primary key`
ELSE CONCAT_LINES_OF( table = lt_sort_criteria sep = ` `, ` ) ).
ELSE concat_lines_of( table = lt_sort_criteria sep = ` `, ` ) ).
**aggregate
DATA(lt_aggr_element) = io_request->get_aggregation( ).
>get_aggregated_elements( ).
SYMBOL(<fs_aggr_element>).
DELETE lt_req_elements WHERE table_line = <fs_aggr_element>-
result_element.
DATA(lv_aggregation) = |( |( <fs_aggr_element>-
aggregation_method ) ( |( <fs_aggr_element>-input_element ) ) ) as
<fs_aggr_element>-
result_element |].
APPEND lv_aggregation TO lt_req_elements.
ENDLOOP.
ENDIF.
DATA(lv_req_elements) = concat_lines_of( table = lt_req_elements
sep = ` `, ` ).
**grouping
DATA(lt_grouped_element) = io_request->get_aggregation( ).
>get_grouped_elements( ).
DATA(lv_grouping) = concat_lines_of( table = lt_grouped_element
sep = ` `, ` ).
**select data
DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
SELECT (lv_req_elements) FROM /dmo/travel
WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
GROUP BY (lv_grouping)
ORDER BY (lv_sort_string)
INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE
@lt_travel_response
6.3.1.1 Returning Requested Entity in an Unmanaged Query

Getting the requested entity ID into your query implementation class can be helpful to ensure that the query is only executed if a specific entity is queried. You can also differentiate between query implementations of different custom entities in one query implementation class. The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST provides a method to get the entity ID, which is requested.

Prerequisites

For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].

Implementation Steps

The following steps provide an example on how to use the method `get_entity_id` in your query implementation class.

1. Call the method `get_entity_id` of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns the requested CDS entity name.
2. Use the returned value to compare to the custom entity the query implementation is aimed at, or to define query implementation for different custom entities in one query implementation class.

The following codeblock illustrates the implementation within the `SELECT` method of IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER in the query implementation class.

```abap
CASE io_request->get_entity_id( ).
```
WHEN `/DMO/I_TRAVEL_UQ`.
****query implementation for travel entity
WHEN `/DMO/I_BOOKING_UQ`.
****query implementation for booking entity
ENDCASE.

For API information, see Method get_entity_id [page 950].

6.3.1.2 Requesting and Setting Data or Count in an Unmanaged Query

The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST provides methods to indicate whether data or the count is requested. These methods can be used to separate the implementations for data retrieval and count or to ensure that the query implementation is only executed if the respective request is made.

The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE provides methods to return the requested data or the count as a response for the request.

i Note
If data is requested, the method set_data must be called. If the total number of records is requested, the method set_total_number_of_records must be called. Otherwise there will be an error during runtime.

In UI scenarios with Fiori Elements the total number of records is always requested by the UI.

Prerequisites

For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].

Implementation Steps

Requesting and Setting Data

The following steps provide an example on how to use the method is_data_requested in your query implementation class.

1. Call the method is_data_requested of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns a boolean value.
2. Create the SQL SELECT to retrieve the requested data into a local variable.
3. Call the method set_data of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE and use the retrieved data as importing parameter. The result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.
The following codeblock illustrates the implementation for data requests within the `select` method of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` in the query implementation class.

```abap
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
  SELECT * FROM /dmo/travel
  INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE @lt_travel_response.
  io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.
```

For API information, see Method `is_data_requested` [page 951] and Method `set_data` [page 961].

### Requesting and Setting Count

The following steps provide an example on how to use the method `is_total_numb_of_rec_requested` in your query implementation class.

1. Call the method `is_total_numb_of_rec_requested` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`, which returns a boolean value.
2. Create the SQL `SELECT` to retrieve the requested count into a local variable.
3. Call the method `set_total_number_of_records` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` and use the retrieved data as importing parameter. The count is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates the implementation for data requests within the `select` method of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` in the query implementation class.

```abap
IF io_request->is_total_numb_of_rec_requested( ).
  SELECT COUNT( * ) FROM /dmo/travel
  INTO @DATA(lv_travel_count).
  io_response->set_total_number_of_records( lv_travel_count ).
ENDIF.
```

For API information, see Method `is_total_numb_of_rec_requested` [page 951] and Method `set_total_number_of_records` [page 961].

### 6.3.1.3 Implementing Filtering in an Unmanaged Query

To retrieve filtered data or a filtered number of records in an unmanaged query, you need to implement a filter in the query implementation class. The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST` provides a method to get the filter for the request with two options to retrieve the filter conditions:

- Get the filter condition as an SQL string.
- Get the filter condition in a ranges table.

Depending on your use case, the one or the other option is more useful. If you retrieve your data from the data source with an `SQL SELECT`, you can include the SQL filter string directly in the `WHERE` clause of the `SELECT` statement. If you want to manipulate the filter conditions before executing the filter, a ranges table can be the better choice.

**iNote**

If the filter is not feasible as a ranges table, an exception is raised. You then have to handle the error appropriately.
Prerequisites

For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].

Implementation Steps

Using the Filter as an SQL String

The following steps provide an example on how to use the method `get_as_sql_string` in your query implementation class.

1. Call the method `get_filter` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`, which returns an interface instance of `IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER`. Use the method `get_as_sql_string` to use the filter directly in an SQL string.
2. Check if data is requested.
3. Use the filter condition in the `WHERE` clause of the SQL statement to retrieve the filtered data from the data source.
4. Call the method `set_data` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` to respond to the OData request with the filtered data. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.
5. Check if count is requested.
6. Use the filter condition in the `WHERE` clause of the SQL statement to retrieve the count for the data records that match the request.
7. Call the method `set_total_number_of_records` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` to respond to the OData request with the filtered count. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates the filter implementation within the `select` method of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` in the query implementation class.

```plaintext
DATA(lv_sql_filter) = io_request->get_filter( )->get_as_sql_string( ).
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
  SELECT * FROM /dmo/travel
      WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
      ORDER BY ('primary key')
      INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE @lt_travel_response.
  io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.
IF io_request->is_total_numb_of_rec_requested( ).
  SELECT COUNT( * ) FROM /dmo/travel
      WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
      INTO @DATA(lv_travel_count).
  io_response->set_total_number_of_records( lv_travel_count ).
ENDIF.
```

Note

It is recommended to implement a default sort order to return consistent results from the data source.

For API information, see Method `get_filter` [page 952].
Getting the Filter as Ranges Table

The following steps provide an example on how to use the method `get_as_ranges` in your query implementation class.

1. In a `TRY - CATCH` block, call the method `get_filter` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`, which returns an interface instance of `IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER`. Use the method `get_as_ranges` to get the filter as a ranges table. The format of the returning ranges table is described in Method get_as_ranges [page 956].
2. Use the filter condition of the ranges table in your implementation.
3. Catch the exception `CX_RAP_QUERY_FILTER_NO_RANGE`, which is raised if the filter cannot be expressed as a ranges table.
4. Handle the exception appropriately. For example:
   1. Throw an error.
   2. Use the filter SQL string as a fallback, see Method get_as_sql_string [page 957].

```plaintext
TRY.
  DATA(lt_ranges) = io_request->get_filter() ->get_as_ranges().
***filter manipulation
  CATCH cx_rap_query_filter_no_range.
  "error handling
ENDTRY.
```

For API information, see Method get_filter [page 952].

6.3.1.4 Using Parameters in an Unmanaged Query

To retrieve data dependent on an entity parameter that is set in the custom entity, you need to implement a handling for the parameters in the query implementation class. The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST` provides a method to get the parameters. It returns a string table with the parameter names and values.

It is up to the application developer how to implement the parameter logic. One option is to implement the parameters as filter criteria. To use the parameter values as a filter in the `WHERE` clause of an SQL `SELECT` statement, you need to create a filter string from the parameter values.

The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` provides a method to set the filtered data or the filtered total number of records for the query response after retrieving data from the data source.

Prerequisites

- The custom entity has one or more entity parameters.

Example

```plaintext
define custom entity /DMO/I_Travel_UQ
  with parameters p_start_date : /dmo/begin_date,
       p_end_date : /dmo/end_date
```
For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].

Implementation Steps

The following steps describe the procedure of using parameters as additional filter criteria. The parameters p_start_date and p_end_date are used as a filter on the elements Begin_Date and End_Date.

1. Call the method get_parameters of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns a string table of the parameters and their values.
2. Define default parameter values in case the parameters are not given in the request. The implementation example uses the system date for Begin_Date and the system date the following year for End_Date.
3. Define a variable for the filter string and fill it with the filter condition for the SQL WHERE clause on the element Begin_Date and End_Date and integrate the default values.

Note
To avoid security risks via SQL string injections, use the method escape_quotes of the public class CL_ABAP_DYN_PRG.

4. If there are other filter conditions (from filter requests or parameters), concatenate the filter strings with AND.
5. Check if data is requested.
6. Use the filter condition in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement to retrieve the filtered data from the data source.
7. Call the method set_data of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE to respond to the OData request with the filtered data. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.
8. Check if count is requested.
9. Use the filter condition in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement to retrieve the count for the data records that match the request.
10. Call the method set_total_number_of_records of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE to respond to the OData request with the filtered count. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates an implementation for parameters within the select method of IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER in the query implementation class.

```abap
DATA(lt_parameters) = io_request->get_parameters( ).
DATA(lv_next_year) = CONV_syst_datum(cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ) + 365 )
DATA(lv_par_filter) = |( BEGIN_DATE >= '{ cl_abap_dyn_prg=>escape_quotes('VALUE #( lt_parameters[ parameter_name = 'P_START_DATE' ]-value DEFAULT cl_abap_context_info=>get_system_date( ) ) )'} | AND | & &
| END_DATE <= '{ cl_abap_dyn_prg=>escape_quotes( VALUE #( lt_parameters[ parameter_name = 'P_END_DATE' ])-value DEFAULT lv_next_year ) )' | )'.
IF lv_sql_filter IS INITIAL.
```
lv_sql_filter = lv_par_filter.
ELSE.
    lv_sql_filter = |( { lv_sql_filter } AND { lv_par_filter } )| .
ENDIF.
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
    DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
    SELECT * FROM /dmo/travel
        WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
        ORDER BY ('primary key')
    INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE @lt_travel_response
    io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.
IF io_request->is_total_numb_of_rec_requested( ).
    SELECT COUNT( * ) FROM /dmo/travel
        WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
    INTO @DATA(lv_travel_count).
    io_response->set_total_number_of_records( lv_travel_count ).
ENDIF.

**i Note**

It is recommended to implement a default sort order to return consistent results from the data source.

For API information, see Method *get_parameters* [page 954].

### 6.3.1.5 Implementing Search in an Unmanaged Query

To retrieve data according to the search term in the OData request, you need to implement a search logic in your query implementation class. The interface **IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST** provides a method to get the search expression from the request.

It is up to the application developer how the search logic is implemented. One option is to use the search expression as (additional) filter criteria for one or more elements. To use the search expression as a filter in the **WHERE** clause of an SQL **SELECT** statement, you need to create a filter string from the search expression and combine it with other possible filter strings.

The interface **IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE** provides a method to set the filtered data for the query response after retrieving data from the data source.

**Prerequisites**

- For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].
- To send query requests with search conditions from a Fiori Elements UI, you need to annotate the custom entity with **@Search.searchable: true**.

**i Note**

The annotation **@Search.searchable: true** requires using the annotation **@Search.defaultSearchElement: true** on at least one element in the custom entity. This...
element annotation does not have any influence on the search, as it is up to the application developer on which element(s) the search logic is implemented.

**Implementation Steps**

The following steps provide an example on how to implement the search as a filter for the element Description. If a filter is also requested, you need to ensure that the SQL filter string has the right syntax for the SQL SELECT statement.

1. Check if data is requested.
2. Call the method `get_search_expression` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`, which returns a string of the requested search expression.
3. Create the filter string for the WHERE clause of SQL SELECT statement with the filter for the element Description.

**i Note**

To avoid security risks via SQL string injections use the method `escape_quotes` of the public class `CL_ABAP_DYN_PRG`.

4. If there are other filter conditions (from filter requests or parameters), concatenate the filter strings with AND.
5. Check if data is requested.
6. Use the filter condition in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement to retrieve the filtered data from the data source.
7. Call the method `set_data` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` to respond to the OData request with the filtered data. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.
8. Check if count is requested.
9. Use the filter condition in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement to retrieve the count for the data records that match the request.
10. Call the method `set_total_number_of_records` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` to respond to the OData request with the filtered count. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates the search implementation within the select method of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` in the query implementation class.

```abap
DATA(lv_search_string) = io_request->get_search_expression( ).
DATA(lv_search_sql) = |DESCRIPTION LIKE '%{ cl_abap_dyn_prg=>escape_quotes( lv_search_string ) }%'.
IF lv_sql_filter IS INITIAL.
  lv_sql_filter = lv_search_sql.
ELSE.
  lv_sql_filter = |( { lv_sql_filter } AND { lv_search_sql } )|.
ENDIF.
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
  SELECT * FROM /dmo/travel
  WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
  ORDER BY ('primary key')
```
INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE @lt_travel_response
   io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.
IF io_request->is_total_num_of_rec_requested( ).
   SELECT COUNT( * ) FROM /dmo/travel
   WHERE (lv_sql_filter)
   INTO @DATA(lv_travel_count).
   io_response->set_total_number_of_records( lv_travel_count ).
ENDIF.

Note
It is recommended to implement a default sort order to return consistent results from the data source.

For API information, see Method get_search_expression [page 955].

6.3.1.6 Implementing Paging in an Unmanaged Query

To retrieve data in packages, you need to implement paging in the query implementation class. The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST provides a method to get the paging information. It returns an interface instance of IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING with two methods for the beginning and the number of records to be retrieved.

The method get_offset defines the number of records that are dropped.

Note
In accordance to the OData query option $skip, the method get_offset does not return the position of the first data record to retrieve, but the number of records that are not taken into account before the retrieval starts. That means, the first line of the data source that is retrieved is the returning value of get_offset plus 1.

Note
For retrieving all available data records, the method get_page_size returns the constant page_size_unlimited of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING. This has to be converted when using the paging information in an SQL string.

The method get_page_size defines the number of records that are retrieved.

The paging information can then be used in the OFFSET and the UP TO n ROWS clause of the SQL SELECT statement.

The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE provides a method to set the reduced data records for the query response after retrieving data from the data source.

Prerequisites

For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674]
Implementation Steps

The following steps provide an example on how to implement paging.

1. Call the method `get_paging` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`, which returns an interface instance of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING`. Use the method `get_offset` to get the number of records to drop into a local variable.

2. Call the method `get_paging` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`, which returns an interface instance of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING`. Use the method `get_page_size` to get the number of records to retrieve.

3. Convert the number for infinite numbers of records to be compatible with the definition of the SQL `SELECT` statement to retrieve an infinite number.

   Note
   The SQL `SELECT` addition `UP TO 0 ROWS` retrieves all available data sets.

4. Use the additions `OFFSET` and `UP TO n ROWS` in the SQL `SELECT` to retrieve the data records in packages.

5. Call the method `set_data` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` to respond to the OData request with the reduced data records. The filtered result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates the paging implementation within the `select` method of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` in the query implementation class.

```abap
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA(lv_offset) = io_request->get_paging( )->get_offset( ).
  DATA(lv_page_size) = io_request->get_paging( )->get_page_size( ).
  DATA(lv_max_rows) = COND #( WHEN lv_page_size = if_rap_query_paging=>page_size_unlimited THEN 0 ELSE lv_page_size ).).
  DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
  SELECT * FROM /dmo/travel
  ORDER BY ('primary key')
  INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE @lt_travel_response
  OFFSET @lv_offset UP TO @lv_max_rows ROWS.
  io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.
```

Note
It is required to implement a default sort order to return consistent results from the data source. Sorted results are essential in combination with paging. If you do not provide a default order, the data records for a certain page might not be consistent.

For API information, see Method `get_paging` [page 952].

6.3.1.7 Implementing Sorting in an Unmanaged Query

To retrieve sorted data in an unmanaged query, you need to add sorting criteria to the SQL `SELECT` statement. The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST` provides a method to get the sort element and the sort order for the request.
The method returns an ordered list of elements with their sort order. If there is more than one sort element, the sorting priority is in order of appearance. To use the sorting criteria in an SQL SELECT clause, the sorting criteria has to be transformed into a string that has comma-separated pairs of sort element and sort order.

Whereas abap.bool indicates the sort order for the element descending in the sorted table that you get from the query request, the sort order must be indicated with the string ascending or descending in the ORDER BY clause of the SQL statement.

Example

The string for the SQL select statement must look like `element1 ascending, element2 descending,...`.

The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE provides a method to set the sorted data for the query response after retrieving the data records from the data source.

Prerequisites

For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].

Implementation Steps

The following steps provide an example on how to implement sorting criteria.

1. Call the method get_sort_elements of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns an ordered list of sort elements with the respective sort direction.
2. Write the elements of the returning value into a string table and map abap.bool to `ascending` or `descending` respectively.
3. Concatenate the lines of the string table with comma separation into a string variable.
4. To achieve a consistent result if there is a query request with initial sort order, provide a default sort order, for example `primary key`.
5. Use the sort condition in the ORDER BY clause of the SQL select.
6. Call the method set_data of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE to respond to the OData request with the sorted data. The sorted result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates the sort implementation within the select method of IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER in the query implementation class.

```
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA(sort_elements) = io_request->get_sort_elements( ).
  DATA(lt_sort_criteria) = VALUE string_table( FOR sort_element IN sort_elements
    ( sort_element-element_name &&
    COND #( WHEN sort_element-descending = abap_true
    THEN `descending`
    ))
```

ELSE `ascending`)).

DATA(lv_sort_string) = COND #( WHEN lt_sort_criteria IS INITIAL THEN
`primary key` ELSE
concat_lines_of( table = lt_sort_criteria sep = `, ` ))).

DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
SELECT * FROM /dmo/travel
ORDER BY (lv_sort_string)
INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE @lt_travel_response.
io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.

For API information, see Method get_sort_elements [page 953].

### 6.3.1.8 Considering Requested Elements in an Unmanaged Query

You can optimize the performance for your unmanaged query you can add an implementation to retrieve only the elements that are requested in the OData request. If you do not specify requested element, the query retrieves the value for every element in the custom entity.

To retrieve only the elements that are requested in the OData request, you need to implement an element restriction in the SQL SELECT statement. The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER provides a method to get the requested elements for the request.

To select only the requested element in the SQL SELECT clause, you must transform the requested elements into a string with comma separations.

The interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE provides a method to set the data for the query response after retrieving the relevant data from the data source.

**Prerequisites**

For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].

**Implementation Steps**

The following steps provide an example on how to select only the requested elements from a data source.

1. Check if data is requested.
2. Call the method get_requested_elements of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns a table with the requested elements.
3. Concatenate the lines of the table with comma separation into a string variable.
4. Include the string variable in the SQL SELECT clause to retrieve only the requested elements from the data source.
5. Call the method `set_data` of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` to respond to the OData request with the requested elements. The result is then returned to the OData client, for example the SAP Fiori Elements UI.

The following codeblock illustrates the implementation to retrieve only the requested elements within the `select` method of `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` in the query implementation class.

```plaintext
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA(lt_req_elements) = io_request->get_requested_elements( ).
  DATA(lv_req_elements) = concat_lines_of( table = lt_req_elements sep = `,
  )
  DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
  SELECT (lv_req_elements) FROM /dmo/travel
    ORDER BY ('primary key')
  INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE
    @lt_travel_response.
  io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.
```

**iNote**

It is recommended to implement a default sort order to return consistent results from the data source.

For API information, see Method `get_requested_elements` [page 955].

### 6.3.1.9 Implementing Aggregations in an Unmanaged Query

To retrieve aggregate data, you need to implement a logic to retrieve and group data according to the requested aggregations in the OData request. The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST` provides a method to get the aggregation information. It returns an interface instance of `IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION` with two methods to get the elements to be aggregated or grouped.

To select the requested elements according to the requested aggregation, you need to transform the requested aggregation elements into an aggregation string for the SQL `SELECT`. The aggregation string must look as follows:

```plaintext
<AGGR_METHOD> ( <aggr_element> ) as <result_element>
```

For more information about aggregate functions in SQL expressions, see ABAP SQL - Aggregate Expressions `agg_exp` (ABAP Keyword Documentation).

To avoid double selecting the result element, you need to delete it from the list of elements that are requested as the aggregation string is used in the SQL `SELECT` together with the other requested elements.

To group the response data by the requested grouped elements, you need to create an SQL string for the SQL `GROUP BY` clause.

The interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` provides a method to set the aggregated and grouped data for the query response after retrieving data from the data source.
Prerequisites

- For general prerequisites of an unmanaged query implementation, see Prerequisites Unmanaged Query [page 674].
- To use aggregation in a Fiori Elements UI and send requests for aggregate values, you need to annotate the related elements with @Aggregation.default: <aggr_method>.

Implementation Steps

This procedure combines the implementation of requested elements and aggregation, as both are used in the select list of the SQL SELECT. The steps also provide an example on how to use the grouped elements in the SQL SELECT.

1. Check if data is requested.
2. Call the method get_requested_elements of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns a table with the requested elements.
3. Call the method get_aggregation of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns an interface instance of IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION. Use the method get_aggregated_elements, which returns a list of the elements to be aggregated, their respective aggregation method and the result element for the aggregated value.
4. Delete the result element from the requested elements.
5. Create the aggregation string for the SQL SELECT with the aggregation method, the element to be aggregated and the result element.
6. Append the aggregation string to the string of requested elements.
7. Call the method get_aggregation of the interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST, which returns an interface instance of IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION. Use the method get_grouped_elements, which returns a list of the elements that are requested as group reference.
8. Concatenate the lines of the string table with comma separation into a string variable.
9. Use the requested elements in the select list of the SQL SELECT.
10. Use the string with the grouped elements in the GROUP BY clause of the SELECT statement.

The following codeblock illustrates the implementation for aggregation and grouping select method of IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER in the query implementation class.

```plaintext
IF io_request->is_data_requested( ).
  DATA(lt_req_elements) = io_request->get_requested_elements( ).
  DATA(lt_aggr_element) = io_request->get_aggregation( )- >get_aggregated_elements( ).
  IF lt_aggr_element IS NOT INITIAL.
    LOOP AT lt_aggr_element ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<fs_aggr_element>).
      DELETE lt_req_elements WHERE table_line = <fs_aggr_element>-result_element.
      DATA(lv_aggregation) = |{ <fs_aggr_element>-aggregation_method }|
      ( { <fs_aggr_element>-input_element } ) as |{<fs_aggr_element>-result_element}|.
      APPEND lv_aggregation TO lt_req_elements.
    ENDLOOP.
  ENDIF.
  DATA(lv_req_elements) = concat_lines_of( table = lt_req_elements sep = ",").
  DATA(lt_grouped_element) = io_request->get_aggregation( )- >get_grouped_elements( ).
```
DATA lv_grouping = concat_lines_of( table = lt_grouped_element sep = "," ).
DATA lt_travel_response TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF /dmo/i_travel_uq.
SELECT (lv_req_elements) FROM /dmo/travel
GROUP BY (lv_grouping)
ORDER BY ("primary key")
INTO CORRESPONDING FIELDS OF TABLE
@lt_travel_response.
   io_response->set_data( lt_travel_response ).
ENDIF.

i Note
It is recommended to implement a default sort order to return consistent results from the data source.

i Note
For API information, see Method get_aggregation [page 954].

6.4 UI Semantics

6.4.1 Adding Field Labels and Descriptions

End-user texts, such as field labels or field descriptions, are taken from ABAP Dictionary data elements to which the corresponding element is bound - unless you redefine the texts using CDS annotations. Unlike technical element names, the header texts, field labels and descriptions are language-dependent. For example, the field 'Airline' would have a language-dependent label 'Airline Code'.

Such texts must be translated. Therefore, the CDS development infrastructure is able to extract them from the source code and transfer the extracted texts to the actual translation infrastructure of the corresponding delivery package.

Relevant Annotations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@EndUserText.label: '&lt;text&gt;'</td>
<td>This annotation is used to define translatable semantic short texts (with maximum 60 characters) for an element of the CDS view (label text).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@EndUserText.quickInfo: '&lt;text&gt;'</td>
<td>The annotation defines a human-readable &lt;text&gt; that provides additional information about an element. The quick info is used for accessibility hints or the mouse over function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

→ Remember

The <text> specified in the source code should consist of text in the original language of the CDS source code and will be translated into the required languages.
Example

The listing below demonstrates the usage of `@EndUserText` annotations at the view and element (field) level:

```plaintext
@EndUserText.label: 'Overview of available flights'  -- Annotation at the view level

DEFINE VIEW <CDS_view> as Flights {
...
  -- Annotation at the field level
  @EndUserText: { label: 'Airline Code', quickinfo: 'Code to identify which airline operates the flight' }
  carrier_id as CarrierID;
...
```

→ Tip
Press `F1` in the CDS source code editor for extended help content on `@EndUserText` annotation!

Note
If `@UI` labeling annotations are used, they will be evaluated primarily. That means, they will overwrite the text given with the `@EndUserText` annotations.

OData Metadata

To verify that the additional information of labels and descriptions is pushed correctly to the OData service, you can check the OData metadata document. This can also be helpful to find out which label information is used if you maintain `@UI` and `@EndUserText` in your CDS view.

If no UI annotations are used, the OData metadata document of the example above should contain the annotations that are marked in the following image:

```
<key>
  <Property label="Airline Code" name="CarrierID" quickinfo="Code to identify which airline operates the flight" sap:display-format="UpperCase"
```

6.4.2 Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs

How to solve the most common UI layout tasks with UI annotations in CDS.

Prerequisites

In order to use this help chapter, you should be familiar with:
CDS Views and CDS DDL (Data Definition Language)

- Setting up Data Definitions, Service Bindings and Service Definitions
- Using ABAP Development Tools (ADT)

In order to use the example code, download the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 984].

Context

For a UI to work, you do not need to implement everything yourself. The barebones of the UI will be taken care of automatically by RAP if you use the Fiori Elements App Preview (FEAP) in the service binding. For example the root page will have a header and a list report (table) facet with sorting and filtering capabilities, even without you implementing any UI annotations in CDS. Furthermore the UI will include a Share-Button and a basic view manager.

i Note

To view the entries of your database on the UI without implementing any UI annotations, click on the gear icon on the UI and select at least one column.

FAQ

This FAQ directs you to the correct topics for questions that often arise when working with Metadata-Driven UIs for the first time.

- What are fields? [page 696]
- How can I overwrite default labels of fields? [page 697]
- How can I define the positioning of fields? [page 699]
- How can I filter my data by specific fields? [page 707]
- How can I manipulate the Object Page Layout? [page 713]
- How can I hide fields on the Object Page? [page 718]
- How can I visualize my data? [page 722]

Source Code Structure

You can use UI annotations both in Data Definition or Metadata Extension files.

i Note

We recommend that you use a Metadata Extension file for all UI annotations because this will improve the legibility of the source code in the Data Definition and also simplify the development and maintenance of the CDS view. Metadata Extensions also allow for layering of multiple Metadata Extensions, which is useful if your BO is used by customers, partners and industries at the same time with different customization needs.
Your code will have the following sections:

1. Header section
2. Annotate/define view section
3. Facet Definitions
4. Element List
   1. Fields
   2. Associations

See the code snippet below for a complete overview of all sections and the correct syntax.

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```java
// HEADER SECTION
@Metadata.layer: ...
@UI.headerInfo: ...

// ANNOTATE VIEW SECTION
annotate/define view ...
{
  // FACET DEFINITIONS
  // Header Facets (Object Page):
  @UI.facet: [ { purpose: #HEADER, ... },
  // Body Facets (Object Page)
  [ ... ] ]

  // ELEMENT LIST
  // FIELDS
  @UI: { lineItem:       [ { ... } ],
    identification: [ { ... } ],
    selectionField: [ { ... } ],
    fieldGroup:     [ { ... } ] }
  element_1;
  @UI: { lineItem:       [ { ... } ],
    identification: [ { ... } ],
    selectionField: [ { ... } ],
    fieldGroup:     [ { ... } ] }
  element_2;
  ...
  // ASSOCIATIONS
  _Association1
}
```

**User Interface**

The screenshots in this guide are taken from the Fiori Elements App Preview (FEAP), which can be started from the service binding.

The Fiori UI serves as an example for how your UI might look like and how changes in the code influence the UI. In this guide, we use the two most common page layouts, also called Fiori floorplans, namely:

1. List Reports and
2. Object Pages.

Find more information about Fiori in the Introduction to SAP Fiori Elements.

**List Report Page**
The list report is used to display all the entries of a dataset in one list or table. You can specify which columns to display and which ones to hide or omit.

A – List Report Header  
B – List Report Table Header  
C – List Report Columns  
D – List Report Entries

To navigate from the list report to the object page of an entry, click anywhere on the row of that entry.

**Object Page**

The object page is mostly used to show more details about one entry of the dataset. Again, you can choose which details shall be displayed on the object page.
6.4.2.1 Fields on the UI

Use UI annotations to rearrange, label and manipulate fields on your UI.

Fields are elements from the CDS view that are displayed on the UI screen. Fields can be table columns of list reports or single items within facets on the object page, such as “Customer ID: ...”. In other words: whenever you annotate a CDS element to be displayed on the UI, it will appear on the UI as a field.

In this chapter, you will be guided through the following tasks:
6.4.2.1.1 Overwriting Default Field Labels

How to use UI annotations in CDS to overwrite default field labels on your UI.

Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.identification: [{label: '&lt;new label name&gt;'}]</td>
<td>Defines the displayed field label. Overrules default labels of identification derived from CDS annotation @EndUserText.label or from data elements in the ABAP dictionary.</td>
<td>To be placed in the element list section, preceding each respective element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fields on the UI [page 696]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI Annotations [page 816]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.lineItem: [{label: '&lt;new label name&gt;'}]</td>
<td>Defines the displayed field label. Overrules default labels of columns of a list report derived from CDS annotation @EndUserText.label or from data elements in the ABAP dictionary.</td>
<td>To be placed in the element list section, preceding each respective element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fields on the UI [page 696]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI Annotations [page 816]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preview on Fiori UI

Facet 3 - Administrative Data

| Travel ID: | 1 |
| Agency: | Maxtrip (70041) |
| Customer: | Ryan (594) |
| Start of Travel: | Nov 2, 2019 |
| End of Travel: | Aug 30, 2020 |
| Total Price: | 30,096.41 USD |
| Comment: | Vacation |

Labeled UI Line Item Fields on the Object Page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travel ID</th>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>Customer</th>
<th>Start of Travel</th>
<th>End of Travel</th>
<th>Travel Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Maxtrip (70041)</td>
<td>Ryan (594)</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>Aug 30, 2020</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hot Socks Travel (70007)</td>
<td>Prinz (588)</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Labeled UI Line Item Fields on the List Report

Context and Use

The labels of exposed CDS elements are derived by default from the data element labels in the ABAP dictionary, or, if defined, from the CDS annotation `@EndUserText.label`. You can overwrite both, data element labels and labels defined by `@EndUserText.label`, with the subannotation `label` on the UI. Labels of UI annotations are only used in UI contexts, whereas labels from the ABAP dictionary or `@EndUserText.label` are used in the service document of any service. The subannotation `label` can be used with several UI annotations, e.g. `@UI.identification` or `@UI.LineItem` (see Quick Info above or UI Annotations [page 816]).

Place the annotation within the element list section, right before the respective element that you want to label.

Code Snippet

In this example, we use the annotation `@UI.identification.label` to label the fields that are displayed on the object page in the facet with type `#IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE` as can be seen in the first figure of the preview above. Similarly we label the fields (i.e. columns) of the list report with the annotation `@UI.lineItem.label` as can be seen in the second figure of the preview above.

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].
6.4.2.1.2 Positioning Fields

How to rearrange fields using UI annotations in CDS.

Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>@UI.identification: [{position: &lt;value&gt;}]</code></td>
<td>Sorts fields in the order of position values.</td>
<td>To be placed in the element list section of the code, preceding each respective element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Annotation Syntax**

```java
@UI.identification: [{position: <value>}]
```

**Related Topics**

- Fields on the UI [page 696]
- UI Annotations [page 816]

**Annotation Syntax**

```java
@UI.lineItem: [ { position: <value> } ]
```

**Description**

Sorts fields (i.e. table columns) in the order of 'position' values.

**Use**

To be placed in the element list section of the code, preceding each respective element.

**Related Topics**

- Fields on the UI [page 696]
- UI Annotations [page 816]

---

**Preview on Fiori UI**

**Facet 3 - Administrative Data**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travel ID: 1</th>
<th>Start of Travel: Nov 2, 2019</th>
<th>Comment: Vacation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agency: Maxtrip (70041)</td>
<td>End of Travel: Aug 30, 2020</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer: Ryan (934)</td>
<td>Total Price: 30,096.41 USD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List Report - Table Header (7,462) | Standard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Travel ID</th>
<th>Agency</th>
<th>Customer</th>
<th>Start of Travel</th>
<th>End of Travel</th>
<th>Travel Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Maxtrip (70041)</td>
<td>Ryan (934)</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>Aug 30, 2020</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hot Saska Travel (70007)</td>
<td>Price (608)</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UI Identification Fields sorted in order of the position values on the Object Page**

**UI Line Item Fields sorted in order of the position values on the List Report**

**Context and Use**

Place the annotation in the element list section of your CDS Data Definition or Metadata Extension, directly preceding the respective element. The value for 'position' is relative, meaning that the order of the elements on the UI is defined by the relative order of the values for 'position' of each element.

We recommend that you leave gaps between the respective values for 'position'. This will make it easier to add an element between two other elements retroactively, as you will not need to change the values of 'position' for all other elements.
The subannotation `position` can be used in a similar way with the following annotations:

- UI.facet
- UI.fieldGroup
- UI.identification
- UI.lineItem
- UI.selectionField
- UI.statusInfo

You can find more details about this in UI Annotations [page 816].

**Code Snippet**

In this example we use `@UI.identification.position` to define the order of the identification fields in the facet with type `#IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE` on the object page. Similarly we define the order of the fields (i.e. columns) of the list report with the annotation `@UI.lineItem.position`.

You can find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```plaintext
... annotate view Z_C_TRAVEL_R with {
  ...
  // Body Facets (Object Page)
  ...
  // Facet 3
  { id: 'Facet3-ID',
    purpose: #STANDARD,
    type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE, // Refers to elements annotated with '@UI.identification' in the element list below
    label: 'Facet 3 - Overview and Comments',
    position: 30 }
}

// ELEMENT LIST
@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 10 } ],
  identification: [ { position: 10 } ] }
TravelID;
@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 20 } ],
  identification: [ { position: 20 } ] }
AgencyID;
@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 30 } ],
  identification: [ { position: 30 } ] }
CustomerID;
@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 40 } ],
  identification: [ { position: 40 } ] }
BeginDate;
@UI: { lineItem: [ { position: 50 } ],
  identification: [ { position: 50 } ] }
EndDate;
@UI: { hidden: true,
  identification: [ { position: 80 } ] }
BookingFee;
```
6.4.2.1.3 Grouping Fields

How to use fieldgroups to structure the content on your UI using UI annotations in CDS.

Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.fieldGroup: [ { qualifier: '&lt;group name&gt;', position: &lt;value&gt;} ]</td>
<td>Arranges fields in groups within other sections, like headers or facets.</td>
<td>To be placed in the element section of the code, preceding the respective element. Use qualifier to assign a field to the targetQualifier of a facet. Use position to define the order of the fields.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- Using Facets to change the Object Page Layout [page 713]
- Fields on the UI [page 696]
- UI Annotations [page 816]
Preview on Fiori UI

Facet 1 - Customer & Travel Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fieldgroup 1 - Customer Data</th>
<th>Fieldgroup 2 - Travel Data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Street:</td>
<td>Travel Status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilhelmstr. 24</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customer ID:</td>
<td>Description:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryann (594)</td>
<td>Vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name:</td>
<td>Total Price:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illya</td>
<td>30,096.41 USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name:</td>
<td>End Date:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryan</td>
<td>Aug 30, 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title:</td>
<td>Customer ID:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr.</td>
<td>Ryann (594)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone No.:</td>
<td>E-Mail Address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+49-713-209949</td>
<td><a href="mailto:illya.ryann@flight.example.de">illya.ryann@flight.example.de</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postal Code:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heidelberg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Key:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two Fieldgroups, Collected in One Facet

Context and Use

You can arrange fields to be displayed as a group within a facet.

1. Create a facet type #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE in the element section.
2. Define a 'targetQualifier' for that facet. 'targetQualifier' is used as a reference to this facet when defining elements.
3. Place the UI.fieldGroup annotation in the element section, directly preceding each element you want to include in the group.
4. Use 'qualifier' to assign the element to the 'targetQualifier' of the facet you created before.

Facets can also collect fieldgroup items from other data definitions. In the example below, 'Fieldgroup1-ID' assigns items from _Customer to the parent Facet1-ID in the travel CDS view. The items are described in the Metadata Extension for _Customer. 'Fieldgroup2-ID' assigns items from the travel CDS view to the same parent Facet1-ID.

You will find more details in the UI Reference.

Code Snippet

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

1. Metadata Extension for TRAVEL (Data Definition for list report table)

```java
annotate view Z_C_TRAVEL_R with
{
  ...
  @UI.facet: {
    ...
    // Body Facets (Object Page)
```
// Facet 1 - Parent (collection) for Fieldgroup 1 and Fieldgroup 2
// { id: 'Facet1-ID',
//   type: #COLLECTION,
//   label: 'Facet 1 - Customer & Travel Data',
//   position: 10 },

// Facet for Fieldgroup 1 - nested inside Facet 1
// { id: 'Fieldgroup1-ID',
//   type: #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
//   label: 'Fieldgroup 1 - Customer Data',
//   parentId: 'Facet1-ID', // Places this facet into 'Facet 1'
//   targetElement: '_Customer', // Specifies where the data is retrieved from - UI annotations must be defined in the respective target
targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup1',
position: 10 },

// Facet for Fieldgroup 2 - nested inside Facet 1
// { id: 'Fieldgroup2-ID',
//   type: #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
//   label: 'Fieldgroup 2 - Travel Data',
//   parentId: 'Facet1-ID', // Places this facet into 'Facet 1'
//   targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', // No targetElement defined.
Default target is the entity in which the facet is defined.
position: 20 }

// ELEMENT LIST
// FIELDS

@UI: { lineItem: [{ position: 30,
   importance: #HIGH } ],
   identification: [{ position: 30 } ],
   fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ] }

CustomerID;

@UI: { lineItem: [{ position: 40,
   qualifier: 'Facet2' } ],
   identification: [{ position: 40 } ],
   fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ] }

BeginDate;

@UI: { lineItem: [{ position: 41,
   importance: #MEDIUM,
   qualifier: 'Facet2' } ],
   identification: [{ position: 41 } ],
   fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ] }

EndDate;

@UI: { identification: [{ position: 42 } ],
   fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ] }

BookingFee;

@UI: { identification: [{ position: 43 } ],
   fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ],
   dataPoint: { title: 'Total Price',
targetValueElement: 'TotalPrice' } }

TotalPrice;

@UI: { identification:[{ position: 45,
   label: 'Comment' } ],
   fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ] }

Memo;

@UI: { lineItem: [{ position: 50,
   importance: #HIGH },
   type: #FOR_ACTION,
dataAction: 'set_status_booked',
   label: 'Set to Booked' ] },

fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
   position: 10 } ] }
2. Metadata Extension for _Customer

```plaintext
... 
annotate view Z_C_CUSTOMER_R with 
{
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 05}]
  Street;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 10}]
  CustomerID;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 20}]
  FirstName;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 30}]
  LastName;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 40}]
  Title;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 50}]
  PostalCode;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 60}]
  City;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 70}]
  CountryCode;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 80}]
  PhoneNumber;
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 90}]
  EMailAddress;

  /* Associations */
  //Z_UI_CUSTOMER
  @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 100}]
  _Country;
}
```


## 6.4.2.1.4 Prioritizing Fields

How to prioritize fields on the UI

### Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Related Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| @UI.lineItem: { importance: [#LOW, #MEDIUM, #HIGH] } | Expresses importance of a field (i.e. table column). The value of importance is used to determine which fields are dynamically hidden if the UI is displayed on a small screen. | To be placed in the element section of the code, preceding the respective element. | Fields on the UI [page 696]  
UI Annotations [page 816] |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Related Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| @UI.identification: { importance: [#LOW, #MEDIUM, #HIGH] } | Expresses importance of an identification field. The value of importance is used to determine which fields are dynamically hidden if the UI is displayed on a small screen. | To be placed in the element section of the code, preceding the respective element. | Fields on the UI [page 696]  
UI Annotations [page 816] |

### Context and Use

To make sure that the most relevant info is displayed even on small screens, you can define the priority of fields on the UI. The assigned priority is recognized by Fiori Elements and used to decide which fields will be dynamically hidden in case the UI is displayed on a smaller screen, e.g. a smartphone.

### Code Snippet

In this example we use the annotation @UI.lineItem.importance to make sure that the TravelID, AgencyID and CustomerID columns on the list report have high priority.
You can find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```plaintext
... 
annotate view Z_C_TRAVEL_R with 
{
  ...
  @UI: { lineItem:       [ { importance: #HIGH } ] }
  TravelID;
  @UI: { lineItem:       [ { importance: #HIGH } ] }
  AgencyID;
  @UI: { lineItem:       [ { importance: #HIGH } ] }
  CustomerID;
  ...
}
```

### 6.4.2.1.5 Adding Selection Fields

How to add selection fields for filtering lists or tables on your UI using UI annotations in CDS.

#### Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.selectionField: [ { position: &lt;value&gt; } ]</td>
<td>Adds selection fields for the corresponding columns in the list report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Useful for filtering long lists or tables for specific values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not to be confused with search fields (see: Adding Search Capabilities [page 234]).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Use                        | To be placed in the element list section of the code, preceding the respective element. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topics</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adding Search Capabilities</td>
<td>[page 234]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fields on the UI</td>
<td>[page 696]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI Annotations</td>
<td>[page 816]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preview on Fiori UI

Selection Field with Applied Filter “Customer ID = 594”

Context and Use

The annotation displays selection fields for the corresponding columns of the list report. The subannotation @UI.selectionField.position defines the order of the selection fields on the UI. Labels of selection fields are derived from the data elements in the ABAP Dictionary. If you want to use different labels on the UI, define labels with the @EndUserText.label annotation. Selection fields enable the user to filter a long list or table for specific values, such as Customer ID and/or Agency ID (see example).

Place the annotation in the element list section of your CDS Data Definition or Metadata Extension, preceding each respective element that you want to filter your table for.

You will find more details in the UI Annotations [page 816].

Code Snippet

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```annotate view Z_C_TRAVEL_R
{
   ...
   // FIELDS
   @UI.lineItem: [ { position: 10 } ]
   @UI.selectionField: [ { position: 5 } ]
   TravelID;
   @UI: [ lineItem: [ { position: 20 } ],
          selectionField: [ { position: 10 } ] ]
   AgencyID;
   @UI: [ lineItem: [ { position: 30 } ],
          selectionField: [ { position: 15 } ] ]
   CustomerID;
   ...
}
6.4.2.2 Tables

How to use UI annotations in CDS to design the layout of lists and tables on the UI.

The following topics apply to tables both on the list report and on the object page. Note that list reports always use tables, while object pages may integrate tables.

Find more information about Fiori UI floorplans on [Introduction to SAP Fiori Elements](https://help.sap.com/fiori_elements).

You will be guided through the following tasks:

- Defining the Table Header of a List Report [page 709]
- Labeling Table Columns [page 697]
- Positioning Table Columns [page 699]

**Note**

The table header of a table can only be defined on a list report. Tables on object pages do not have a table header.

### 6.4.2.2.1 Defining the Table Header of a List Report

How to define the table header of a list report of your UI using UI annotations in CDS.

#### Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Related Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `@UI.headerInfo: { typeNamePlural: 'List Report - Table Header' }` | Defines the table header of a list report. | To be placed in the header section of the code. | Defining the Title Section of an Object Page [page 711]  
|                   |             |     | UI Annotations [page 816] |
Preview on Fiori UI

![Image of Fiori UI](image)

**Defined Table Header of the List Report Page**

### Context and Use

Place the annotation `UI.headerInfo.typeNamePlural` in the header section of your CDS Data Definition or Metadata Extension.

### Code Snippet

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```plaintext
// METADATA EXTENSION - HEADER SECTION
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { typeNamePlural: 'List Report - Table Header' } }
annotate view Z_C_TRAVEL_R
...
```

### 6.4.2.3 Object Page

Use UI annotations to influence the design of the object page on your UI.

The object page is mostly used to show details about one entry of a data table. On an object page you can gather information for one entry from different CDS views in different layouts. Click on a row of the list report page to navigate to the object page of the corresponding entry.

Find more information about the object page in Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692] or in the Introduction to SAP Fiori Elements.

You will be guided through the following tasks:

- **Defining the Title Section of an Object Page** [page 711]
6.4.2.3.1 Defining the Title Section of an Object Page

How to use UI annotations in CDS to define the title of the object page of your UI.

Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.headerInfo: { typeName: '&lt;Object Page Title&gt;', title: { value: '&lt;field&gt;' } }</td>
<td>Defines the title section of an object page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use: To be placed in the header section of the code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Defining the Table Header of a List Report [page 709]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI Annotations [page 816]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preview on Fiori UI

Object Page - Header Facet

Travel ID: 1
Agency ID: Maxtrip (T0441)

Context and Use

Place the annotations \@UI.headerInfo.typeName to define the Object Page title and \@UI.headerInfo.title.value to define the Object Page title value in the header section of your CDS Data Definition or Metadata Extension.

**Note**

You can display another value in the title section with the annotation \@UI.headerInfo.description.value.

**Code Snippet**

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```stoff
// METADATA EXTENSION - HEADER SECTION
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: { typeName: 'Object Page - Title' },
  title: { value: 'TravelID' }
```
6.4.2.3.2 Using Facets to change the Object Page Layout

How to manipulate the basic layout of your UI using facets in CDS.

Quick Info

Annotation Syntax

@UI.facet: [ { id: '...', label: '...', parentId: '...', position: <value>, purpose: #..., qualifier: '...', targetElement: '...', targetQualifier: '...', type: #..., hidden: true } ]

Description
Defines facets for the object page.

Use
To be placed in the facet definition section of the code.

Related Topics
- Defining CDS Annotations for Metadata-Driven UIs [page 692]
- Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728]
- UI Annotations [page 816]
Preview on Fiori UI

Object Page - Header Facet

- Travel ID: 1
- Agency ID: Mailtrip (70041)

Facet 1 - Customer & Travel Data

Fieldgroup 1 - Customer Data
- Street: Wilhelmshavenstr. 24
- Customer ID: Ryan (594)
- First Name: Riya
- Last Name: Ryan
- Title: Mr.
- Postal Code: 69121
- City: Heidelberg
- Country Key: DE
- Phone No.: +49-713-208948
- E-Mail Address: riya.ryan@example.de

Fieldgroup 2 - Travel Data
- Travel Status: B
- Description: Vacation
- Total Price: 30,096.41 USD
- End Date: Aug 30, 2020
- Customer ID: Ryan (594)
- Starting Date: Nov 2, 2019

Facet 2 - Bookings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Booking No.</th>
<th>Date of Booking</th>
<th>Customer</th>
<th>Airline</th>
<th>Conne...</th>
<th>Date of Flight</th>
<th>Flight Price</th>
<th>Currency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Oct 16, 2019</td>
<td>594</td>
<td>UA</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>438.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Nov 2, 2019</td>
<td>594</td>
<td>AA</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>Nov 4, 2019</td>
<td>438.00 USD</td>
<td>USD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Facet 3 - Overview and Comments

- PUBLIC
- Travel ID: 1
- Agency: Mailtrip (70041)
- Start of Travel: Nov 2, 2019
- End of Travel: Aug 30, 2020
- Comment: Vacation
Context and Use

Facets are useful for organizing the basic layout of a page, on the object page for example. `@UI.facet` can be refined with a variety of subannotations. Place the annotation in the facet section of your CDS Data Definition or Metadata Extension.

Purpose and Type of UI Facets

The annotation `@UI.facet.purpose` defines whether the facet is a header or a standard facet. On the other hand, the annotation `@UI.facet.type` defines the format of a facet and the types of fields that will be displayed in a facet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>purpose</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#HEADER</td>
<td>Displays the facet and its content in the header section of the object page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#STANDARD</td>
<td>Use this for standard facets. Can be omitted in most cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#COLLECTION</td>
<td>The facet serves as parent (or container) for other facets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Child facets reference the parent facet by 'parentId'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE</td>
<td>Reference to elements assigned to a fieldgroup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE</td>
<td>Reference to elements annotated with UI.identification. The facet will display the referenced elements in a list format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#LINEITEM_REFERENCE</td>
<td>Reference to elements annotated with UI.lineItem. The facet will display the referenced elements in a table format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#CHART_REFERENCE</td>
<td>Reference to charts annotated with UI.chart annotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The facet will display the referenced charts. For more information, see Visualizing Data with Charts [page 722]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hidden: true</td>
<td>Used to hide facets from a page view. The fields are not displayed but still available for calculations for example.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connecting Parent and Child Facets

Parent facets are annotated with `type: #COLLECTION`. To nest another facet into a parent facet, you must use the annotations below.
Connecting Facets to Fieldgroups and Other Targets

To retrieve data from a source, you must define the `targetElement` in the facet. If there is no `targetElement` defined, the default target is the entity in which the facet is defined. To nest field into a fieldgroup, you must define the `targetQualifier` of the facet. The value of `targetQualifier` is referenced by fields with the annotation `@UI.fielgroup.qualifier`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>targetElement: '...'</th>
<th>Needed for retrieving data from associated Data Definitions, e.g. <code>Customer</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetQualifier: '...'</td>
<td>Unique identifier. Needed for elements to be nested into a fieldgroup.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Facet Header and Position

To further customize the layout, you can define the `label` and `position` of each facet. By default, the position of facets will be the order in which they are defined in the source code.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>label: '...'</th>
<th>Label displayed in the facet header and navigation tabs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>position: &lt;value&gt;</td>
<td>Sorts facets in the order of the 'position' values. For more information, see Positioning Fields [page 699].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details, see UI Annotations [page 816].

Code Snippet

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the Complete UI Annotations Example Code [page 728].

```bash
... annotate view Z_UI_TRAVEL with
{
  //FACET SECTION
  @UI.facet: {
    // Header Facet (Object Page):
    { id: 'HeaderFacet',
```
purpose:         #HEADER,
type:            #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
label:           'Object Page - Header Facet',
targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup:HeaderItems', // Refers to lineItems
with @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup:HeaderItems'}]
position:        10 },
// Body Facets (Object Page)

// Facet for chart - charts can only be displayed in facets

{ id:              'Chart1-ID', // Facet for our Chart with type
"#CHART_REFERENCE"
purpose:         #STANDARD,
type:            #CHART_REFERENCE,
label:           'Chart facet',
targetQualifier: 'Chart1',
targetElement:   '_Booking', // Specifies where the data is
retrieved from
position:        1 },

// Facet 1 - Parent (collection) for Fieldgroup 1 and Fieldgroup 2

{ id:              'Facet1-ID', // Facet for Fieldgroup 1 and Fieldgroup 2
type:            #COLLECTION,
label:           'Facet 1 - Customer & Travel Data',
position:        10 },

// Facet for Fieldgroup 1 - nested inside Facet 1

{ id:              'Fieldgroup1-ID', // Facet for Fieldgroup 1
 type:            #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
 label:           'Fieldgroup 1 - Customer Data',
 parentId:        'Facet1-ID', // Places this facet into 'Facet 1'
targetElement:   '_Customer', // Specifies where the data is
retrieved from
 targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup1',
 position:        10 },

// Facet for Fieldgroup 2 - nested inside Facet 1

{ id:              'Fieldgroup2-ID', // Facet for Fieldgroup 2
 type:            #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
 label:           'Fieldgroup 2 - Travel Data',
 parentId:        'Facet1-ID', // Places this facet into 'Facet 1'
targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', // No targetElement defined.
 position:        20 },

// Facet 2

{ id:              'Facet2-ID', // Facet for the referenced items in a list report
 type:            #LINEITEM_REFERENCE,
 label:           'Facet 2 - Bookings',
targetQualifier: 'Facet2',
 position:        20,
targetElement:   '_Booking'},

// Facet 3

{ id:              'Facet3-ID', // Facet for elements annotated with '@UI.identification'
purpose:         #STANDARD,
type:            #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE,
label:           'Facet 3 - Administration Data',
position:        30 } }

// ELEMENT LIST

@UI: { identification: [ { position: 10 } ],
 fieldGroup: [ { qualifier: 'Fieldgroup:HeaderItems',} ] }
6.4.2.3.3 Hiding Fields on the Object Page

How to use UI annotations in CDS to hide fields from the UI without deleting them.

Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>@UI.hidden: true</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Hides fields from the object page without deleting them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use</td>
<td>To be placed in the element list section of the code, preceding the respective element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Context and Use**

In general, all fields that are exposed by the OData service are available to the client, regardless of whether the fields are exposed explicitly using UI annotations. To enable end-user personalization, the client may offer the possibility to add fields that are hidden for UI consumption, for example in facets on the object page. Use the annotation `@UI.hidden` to prevent fields from being displayed on the UI and in the personalization dialog, but leaving the field available for a WebAPI client.

You can also use this annotation if, for example, a CDS view contains technical keys, for example GUIDs, that must be exposed to the OData service to work. These keys are usually not supposed to be displayed on the UI. `@UI.hidden: true` is also useful if fields are required in calculations, but not supposed to be displayed on the UI. Hiding fields is especially useful if you want to hide fields dynamically, e.g. if you want to show fields only when they have positive values.

Note that you can annotate fields of list reports with `@UI.hidden: true` as well. However, this will only deselect the annotated fields as columns, not hide them completely. It is effectively the same as if you hadn't annotated the element with `@UI.lineItem` in the first place.

Place the annotation in the element list section of your CDS Data Definition or Metadata Extension, directly preceding the respective element.

For more details, see [UI Annotations][page 816].

### Code Snippet

In this example, the Booking Fee shall not be displayed to the user, but might be necessary to calculate the total price.

Find the Metadata Extension files for the Travel Scenario in the [Complete UI Annotations Example Code][page 728].

``` annotate view ...
{
  ...
  // ELEMENT LIST
  ...
  @UI: { hidden: true }
  BookingFee;
  @UI: { identification: [ { position: 43 } ],
    fieldGroup: [ { qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2',
                   position: 10 } ] }
  TotalPrice;
  ...
}
```
6.4.2.3.3.1 Hiding Fields Dynamically on the Object Page

How to use the hidden annotation to hide fields dynamically on the object page of your application.

Quick Info

| Annotation Syntax          | @UI.identification: [{hidden:#{'virtual Element'})}]
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Description                | You can use the UI.identification annotation in combination with a virtual element to enable or disable the visibility of a field on the object page. |
| Use                        | You can define a condition for the field visibility with a virtual element. Depending on the condition, the field is visible or not. |
| Related Topics             | - Modeling Virtual Elements [page 622]
                            | - Implementing the Calculation of Virtual Elements [page 623]
                            | - UI Annotations [page 816] |

Context and Use

You can use the hidden annotation in combination with a virtual element to show or hide fields dynamically on the UI depending on a boolean value. If the return value corresponds to true, the respective field is hidden and if the value corresponds to false the respective field is shown on the user interface. You require the following steps to enable dynamic field hiding with a virtual element:

1. Define a virtual element in the behavior definition projection. For more general information about how to implement a virtual element, see Using Virtual Elements in CDS Projection Views [page 620].
2. Create an ABAP class to determine the return value for the virtual element.
3. Annotate the field you want to dynamically hide the respective field on the object page.

In the following you can see sample snippets of all components and below you can find an a sample implementation for a particular use case.

Code Snippet

In the following definition, the extracted field is checked for its numeric value, if the value of FieldToCheck is greater than 1000 then the method returns abap_true and the Field is hidden on the object page. If the contained value is less then 1000, the method returns abap_false and the Field is displayed on the user interface.
interface. You can check any value against any condition and determine the visibility of the respective field dynamically.

**Example Definition: /DMO/Projection_View**

```abap
define root view entity /DMO/Projection_View as projection on /DMO/Root_View {
    @UI: {
        lineItem: [ { position: 40, importance: #MEDIUM } ],
        identification: [ { position: 40, hidden: #{testField} } ]
    } Field as Field,
    @UI: {
        identification: [ { position: 50 } ]
    } FieldToCheck as FieldToCheck
    @ObjectModel.virtualElementCalculatedBy: 'ABAP:Z_ShowField'
    virtual testField: abap_boolean,
}
```

**Example Definition: CLASS Z_ShowField**

```abap
CLASS Z_ShowField DEFINITION
PUBLIC FINAL
CREATE PUBLIC.
PUBLIC SECTION.
INTERFACES IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS Z_ShowField IMPLEMENTATION.
METHOD IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ~CALCULATE.
* Check the field for your condition and return either abap_true or abap_false for the virtual field.
  DATA LT_ORIGINAL_DATA TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF Z_FD_C_Travel_Processor_M WITH DEFAULT KEY.
  LT ORIGINAL DATA = CORRESPONDING #( IT ORIGINAL DATA ).
  LOOP AT LT ORIGINAL DATA ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<FS ORIGINAL DATA>).
    <FS ORIGINAL_DATA>-testField = Cond ABAP_BOOLEAN( WHEN <FS ORIGINAL_DATA>-FieldToCheck > 1000 THEN ABAP_TRUE ELSE ABAP_FALSE ).
  ENDLMP.
  CT CALCULATED_DATA = CORRESPONDING #( LT ORIGINAL_DATA ).
ENDMETHOD.

METHOD IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ~GET_CALCULATION_INFO.
* Extract the field you want the field visibility to depend on
  IF IV ENTITY <> '/DMO/Projection_View'.
    RAISE EXCEPTION TYPE /dmo/cx_virtual_elements EXPORTING TEXTID = /dmo/cx_virtual_elements->ENTITY_NOT_KNOWN ENTITY = IV ENTITY.
  ENDIF.
  LOOP AT IT REQUESTED_CALC_ELEMENTS ASSIGNING FIELD-SYMBOL(<FS_CALC_ELEMENT>).
    CASE <FS_CALC_ELEMENT>.
      WHEN 'testField'.
        APPEND 'FieldToCheck' TO ET REQUESTED ORIG_ELEMENTS.
        ...
    ENDCASE.
  ENDLMP.
ENDMETHOD.
ENDCLASS.
```
6.4.2.3.4 Visualizing Data with Charts

Use Charts to visualize data on object pages.

Quick Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.facet: [ { id: '...', label: '...', position: &lt;value&gt;, purpose: #STANDARD, targetElement: '...', targetQualifier: '...', type: #CHART_REFERENCE, hidden: '...' } ]</td>
<td>Defines a facet for charts on the object page.</td>
<td>To be placed in the facet definition section of the code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

i Note

You must aggregate data, otherwise your chart won’t display meaningful data, i.e. will only display data of one instance. For more information on aggregating data, see Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps [page 612].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@Aggregation.default: #...</td>
<td>Aggregates data of a given element.</td>
<td>To be placed in the CDS view, above the element that you want to aggregate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@UI.Chart: [ { title: '...', qualifier: '...', chartType: '...', dimensions: '...', measures: '...', measureAttributes: [ { measure: '...', role: #... } ], dimensionAttributes: [ { dimension: '...', role: #... } ], description: '...' } ]</td>
<td>Defines the chart itself.</td>
<td>To be placed in the targetElement or its respective metadata extension of the @UI.facet annotation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To successfully implement a chart on your object page, you need to:

1. Define a facet for the chart in the parent CDS view
2. Aggregate data with `@Aggregate.default` annotation.
3. Define the chart itself with `@UI.chart` annotation.

**Defining a facet for the chart**

You must define a facet for your chart to define a spot for the chart on the object page and the data source of the chart. See the sample code below for a better look on how a facet for a chart is defined.

```plaintext
annotate view Z_UI_TRAVEL with 
{
    ... 
    @UI.facet: [
        
            { id: 'Chart1-ID',
              label: 'Chart facet',
              position: 10,
              purpose: #STANDARD,
              type: #CHART_REFERENCE,
              targetQualifier: 'Chart1',
              targetElement: '_Booking'
            } 
        
    ]
    ... 
}
```
### Subannotation Syntax

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subannotation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>Defines a unique identifier for the facet, which you can freely choose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
<td>Defines the name of the facet. The facet will not have a name on the UI if you don't define a label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position</td>
<td>Defines the position of the facet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purpose: #STANDARD</td>
<td>Defines the purpose of the facet. Can be omitted in most cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type: #CHART_REFERENCE</td>
<td>Defines the type of the facet. Charts can only be displayed in facets of type: #CHART_REFERENCE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetQualifier</td>
<td>Unique identifier. Referenced by subannotation qualifier of @UI.chart annotation in targetElement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetElement</td>
<td>Specifies where the data for the chart is retrieved from.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**iNote**

Charts can only be displayed in facets with purpose: #STANDARD. Charts are not supported in facets with purpose: #HEADER.

### Aggregating Data for the Chart

To aggregate data, you have to use the `@Aggregation.default` annotation. In our example, we use this annotation to aggregate all flight prices and to convert them accordingly. We also use the annotation to aggregate the number of distinct bookings. For more information on aggregating data, see Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps [page 612].

```abap
define view Z_C_BOOKING_R
  as select from /dmo/booking as Booking
  ...
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'TargetCurrency'
  @Aggregation.default: #SUM
  CURRENCY_CONVERSION( 
    amount => Booking.flight_price,
    source_currency => Booking.currency_code,
    target_currency => cast('EUR' as abap.cuky),
    exchange_rate_date => cast('20200420' as abap.dats),
    error_handling => 'SET_TO_NULL' ) as ConvertedFlightPrice,
  _Customer.CountryCode as CountryCode,
  @Aggregation.referenceElement: ['BookingID']
  @Aggregation.default: #COUNT_DISTINCT
  cast(1 as abap.int4) as DistinctBookings,
  ...
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Common Tasks

724  PUBLIC
iNote

@Aggregation annotations are not permitted in metadata extensions. Therefore you have to place these annotations directly into your CDS view.

Defining the Chart itself

See the sample code below for a better look on how the chart itself is defined. Note that you must place this annotation in the entity previously specified by targetElement or its respective metadata extension.

```json
@UI.chart: [{
  qualifier: 'Chart1', //refers to targetQualifier defined in chart facet in Z_C_TRAVEL_UI
  title: 'Flight Prices of this Travel by Airline',
  chartType: #COMBINATION_DUAL,
  dimensions: [ 'AirlineID'],
  measures: [ 'ConvertedFlightPrice', 'DistinctBookings'],
  measureAttributes: [ {measure: 'ConvertedFlightPrice', role: #AXIS_1},
    {measure: 'DistinctBookings', role: #AXIS_2} ],
  dimensionAttributes: [ {dimension: 'AirlineID', role: #SERIES} ],
  description: 'Chart shows flight prices of travel by the airlines used per each booking.'
}]
...
annotate view Z_UI_BOOKING_U with {
  ...
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subannotation Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>title</td>
<td>Defines the title of the chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>References the targetQualifier we set in the facet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chartType</td>
<td>Defines the type of the chart. There is a wide variety of chart types available. For more information on chart types, see Chart Types [page 726].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimensions</td>
<td>Defines the dimensions of the chart. Different chart types require different quantities of dimensions. For more information on dimensions and corresponding chart types, see Chart Types [page 726].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measures</td>
<td>Defines the measures of the chart. Different chart types require different quantities of measures. For more information on measures and corresponding chart types, see Chart Types [page 726].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measureAttributes</td>
<td>Defines which measure will be shown on which axis. #AXIS_1 is the left axis, #AXIS_2 is the right axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimensionAttributes</td>
<td>Defines which dimension will be the primary on the UI. #CATEGORY is the primary dimension, #CATEGORY2 is the secondary dimension. Note that we do not use dimensionAttributes in this example, because we only use one dimension.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.4.2.3.4.1 Chart Types

Get an overview of all currently supported chart types within CDS and their required dimension/measures.

**Chart Types for Data Visualization**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chart Type</th>
<th>Required Dimensions</th>
<th>Required Measures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_STACKED</td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_STACKED_100</td>
<td>Note: AREA, AREA_STACKED and AREA_STACKED_100 have the same result as COLUMN, COLUMN_STACKED and COLUMN_STACKED_100 on the UI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AREA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AREA_STACKED</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AREA_STACKED_100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAR</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAR_STACKED</td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAR_STACKED_100</td>
<td>Note: HORIZONTAL_AREA, HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED and HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED_100 have the same result as BAR, BAR_STACKED and BAR_STACKED_100 on the UI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_AREA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DONUT</td>
<td>Note: Determines by what the sections are segmented</td>
<td>Note: Determines size of segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCATTER</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUBBLE</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 3+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBINATION</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBINATION_STACKED</td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBINATION_DUAL</td>
<td>Axis: y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chart Type</td>
<td>Required Dimensions</td>
<td>Required Measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_STACKED_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLUMN_STACKED_DUAL_100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBINATION_STACKED_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINE_DUAL</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 2+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION</td>
<td>Axis: y</td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_STACKED</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAR_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAR_STACKED_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAR_STACKED_DUAL_100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_STACKED_DUAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAT_MAP</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note: Determines the shade of color</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BULLET</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axis: y</td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERTICAL_BULLET</td>
<td>Dimensions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
<td>Axis: y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WATERFALL</td>
<td>Directions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
<td>Axis: y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORIZONTAL_WATERFALL</td>
<td>Directions: 1+</td>
<td>Measures: 1+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Axis: y</td>
<td>Axis: x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Complete UI Annotations Example Code

Working Example Code for the use of UI annotations in CDS.

#### Metadata Extension for Main CDS View

**Z_C_TRAVEL_R**

```abap
@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI: { headerInfo: {
  typeName: 'Object Page - Title',
  title: { value: 'TravelID' }, // Defines the value shown in
  typeNamePlural: 'List Report - Table Header'
}
}

annotate view Z_C_TRAVEL_R with {
  // FACET SECTION
  @UI.facet: {
    // Header Facet (Object Page):
    { id: 'HeaderFacet',
      purpose: #HEADER,
      type: #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
      label: 'Object Page - Header Facet',
      targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup:HeaderItems', // Refers to lineItems
      position: 10 },
    // Body Facets (Object Page)
    // Facet for chart - charts can only be displayed in facets
    { id: 'Chart1-ID', // Facet for our Chart with type
      "#CHART_REFERENCE",
      purpose: #STANDARD,
      type: #CHART_REFERENCE,
      label: 'Chart facet',
      targetQualifier: 'Chart1',
      targetElement: '_Booking', // Specifies where the data is
      retrieved from
      position: 1
    },
    // Facet 1 - Parent (collection) for Fieldgroup 1 and Fieldgroup 2
    { id: 'Facet1-ID',
      type: #COLLECTION,
      label: 'Facet 1 - Customer & Travel Data',
      position: 10 },
    // Facet for Fieldgroup 1 - nested inside Facet 1
    { id: 'Fieldgroup1-ID',
      type: #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
      label: 'Fieldgroup 1 - Customer Data',
      parentId: 'Facet1-ID', // Places this facet into 'Facet 1'
      targetElement: '_Customer', // Specifies where the data is
      retrieved from - UI annotations must be defined in the respective target
```
targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup1',
position: 10 },

// Facet for Fieldgroup 2 - nested inside Facet 1
{ id: 'Fieldgroup2-ID',
type: #FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE,
label: 'Fieldgroup 2 - Travel Data',
parentID: 'Facet1-ID', // Places this facet into 'Facet 1'
targetQualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', // No targetElement defined -
Default target is the entity in which the facet is defined
position: 20 },

// Facet 2

{ id: 'Facet2-ID',
type: #LINEITEM_REFERENCE, // Facet shows the
referenced items in a list report
label: 'Facet 2 - Bookings',
targetQualifier: 'Facet2',
position: 20,
targetElement: '_Booking'},

// Facet 3

{ id: 'Facet3-ID',
purpose: #STANDARD,
type: #IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE, // Refers to elements
annotated with '@UI.identification' in the element list below
label: 'Facet 3 - Overview and Comments',
position: 30 }

// ELEMENT LIST
@UI: { lineItem: [
{ position: 10, importance: #HIGH } ],
identification: [
{ position: 10 } ],
selectionField: [
{ position: 10 } ],
fieldGroup: [
{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup:HeaderItems', position: 10 } ] }

TravelID;
@UI: { lineItem: [
{ position: 20, importance: #HIGH, label: 'Agency' } ],
identification: [
{ position: 20, label: 'Agency' } ],
selectionField: [
{ position: 20 } ],
fieldGroup: [
{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup:HeaderItems', position: 20 } ] }

AgencyID;
@UI: { lineItem: [
{ position: 30, importance: #HIGH, label: 'Customer' } ],
identification: [
{ position: 30, label: 'Customer' } ],
selectionField: [
{ position: 30 } ],
fieldGroup: [
{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', position: 10 } ] }

CustomerID;
@UI: { lineItem: [
{ position: 40, label: 'Start of Travel' } ],
identification: [
{ position: 40, label: 'Start of Travel' } ],
fieldGroup: [
{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', position: 20 } ] }

BeginDate;
@UI: { lineItem: [
{ position: 50, label: 'End of Travel', importance: #MEDIUM } ],
identification: [
{ position: 50, label: 'End of Travel' } ],
fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', position: 10 }]

EndDate;
@UI: { hidden: true, identification: [{ position: 80 }], fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', position: 10 }]

BookingFee;

TotalPrice;
@UI: { identification: [{ position: 70, label: 'Comment' }], fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', position: 10 }]

Memo;
@UI: { lineItem: [{ position: 60, importance: #HIGH }, { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'set_status_booked', label: 'Set to Booked' }], fieldGroup: [{ qualifier: 'Fieldgroup2', position: 10 }]

Status;

Metadata Extension for _Customer

Z_C_CUSTOMER_R

@Metadata.layer: #CORE
annotate view Z_C_CUSTOMER_R with
{
    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 05}]
    Street;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 10}] // Using gaps between position numbering for easier modification later on
    CustomerID;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 20}]
    FirstName;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 30}]
    LastName;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 40}]
    Title;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 50}]
    PostalCode;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 60}]
    City;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 70}]
    CountryCode;

    @UI.fieldGroup: [{qualifier: 'Fieldgroup1', position: 80}]

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Common Tasks
Metadata Extension for _Booking

Z_C_BOOKING_R

@Metadata.layer: #CORE
@UI.chart: [{
    qualifier: 'Chart1',   //refers to targetQualifier defined in chart facet in
    Z_C_TRAVEL_UI
    title: 'Flight Prices of this Travel by Airline',
    chartType: #COMBINATION_DUAL,
    dimensions: [ 'AirlineID' ],
    measures: [ 'ConvertedFlightPrice', 'DistinctBookings' ],
    measureAttributes: [ { measure: 'ConvertedFlightPrice', role: #AXIS_1 },
                        { measure: 'DistinctBookings', role: #AXIS_2 } ],
    dimensionAttributes: [ { dimension: 'AirlineID', role: #SERIES } ],
    description: 'Chart shows flight prices of travel by the airlines used per each booking.'
}]

annotate view Z_C_BOOKING_R with 
{
    @UI.lineItem:
    [{ qualifier: 'Facet2',
        position: 10,
        label: 'Travel No.',
        hidden: true }]
TravelID;
@UI.lineItem:
[{ qualifier: 'Facet2',
    position: 20,
    label: 'Booking No.' }]
BookingID;
@UI.lineItem:
[{ qualifier: 'Facet2',
    position: 30,
    label: 'Date of Booking' }]
BookingDate;
@UI.lineItem:
[{ qualifier: 'Facet2',
    position: 40,
    label: 'Customer' }]
CustomerID;
@UI.lineItem:
[{ qualifier: 'Facet2',
    position: 50,
    label: 'Airline' }]
AirlineID;
@UI.lineItem:
[{ qualifier: 'Facet2',
    position: 60,
    label: 'Connection No.' }]
ConnectionID;
6.4.2.5  Further Options for Metadata-Driven UIs

6.4.2.5.1  Field Manipulation

Get information about what UI annotations to use to manipulate fields for SAP Fiori UIs.

This chapter describes annotations that influence the appearance exposed fields. When a field is marked with these annotations, it is manipulated no matter in what other annotations the field is used. The reason for this is that annotations for manipulation are self-contained annotations and not properties of other annotations.

For example, when a field is marked with the @UI.masked [page 883] annotation, the field is masked regardless if it is used in a @UI.lineItem [page 890] annotation or a @UI.identification [page 897] annotation.

To manipulate the appearance of fields on SAP Fiori UIs, you can use the annotations explained in the following sections:

- Multi-Line Text [page 732]
- Field Masking [page 733]
- Interaction with Other Annotations [page 734]

6.4.2.5.1.1  Multi-Line Text

Get information about what UI annotations to use to display fields as multi-line text on SAP Fiori UIs.

You can use the following annotation to mark a field to be displayed by a control that supports multi-line input, for example a text area:

- @UI.multiLineText [page 884]

```sample_code
... 
define view Product as select from ... { 
@UI.identification: [ { position: 10 } ]
key ProductID,
```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Common Tasks
6.4.2.5.1.2 Field Masking

Get information about what UI annotations to use to mask fields, for example for password input, on SAP Fiori UIs.

In some cases, data of fields need to be consumed by the client, but must not be visible on the UI. This field behavior is required when users need to enter passwords, for example.

You can use the following annotation to mark a field to not to be displayed in clear text by the client because, for example, it contains sensitive data:

- @UI.Masked [page 883]

This annotation does not influence how data is transferred. If a field is marked with the @UI.masked [page 883] annotation, the data belonging to this field is still transferred to the client like any other property in clear text.

Sample Code

```abhap
... define view Destination as select from ... { 
  @UI.identification: [ { position: 10 } ]
  key DestinationID,
  ...

  @UI.identification: [ { position: 20 } ]
  AuthType, -- None, Basic, SSO, ...

  @UI.identification: [ { position: 30 } ]
  BasicAuthUserName,
  @UI.identification: [ { position: 40 } ]
  @UI.masked
  BasicAuthPassword,
  ...
}
```

Related Information

Field Manipulation [page 732]
Field Masking [page 733]
Interaction with Other Annotations [page 734]
Hiding Fields on the Object Page [page 718]
6.4.2.5.1.3 Interaction with Other Annotations

Get information about how to provide interaction between annotations.

In addition to UI annotations, you can use model-specific annotations that affect the desired client behavior. You can implement, for example, unit-currency-mappings or ID-text-mappings. These model-specific annotations can be evaluated by the client and no additional UI annotations are required.

Example of interaction between CDS annotations

Example

In the following example, the field CurrencyCode is marked with a @Semantics.currencyCode and is referenced by field GrossAmount. This means that the field GrossAmount is always displayed with the corresponding currency. The field CurrencyCode does not need to be exposed explicitly.

Sample Code

```java
... define view ZExample_SalesOrder as select from sepm_cds_sales_order as so
{   @UI.identification: [ { position: 10 } ]
   key so.sales_order_id as SalesOrder,
   @Semantics.currencyCode: true
   so.currency_code as CurrencyCode,
   @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
   @UI.identification: [ { position: '20' } ]
   so.gross_amount as GrossAmount,
```
6.4.2.5.1.4 Inheritance of Annotations

Get information about what property to use to prevent elements from being inherited from an underlying CDS view.

By default, all UI annotation elements are inherited from the underlying CDS view. You can explicitly disable this behavior. You can use the following property to prevent a UI annotation element from being inherited:

- `exclude`

  The following sample code depicts the CDS view `ZP_SalesOrder` that inherits elements from the underlying CDS view `SEPM_CDS_SALES_ORDER`, and uses the UI annotation `@UI.identification`:

  ```
  define view ZP_SalesOrder as select from sepm_cds_sales_order as so {
    @UI.identification: [ { position: 10 } ]
    key so.sales_order_id as SalesOrder,
    @UI.identification: [ { position: 20 } ]
    so.customer.company_name as CompanyName,
    ...
  }
  ```

  The following sample code depicts the CDS view `ZI_SalesOrder` that inherits elements from the underlying CDS view `ZP_SalesOrder`. In this view, the element `key SalesOrder` is inherited from the underlying CDS view as UI annotation `@UI.identification` by default. The element `so.customer.company_name as CompanyName`, however, is not inherited as UI annotation `@UI.identification` because of the property `exclude`:

  ```
  define view ZI_SalesOrder as select from ZP_SalesOrder as so {
    key SalesOrder,
    @UI.identification: [ { exclude } ]
    so.customer.company_name as CompanyName,
    ...
  }
  ```
6.4.2.5.2  Data Points

Get an overview of how to use data points to display criticality, trends, and references to people and time periods on SAP Fiori UIs.

In some cases, you want to visualize a single point of data that typically is a number that can be enriched with business-relevant data but may also be textual, for example a status value.

**Example of data points**

You can use the following UI annotation to define a single point of data:

- `@UI.dataPoint` [page 856]

  You can, for example, express if a high or a low value is desired, or if a value is increasing or decreasing. The simplest variant of the UI annotation `@UI.dataPoint` [page 856] consists of the `title` property.

```
... define view ZExample_SalesOrdersByCustomer as select from ... as so {
  key so.buyer_guid as BuyerGuid,
  @Semantics.currencyCode: true
  so.currency_code as CurrencyCode,

  @UI.dataPoint: { title: 'Gross Amount' }
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  so.actual_amount as ActualAmount
```

**Gross Amount**

Gross Amount per Customer

34.5 kEUR

Reference Period: 2015 Q3

Responsible: John Doe

**Example of simple variant of data point**

In the following example, only the title is exposed to the UI.
Related Information

Criticality [page 737]
Trends [page 738]
Trend-Criticality Calculation [page 740]
Person Responsible and Reference Period [page 743]
DataField Type: #AS_DATAPoint [page 745]

6.4.2.5.2.1 Criticality

Get information about how to use data points to display criticality on SAP Fiori UIs.

A more usable variant of the UI annotation `@ui.dataPoint` [page 856] also contains information about the criticality, the trend, and the name of a person responsible.

You can use the sub-annotation `@dataPoint.criticality` [page 860] to express if a value is positive or negative, for example.

You can use the sub-annotation `@dataPoint.trend` [page 863] to express if a value has decreased or increased, for example.

In this case, the properties `targetValue`, `criticality`, and `trend` are already evaluated in the CDS view. In the CDS view, the target value is already calculated, and if the current value thus is negative or positive, and if the current value has improved or declined, for example. These values are only referred to from the `@ui.dataPoint` [page 856] annotation.

Data can be defined as being either positive, critical, or negative. These data can be statuses, for example.

You can use the following sub-annotation to highlight criticality:

- `ui.dataPoint.criticality` [page 860]
  You define this UI annotation at view level. It refers to the elements that are to be used in the chart. Additionally, you can provide a title and description.
  The table below lists the values that are valid for the UI annotation `@ui.dataPoint.criticality` [page 860], and shows how these values are visualized on the UI:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Visualization in Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Related Information

- [Data Points](#)
- [Trends](#)
- [Trend-Criticality Calculation](#)
- [Person Responsible and Reference Period](#)
- [DataField Type: #AS_DATAPoint](#)

### 6.4.2.5.2.2 Trends

Get information about how to use data points to display trends on SAP Fiori UIs.

Data can be defined as being either increasing, decreasing, or stable. These data can be measured over a certain period of time and visualized on the UI.

You can use the following sub-annotations to highlight trends:

- `@UI.dataPoint.trend` [page 863]

**Example**

For an example, see the example code in section [Criticality](#) linked below.
Example

The table below lists the values that are valid for the UI annotation `@UI.dataPoint.trendCalculation` [page 863], and shows how these values are visualized on the UI:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Visualization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Strong up</td>
<td>↑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>↕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sideways</td>
<td>→</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Strong down</td>
<td>↓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the trend calculation, the flag `isRelativeDifference` indicates whether the absolute or the relative difference between the actual value and the reference value is used to calculate the trend.

```
define view ZExample_SalesOrdersByCustomer as select from ... as so {
key so.buyer_guid as BuyerGuid,
@Semantics.currencyCode: true
so.currency_code as CurrencyCode,
```
@UI.dataPoint: {
  title: 'Gross Amount',
  //...
  trendCalculation: {
    referenceValue: 'ReferenceAmount', -- Reference to element
    isRelativeDifference: true,        -- Comparison of ratio
    strongUpDifference: 1.25,
    upDifference: 1.1,
    downDifference: 0.9,
    strongDownDifference: 0.75
  }
}
@Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
so.target_amount as TargetAmount,
@Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
so.reference_amount as ReferenceAmount

Related Information

Data Points [page 736]
Criticality [page 737]
Trend-Criticality Calculation [page 740]
Person Responsible and Reference Period [page 743]
DataField Type: #AS_DATAPoint [page 745]

6.4.2.5.2.3 Trend-Criticality Calculation

Get information about how to use data points to calculate and display trend-criticality relations.

Another way to specify properties of criticality and trend is to define rules for criticality and trend within the UI annotation @UI.dataPoint [page 856].
You can use the following sub-annotations to calculate trends and derive from these calculation the criticality of data:

- @UI.dataPoint.trendCalculation [page 863]
- @UI.dataPoint.criticalityCalculation [page 863]

**Example of visualization of trend-criticality calculation**

**Gross Amount**

Gross Amount per Customer

**34.5 kEUR**

Reference Period: 2015 Q3

Responsible: John Doe

Sample Code

```plaintext
... 
define view ZExample_SalesOrdersByCustomer as select from ... as so {
  key so.buyer_guid as BuyerGuid,
  @Semantics.currencyCode: true
  so.currency_code as CurrencyCode,

  @UI.dataPoint: {
    title: 'Gross Amount',
    targetValue: 9216,
    criticalityCalculation: {
      improvementDirection: #TARGET,
      toleranceRangeLowValue: 9200,
      toleranceRangeHighValue: 9300,
      deviationRangeLowValue: 8800,
      deviationRangeHighValue: 9700
    },
    trendCalculation: {
      referenceValue: 'ReferenceAmount', -- Reference to element
      isRelativeDifference: false, -- Comparison of difference
      strongUpDifference: 100,
      upDifference: 10,
      downDifference: -10,
      strongDownDifference: -100
    }
  }
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  so.target_amount as TargetAmount,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  so.reference_amount as ReferenceAmount
}
```
For the criticality calculation, the value of the property `improvementDirection` is crucial because this value determines what further properties are needed. If, for example, the value is `#MINIMIZE`, the properties `ToleranceRangeHighValue` and `DeviationRangeHighValue` are relevant.

Example of improvementDirection: `#TARGET`

Example of improvementDirection: `#MINIMIZE`

Example of improvementDirection: `#MAXIMIZE`
The properties of the sub-annotation `@UI.dataPoint.criticalityCalculation` can have either constant values or derive values from referencing to other elements. If a property references to another element, the suffix `Element` must be added to the name of the property.

**Note**

This also applies to the properties of the sub-annotation `@UI.dataPoint.trendCalculation`, except for the property `referenceValue`. This property always references to another element.

**Example**

`toleranceRangeLowValue` becomes `toleranceRangeLowValueElement`.

---

**Related Information**

- Data Points [page 736]
- Criticality [page 737]
- Trends [page 738]
- Person Responsible and Reference Period [page 743]
- DataField Type: `#AS_DATAPPOINT` [page 745]

---

### 6.4.2.5.2.4 Person Responsible and Reference Period

Get information about how to use data points to display references to persons responsible and to reference periods on SAP Fiori UIs.

You can add the following properties to the UI annotation `@UI.dataPoint`:

- `referencePeriod`
- `responsibleName`

You can define both properties either in the UI annotation directly, or in another element and reference from the UI annotation to this element.

**Example**

In the following example, the data point has a static reference period and a static person responsible. The value of the gross amount is formatted with the `valueFormat` property. The value is thus scaled with factor 1000 and is displayed with one decimal place, this is the value 34500 EUR would be displayed as `34.5 kEUR`. 
Example of visualization of person responsible, reference period, and value format

**Gross Amount**

Gross Amount per Customer

34.5 kEUR

Reference Period: 2015 Q3

Responsible: John Doe

Example of a dynamic reference period is used that is supplied by the following parameters:

- start
- end

These parameters have to be aliased in the element list before they can be used in the `@UI.dataPoint` annotation. The responsible property must refer to a to-one-association. The target entity of this association should contain the contact data of the person responsible.

Sample Code

```
... 
define view ZExample_SalesOrdersByCustomer as select from ... as so { 
  key so.buyer_guid as BuyerGuid, 
  @Semantics.currencyCode: true 
  so.currency_code as CurrencyCode, 
  @UI.dataPoint: { 
    title: 'Gross Amount', 
    description: 'Gross amount per customer', 
    longDescription: 'The gross amount per customer ...', 
    valueFormat: { 
      scaleFactor: 1000, 
      numberOfFractionalDigits: 1 
    }, 
    referencePeriod: { description: '2015 Q3' }, 
    responsibleName: 'John Doe' 
  } 
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode' 
  so.actual_amount as ActualAmount 
}
```
define view ZExample_SalesOrdersByCust
with parameters p_StartDate : abap.dat,
p_EndDate   : abap.dat
as select from ... as so
association [0..1] to Employees as _PersonResponsible
  on _PersonResponsible.EmployeeId = $projection.PersonResponsible
  {
    ...
    $parameters.p_StartDate as StartDate, -- Alias is required for
      annotation
    $parameters.p_EndDate as EndDate,  -- Alias is required for
      annotation
    so.person_responsible as PersonResponsible,
    @Semantics.currencyCode: true
    so.currency_code as CurrencyCode,
  }
@UI.dataPoint: {
    title: 'Gross Amount',
    referencePeriod: {
      start: 'StartDate', -- Reference to element
      end: 'EndDate'      -- Reference to element
    },
    responsible: '_PersonResponsible' -- Reference to association
  }
@Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
@DefaultAggregation: #SUM
so.actual_amount as ActualAmount,
_PersonResponsible
where so.validity_date >= $parameters.p_StartDate
and   so.validity_date <= $parameters.p_EndDate

For a definition of element list, see section Glossary linked below.

Related Information

Data Points [page 736]
Criticality [page 737]
Trends [page 738]
Trend-Criticality Calculation [page 740]
DataField Type: #AS_DATAPOINT [page 745]

6.4.2.5.2.5 DataField Type: #AS_DATAPOINT

Get information about how to use the type #AS_DATAPOINT to refer to other annotations.

The type #AS_DATAPOINT maps to DataFieldForAnnotation. DataFieldForAnnotation is used to refer to other annotations using the Edm.AnnotationPath abstract type. The annotation path must end in vCard.Address or UI.dataPoint.

You can use the following type to reference an exposed data point from dataField-like annotations:

- #AS_DATAPOINT
You use this type to include a microchart in the UI annotation `@UI.lineItem` [page 890], for example.

**Example**

In this example, the UI annotation `@UI.lineItem` [page 890] has to be defined at the same CDS element as the UI annotation `@UI.dataPoint` [page 856] itself.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
... define view ZExample_SalesOrdersByCustomer as select from ... as so {
  key so.buyer_guid as BuyerGuid,
  @Semantics.currencyCode: true
  so.currency_code as CurrencyCode,
  @UI.dataPoint: { title: 'Gross Amount' }
  @UI.lineItem: [ { type: #AS_DATAPOINT } ]
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  so.actual_amount as ActualAmount
}
```

**Related Information**

- Data Points [page 736]
- Criticality [page 737]
- Trends [page 738]
- Trend-Criticality Calculation [page 740]
- Person Responsible and Reference Period [page 743]

### 6.4.2.5.3 Actions

Get information about how to use `dataField` types to provide means of executing actions on SAP Fiori UIs. Actions are directly related to items that you can see in a table on a master-detail floorplan, for example. Users can select items and execute certain actions on the selected items.
Example of action 'Copy' on master-detail floorplan

You can use the following dataField type to expose actions to the client:

- `#FOR_ACTION`
  This property has to be assigned to some arbitrary element. It is thereby irrelevant if the property refers to the element to which the property is assigned.

```abap
define view ZExample_SalesOrder as select from sepm_cds_sales_order as so {
  @UI.lineItem: [ 
    -- Standard Lineitem
    { position: 10 },
    -- Action Lineitem
    { type: #FOR_ACTION, dataAction: 'Copy', label: 'Copy' }
  ]
  key so.sales_order_id as SalesOrder,
...```
6.4.2.5.4 Navigation

Get an overview of how to use dataField types to provide means of navigation on SAP Fiori UIs.

It often is not sufficient to stay on one screen. Users might need to navigate between screens or even to web sites outside an application. You can use the following dataField types to include navigation concepts:

- #WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH [page 748]
  Used for navigation within an application.
- #WITH_URL [page 750]
  Used for navigation from an application to an external web site.
- #FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION [page 752]
  Used for navigation based on an action that is related to a semantic object.

6.4.2.5.4.1 With Navigation Path

Get information about how to provide navigation between UI screens and pages on SAP Fiori UIs.

This navigation type contains either a navigation property or a term cast. The term either is of type Edm.EntityType, a concrete entity type, or a collection of these types.
Example of dataField of type \#WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH

You can use the following dataField type to expose a link to other pages of a UI:

- \#WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH

**Example**

In the following example, CompanyName is displayed as link referring to the association _BusinessPartner.

**Sample Code**

```...
... define view ZExample_SalesOrder as select from sepm_cds_sales_order as so
  association [0..1] to sepm_cds_business_partner as _BusinessPartner
  on $projection.buyer_guid = _BusinessPartner.business_partner_key
  { 
    key so.sales_order_id as SalesOrder,
    so.buyer_guid,
    ...
  }

  @UI.lineItem: [ { 
    position: 20,
```
6.4.2.5.4.2 With URL

Get information about how to provide navigation from SAP Fiori UIs to external web sites, for example. This type navigation type contains a reference to a URL to navigate to specific web sites, for example.
Example of `dataField` of type `#WITH_URL`

You can use the following `dataField` type to display links to external websites:

- `#WITH_URL`

**Example**

In the following example, `CompanyName` is displayed as link referring to the CDS element `WebsiteUrl`.

**Sample Code**

```abap
... define view ZExample_SalesOrder as select from sepm_cds_sales_order as so
{
  key so.sales_order_id as SalesOrder,
  ... 
  @UI.lineItem: [ { 
    position: 20,
    type: #WITH_URL,
    url: 'WebsiteUrl'  -- Reference to element
  } ]
  so.customer.company_name as CompanyName,
} ...```

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Common Tasks
Related Information

Navigation [page 748]
With Navigation Path [page 748]
Based on Intent [page 752]

6.4.2.5.4.3 Based on Intent

Get information about how to provide navigation related on actions that are executed on SAP Fiori UIs.

This navigation type contains an action that is related to a semantic object. This combination of action and semantic object is an intent. The annotation @Consumption.semanticObject [page 761] is required for navigation based on intent. The client decides how to react when this navigation is triggered.
Example of `dataField` of type `#FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION`

You can use the following `dataField` type to expose the intent to navigate without specifying how this navigation is to be resolved:

- `#FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION`

**Example**

In the following example, the intent 'Show' (action) 'BusinessPartner' (semantic object) is expressed. The client can, for example, open a separate application to display the details of the corresponding business partner.

```plaintext
define view ZExample_SalesOrder as select from sepm_cds_sales_order as so
```
6.4.2.5.5 Contact Data

Get information about what UI annotations to use to display contact data on SAP Fiori UIs.

In some cases users of an application need to see contact data, for example, of business partners, customers, or employees.

You can use the following annotation set to inform a client that an entity contains contact information and map the CDS elements to the corresponding address field:

- **@Semantics**
  
  This annotation set contains annotations to inform about telephone numbers, email addresses, names, addresses, and contacts.

**Example**

The following example contains sub-annotations belonging to the annotation set @Semantics. For a complete list, see section Semantics Annotations linked below.

**Sample Code**

```plaintext
... 
define view Employees as select from ...
{
  key EmployeeId,
  @Semantics.name.givenName
  FirstName,
  @Semantics.name.additionalName
  MiddleName,
  @Semantics.name.familyName
  LastName,
  ... 
} 
```
Related Information

Semantics Annotations [page 804]
7 Reference

7.1 CDS Annotations

The following list summarizes SAP annotations of the Data Definition Language (DDL) of ABAP CDS that are relevant in the context of ABAP RESTful programming model and released for ABAP Cloud Platform.

SAP CDS annotations are evaluated by SAP frameworks and can be either ABAP annotations or framework-specific annotations.

**ABAP CDS - ABAP Annotations**

CDS annotations that are evaluated by ABAP runtime:

- AbapCatalog Annotations
- AccessControl Annotations
- ClientHandling Annotations
- EndUserText Annotations
- Environment Annotations
- MappingRole Annotations
- Metadata Annotations
- Semantics Annotations

See also: ABAP CDS - View Annotations (ABAP Keyword Documentation)

→ Tip

To access help for an ABAP annotation, position the cursor on the relevant annotation in the DDL editor and choose [F1].

**Framework-Specific Annotations**

Framework-specific CDS annotations (as a rule) are exposed for OData and evaluated during runtime.

- Aggregation Annotations [page 757]
- AccessControl Annotations [page 759]
- Consumption Annotations [page 760]
- ObjectModel Annotations [page 764]
- OData Annotations [page 767]
- Search Annotations [page 800]
7.1.1 Aggregation Annotations

Specifies aggregation behavior on element level.

Scope and Definition

```plaintext
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
annotation Aggregation
{
  default: String(30) enum
  {
     NONE;
     SUM;
     MIN;
     MAX;
     AVG;
     COUNT_DISTINCT;
     NOP;
     FORMULA;
   }
  referenceElement : array of ElementRef;
};
```

Usage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aggregation.Default</td>
<td>When the Aggregation annotation has been specified for an element, the corresponding elements are used as so called measures (elements that can be aggregated) in analytical scenarios. These measures are aggregated automatically with the Aggregation. In SQL SELECT statements you have to specify the aggregation behavior explicitly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scope:** [ELEMENT]  
**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** SADL
### Annotation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUM, MAX, MIN, AVG</td>
<td>All these values determine the aggregation of the measure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COUNT_DISTINCT</td>
<td>Counts the number of distinct values of the annotated element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In combination with the annotation
@Aggregation.ReferenceElement: ['elementRef'], you can count the number of distinct values of another element that is referenced.

### Note

Can only be used in combination with
@Aggregation.Default: #COUNT_DISTINCT.

### Example

The example demonstrates how you can use the aggregate functions on measure elements.

```plaintext
define view /DMO/I_TRAVEL_Aggr as select from /dmo/travel
{
  key travel_id             as TravelID,
  agency_id             as AgencyID,
  customer_id           as CustomerID,
  @Aggregation.default: #MIN
  begin_date            as BeginDate,
  @Aggregation.default: #MAX
  end_date              as EndDate,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  @Aggregation.default: #SUM
  booking_fee           as BookingFee,
  @Semantics.amount.currencyCode: 'CurrencyCode'
  @Aggregation.default: #AVG
  total_price           as TotalPrice,
  @Semantics.currencyCode: true
  currency_code         as CurrencyCode,
  @Aggregation.referenceElement: ['CustomerID']
  @Aggregation.default: #COUNT_DISTINCT
  cast(1 as abap.int4 ) as DistinctCustomers
}
```
7.1.2 AccessControl Annotations

Enable application developers to define how the authorization check for a CDS entity is executed

Scope and Definition

```plaintext
@Scope: [#VIEW, #TABLE_FUNCTION]
AccessControl.authorizationCheck : String(20) enum { NOT_REQUIRED; NOT_ALLOWED; CHECK; PRIVILEGED_ONLY; } default #CHECK;
```

Usage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AccessControl.authorizationCheck</td>
<td>This element defines the behavior of the authorization check.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scope:** [#VIEW]

**Engine Behavior:** The runtime and design-time engines handle the authorization check based on the value of the element.

**Values:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#NOT_REQUIRED</td>
<td>During the authorization runtime, an authorization check is executed if a DCL role exists for the entity. If no role exists there is no check and no protection. This behavior is the same behavior at runtime as for value #CHECK. However in this case it is intended by the developer that no role exists. During development, no warning occurs when activating the entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#NOT_ALLOWED</td>
<td>During the authorization runtime, no authorization check is executed. During development, a warning occurs if a developer activates a role for an entity, which has this annotation value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#CHECK</td>
<td>During the authorization runtime, an authorization check is executed if a DCL role exists for the entity. If no role exists there is no check and no protection. During development, a warning occurs if a developer activates the entity and no DCL role exists for the entity. This value is the default value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE
The value `#NOT_REQUIRED` is recommended for entities for which no authorization checks are planned yet, but might be needed by the developer or customer later. To prohibit roles for the entity, use the value `#NOT_ALLOWED`.

**Example**

When the developer activates the following DDL document, since an authorization check is not required, ABAP development tools do not produce a warning. It does not matter whether a role exists for the entity or not.

At runtime, if there is a role for the entity, then ABAP performs an authorization check with the role. If there is no role, there is no check and no protection for the entity.

```abap
@AbapCatalog.sqlViewName: 'DEMO_CDS_PRJCTN'
@AccessControl.authorizationCheck: #NOT_REQUIRED
define view demo_cds_spfli
  as select from spfli
    { key spfli.carrid,
      key spfli.connid,
      spfli.cityfrom,
      spfli.cityto }
```

### 7.1.3 Consumption Annotations

Define a specific behavior that relates to the consumption of CDS content through domain-specific frameworks.

**Usage**

Via these annotations, the specific behavior is defined which is related to the consumption of CDS content. This metadata makes no assumptions about the concrete consumption technology/infrastructure, but it is applicable across multiple consumption technologies (e.g. Analytics or OData).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumption.hidden</td>
<td>Boolean (true, false) (default false) This annotation prevents fields from being exposed by OData. Therefore, the field will not be exposed to UIs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scope:** `#ELEMENT, #PARAMETER`
**Annotation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumption.default Value:</td>
<td>This annotation can be used on action importing parameters to define default values for the action consumption via UI consumption. The specified value in the annotation is then displayed as default value when executing the action on the UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumption.semanticObject:</td>
<td>This annotation leverages enhanced interoperability across applications. The semantic semantic object that is defined in the Fiori Launchpad must be specified as the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumption.valueHelpDefinition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.addlBinding[]</td>
<td>Defines an additional binding condition for the value help on the same target value help provider entity for filtering the value help result list and/or returning values from the selected value help record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>element</td>
<td>Specifies the element in the target value help provider entity that is linked to the local element or parameter for the additional binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localElement</td>
<td>Specifies the local element that is linked to the element or parameter in the target value help provider entity for the additional binding.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

SAP Fiori has introduced the concept of intent-based navigation, whereby an intent is a combination of `<semanticObject> <action>`. A `semanticObject` annotation is used in SAP Fiori UIs to dynamically derive navigation targets for the annotated view as a source.

**Scope:** #ELEMENT, #PARAMETER, #ENTITY

For more information, see [Based on Intent](page 752).

Annotations belonging to **Consumption.valueHelpDefinition** directly establish a relationship to an entity that acts as a value help provider.

The value help can be consumed without an association to the target value help provider.

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by ABAP Runtime Environment

This annotation defines whether the values of the value help provider view are automatically retrieved without setting a filter when invoking the value help, or whether they must be explicitly requested.

The annotation must be used in the value help provider entity.

**Scope:** #ENTITY
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>localParameter</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the local parameter that is linked to the element or parameter in the target value help provider entity for the additional binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>parameter</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the parameter in the target value help provider entity that is linked to the local element or parameter for the additional binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>usage</strong></td>
<td>The binding may either specify an additional filter-criterion on the value help list (<strong>FILTER</strong>), or an additional result mapping for the selected value help record (<strong>RESULT</strong>) or a combination thereof (<strong>FILTER_AND_RESULT</strong>). If not specified explicitly the usage is <strong>FILTER_AND_RESULT</strong>. If <strong>distinctValues</strong> is set to true, additional bindings must specify the usage as <strong>FILTER</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.distinctValues**

- Specifies whether the value help result list shall only contain distinct values for the annotated field or parameter. If set to true all mappings will be used for filtering, but only the value for the field/parameter which the value help was requested for will be returned by the value help.

**Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.entity[]**

- Defines the binding for the value help to the value help providing entity. It requires specification of the entity and the element providing the value help for the annotated element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>element</th>
<th>Value: elementRef</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Value: entityRef</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.label**

- This annotation contains a language-dependent text that is used to label the value list, if more than one value help is assigned to one element.

If not specified the label of the value help binding element is used.

**Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.presentationVariantQualifier**

- The presentation variant indicates how the value help result should be displayed.
### Annotation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consumption.valueHelpDefinition.qualifier</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uniquely identifies alternative values for an annotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Omission means the OData term is applied without explicit qualifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If more than one value help is defined for one element, a qualifier must be used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example 1

The **Consumption.valueHelpDefinition** annotation is used to define a value help for the annotated element. The value help provider can be a different CDS entity without association. To consume the value help, the value help provider entity must be added to the respective OData service.

You can filter the available value help options by defining an additional binding. In the following example case, only the business partners are displayed that use the same currency code.

#### Sample Code

```
DEFINE VIEW BuPaView AS SELECT FROM db_bp
{
  key bp.bp_id                       as BusinessPartnerID,
  ...                                
  bp.currency_code                  as CurrencyCode,
  bp.company_name                   as CompanyName,
}
DEFINE VIEW SOView AS SELECT FROM db_so as so
{
  so.sales_order_id as SalesOrderID,
  ...                                
  so.CurrencyCode as CurrCode,
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ entity : { name    :
                                            'I_AIVS_BusinessPartner',
                                            element : 'BusinessPartnerID'},
                                          additionalBinding : [{ localElement : 'CurrCode',
                                                                   element : 'CurrencyCode',
                                                                   ]}
                                    ]
                                  }
         _BusinessPartner.BusinessPartnerID
```

### Example 2

#### Sample Code

```define view sales_order_vh as select from SalesOrder as so
{
  ...
  @Consumption.valueHelpDefinition: [{ qualifier: 'ValueHelp2',
                                            entity : { name    :
                                            'I_BusinessPartner',
                                            element : 'BusinessPartnerID'
                                              },
                                          label : 'Business Partner Value Help'
                                        },
                                      { entity : { name    :
```

---

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Reference

PUBLIC 763
7.1.4 ObjectModel Annotations

Provide definitions of text-related aspects of the CDS-based data model.

Scope and Definition

```plaintext
@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
@API.state: [ #RELEASED_FOR_SAP_CLOUD_PLATFORM ]
text
{
  element: array of ElementRef;
  association: AssociationRef;
  control: String(60) enum { NONE; ASSOCIATED_TEXT_UI_HIDDEN; };
  reference
    { association: AssociationRef; }
};
@Scope: [#VIEW, #CUSTOM_ENTITY]
query
{
  implementedBy: String(255);
};
@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
virtualElementCalculatedBy: String(255);
```

Usage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ObjectModel.</td>
<td>Establishes the conjunction of a field with its descriptive language-independent texts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td><strong>Scope: [#ELEMENT]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text[ ]</td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL</strong> - First text field listed in the annotation array will be handled as descriptive text of the annotated field in OData exposure scenarios.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **ObjectModel.text.association** | Defines the associated view, which provides textual descriptions for the annotated field. **Scope:** [ELEMENT] **Evaluation Runtime (Engine):**  
  - **SADL** - Enriches the OData entity type of the view with the textual description of the target view applying an automated language filtering. The name of the auto-generated text property will be composed out of the annotated field name and the constant suffix _Text. This OData property is mapped onto the first text field of the associated target CDS view annotated with @Semantics.text:true.  
  - **Analytic Manager** - Uses the associated view as TEXT view for the annotated field. |
| **ObjectModel.text.control** |  
  - **Value:** `{ ASSOCIATED_TEXT_UI_HIDDEN }`  
  - **Scope:** [VIEW, ELEMENT]  
  - Suppresses the text element of the text association to be visible on the UI.  
  - **Value:** `{ NONE }`  
  - **Scope:** [ELEMENT]  
  - Overrules the annotation ObjectModel.text.control: `{ ASSOCIATED_TEXT_UI_HIDDEN }` that is specified on entity level. For the annotated element the text element of the text association is visible on the UI. |
| **ObjectModel.text.reference.association** | **Scope:** [VIEW, ELEMENT]  
  - **Value:** 'AssocRef'  
  - The annotations define an associated view which defines textual description for the annotated field.  
  - The corresponding code field in the associated view is defined by the on-condition of the association. |
| **ObjectModel.query.implementedBy:** | **Scope:** [VIEW, CUSTOM_ENTITY]  
  - References the query implementation class for the unmanaged query.  
  - This annotation is evaluated when the unmanaged query is executed whereby the query implementation class is called to perform the query.  
  - To reference the query implementation class, ABAP: must be added to the string reference.  
  - **Example**  
    ```  
    @ObjectModel.query.implementedBy: 'ABAP:<query_impl_class>'.  
    ```  
  - **Note**  
    As of SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment 1908, this annotation substitutes the deprecated annotation @QueryImplementedBy: ''. |
ObjectModel. virtualElementCalculated By:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ObjectModel.</td>
<td>References the calculation class for the annotated virtual element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtualElementCalculated</td>
<td>This annotation defines the code exit for virtual elements. The query</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By:</td>
<td>framework is left during runtime to retrieve the values for the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>virtual element in the calculation class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope:[ELEMENT]</td>
<td>To reference the calculation class, ABAP: must be added to the string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

**Example 1**

This example demonstrates how you can define language-dependent texts with a text association.

```
(define view I_Material
    association [0..*] to I_MaterialText as _Text ...
    @ObjectModel.text.association: '_Text'
    key Material,
    _Text, ...
)

declare view I_MaterialText ...
    key Material,
    @Semantics.language: true
    key Language,
    @Semantics.text: true
    MaterialName,
    @Semantics.text: true
    MaterialDescription, ...
)
```

**Example 2**

This example demonstrates how you can define language-independent texts within the same view.

```
declare view I_Plant ...
    @ObjectModel.text.element: ['PlantName']
    key Plant,
    @Semantics.text: true
    PlantName, ...
)
7.1.5 OData Annotations

Capture OData-related aspects to expose data gained from a CDS entity in an OData service.

Scope and Definition

```
Annotation OData
{
  @Scope:[#ELEMENT]
  etag : Boolean default true;

  @Scope:[#ENTITY]
  entitySet
  {
    name : String(30);
  }
  entityType
  {
    name : String(128);
  }
  action: array of {
    name : String(128);
    localName : String(30);
  }
  property
  {
  }
  @Scope:[#SERVICE]
  schema
  {
    name : String(128);
  }
}
```

Usage

OData annotations define OData specific properties in backend development objects.

Runtime:
- Exposed for OData
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Local Name |...
| External Name |...
|...

PUBLIC

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Reference
A
n
o
t
i
a
l
v
a
l
u
e
D
c
r
p
n
o
n
a
me
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
An instance of a value type 

- for an arbitrary OData service
entity set in the service definition by using

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Reference
A
not
V

dat
i
t
f
th
t
y

t
e
n
i
y
tp
f
ar
bi
d
ar

OD

sa

v

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model Reference
D
A
n
o
n
a
n
V
a
l
u
D
e
c
r
i
p
i
o
n
th
e
n
a
m
o
f
t
h
e
e
n
i
t
y
t
y
t
p
i
n
t
h
e
m
a
t
a
f
786
P U B L I C
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model
Reference
SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

Reference

PUBLIC 787
D
 Aer
nc
or
ti
alp
tä
ill
dem
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
ap
.p
.num
(8);
}
A not action value test the external name of CD Selection parameters.
This annotation is used in service definition.
7.1.6 Search Annotations

This annotation marks a view as searchable. You define the fuzziness threshold as well as the specifics of term mappings at element level.

Scope and Definition

```java
@Scope:[#ENTITY]
Annotation Search
{
    searchable : Boolean default true;
}
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
Annotation Search
{
    defaultSearchElement : Boolean default true;
    ranking : String(6) enum { HIGH = 'high'; MEDIUM = 'medium'; LOW = 'low'; } default #MEDIUM;
    fuzzinessThreshold : Decimal(3,2);
    termMappingDictionary : String(128);
    termMappingListId : array of String(32);
}
```
### Usage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Search.searchable**        | Defines if a CDS entity is generally relevant for search scenarios. This annotation must be set in case other search-related annotations are being defined for elements of the respective CDS entity. The annotation offers a general switch and a means to quickly detect whether a view is relevant or not.  
**Scope:** #Entity  
**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by Enterprise Search and SADL  
**Values:**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Boolean (true, false)        | Defines whether a view is relevant for search or not.  
**Default:** true                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| **Search.defaultSearchElement** | Specifies that the element is to be considered in a freestyle search (for example a `SELECT...`) where no columns are specified.  
Usually, such a search must not operate on all elements — for performance reasons, and because not all elements (e.g. internal keys) do qualify for this kind of access.  
**Scope:** #Element  
**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by Enterprise Search and SADL  
**Values:**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Boolean (true, false)        | Defines whether the element is to be considered in a freestyle search.  
**Default:** true                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| **Search.ranking**           | Specifies how relevant the values of an element are for ranking, if the freestyle search terms match the element value.  
**Scope:** #Element  
**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by Enterprise Search  
**Values:**  
| Value                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| HIGH                         | The element is of high relevancy; this holds usually for ID and their descriptions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| MEDIUM                       | The element is of medium relevancy; this holds usually for other, important element. This is the default.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| LOW                          | Although the element is relevant for freestyle search, a hit in this element has no real significance for a result item’s ranking.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
**Search.fuzzinessThreshold**

Specifies the least level of fuzziness (with regard to some comparison criteria passed at runtime) the element has to have to be considered in a fuzzy search at all.

**i Note**

A fuzzy search enables a certain degree of error tolerance and returns records even if the search term contains additional or missing characters or other types of spelling errors.

**i Note**

To perform a fuzzy search you have to set the search mode to fuzzy in the customizing settings of your ABAP system. Find the customizing node under [SAP NetWeaver Implementation Guide > Search and Operational Analytics > Enterprise Search > Search Configuration > Set Parameters for Federated Search](#).

If in the customizing a value for Fuzzy Similarity is present, the value of the parameter Search.fuzzinessThreshold will become void.

**Scope:** #Element

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by SADL

**Values:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Decimal (3.2)</td>
<td>The least level of fuzziness the element has to have to be considered in a fuzzy search at all, e.g. 0.7. The value can be between 0 and 1. We recommend using the default value 0.7 to start with. Later on, you can fine-tune the search settings based on your experiences with the search. You can also fine-tune the search using feedback collected from your users. A value between 0.7 and 0.99 would be most useful. Use 1 for exact matches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Search.termMappingDictionary**

Specifies the table that holds the term mappings (synonyms) to be considered in the context of a search on this view.

**Scope:** #Element

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** No engine usage right now. Reserved for future usage.

**Values:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>String(128)</td>
<td>Defines the term mapping dictionary, e.g. a table or entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search.termMappingListID</td>
<td>Specifies one or multiple list IDs within the term mapping dictionary mentioned before. The list is implemented as a column of the term mapping table, with the list ID as content of this column. This concept has the aim to enable overarching term mapping dictionaries while being able to separate domain-specific content at the same time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scope:** #Element

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** No engine usage right now. Reserved for future usage.

**Values:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Array of String(32)</td>
<td>Defines one or more columns of the term mapping dictionary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Example

The following example demonstrates how the `search` annotations are used in a CDS view.

```
@Search.searchable: true
define view demo_search
  as select from db_flight
  {
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    key carrid,
    key connid,
    @Search.defaultSearchElement: true
    @Search.fuzzinessThreshold: 0.7
    fldate,
    price,
    currencycode
  }
```

The search is executed primarily on the elements `carrid` and `fldate` with a fuzziness threshold of 0.7.
7.1.7 Semantics Annotations

Used by the core engines for data processing and data consumption

Scope and Definition

@Scope: [#ELEMENT, #PARAMETER]
Annotation Semantics
address
{
  type : array of String(10) enum
  {
    HOME;
    WORK;
    PREF;
    OTHER;
  },
  city : Boolean default true;
  street : Boolean default true;
  streetNoNumber : Boolean default true;
  number : Boolean default true;
  country : Boolean default true;
  region : Boolean default true;
  subRegion : Boolean default true;
  zipCode : Boolean default true;
  postBox : Boolean default true;
  label : Boolean default true;
};
amount
{
  currencyCode : ElementRef;
};
businessDate
{
  at : Boolean default true;
  from : Boolean default true;
  to : Boolean default true;
};
calendar
{
  dayOfMonth : Boolean default true;
  dayOfYear : Boolean default true;
  week : Boolean default true;
  month : Boolean default true;
  quarter : Boolean default true;
  halfyear : Boolean default true;
  year : Boolean default true;
  yearWeek : Boolean default true;
  yearMonth : Boolean default true;
  yearQuarter : Boolean default true;
  yearHalfyear : Boolean default true;
};
currencyCode : Boolean default true;
dateTime : Boolean default true;
durationInDays : Boolean default true;
durationInHours : Boolean default true;
durationInMinutes : Boolean default true;
durationInSeconds : Boolean default true;
eMail
{
  type : array of String(10) enum
Usage

Semantic annotations complement the concept of semantic data types, while semantic data types always introduce specific behavior in the provider/core infrastructure (through dedicated operations or conversion functions).

Semantic annotations allow the standardizing of semantics that only have an impact on the consumption side (such as currency code representation together with the amount).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Annotations belonging to <code>Semantics.address</code> tag elements of addresses that can be used in contact cards.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL): Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>Semantics.address.type</code></th>
<th>This annotation tags an element that contains an address.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> String(10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The following enumerations are provided**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#HOME</td>
<td>Home address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#WORK</td>
<td>Work address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#PREF</td>
<td>Preferred address (default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER</td>
<td>other address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model Reference
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.city</td>
<td>Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The annotated field contains a plain-text string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that contains the name of a city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.country</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a plain-text string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that contains the name of a country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.label</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a plain-text string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>representing the formatted address for printing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.number</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a street number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>separated from a street name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.postBox</td>
<td>The annotated field contains information about a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>post office box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.region</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a plain-text string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that contains the name of a region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.street</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a street name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.streetNoNumber</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a street name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>separated from a street number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.subRegion</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a plain-text string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that contains the name of a subregion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.address.zipCode</td>
<td>The annotated field contains a numeric string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>that contains the ZIP code (type of postal code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>used within the United States).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.amount.currencyCode</td>
<td>This annotation tags an element that contains a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>currency amount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CDS annotations into the corresponding OData</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Values:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>elementRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The annotated field contains a monetary amount,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and the corresponding currency code is contained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the referenced field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to `Semantics.businessDate` denotes dates in the business context.

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.businessDate</code> at</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field contains a business date referring to a point in time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.businessDate</code> from</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field contains a business date specifying the start of a time period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.businessDate</code> to</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field contains a business date specifying the end of a time period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to `Semantics.calendar` follow the iCalendar standard (RFC5545)

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations

**Values:** Boolean default true

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.calendar.dayOfMonth</code></td>
<td>The value of the annotated field is a day number relative to a calendar month.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

1 - 31

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.calendar.dayOfYear</code></td>
<td>The value of the annotated field is a day number relative to a calendar year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

1 - 366

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.calendar.halfYear</code></td>
<td>The value of the annotated field is a half year number relative to a calendar year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

1 or 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>Semantics.calendar.month</code></td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a calendar month number as a string following the logical pattern MM consisting of two digits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

The string matches the regex pattern `0[1-9]|1[0-2]`
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.calendar.quarter</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a calendar quarter number as a string following the logical pattern Q consisting of a single digit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern [1-4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.calendar.week</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a calendar week number as a string following the logical pattern WW consisting of two digits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern 0[1-9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.calendar.year</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a year number as a string following the logical pattern (-?) YYYY (Y*) consisting of an optional minus sign for years B.C., followed by at least four digits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern -?([1-9][0-9]{3})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.currencyCode</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field containing a currency code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This can be either an ISO code or an SAP currency code (data type CUKY).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</td>
<td>Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.dateTime</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field containing a date with time value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.durationInDays</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field containing a number that describes a time period in days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.durationInHours</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field containing a number that describes a time period in hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.durationInMinutes</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field containing a number that describes a time period in minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.durationInSeconds</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field containing a number that describes a time period in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to Semantics.fiscal are required for time-based calculations in analytical use cases.

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Some attributes contain the respective information (as plain integers), and the processor needs the semantics in order to identify them.
### Annotation | Meaning
--- | ---
Semantics.fiscal.period | Boolean default true

A fiscal period is covered by financial reports, for example, an annual report covers a fiscal period of one year, but a quarterly report includes accounting data for three months.

The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal period as a string following the logical pattern `PPP` consisting of three digits. This fiscal period usually is a quarter of a year.

**Example**
The string matches the regex pattern `[0-9]{3}`

---

Semantics.fiscal.quarter

A fiscal period is covered by financial reports, for example, an annual report covers a fiscal period of one year, but a quarterly report includes accounting data for three months.

The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal quarter as a string following the logical pattern `Q` consisting of one digit.

**Example**
The string matches the regex pattern `[1-4]`
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semantics.fiscal.week</strong></td>
<td>A fiscal period is covered by financial reports, for example, an annual report covers a fiscal period of one year, but a quarterly report includes accounting data for three months. The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal week as a string following the pattern <strong>WW</strong> consisting of two digits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern <strong>0[1-9][1-4][0-9]5[2-3]</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semantics.fiscal.year</strong></td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal year number as a string following the logical pattern <strong>YYYY</strong> consisting of four digits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern <strong>[1-9][0-9]{3}</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Semantics.fiscal.yearPeriod</strong></td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal year and period as a string following the logical pattern <strong>YYYYPP</strong> consisting of seven digits. The last three digits represent the fiscal period in the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Example" /></td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern <strong>([1-9][0-9]{3})([0-9]{3})</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.fiscal.yearQuarter</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal year and quarter as a string following the logical pattern YYYYQ consisting of five digits. The last digit represents the fiscal quarter in the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern ([1-9][0-9]{3,}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.fiscal.yearWeek</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal year and period as a string following the logical pattern YYYYWW consisting of seven digits. The last three digits represent the fiscal period in the year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
<td>The string matches the regex pattern ([1-9][0-9]{3,}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.fiscal.yearVariant</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field encodes a fiscal year variant, which describes the number of periods in a fiscal year and how they match the calendar year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.language</td>
<td>This annotation identifies a language.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong> Boolean default true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to Semantics.organization tag elements that refer to details about an organization.

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semantics.organization.name</th>
<th>Boolean default true</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The value of the annotated field contains the organization name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.organization.role</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field specify the function or part played in a particular situation by the object the vCard represents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
<td>ROLE:Project Leader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.organization.unit</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field contains the name of the organization unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.quantity.unitOfMeasure</td>
<td>This annotation tags an element that contains a measured quantity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field references a unit of measure related to a measured quantity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.signReversalIndicator</td>
<td>This annotation reverses the sign of the annotated view element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This annotation is used in analytical queries of CDS view with @ObjectModel.dataCategory: #HIERARCHY annotations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong></td>
<td>Boolean (default true)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotations belonging to Semantics.systemDate tag elements that specify the date/time that is recorded by the technical infrastructure/database.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.systemDateTime.createdAtA</td>
<td>The annotated element contains a timestamp indicating when the database record was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong></td>
<td>Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt</td>
<td>The annotated element contains a timestamp indicating when the database record was last changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Values:</strong></td>
<td>Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The annotated element is used for the total ETag field in managed scenarios with draft. It is automatically updated by the RAP managed runtime framework.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.systemDateTime.LocalInstanceLastChangedBy</td>
<td>The annotated element contains a timestamp indicating when the database record was last changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The annotated element is used for the ETag master field in managed scenarios. It is automatically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>updated by the RAP managed runtime framework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.text</td>
<td>This annotation identifies a human-readable text that is not necessarily language-dependent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.unitOfMeasure</td>
<td>This annotation tags a field as containing a unit of measure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to **Semantics.user** tag elements that define the ID of the user related to the data record.

**Scope:** [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]

**Evaluation Runtime (Engine):** Interpreted by the orchestration framework (SADL). Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.user.createdBy</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field specifies the user who created a data record.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.user.lastChangedBy</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field specifies the user who changed a data record at last.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantics.user.localInstanceLastChangedBy</td>
<td>The value of the annotated field specifies the user who changed a data record at last.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Values: Boolean default true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

**Example 1**

The following CDS view fetches sales order items. Here, the annotations assign the units and currencies to the corresponding fields.
The following CDS view fetches language-dependant data annotating the corresponding language fields and text fields:

**Sample Code**

```abap
DEFINE VIEW chartOfAccountsTexts AS SELECT FROM ...
{
  key ktopl AS chartOfAccounts,
  @Semantics.language: true
  key spras AS language,
  @Semantics.text: true
  kptpl AS chartOfAccountsName
}
```

### 7.1.8 UI Annotations

Represent semantic views on business data through the use of specific patterns that are completely independent of UI technologies.

**Scope and Definition**

```abap
@MetadataExtension.usageAllowed : true
{
  @Scope: [#ENTITY]
  headerInfo
  {
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    typeName : String(60);
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    typeNamePlural : String(60);
  }
```

typeImageUrl : String(1024);
ImageUrl : ElementRef;
title
{
  type : String(40) enum
  {
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
  } default #STANDARD;
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
  label : String(60);
  iconUrl : String(1024);
  criticality : ElementRef;
  criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
  {
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
  } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
  value : ElementRef;
  targetElement : ElementRef;
  url : ElementRef;
};
description
{
  type : String(40) enum
  {
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
  } default #STANDARD;
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
  label : String(60);
  iconUrl : String(1024);
  criticality : ElementRef;
  criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
  {
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
  } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
  value : ElementRef;
  targetElement : ElementRef;
  url : ElementRef;
};

@Scope:[#ENTITY]
badge
{
  headLine
  {
    type : String(40) enum
    {
      STANDARD;
      WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
      WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
      WITH_URL;
    } default #STANDARD;
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    label : String(60);
    iconUrl : String(1024);
    criticality : ElementRef;
    criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
    {
      WITHOUT_ICON;
      WITH_ICON;
    } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
    value : ElementRef;
    targetElement : ElementRef;
    url : ElementRef;
  };
}
value : ElementRef;
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
};
title
{
  type : String(40) enum
  {
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
  } default #STANDARD;
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
label : String(60);
iconUrl : String(1024);
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
  {
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
  } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
value : ElementRef;
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
};
typeImageUrl : String(1024);
imageUrl : ElementRef;
mainInfo
{
  type : String(40) enum
  {
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
  } default #STANDARD;
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
label : String(60);
iconUrl : String(1024);
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
  {
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
  } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
value : ElementRef;
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
}
secondaryInfo
{
  type : String(40) enum
  {
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
  } default #STANDARD;
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
label : String(60);
iconUrl : String(1024);
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
  {
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
  } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
value : ElementRef;
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
};

@Scope: [#ENTITY]
chart : array of
{
  qualifier : String(120);
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
title : String(60);
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 80
description : String(120);
chartType : String(40) enum
{
  COLUMN;
  COLUMN_STACKED;
  COLUMN_STACKED_100;
  COLUMN_DUAL;
  COLUMN_STACKED_DUAL;
  COLUMN_STACKED_DUAL_100;
  BAR;
  BAR_STACKED;
  BAR_STACKED_100;
  BAR_DUAL;
  BAR_STACKED_DUAL;
  BAR_STACKED_DUAL_100;
  AREA;
  AREA_STACKED;
  AREA_STACKED_100;
  HORIZONTAL_AREA;
  HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED;
  HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED_100;
  LINE;
  LINE_DUAL;
  COMBINATION;
  COMBINATION_STACKED;
  COMBINATION_STACKED_DUAL;
  HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_STACKED;
  HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_STACKED_DUAL;
  PIE;
  DONUT;
  SCATTER;
  BUBBLE;
  RADAR;
  HEAT_MAP;
  TREE_MAP;
  WATERFALL;
  BULLET;
  VERTICAL_BULLET;
  HORIZONTAL_WATERFALL;
  HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_DUAL;
  DONUT_100;
}
dimensions : array of ElementRef;
measures : array of ElementRef;
dimensionAttributes : array of
{
  dimension : ElementRef;
  role : String(10) enum
  {
    CATEGORY;
    SERIES;
    CATEGORY2;
  };
  valuesForSequentialColorLevels: array of String(1024);
  emphasizedValues: array of String(1024);
};
measureAttributes : array of
{
    measure : ElementRef;
    role : String(10) enum
    {
        AXIS_1;
        AXIS_2;
        AXIS_3;
    },
    asDataPoint : Boolean default true;
    useSequentialColorLevels : Boolean default true;
};
actions : array of
{
    type : String(40) enum
    {
        FOR_ACTION;
        FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    },
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    label : String(60);
    dataAction : String(120);
    requiresContext : Boolean default true;
    invocationGrouping : String(12) enum
    {
        ISOLATED;
        CHANGE_SET;
    } default #ISOLATED;
    semanticObjectAction : String(120);
};
}@Scope:[#ENTITY]
selectionPresentationVariant : array of
{
    qualifier : String(120);
    id : String(120);
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    text : String(60);
    selectionVariantQualifier : String(120);
    presentationVariantQualifier : String(120);
};
}@Scope:[#ENTITY]
selectionVariant : array of
{
    qualifier : String(120);
    id : String(120);
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    text : String(60);
    parameters : array of
    {
        name : ParameterRef;
        value : String(1024);
    },
    filter : String(1024);
};
}@Scope:[#ENTITY]
presentationVariant : array of
{
    qualifier : String(120);
    id : String(120);
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    text : String(60);
    maxItems : Integer;
    sortOrder : array of
    {
        by : ElementRef;
        direction : String(4) enum
    },
ASC;
DESC);

groupBy : array of ElementRef;
totalBy : array of ElementRef;
total : array of ElementRef;
includeGrandTotal : Boolean default true;
initialExpansionLevel : Integer;
requestAtLeast : array of ElementRef;
visualizations : array of
{
  type : String(40) enum
  {  
    AS_LINEITEM;
    AS_CHART;
    AS_DATAPOINT;
  };
  qualifier : String(120);
  element : ElementRef;
};

selectionFieldsQualifier : String(120);

@Scope:[#ELEMENT, #PARAMETER]
hidden : Boolean default true;
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
masked : Boolean default true;
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
multiLineText : Boolean default true;
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
lineItem : array of
{
  @Scope: [#ELEMENT, #ENTITY]
  qualifier : String(120);
  position : DecimalFloat;
  exclude : Boolean default true;
  hidden : Boolean default true;
  importance : String(6) enum { HIGH, MEDIUM, LOW };
  type : String(40) enum
  {  
    AS_ADDRESS;
    AS_CHART;
    AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;
    AS_CONTACT;
    AS_DATAPOINT;
    AS_FIELDGROUP;
    FOR_ACTION;
    FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
  } default #STANDARD;
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
  label : String(60);
  iconUrl : String(1024);
  @Scope: [#ELEMENT, #ENTITY]
  criticality : ElementRef;
  criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
  {  
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
  } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
  dataAction : String(120);
  requiresContext : Boolean default true;
  invocationGrouping : String(12) enum { ISOLATED, CHANGE_SET } default #ISOLATED;
  semanticObjectAction : String(120);
value : ElementRef;
valueQualifier : String(120);
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;

}@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
identification : array of
{
    position : DecimalFloat;
    exclude : Boolean default true;
    importance : String(6) enum { HIGH; MEDIUM; LOW; };
    type : String(40) enum {
        AS_ADDRESS;
        AS_CHART;
        AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;
        AS_CONTACT;
        AS_DATAPoint;
        AS_FIELDGROUP;
        FOR_ACTION;
        FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
        STANDARD;
        WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
        WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
        WITH_URL;
    } default #STANDARD;
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    label : String(60);
    iconUrl : String(1024);
    criticality : ElementRef;
    criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum {
        WITHOUT_ICON;
        WITH_ICON;
    } default #WITHOUT_ICON;
    dataAction : String(120);
    requiresContext : Boolean default true;
    invocationGrouping : String(12) enum { ISOLATED; CHANGE_SET; } default #ISOLATED;
    semanticObjectAction : String(120);
    value : ElementRef;
    valueQualifier : String(120);
    targetElement : ElementRef;
    url : ElementRef;
}
}@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
statusInfo : array of
{
    position : DecimalFloat;
    exclude : Boolean default true;
    importance : String(6) enum { HIGH; MEDIUM; LOW; };
    type : String(40) enum {
        AS_ADDRESS;
        AS_CHART;
        AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;
        AS_CONTACT;
        AS_DATAPoint;
        AS_FIELDGROUP;
        FOR_ACTION;
        FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
        STANDARD;
        WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
        WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
        WITH_URL;
    } default #STANDARD;
    @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
    label : String(60);
iconUrl : String(1024);
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum 
  { WITHOUT_ICON,
    WITH_ICON;
} default #WITHOUT_ICON;
dataAction : String(120);
requiresContext : Boolean default true;
invocationGrouping : String(12) enum { ISOLATED; CHANGE_SET; } default #ISOLATED;
semanticObjectAction : String(120);
value : ElementRef;
valueQualifier : String(120);
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
};
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
fieldGroup : array of 
{
  qualifier : String(120);
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
groupLabel : String(60);
position : DecimalFloat;
exclude : Boolean default true;
importance : String(6) enum { HIGH; MEDIUM; LOW; };
type : String(40) enum 
  { AS_ADDRESS;
    AS_CHART;
    AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;
    AS_CONTACT;
    AS_DATAPoint;
    AS_FIELDGROUP;
    FOR_ACTION;
    FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    STANDARD;
    WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
    WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
    WITH_URL;
} default #STANDARD;
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
label : String(60);
iconUrl : String(1024);
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum 
  { WITHOUT_ICON,
    WITH_ICON;
} default #WITHOUT_ICON;
dataAction : String(120);
requiresContext : Boolean default true;
invocationGrouping : String(12) enum { ISOLATED; CHANGE_SET; } default #ISOLATED;
semanticObjectAction : String(120);
value : ElementRef;
valueQualifier : String(120);
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
};
@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
dataPoint 
{
  qualifier : String(120);
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
title : String(60);
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 80
description : String(120);
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 193
longDescription : String(250);
targetValue : DecimalFloat;
targetValueElement : ElementRef;
forecastValue : ElementRef;
minimumValue : DecimalFloat;
maximumValue : DecimalFloat;
visualization : String(12) enum
{
    NUMBER;
    BULLET_CHART;
    DONUT;
    PROGRESS;
    RATING;
};
valueFormat
{
    scaleFactor : DecimalFloat;
    numberOfFractionalDigits : Integer;
};
referencePeriod
{
    description : String(120);
    start : ElementRef;
    end : ElementRef;
};
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityValue : Integer enum
{
    NEGATIVE;
    CRITICAL;
    POSITIVE;
};
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
{
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
} default #WITHOUT_ICON;
criticalityCalculation
{
    improvementDirection : String(8) enum
    {
        MINIMIZE;
        TARGET;
        MAXIMIZE;
    };
    acceptanceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
    acceptanceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
toleranceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
toleranceRangeLowValueElement : ElementRef;
toleranceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
toleranceRangeHighValueElement : ElementRef;
deviceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
deviceRangeLowValueElement : ElementRef;
deviceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
deviceRangeHighValueElement : ElementRef;
constantThresholds: array of
{
    aggregationLevel: array of ElementRef;
    acceptanceRangeLowValue: DecimalFloat;
    acceptanceRangeHighValue: DecimalFloat;
toleranceRangeLowValue: DecimalFloat;
toleranceRangeLowValueElement: ElementRef;
toleranceRangeHighValue: DecimalFloat;
toleranceRangeHighValueElement: ElementRef;
deviceRangeLowValue: DecimalFloat;
deviceRangeLowValueElement: ElementRef;
deviceRangeHighValue: DecimalFloat;
deviceRangeHighValueElement: ElementRef;
};
trend : ElementRef;
trendCalculation {
  referenceValue : ElementRef;
  isRelativeDifference : Boolean default true;
  upDifference : DecimalFloat;
  upDifferenceElement : ElementRef;
  strongUpDifference : DecimalFloat;
  strongUpDifferenceElement : ElementRef;
  downDifference : DecimalFloat;
  downDifferenceElement : ElementRef;
  strongDownDifference : DecimalFloat;
  strongDownDifferenceElement : ElementRef;
}
responsible : ElementRef;
responsibleName : String(120);

@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
selectionField : array of {
  qualifier : String(120);
  position : DecimalFloat;
  exclude : Boolean default true;
  element : ElementRef;
}

@Scope:[#ELEMENT]
facet : array of {
  qualifier : String(120);
  @CompatibilityContract: {
    c1: { usageAllowed: false },
    c2: { usageAllowed: true,
        allowedChanges.annotation: [ #REMOVE ],
        allowedChanges.value: [ #NONE ] }
  }
  feature : String(40);
  id : String(120);
  purpose : String(40) enum
  {
    STANDARD;
    HEADER;
    QUICK_VIEW;
    QUICK_CREATE;
    FILTER;
  } default #STANDARD;
  parentId : String(120);
  position : DecimalFloat;
  exclude : Boolean default true;
  hidden : Boolean default true;
  isPartOfPreview : Boolean default true;
  isSummary : Boolean default true;
  isMap : Boolean default true;
  importance : String(6) enum
  {
    HIGH;
    MEDIUM;
    LOW;
  };
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
  label : String(60);
  type : String(40) enum
  {
    COLLECTION;
    ADDRESS_REFERENCE;
    BADGE_REFERENCE;
    CHART_REFERENCE;
    CONTACT_REFERENCE;
    DATAPPOINT_REFERENCE;
FIELDGROUP_REFERENCE;
HEADERINFO_REFERENCE;
IDENTIFICATION_REFERENCE;
LINEITEM_REFERENCE;
STATUSINFO_REFERENCE;
URL_REFERENCE;
}
targetElement : ElementRef;
targetQualifier : String(120);
url : ElementRef;
}
@Scope: [#ENTITY, #ELEMENT]
textArrangement : String(13) enum
{
TEXT_FIRST;
TEXT_LAST;
TEXT_ONLY;
TEXT_SEPARATE;
};
// Version 7.69
//@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
kpis : array of
{
qualifier : String(120);
id : String(120);
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 10
shortDescription : String(20);
selectionVariantQualifier : String(120);
detail
{
defaultPresentationVariantQualifier : String(120);
alternativePresentationVariantQualifiers : array of String(120);
semanticObject : String(120);
semanticObjectAction : String(120);
}
dataPoint
{
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
title : String(60);
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 80
description : String(120);
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 193
longDescription : String(250);
targetValue : DecimalFloat;
forecastValue : DecimalFloat;
minimumValue : DecimalFloat;
maximumValue : DecimalFloat;
valueFormat
{
 scaleFactor : DecimalFloat;
numberOfFractionalDigits : Integer;
};
visualization : String(12) enum
{
NUMBER;
BULLET_CHART;
DONUT;
PROGRESS;
RATING;
};
referencePeriod
{
@LanguageDependency.maxLength : 80
description : String(120);
start : ElementRef;
end : ElementRef;
}
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityValue : Integer enum
{
    NEGATIVE;
    CRITICAL;
    POSITIVE;
};
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
{
    WITHOUT_ICON;
    WITH_ICON;
} default #WITHOUT_ICON;
criticalityCalculation
{
    improvementDirection : String(8) enum
    {
        MINIMIZE;
        TARGET;
        MAXIMIZE;
    },
    acceptanceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
    acceptanceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
    toleranceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
    toleranceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
    deviationRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
    deviationRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
    constantThresholds : array of
    {
        aggregationLevel : array of ElementRef;
        acceptanceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
        acceptanceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
        toleranceRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
        toleranceRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
        deviationRangeLowValue : DecimalFloat;
        deviationRangeHighValue : DecimalFloat;
    };
};
trend : ElementRef;
trendCalculation
{
    referenceValue : ElementRef;
    isRelativeDifference : Boolean;
    upDifference : DecimalFloat;
    strongUpDifference : DecimalFloat;
    downDifference : DecimalFloat;
    strongDownDifference : DecimalFloat;
};
responsible : ElementRef;
responsibleName : String(120);

@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
valueCriticality : array of
{
    qualifier : String(120);
    value : String(120);
    criticality : Integer enum
    {
        NEGATIVE;
        CRITICAL;
        POSITIVE;
    };
};

@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
criticalityLabels : array of
qualifier: String(120);
criticality: Integer enum
{
  NEGATIVE;
  CRITICAL;
  POSITIVE;
};
@LanguageDependency.maxLength: 40
label: String(60);
}
@Scope: [#ELEMENT]
connectedFields : array of
{
  qualifier : String(120);
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 40
groupLabel : String(60);
  @LanguageDependency.maxLength : 197
template : String(255);
name : String(120);
exclude : Boolean default true;
hidden : Boolean default true;
importance : String(6) enum { HIGH; MEDIUM; LOW; }
type : String(40) enum
{
  AS_ADDRESS;
  AS_CHART;
  AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;
  AS_CONTACT;
  AS_DATAPOINT;
  AS_FIELDGROUP;
  FOR_ACTION;
  FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
  STANDARD;
  WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;
  WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;
  WITH_URL;
} default #STANDARD;
@LanguageDependency.maxLength: 40
label : String(60);
iconUrl : String(1024);
criticality : ElementRef;
criticalityRepresentation : String(12) enum
{
  WITHOUT_ICON;
  WITH_ICON;
} default #WITHOUT_ICON;
dataAction : String(120);
requiresContext : Boolean default true;
invocationGrouping : String(12) enum { ISOLATED; CHANGE_SET; } default #ISOLATED;
semanticObjectAction : String(120);
value : ElementRef;
valueQualifier : String(120);
targetElement : ElementRef;
url : ElementRef;
};
Usage

The focus of OData UI vocabulary developed by SAP is on usage patterns of data in UIs, not on UI patterns. The vocabulary is completely independent of the UI technologies or devices that consume the data. The usage patterns of data used by the OData UI vocabulary represent certain semantic views on business data. Some of them are very generic, others are based on the concept of an entity, something tangible to end-users. Examples for entities are semantic object instances or business object instances. Looking at different UI patterns, these data usage patterns reoccur again and again. To generate OData annotations from CDS views, CDS annotations are reused from different domains, for example Consumption, Communication, Semantics, EndUserText. The CDS annotations that are additionally required in a UI domain are listed in the following table.

UI Annotations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>typeName</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.headerInfo describe an entity, its title, and an optional short description, the name of its entity in singular and plural form, and optional image URLs for the individual entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>typeNamePlural</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>This annotation represents the title of an object page, for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.typeName</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation can be omitted only when the @EndUserText.label is specified on view level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>typeNamePlural</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>This annotation represents a list title, for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>typeImageUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL of an image representing an entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>imageUrl</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation represents a path to an element containing the URL of an image representing the entity instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>imageData</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation allows referencing an element that contains the image BLOB and is itself annotated with Semantics.large Object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>title.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>title.type</td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
<td>● STANDARD:</td>
<td>Maps to standard DataField. You use this type if you want a field to be displayed without any additional functionality. A standard DataField refers to a property of the OData service used. When you use this type, you can use the following elements: ○ label ○ value ○ criticality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● WITH_URL:</td>
<td>Maps to DataFieldWithURL. DataFieldWithURL is based on DataField, and defines a label–value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists a URL to navigate to a new target, that is a URL. For more information, see With URL [page 750]. When you use this type, you can use the following elements: ○ label ○ value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When you use this type, you must use the following elements: ○ url</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to UI.headerInfo.title represent a property of type UI.DataFieldAbstract restricted to the types STANDARD, WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH, WITH_URL, and WITH_IN- TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION. @UI.header- Info.title annotations are mandatory and are usually used to represent the title of an item on the header of an item's object page..

The OData annota- tions DataFieldAbstract are the basis for all DataField types and represent values with optional labels that can trigger navigation to related data, or execute actions on data.
WITH_NAVIGATION
_PATH: Maps to DataFieldWithNavigationPath. DataFieldWithNavigationPath is based on DataField, and defines a label-value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists of a link to navigate to a new target, based on a navigation property provided by the OData service, or defined in the annotation file. For more information, see With Navigation Path [page 748].

When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  ○ label
  ○ value

When you use this type, you must use the following elements:
  ○ targetElement

WITH_IN-TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;

Default: STANDARD;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>title.label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for titles in page headers of object-page floorplans. Object-page floorplans are SAP Fiori floorplan to view, edit and create objects. If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element are referenced via the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>title.iconUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>title.criticality</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Neutral</strong>: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Negative</strong>: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Critical</strong>: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Positive</strong>: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: This annotation can be specified if the badge headline type is STANDARD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| UI.headerInfo    | title.criticalityRepresentation | String(12) enum | #mandatory| WITHOUT_ICON
|                  |               |                   |          | WITH_ICON
<p>|                  |               |                   |          | Default: WITHOUT_ICON                                                                                                                                 |
| UI.headerInfo    | title.value   | ElementRef        |          | This annotation refers to a value. If you refer to a value that is in the same view, specify the element name. If you use an association to refer to a value, specify the path to the element. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>title.targetElement</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.badge.headLine.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.badge.headLine.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>title.url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. You need to specify UI.badge.headLine.url when you use the annotation UI.badge.headLine.type of type WITH_URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ui.headerInfo</strong></td>
<td><strong>description.type</strong></td>
<td><strong>String(40)</strong> enum</td>
<td><strong>STANDARD</strong>:</td>
<td>Maps to standard <strong>DataField</strong>. You use this type if you want a field to be displayed without any additional functionality. A standard <strong>DataField</strong> refers to a property of the OData service used. When you use this type, you can use the following elements: ○ <strong>label</strong> ○ <strong>value</strong> ○ <strong>criticality</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>WITH_URL</strong>: Maps to <strong>DataFieldWithURL</strong>. <strong>DataFieldWithURL</strong> is based on <strong>DataField</strong>, and defines a label–value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists a URL to navigate to a new target, that is a URL. For more information, see <strong>With URL [page 750]</strong>. When you use this type, you can use the following elements: ○ <strong>label</strong> ○ <strong>value</strong> When you use this type, you must use the following elements: ○ <strong>url</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**WITH\_NAVIGATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH:</td>
<td>Maps to DataFieldWithNavigationPath.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataFieldWithNavigationPath</td>
<td>is based on DataField, and defines a label-value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists of a link to navigate to a new target, based on a navigation property provided by the OData service, or defined in the annotation file. For more information, see With Navigation Path [page 748]. When you use this type, you can use the following elements: ○ <em>label</em> ○ <em>value</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When you use this type, you must use the following elements: ○ <em>targetElement</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
<td>Default: STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.iconUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.criticality</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.criticalityRrepresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.value</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.targetElem</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.headerInfo</td>
<td>description.url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>.headline.type</td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **STANDARD**: Maps to standard DataField. You use this type if you want a field to be displayed without any additional functionality. A standard DataField refers to a property of the OData service used. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - label
  - value
  - criticality

- **WITH_URL**: Maps to DataFieldWithURL. DataFieldWithURL is based on DataField, and defines a label–value pair that refers a property of the OData service used. The definition consists a URL to navigate to a new target, that is a URL. For more information, see With URL [page 750]. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - label
  - value
  - url
- **WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH**: Maps to `DataFieldWithNavigationPath`. `DataFieldWithNavigationPath` is based on `DataField`, and defines a label-value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists of a link to navigate to a new target, based on a navigation property provided by the OData service, or defined in the annotation file. For more information, see With Navigation Path [page 748].

When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
- `label`
- `value`

When you use this type, you must use the following elements:
- `targetElement`

- **WITH_INTEGRATION_BASED_NAVIGATION**;

  Default: STANDARD;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td>.headLine.label</td>
<td>String (60)</td>
<td>#Optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text. If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element referenced via the value is used. The element is optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td>.headLine.iconURL</td>
<td>String (1024)</td>
<td>#Optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image. This annotation is optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td>.headLine.criticality</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● <strong>Neutral</strong>: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● <strong>Negative</strong>: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● <strong>Critical</strong>: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● <strong>Positive</strong>: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td>.headLine.criticalityPresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can be specified if the badge headline type is <strong>STANDARD</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● WITH_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td>.headLine.value</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to a value. If you refer to a value that is in the same view, specify the element name. If you use an association to refer to a value, specify the path to the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI badge</strong></td>
<td><strong>.headLine.targetElement</strong></td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify <code>UIbadge.headLine.targetElement</code> when you use the annotation <code>UIbadge.headLine.type</code> of type <code>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH</code>. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI badge</strong></td>
<td><strong>.headLine.url</strong></td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. You need to specify <code>UIbadge.headLine.url</code> when you use the annotation <code>UIbadge.headLine.type</code> of type <code>WITH_URL</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI badge</strong></td>
<td>title</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>title.type</td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.headerInfo.title represent a property of type UI.DataFieldAbstract restricted to the types STANDARD, WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH, WITH_URL, and WITH_IN- TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION. @UI.headerInfo.title annotations are mandatory and are usually used to represent the title of an item on the header of an item's object page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The OData annotations DataFieldAbstract are the basis for all DataField types and represent values with optional labels that can trigger navigation to related data, or execute actions on data.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **STANDARD**: Maps to standard DataField. You use this type if you want a field to be displayed without any additional functionality. A standard DataField refers to a property of the OData service used. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - label
  - value
  - criticality

- **WITH_URL**: Maps to DataFieldWithURL. DataFieldWithURL is based on DataField, and defines a label–value pair that refers a property of the OData service used. The definition consists a URL to navigate to a new target, that is a URL. For more information, see With URL [page 750]. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - label
  - value

When you use this type, you must use the following elements:
  - url
### WITH_NAVIGATION

**WITH_NAVIGATION**

**_PATH:** Maps to `DataFieldWithNavigationPath`.

`DataFieldWithNavigationPath` is based on `DataField`, and defines a label-value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists of a link to navigate to a new target, based on a navigation property provided by the OData service, or defined in the annotation file.

For more information, see [With Navigation Path](page 748).

When you use this type, you can use the following elements:

- **label**
- **value**

When you use this type, you must use the following elements:

- **targetElement**

### WITH_IN_TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION

**WITH_IN_TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;**

Default: STANDARD;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>title.label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for titles in page headers of object-page floorplans. Object-page floorplans are SAP Fiori floorplan to view, edit and create objects. If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element are referenced via the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>title.iconUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>title.criticality</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Neutral</strong>: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Negative</strong>: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Critical</strong>: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Positive</strong>: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>title.criticalityRepresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>title.value</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to a value. If you refer to a value that is in the same view, specify the element name. If you use an association to refer to a value, specify the path to the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td><code>title.targetElement</code></td>
<td><code>ElementRef</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData <code>NavigationPropertyPath</code>. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify <code>UI.badge.headLine.targetElement</code> when you use the annotation <code>UI.badge.headLine.type</code> of type <code>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH</code>. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td><code>title.url</code></td>
<td><code>ElementRef</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. You need to specify <code>UI.badge.headLine.url</code> when you use the annotation <code>UI.badge.headLine.type</code> of type <code>WITH_URL</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td><code>typeImageUrl</code></td>
<td><code>String(1024); #optional</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL of an image representing an entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.badge</code></td>
<td><code>imageUrl</code></td>
<td><code>ElementRef</code></td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation represents a path to an element containing the URL of an image representing the entity instance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>mainInfo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The content of UI.badge.mainInfo annotations is highlighted on the badge. These annotations represent a property of type UI.DataFieldAbstract restricted to the types STANDARD, WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH, and WITH_URL. The OData annotations DataFieldAbstract are the basis for all DataField types and represent values with optional labels that can trigger navigation to related data, or execute actions on data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- **STANDARD**: Maps to standard `DataField`. You use this type if you want a field to be displayed without any additional functionality. A standard `DataField` refers to a property of the OData service used. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - `label`
  - `value`
  - `criticality`

- **WITH_URL**: Maps to `DataFieldWithURL`. `DataFieldWithURL` is based on `DataField`, and defines a label–value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists a URL to navigate to a new target, that is a URL. For more information, see With URL [page 750]. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - `label`
  - `value`
  - `url`

Annotations belonging to `Ui.headerInfo.title` represent a property of type `Ui.DataFieldAbstract` restricted to the types STANDARD, WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH, WITH_URL, and WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION. `@Ui.headerInfo.title` annotations are mandatory and are usually used to represent the title of an item on the header of an item's object page.

The OData annotations `DataFieldAbstract` are the basis for all `DataField` types and represent values with optional labels that can trigger navigation to related data, or execute actions on data.
### WITH_NAVIGATION _PATH:
Maps to DataFieldWithNavigationPath.

DataFieldWithNavigationPath is based on DataField, and defines a label-value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists of a link to navigate to a new target, based on a navigation property provided by the OData service, or defined in the annotation file.

For more information, see With Navigation Path [page 748].

When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
- **label**
- **value**

When you use this type, you must use the following elements:
- **targetElement**

### WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;

Default: STANDARD;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>mainInfo.label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for titles in page headers of object-page floorplans. Object-page floorplans are SAP Fiori floorplan to view, edit and create objects. If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element are referenced via the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>mainInfo.iconUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>mainInfo.criticality</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Neutral: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Negative: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Critical: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Positive: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iNote</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can be specified if the badge headline type is STANDARD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>mainInfo.criticalityRepresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>- WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- WITH_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.badge</td>
<td>mainInfo.value</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to a value. If you refer to a value that is in the same view, specify the element name. If you use an association to refer to a value, specify the path to the element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

850 PUBLIC SAP - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model Reference
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.badge</strong></td>
<td><strong>mainInfo.targetElement</strong></td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.badge.headLine.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.badge.headLine.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.badge</strong></td>
<td><strong>mainInfo.url</strong></td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. You need to specify UI.badge.headLine.url when you use the annotation UI.badge.headLine.type of type WITH_URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ui.badge</strong></td>
<td><strong>secondaryInfo</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annotations belonging to UI.headerInfo.title represent a property of type UI.DataFieldAbstract restricted to the types STANDARD, WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH, WITH_URL, and WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION. @UI.headerInfo.title annotations are mandatory and are usually used to represent the title of an item on the header of an item's object page.

The OData annotations DataFieldAbstract are the basis for all DataField types and represent values with optional labels that can trigger navigation to related data, or execute actions on data.

- **STANDARD:** Maps to standard DataField. You use this type if you want a field to be displayed without any additional functionality.
  A standard DataField refers to a property of the OData service used. When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - label
  - value
  - criticality

- **WITH_URL:** Maps to DataFieldWithURL. DataFieldWithURL is based on DataField, and defines a label–value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists a URL to navigate to a new target, that is a URL. For more information, see With URL [page 750].
  When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  - label
  - value
  When you use this type, you must use the following elements:
  - url
• **WITH_NAVIGATION\_PATH:** Maps to `DataFieldWithNavigationPath`. `DataFieldWithNavigationPath` is based on `DataField`, and defines a label-value pair that refers to a property of the OData service used. The definition consists of a link to navigate to a new target, based on a navigation property provided by the OData service, or defined in the annotation file.

For more information, see [With Navigation Path](page 748).

When you use this type, you can use the following elements:
  ○ `label`
  ○ `value`

When you use this type, you must use the following elements:
  ○ `targetElement`

• **WITH_IN-TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;**

Default: STANDARD;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.badge</strong></td>
<td><code>secondaryInfo.label</code></td>
<td><code>String(60)</code></td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for titles in page headers of object-page floorplans. Object-page floorplans are SAP Fiori floorplan to view, edit and create objects. If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element are referenced via the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.badge</strong></td>
<td><code>secondaryInfo.iconUrl</code></td>
<td><code>String(1024)</code></td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **UI.badge**      | `secondaryInfo.criticality` | `elementRef`     |           | This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.  
- **Neutral**: 0  
- **Negative**: 1  
- **Critical**: 2  
- **Positive**: 3  

**iNote**  This annotation can be specified if the badge headline type is **STANDARD**. |
| **UI.badge**      | `secondaryInfo.criticalityRepresentation` | `String(12)`       | #mandatory |  
- WITHOUT_ICON  
- WITH_ICON  
Default: WITHOUT_ICON |
<p>| <strong>UI.badge</strong>      | <code>secondaryInfo.value</code>  | <code>ElementRef</code>       |           | This annotation refers to a value. If you refer to a value that is in the same view, specify the element name. If you use an association to refer to a value, specify the path to the element. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.badge</strong></td>
<td>secondaryInfo.targetElement</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using This annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.badge.headLine.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.badge.headLine.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.badge</strong></td>
<td>secondaryInfo.url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. You need to specify UI.badge.headLine.url when you use the annotation UI.badge.headLine.type of type WITH_URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.datapoint</strong></td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>The element can be omitted only if the @EndUserText.label is specified. This annotation contains the title of the data point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.datapoint</strong></td>
<td>title</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>This annotation contains the title of the data point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>description</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a description of the data point. If omitted, the @EndUserText.quickinfo is used, if specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>longDescription</td>
<td>String(250)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a detailed description of the data point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>targetValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td>#not compatible with UI.datapoint.targetValue</td>
<td>This annotation specifies the target value of the data point as a constant element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>⚠️ Caution</strong> If you use this annotation, do not use the element UI.datapoint.targetValueElement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>➔ Tip</strong> You create a KPI in which you specify a certain revenue that needs to be reached at the end of a specific year. This is the UI.dataPoint.targetValue that is a static value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>forecastValue</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to a value such as predicted or intended quarterly results, for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>minimumValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies the minimum value of a threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>maximumValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies the maximum value of a threshold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>valueFormat</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>All UI.datapoint.valueFormat annotations are optional. For more information about value formats, see Person Responsible and Reference Period [page 743].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>valueFormat.scaleFactor</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the scale factor for the value, e.g. A value 1000 displayed with scaleFactor = 1000 is displayed as 1k.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>valueFormat.numberOfFractionalDigits</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the number of fractional digits to be displayed. If the element value is 1, one decimal place is rendered, for example, 34.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ui.datapoint</code></td>
<td>visualization</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td>● NUMBER: A data point is visualized as a number.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● BULLET_CHART: A data point is visualized as a bullet chart.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● DONUT: A data point is visualized as a donut chart.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● PROGRESS: A data point is visualized as a progress indicator.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● RATING: A data point is visualized as partly or completely filled symbols such as stars or hearts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This annotation defines the preferred visualization of a data point.

△ Caution
The following visualizations require the annotation `ui.datapoint.targetValue`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>referencePeriod.description</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation describes the business period of evaluation, for example “Oct 2012”. Typical patterns are calendar dates or fiscal dates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>referencePeriod.start</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a reference to the start date of the reference period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>referencePeriod.end</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a reference to the end date of the reference period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Neutral: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Negative: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Critical: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Positive: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityValue</td>
<td>Integer enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>● Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityRepresentation</td>
<td>String enum</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>● WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● WITH_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.datapoint.criticalityCalculation can be used as an alternative to specifying the criticality in the criticality element. The criticality can be calculated based on the values of the criticalityCalculation annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.improvementDirection</td>
<td>String(8) enum</td>
<td>MINIMIZE; TARGET; MAXIMIZE</td>
<td>Description: This annotation calculates the criticality based on a specified improvement direction. For more information, see Trend-Criticality Calculation [page 740].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.acceptanceRangeLowValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.acceptanceRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.toleranceRangeLowValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.toleranceRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.deviationRangeLowValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.deviationRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds</td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Thresholds depending on the aggregation level as a set of constant values. (Constant thresholds should only be used in order to refine constant values given for the datapoint overall (aggregationLevel []), but not if the thresholds are based on other measure elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.aggregationLevel</td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>An unordered tuple of dimensions, i.e. elements which are intended to be used for group-by in aggregating requests. (In analytical UIs, e.g. an analytical chart, the aggregation level typically corresponds to the visible dimensions.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.acceptanceRangeLowValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.acceptanceRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.toleranceRangeLowValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.toleranceRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.deviationRangeLowValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.criticalThresholds.deviationRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ul.datapoint</td>
<td>criticalityCalculation.constantThresholds.deviationRangeHighValue</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ul.datapoint      | trend                             | elementRef    | 1: StrongUp;
|                   |                                   |               | 2: Up;
|                   |                                   |               | 3: Sideways;
|                   |                                   |               | 4: Down;
<p>|                   |                                   |               | 5: StrongDown | Reference to an element to visualize a trend in form of an arrow. For more information, see Trends [page 738]. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation                  |               |                           | As an alternative to specifying the trend in the trend element, the trend could be calculated based on the trendCalculation annotations. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation.referenceValue   | elementRef    |                           | This annotation specifies the reference value for the trend calculation as a reference to an element. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation.isRelativeDifference | boolean      | Default: False           | This boolean constant expresses whether the difference between the value and referenceValue is absolute or relative. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation.upDifference     | DecimalFloat  |                           | This annotation specifies a threshold as a constant. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation.strongUpDifference | DecimalFloat  |                           | This annotation specifies a threshold as a constant. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation.downDifference   | DecimalFloat  |                           | This annotation specifies a threshold as a constant. |
| Ul.datapoint      | trendCalculation.strongDownDifference | DecimalFloat  |                           | This annotation specifies a threshold as a constant. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>responsible</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td># not compatible with UI.dataPoint.responsibleName</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Caution</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If you use this annotation, you <strong>can't</strong> use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the annotation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UI.dataPoint.responsibleName</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If you use This annotation, you <strong>cannot</strong> use element</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UI.dataPoint.responsibleName</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.datapoint</td>
<td>responsibleName</td>
<td>String (120)</td>
<td># not compatible with UI.dataPoint.responsible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Caution</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If you use this annotation, you <strong>can't</strong> use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the annotation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UI.dataPoint.responsible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annotations belonging to UI.KPI represent a single point of data, specialized for a specific data selection and extended with information about KPI details, especially the first level of drilldown, for a progressive disclosure.

**Scope:** [ELEMENT]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>shortDescription</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>selectionVariantQualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This element refers to a UI.selectionVariant annotation at the same view via its qualifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>detail</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation bundles additional settings for a KPI which are relevant for a separate KPI detail display or for progressive disclosure of the KPI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>detail.defaultPresentationVariantQualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This element refers to a UI.presentationVariant annotation at the same view via its qualifier. This presentation variant should be used to initially represent the KPI detail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>detail.alternativePresentationVariantQualifiers</td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>This element refers to a UI.presentationVariant annotations at the same view via their qualifiers. These presentation variants should be used/offered as alternative representations of the KPI detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>detail.semanticObject</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>detail.semanticObject.Action</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.kpi</td>
<td>dataPoint</td>
<td></td>
<td>For the UI.kpi.dataPoint annotations you can refer to UI.dataPoint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionField</td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.selectionField allow filtering a list of data. UI.selectionField annotations are usually used in an initial page floorplan as filter bar.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionField</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a selection field to ensure that the correct selection field can be referenced by the UI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionField</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>With this annotation you specify the order of selection fields that are used for filtering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionField</td>
<td>exclude</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation allows excluding the element from the OData annotation on the derived view by setting it to true. For more information, see Inheritance of Annotations [page 735]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionField</td>
<td>element</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>Must be used when an association is annotated, the value is a path to an element of the associated view. You use this option if you want to filter a table for a column that is not defined in your CDS view but in another CDS view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Caution</strong> Must not be used when a structured element is annotated, in this case the annotated element is the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.valueCriticality</td>
<td></td>
<td>(array of )</td>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.valueCriticality</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.valueCriticality</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>Expression</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.valueCriticality</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>Integer enum</td>
<td>1: Negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2: Critical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3: Positive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.criticalityLabels</td>
<td></td>
<td>(array of )</td>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.criticalityLabels</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| UI.criticalityLabels   | criticality| Integer enum    | • 1: Negative  
                          | • 2: Critical  
                          | • 3: Positive  | |
| UI.criticalityLabels   | label      | String(60)      |       |             |

**UI.chart**

Annotations belonging to UI.chart are used to show a visual representation of aggregated data.

Scope: [ENTITY]

Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations

Values: array of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a chart to ensure that the correct chart can be referenced by the UI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>title</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text. If omitted, the @EndUserText.label of the annotated entity or view is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>description</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text. If omitted, the @EndUserText.quickInfo of the annotated entity or view is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.chart</strong></td>
<td><strong>chartType</strong></td>
<td>String enum</td>
<td>COLUMN; COLUMN_STACKED; COLUMN_DUAL; COLUMN_STACKED_DUAL; COLUMN_STACKED_DUAL_100; BAR; BAR_STACKED; BAR_STACKED_100; BAR_DUAL; BAR_STACKED_DUAL; BAR_STACKED_DUAL_100; AREA; AREA_STACKED; AREA_STACKED_100; HORIZONTAL_AREA; HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED; HORIZONTAL_AREA_STACKED_100; LINE; LINE_DUAL; COMBINATION; COMBINATION_STACKED; COMBINATION_STACKED_DUAL; HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_STACKED;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_STACKED_DUAL; PIE; DONUT; SCATTER; BUBBLE; RADAR; HEAT_MAP; TREE_MAP; WATERFALL; BULLET; VERTICAL_BULLET; HORIZONTAL_WATERFALL; HORIZONTAL_COMBINATION_DUAL; DONUT_100;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.chart</strong></td>
<td><strong>dimensions</strong></td>
<td><strong>elementRef</strong></td>
<td>This annotation is an array of one or more element references for the discrete axes of a chart. The exact semantics depend on the chart type.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.chart</strong></td>
<td><strong>measures</strong></td>
<td><strong>elementRef</strong></td>
<td>This annotation is an array of zero or more element references for the numeric axes of a chart. The exact semantics depend on the chart type.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>dimensionAttributes.dimension</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation defines the dimensions used in a chart. This annotation must reference an element that is contained in UI.chart.dimensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>dimensionAttributes.role</td>
<td>String(10) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>These annotations determine the visualization of a chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>CATEGORY</strong>: For example: Line chart: Dimensions for which the role is set to CATEGORY, make up the X-axis (category axis). If no dimension is specified with this role, the first dimension is used as the X-axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>SERIES</strong>: For example: Line chart: Dimensions for which the role is set to SERIES, make up the line segments of the chart, with different colors assigned to each dimension value. If multiple dimensions are assigned to this role, the values of all such dimensions together are considered as one dimension and a color is assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>CATEGORY2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>dimensionAttributes.valuesForSequentialColorLevels</td>
<td>array of String(1024)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation defines the manner in which a dimension is used within a chart. This is configured differently for each chart type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.chart</code></td>
<td><code>dimensionAttributes.emphasizedValues</code></td>
<td>array of String(1024)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to <code>UI.chart.measureAttributes</code> are used to specify the measure attributes of a chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.chart</code></td>
<td><code>measureAttributes</code></td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation defines the measures used in a chart. This annotation must reference an element that is contained in <code>UI.chart.measures</code> and has a <code>UI.dataPoint</code> annotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.chart</code></td>
<td><code>measureAttributes.measure</code></td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation defines the manner in which a measure is used within a chart. This is configured differently for each chart type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>measureAttributes.role</code></td>
<td>String(10) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation determines the visualization of a chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>AXIS_1:</code> Example Bubble chart: The first measure for which the role is set to <code>AXIS_1</code>, or if none exists, the first measure for which the role is set to <code>AXIS_2</code>, or if none exists, the first measure for which the role is set to <code>AXIS_3</code>, is assigned to the feed UID valueAxis. This makes up the X-axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>AXIS_2:</code> For an example, see the description of <code>AXIS_1</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>AXIS_3:</code> For an example, see the description of <code>AXIS_1</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>measureAttributes.asDataPoint</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>This annotation defines whether or not measures are displayed as data points in addition to a chart. The element annotated with this UI annotation needs to have an annotation to a data point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>useSequentialColorLevels</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>actions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>actions.type</td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
<td>● FOR_ACTION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>actions.label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>actions.dataAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.chart</td>
<td>actions.requiresContext</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| UI.chart          | actions.invocationGrouping | String(12) enum    | - **ISOLATED**: Describes the error handling when an action cannot be executed on all selected instances: The action is executed on all instances except for instance on which the action cannot be executed.  
- **CHANGE_SET**: Describes the error handling when an action cannot be executed on all selected instances: If an action cannot be executed on one of the selected instances, the action is executed on none of the selected instances.  
  Default: ISOLATED |
|                  |            |                    |                            | This annotation expresses how multiple invocations of the same action on multiple instances are grouped.  
  **ISOLATED Example**: A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. This item will not be copied, the other four items are copied.  
  **CHANGE_SET Example**: A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. None of the selected items are copied. |
|                  | actions.semanticObjectAction | String(120)       |                            | Annotations belonging to UI.selectionPresentationVariant are used to bundle annotations of UI.presentationVariant and UI.selectionVariant.  
  Scope: [ENTITY]  
  Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations  
  Values: array of |
<p>|                  | UI.selectionPresentationVariant |                     |                            |.sap - ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a selection presentation variant to ensure that the correct selection presentation variant can be referenced by the UI.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>This annotation contains an identifier to reference this instance from an external context.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>This annotation contains the language-dependent name of the selection presentation variant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.</td>
<td>selectionVariantQualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a selection variant to ensure that the correct selection variant can be referenced by the selection presentation variant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI selectionVariant</td>
<td>presentationVariantQualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a presentation variant to ensure that the correct presentation variant can be referenced by the selection presentation variant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI selectionVariant</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can contain an identifier to reference this instance from an external context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI selectionVariant</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a selection variant to ensure that the correct selection variant can be referenced by the UI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annotations belonging to UI.selectionVariant are used to denote a combination of parameters and filters used to query the annotated entity set.

Scope: [ENTITY]

Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations

Values: array of
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionVariant</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains the language-dependent name of the selection variant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionVariant</td>
<td>parameters</td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.selectionVariant.parameters represent a collection of parameters used to query the annotated entity set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionVariant</td>
<td>parameters.name</td>
<td>ParameterRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to a parameter name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionVariant</td>
<td>parameters.value</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains a parameter value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.selectionVariant</td>
<td>filter</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains a filter used to query the annotated entity set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.presentationVariant</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a presentation variant to ensure that the correct presentation variant can be referenced by the UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.presentationVariant</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains an identifier to reference this instance from an external context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.presentationVariant</td>
<td>text</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains the language-dependent name of the presentation variant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>maxItems</code></td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation defines the maximum number of items that should be included in the result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>sortOrder</code></td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to <code>UI.presentationVariant.sortOrder</code> represent a collection of sorting parameters that can be provided inline or by a reference to a <code>Common.SortOrder</code> annotation (syntax is identical to <code>AnnotationPath</code>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>sortOrder.by</code></td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation defines by what property queried collections can be sorted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| `UI.presentationVariant` | `sortOrder.direction` | String(4) enum | ● **ASC**: Sort in ascending order.  
● **DESC**: Sort in descending order. | This annotation defines the sorting direction of queried collections.                                                                         |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.presentationVariant</td>
<td>groupBy</td>
<td>array of</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>This annotation defines a sequence of groupable properties (p1, p2, pn) that define how the result of a queried collection is composed of instances that represent groups, one group for each combination of value properties in the queried collection. The sequence specifies a certain level of aggregation for the queried collection, and every group instance provides aggregated values for properties that are aggregatable. Moreover, the series of sub-sequences, for example (p1), (p1, p2), ..., forms a leveled hierarchy that can be used in combination with the annotation UI.presentationVariant.initialExpansionLevel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>totalBy</code></td>
<td>array of</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>This annotation defines the sub-sequences q1, q2, qn of the properties p1, p2, pn specified in the annotation <code>UI.presentationVariant.groupBy</code>. With this, additional levels of aggregation are requested in addition to the most granular level defined by the annotation <code>UI.presentationVariant.groupBy</code>. Every element in the series of sub-sequences, for example (q1), (q1, q2), ... introduces an additional aggregation level included in the result of the queried collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>total</code></td>
<td>array of</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td>This annotation contains aggregatable properties for which aggregated values are to be provided for the additional aggregation levels specified in the annotation <code>UI.presentationVariant.totalBy</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>includeGrandTotal</code></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>This annotation specifies that the result of the queried collection includes a grand total for the properties specified in the annotation <code>UI.presentationVariant.total</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>initialExpansionLevel</code></td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains the initial number of expansion levels of a hierarchy defined for the queried collection. The hierarchy can be implicitly imposed by the sequence of the annotation <code>UI.presentationVariant.groupBy</code>, or by an explicit hierarchy annotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>requestAtLeast</code></td>
<td>array of</td>
<td><code>elementRef</code></td>
<td>This annotation defines the properties that should always be included in the result of the queried collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.presentationVariant</code></td>
<td><code>visualizations</code></td>
<td>(array of)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to <code>UI.presentationVariant.visualizations</code> represent a collection of available visualization types. The following types are supported:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>UI.lineItem</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>UI.chart</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>UI.dataPoint</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **UI.presentationVariant** | visualizations.type | String(40) enum     | ● **AS_LINEITEM**: The queried collection is visualized as line item.  
● **AS_CHART**: The queried collection is visualized as chart.  
● **AS_DATAPOINT**: The queried collection is visualized as data point.  
Default: **AS_LINEITEM** | This annotation defines the representation type. For each type, only one single annotation is meaningful. Multiple instances of the same visualization type shall be modeled with different presentation variants. A reference to the annotation UI.lineItem should always be part of the collection (least common denominator for renderers). |
<p>|                       | visualizations.qualifier | String(120)       |                | This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. You need to specify a qualifier as name of a visualization to ensure that the correct visualization can be referenced by the UI. |
|                       | visualizations.element | ElementRef        |                | This annotation references the annotation UI.lineItem.                                                                                      |
|                       | selectionFieldsQualifier | String(120)      |                |                                                                                                                                           |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.hidden</td>
<td></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default true</td>
<td>This annotation allows to show or hide data fields based on the state of the data instance. For more information, see Field Hiding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT, PARAMETER]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.masked</td>
<td></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default true</td>
<td>This annotation refers to, for example, passwords or pass phrases. The user interface may offer to show the value in clear text upon explicit user interaction. For more information, see Field Masking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.multiLineText</td>
<td></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default true</td>
<td>This annotation contains text that is rendered as multiple lines. For more information, see Multi-Line Text [page 732].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Scope:</strong> [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.textArrangement</td>
<td></td>
<td>String(13)</td>
<td>enum</td>
<td>Description: This annotation specifies the arrangement of code-text pairs. <strong>Scope:</strong> [ENTITY, ELEMENT] <strong>Evaluation Runtime (Engine):</strong> SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations <strong>Values:</strong> String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TEXT_FIRST</td>
<td></td>
<td>● TEXT_FIRST: The text is displayed in front of the code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TEXT_LAST</td>
<td></td>
<td>● TEXT_LAST: The code is displayed in front of the text.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TEXT_ONLY</td>
<td></td>
<td>● TEXT_ONLY: The text is displayed without the code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TEXT_SEPARATE</td>
<td></td>
<td>● TEXT_SEPARATE: TEXT_SEPARATE The text and the code are displayed separately.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This element uniquely identifies alternative values for an annotation; only allowed if parentId is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>feature</td>
<td>String(40)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies the name of a feature toggle that determines visibility of the facet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>id</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This element is the identifier of the facet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
<td>#not compatible with UI.facet.parentID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>△ Caution</td>
<td>You can only use this annotation, if parentId is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HEADER;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>QUICK_VIEW;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>QUICK_CREATE;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FILTER;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>default: STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies the purpose of a facet; only allowed if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>parentId is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>parentId</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td>#not compatible with UI.facet.purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>△ Caution</td>
<td>You can only use this annotation, if purpose is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation identifies the parent facet. Only allowed if purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>is not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies the relative position of the Facet within its</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>parent or term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Must be specified to allow interspersing extension elements via extend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>views.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>exclude</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>Marker to explicitly exclude a CDS element from the collection of DataField</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>for a derived view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>The annotation hidden allows providing a static Boolean value (for facets hidden by default and e.g. made visible via code exit in the UI), but usually the value will be provided by referencing a Boolean element of the same view using the #(...) syntax. The latter allows to dynamically switch the facet on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>isPartOfPreview</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>This annotation determines that this facet and all included facets are part of the thing preview.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>isSummary</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>This annotation specifies that this facet and all included facets are the summary of the thing. At most one facet of a thing can be tagged with this term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>isMap</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: true</td>
<td>This annotation specifies that this facet is best represented as a geographic map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>importance</td>
<td>String(6) enum</td>
<td>● HIGH ● MEDIUM ● LOW</td>
<td>This expresses the importance of dataFields or other annotations. It can be used e.g. in dynamic rendering approaches with responsive design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.facet</td>
<td>label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation can contain a language-dependent text; if omitted, the label of the annotated element or the label of the element referenced via value which is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| UI.facet          | type       | String(40) enum | - COLLECTION:  
  • id element is required  
  • no additional elements are available  
  • ADDRESSREFERENCE  
  - targetElement element is available  
  - targetQualifier element is available  
  - isMap element is available  
  - BADGEBASEREFERENCE  
  - CHARTREFERENCE  
  - CONTACTREFERENCE  
  - DATAPONTPREFERENCE  
  - HEADERINFOREFERENCE  
  - IDENTIFICATIONREFERENCE  
  - LINEITEMREFERENCE | This enumeration element specifies the concrete type of the facet. The enumeration type value determines which CDS annotation elements are required or available |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● targetElement element is available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● targetQualifier element is available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● STATUSINFO_REFERENCE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● targetElement element is available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● targetQualifier element is available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● URL_REFERENCE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● url element is available</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UI.facet**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetType</td>
<td>elementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies a path to the CDS view whose annotation is referenced. Not specified means the current view. The path is converted to an OData AnnotationPath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>targetQualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is the qualifier of the referenced annotation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation specifies a path to structural element containing the navigation URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>exclude</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>importance</td>
<td>String(6) enum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HIGH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MEDIUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LOW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.lineItem</strong></td>
<td><strong>type</strong></td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
<td>AS_ADDRESS;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CHART;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CON-NECTED_FIELDS;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CONTACT;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_DATAPOINT;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_FIELDGROUP;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR_ACTION;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR_IN-TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STANDARD;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_IN-TENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_URL;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>} default #STANDARD;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.lineItem</strong></td>
<td><strong>label</strong></td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.lineItem</strong></td>
<td><strong>iconUrl</strong></td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>criticalityRepresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>• WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• WITH_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| UI.lineItem       | dataAction | String(120)     |             | This annotation can be used if the line item type is FOR_ACTION. The element references the technical name of an action of the Business Object Processing Framework (BOPF), for example. In this case, the string pattern is BOPF:<technical name of action in BOPF>.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>requiresContext</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: True</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This annotation expresses how multiple invocations of the same action on multiple instances are grouped.

**ISOLATED Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. This item will not be copied, the other four items are copied.

**CHANGE_SET Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. None of the selected items are copied.

This annotation refers to the name of an action on the semantic object. The semantic object is taken from `@Consumption.semanticObject` or derived via an association from the defining view.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `Ul.lineItem`     | `value`     | `ElementRef`  |               | For type `AS_ADDRESS`:
|                   |             |               |               |  ● Value element must not be used when an element is annotated. Use instead `@com.sap.vocabularies.Communication.v1.Address` (or a shorter alias-qualified name) as value.  
|                   |             |               |               |  ● Value element must be used when an association is annotated. The value is a path to an element of the associated view.  
|                   |             |               |               | All other types:
|                   |             |               |               |  ● Value element must be used when an element is annotated, in this case the annotated element is the value.  
|                   |             |               |               |  ● Value element must be used when an element of a structural element is annotated. Use instead `@com.sap.vocabularies.Communication.v1.Address` (or a shorter alias-qualified name) as value.  
<p>|                   |             |               |               | This annotation refers to a value. |
|                   | <code>valueQualifier</code> | <code>String(120)</code> |               |             |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>targetElement</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.lineItem.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.lineItem.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.lineItem</td>
<td>url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. Caution You need to specify UI.lineItem.url when you use the annotation UI.lineItem.type of type WITH_URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotation belonging to UI.identification represent an ordered collection of specific data fields that together with headerInfo identifies an entity to an end user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is displayed in the General Information section in the body of the object view floorplan of an item, for example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Values: array of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If you want to use more than one table, you need a qualifier to distinguish them on the UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td>#mandatory</td>
<td>With this annotation you specify the order of the columns of a list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.identification</code></td>
<td><code>exclude</code></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td>This annotation allows excluding the element from the OData annotation on the derived view by setting it to <code>true</code>. The element is optional. For more information, see Inheritance of Annotations [page 735]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.identification</code></td>
<td><code>hidden</code></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td>The annotation <code>hidden</code> allows providing a static boolean value, but usually the value will be provided by referencing a Boolean element of the same view using the <code>#(...)</code> syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.identification</code></td>
<td><code>importance</code></td>
<td>String(6) enum</td>
<td><img src="https://sap-biz-arch.typesetcdn.com/images/notes/important.png" alt="Note" /></td>
<td>This annotation expresses the importance of dataFields or other annotations. The element can be used, for example, in dynamic rendering approaches with responsive design patterns. Example: You defined a table with several columns. The columns that need to be displayed always, get importance <code>HIGH</code>. This ensures that these columns are displayed in a table when this table is rendered on a small display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- HIGH
- MEDIUM
- LOW
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>String(40)</td>
<td>enum</td>
<td>AS_ADDRESS; AS_CHART; AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS; AS_CONTACT; AS_DATAPoint; AS_FIELDGROUP; FOR_ACTION; FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION; STANDARD; WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION; WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH; WITH_URL; } default #STANDARD;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>label</td>
<td>String(60)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for column titles in tables headers. If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element referenced via the value is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>iconUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Neutral: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Negative: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Critical: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Positive: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>criticalityRepresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: WITHOUT_ICON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>dataAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can be used if the line item type is FOR_ACTION. The element references the technical name of an action of the Business Object Processing Framework (BOPF), for example. In this case, the string pattern is BOPF:&lt;technical name of action in BOPF&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>requiresContext</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: True</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This annotation expresses how multiple invocations of the same action on multiple instances are grouped.

**ISOLATED Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. This item will not be copied, the other four items are copied.

**CHANGE_SET Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. None of the selected items are copied.

Default: ISOLATED
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>For type AS_ADDRESS:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Value element must not be used when an element is annotated. Use instead <code>@com.sap.vocabularies.Communication.v1.Address</code> (or a shorter alias-qualified name) as value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Value element must be used when an association is annotated. The value is a path to an element of the associated view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>valueQuali</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>All other types:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Value element must not be used when an element is annotated, in this case the annotated element is the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>● Value element must be used when an association is annotated. The value is a path to an element of the associated view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This annotation refers to a value.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>targetElement</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.lineItem.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.lineItem.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.identification</td>
<td>url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠ Caution

You need to specify UI.identification.url when you use the annotation UI.identification.type of type WITH_URL.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.statusInfo represent a list of abstract data fields that convey the status of an entity. UI.statusInfo annotations are usually used in the header section of an item's object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Scope: [ELEMENT]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Values: array of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. If you want to use more than one table, you need a qualifier to distinguish them on the UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>DecimalFloat</td>
<td></td>
<td>With this annotation you specify the order of the columns of a list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>exclude</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation allows excluding the element from the OData annotation on the derived view by setting it to true. The element is optional. For more information, see Inheritance of Annotations [page 735]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UI.statusInfo annotations are usually used in the header section of an item's object view floorplan.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>The annotation hidden allows providing a static boolean value, but usually the value will be provided by referencing a Boolean element of the same view using the #(...) syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>importance</td>
<td>String(6) enum</td>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td>MEDIUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.statusInfo</strong></td>
<td><strong>type</strong></td>
<td>String{40} enum</td>
<td>AS_ADDRESS;</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for column titles in tables headers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CHART;</td>
<td>If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element referenced via the value is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CONTACT;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_DATAPoint;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_FIELDGROUP;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR_ACTION;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_URL;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>} default #STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>label</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.statusInfo</strong></td>
<td><strong>label</strong></td>
<td>String{60}</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UI.statusInfo</strong></td>
<td><strong>iconUrl</strong></td>
<td>String{1024}</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Neutral</strong>: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Negative</strong>: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Critical</strong>: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Positive</strong>: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>criticalityRepresen</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>WITHOUT_ICON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>WITH_ICON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: <strong>WITHOUT_ICON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>dataAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can be used if the line item type is FOR_ACTION. The eleme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nt references the technical name of an action of the Business Object Processi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ng Framework (BOPF), for example. In this case, the string pattern is BOPF:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;technical name of action in BOPF&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>requiresContext</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>invocationGrouping</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation expresses how multiple invocations of the same action on multiple instances are grouped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ISOLATED</strong>: Describes the error handling when an action cannot be executed on all selected instances: The action is executed on all instances except for instance on which the action cannot be executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHANGE_SET</strong>: Describes the error handling when an action cannot be executed on all selected instances: If an action cannot be executed on one of the selected instances, the action is executed on none of the selected instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: ISOLATED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ISOLATED Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. This item will not be copied, the other four items are copied.

**CHANGE_SET Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. None of the selected items are copied.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>semanticObjectAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to the name of an action on the semantic object. The semantic object is taken from @Consumption.semanticObject or derived via an association from the defining view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This annotation needs to be specified if you use UI.lineItem.type of type FOR_ACTION.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.statusInfo</code></td>
<td><code>value</code></td>
<td><code>ElementRef</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>For type <code>AS_ADDRESS</code>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must not be used when an element is annotated. Use instead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>@com.sap.vocabularies.Communication.v1.Address</code> (or a shorter alias-qualified name) as value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must be used when an element of a CDS view is annotated. A value of <code>.</code> refers to <code>@Semantics.address</code> on the view that is directly associated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- If you want to reference <code>@Semantics.address</code> on a view that is indirectly associated, use a path starting with a dot as value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other types:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must not be used when an element is annotated, in this case the annotated element is the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must be used when an association is annotated. The value is a path to an element of the associated view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| <code>UI.statusInfo</code>   | <code>valueQualifier</code> | <code>String(120)</code>  |       | This annotation refers to a value.                                          |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>targetElement</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.lineItem.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.lineItem.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.statusInfo</td>
<td>url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL. You need to specify UI.statusInfo.url when you use the annotation UI.statusInfo.type of type WITH_URL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Caution

You need to specify UI.statusInfo.url when you use the annotation UI.statusInfo.type of type WITH_URL.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Annotations belonging to UI.fieldGroup is an ordered collection of data fields with a label for the group. UI.fieldGroup annotations are used to represent parts of a single data instance in a form. Scope: [ELEMENT] Evaluation Runtime (Engine): SADL: Translates CDS annotations into the corresponding OData annotations Values: array of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. If you want to use more than one table, you need a qualifier to distinguish them on the UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>exclude</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td>This annotation allows excluding the element from the OData annotation on the derived view by setting it to true. The element is optional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For more information, see Inheritance of Annotations [page 735]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td>The annotation hidden allows providing a static boolean value, but usually the value will be provided by referencing a Boolean element of the same view using the #(...) syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>importance</td>
<td>String(6) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation expresses the importance of dataFields or other annotations. The element can be used, for example, in dynamic rendering approaches with responsive design patterns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>You defined a table with several columns. The columns that need to be displayed always, get importance HIGH. This ensures that these columns are displayed in a table when this table is rendered on a small display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\* Note:
If no importance is defined, the line item is treated like having importance LOW.

- HIGH
- MEDIUM
- LOW
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.fieldGroup</code></td>
<td><code>type</code></td>
<td><code>String(40) enum</code></td>
<td><code>AS_ADDRESS;</code></td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for column titles in tables headers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>AS_CHART;</code></td>
<td>If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element referenced via the value is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>AS_CONTACT;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>AS_DATAPOINT;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>AS_FIELDGROUP;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>FOR_ACTION;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>STANDARD;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>WITH_URL;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>} default #STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>label</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.fieldGroup</code></td>
<td><code>label</code></td>
<td><code>String(60)</code></td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for column titles in tables headers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If omitted, the label of the annotated element, or the label of the element referenced via the value is used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.fieldGroup</code></td>
<td><code>iconUrl</code></td>
<td><code>String(1024)</code></td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td>Neutral: 0</td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Negative: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical: 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Positive: 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>criticalityReprese</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td>WITHOUT_ICON</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ntion</td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_ICON</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITHOUT_ICON</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>dataAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can be used if the line item type is FOR_ACTION. The element references the technical name of an action of the Business Object Processing Framework (BOPF), for example. In this case, the string pattern is BOPF:&lt;technical name of action in BOPF&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>requiresContext</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>invocationGrouping</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation expresses how multiple invocations of the same action on multiple instances are grouped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ISOLATED:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Describes the error handling when an action cannot be executed on all selected instances: The action is executed on all instances except for instance on which the action cannot be executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CHANGE_SET:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Describes the error handling when an action cannot be executed on all selected instances: If an action cannot be executed on one of the selected instances, the action is executed on none of the selected instances.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ISOLATED Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. This item will not be copied, the other four items are copied.

**CHANGE_SET Example:**
A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. None of the selected items are copied.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>semanticObjectAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to the name of an action on the semantic object. The semantic object is taken from @Consumption.semanticObject or derived via an association from the defining view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.fieldGroup</code></td>
<td><code>value</code></td>
<td><code>ElementRef</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>For type <code>AS_ADDRESS</code>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must not be used when a structural element is annotated. Use instead @com.sap.vocabulary.Communication.v1.Address (or a shorter alias-qualified name) as value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must be used when an element of an associated CDS view is annotated. A value of '.' refers to @Semantics.address on the view that is directly associated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- If you want to reference @Semantics.address on a view that is indirectly associated, use a path starting with a dot as value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All other types:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must not be used when an element is annotated, in this case the annotated element is the value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- Value element must be used when an association is annotated. The value is a path to an element of the associated view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>ValueQualifer</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>UI.fieldGroup</code></td>
<td><code>valueQualifier</code></td>
<td><code>String</code></td>
<td>(120)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>targetElement</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to an element of an associated CDS view. The path is converted to an OData NavigationPropertyPath. Using this annotation, you can link from the header part of an object view floorplan to a target element. You need to specify UI.lineItem.targetElement when you use the annotation UI.lineItem.type of type WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH. You might, for example, provide background information to an item that is opened on the object view floorplan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.fieldGroup</td>
<td>url</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation represents the path to a structural element that contains a navigation URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Caution</strong> You need to specify UI.fieldGroup.url when you use the annotation UI.fieldGroup.type of type WITH_URL..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>qualifier</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation is used to group and uniquely identify annotations. If you want to use more than one table, you need a qualifier to distinguish them on the UI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>groupLabel</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation contains language-dependent text that is used as label for the field group. The first occurrence for a given qualifier wins. Other occurrences for the same qualifier are redundant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>template</td>
<td>String(255)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>exclude</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td>This annotation allows excluding the element from the OData annotation on the derived view by setting it to true. The element is optional. For more information, see Inheritance of Annotations [page 735]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td>Default: True</td>
<td>The annotation hidden allows providing a static boolean value, but usually the value will be provided by referencing a Boolean element of the same view using the #(...) syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>importance</td>
<td>String(6) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

If no importance is defined, the line item is treated like having importance LOW.

- **HIGH**
- **MEDIUM**
- **LOW**

This annotation expresses the importance of dataFields or other annotations. The element can be used, for example, in dynamic rendering approaches with responsive design patterns.

Example:

You defined a table with several columns. The columns that need to be displayed always, get importance HIGH. This ensures that these columns are displayed in a table when this table is rendered on a small display.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>String(40) enum</td>
<td>AS_ADDRESS;</td>
<td>This annotation contains a language-dependent text that can be used for column titles in tables headers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CHART;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CONNECTED_FIELDS;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_CONTACT;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_DATAPoint;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AS_FIELDGROUP;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR_ACTION;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FOR_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_INTENT_BASED_NAVIGATION;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_NAVIGATION_PATH;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WITH_URL;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>} default #STANDARD;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>label</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iconUrl</td>
<td>String(1024)</td>
<td>#optional</td>
<td>This annotation contains the URL to an icon image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>criticality</td>
<td>ElementRef</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation references to another element that has the values 0, 1, 2, or 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Neutral</strong>: 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Negative</strong>: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Critical</strong>: 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Positive</strong>: 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>criticalityRepresentation</td>
<td>String(12) enum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>WITHOUT_ICON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>WITH_ICON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: <strong>WITHOUT_ICON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>dataAction</td>
<td>String(120)</td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation can be used if the line item type is FOR_ACTION. The element references the technical name of an action of the Business Object Processing Framework (BOPF), for example. In this case, the string pattern is BOPF:&lt;technical name of action in BOPF&gt;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UI.connectedFields</td>
<td>requiresContext</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default: True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent Annotation</td>
<td>Annotation</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| UI.connectedFields   | invocationGrouping  | String(12) enum | #optional | This annotation expresses how multiple invocations of the same action on multiple instances are grouped.  
**ISOLATED Example:** A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. This item will not be copied, the other four items are copied.  
**CHANGE_SET Example:** A user selects five items in a list and wants to copy them. One item cannot be copied. None of the selected items are copied. |
<p>|                      | semanticObjectAction | String(120)   |       | This annotation refers to the name of an action on the semantic object. The semantic object is taken from @Consumption.semanticObject or derived via an association from the defining view. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| `ui.connectedFields` | `value`    | `ElementRef` |       | For type `AS_ADDRESS`:
|                   |            |            |       | - Value element must not be used when a structural element is annotated. Use instead `@com.sap.vocabularies.Communication.v1.Address` (or a shorter alias-qualified name) as value. |
|                   |            |            |       | - Value element must be used when an element of an associated CDS view is annotated. A value of `.` refers to `@Semantics.address` on the view that is directly associated. |
|                   |            |            |       | - If you want to reference `@Semantics.address` on a view that is indirectly associated, use a path starting with a dot as value. |
|                   |            |            |       | All other types: |
|                   |            |            |       | - Value element must not be used when an element is annotated, in this case the annotated element is the value. |
|                   |            |            |       | - Value element must be used when an association is annotated. The value is a path to an element of the associated view. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Annotation</th>
<th>Annotation</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ui.connectedFields</code></td>
<td><code>valueQualifier</code></td>
<td><code>String(120)</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>This annotation refers to a value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Example

#### 7.2 API Documentation

The ABAP RESTful Programming Model provides components and interfaces to implement the REST contract. This allows the ABAP developer to implement specific use cases that are not executed automatically.

*Business Object Provider API [page 925]*

*Unmanaged Query API [page 948]*
7.2.1 Business Object Provider API

The implementation of business object functionality is done in a special type of class pool, which refers to the behavior definition, in which the behavior for the business object is defined. For the implementation type `unmanaged`, application developers must implement essential components of the REST contract themselves. For this, all desired operations (create, update, delete) must be specified in the corresponding behavior definition artifact by using the Behavior Definition Language (BDL) before they are implemented with ABAP. For the implementation type `managed`, standard operations, such as create, update and delete are assumed by the framework and application developers only have to implement the components of the business logic that are part of the specific application logic as non-standard behavior.

The implementation is carried out in a special type of class pool, the behavior pool, which refers to the behavior definition. The global class is defined with the following syntax:

```plaintext
CLASS Classname DEFINITION
PUBLIC ABSTRACT FINAL
FOR BEHAVIOR OF BehaviorDefinition.
ENDCLASS.

CLASS Classname IMPLEMENTATION.
ENDCLASS.
```

The concrete implementation of the business logic is based on the ABAP language and the Business Object Behavior API.

The implementation tasks are roughly divided into an interaction phase and a save sequence. The interaction phase is represented by the local handler class and the save sequence by the local saver class.

→ Remember

There are some specific rules for assigning names to local classes in a behavior pool. Both handler classes and saver classes are recognized by derivation from the respective system base class. The names LCL_HANDLER and LCL_SAVER are suggested by ADT when you create the class pool, but can be changed. We recommend applying naming conventions for behavior pools and local handler and saver classes corresponding to Naming Conventions for Development Objects.

At the top of the class hierarchy for the BO API is the class `CL_ABAP_BEHV`. This class is the foundation class for the handler and the saver class. It defines some fundamental data types to be used in the behavior processing (such as field names in derived type structures) and also provides message creation methods.

The classes that derive from this base class are:

- `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER` – This class is the base class for the handler.
- `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER` – This class is the base class for the saver. It specifies the signature of all methods used to implement the save sequence of a business object provider.
Detailed Information

- Implementing **Handler Classes** [page 926]
- Implementing **Saver Classes** [page 937]
- Using **Implicit Returning Parameters** [page 945]
- Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941]

### 7.2.1.1 Handler Classes

To implement the behavior specified in the behavior definition, a special global ABAP class, the behavior pool is used. This global class is implicitly defined as **ABSTRACT** and **FINAL**. So, the behavior implementation cannot be found from outside the BO. A behavior pool can have static methods, **CLASS-DATA**, **CONSTANTS** and **TYPES**. The application may place common or even public aspects of its implementation here.
The real substance of a behavior pool is located in Local Types. Here you can define two types of special local classes: handler classes for the operations within the interaction phase and saver classes for the operations within the save sequence.

Within the global behavior pool one or multiple local handler classes are defined. Each such local class inherits from the base class CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_HANDLER. The signature of the handler methods are type-based on the entity that is defined by the keyword FOR [OPERATION] entity. If there is an alias defined in the behavior definition, the alias has to be used.

Syntax: Definition of the Local Handler Class

```abap
CLASS lcl_handler DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_handler.
PRIVATE SECTION.
/* FOR MODIFY method declaration */
METHODS modify_method FOR MODIFY
[IMPORTING]
create_import_parameter FOR CREATE entity
update_import_parameter FOR UPDATE entity
delete_import_parameter FOR DELETE entity
action_import_parameter FOR ACTION entity\_action_name
[REQUEST requested-fields]
[RESULT action_export_parameter]
create_ba_import_parameter FOR CREATE entity\_association.
/* FOR AUTHORIZATION method declaration */
METHODS auth_method FOR AUTHORIZATION
[IMPORTING] keys REQUEST requested_features FOR entity
RESULT result_parameter.
/* FOR FEATURES method declaration */
METHODS feature_ctrl_method FOR FEATURES
[IMPORTING] keys REQUEST requested_features FOR entity
RESULT result_parameter.
/* FOR GLOBAL FEATURES method declaration */
METHODS get_global_features FOR GLOBAL FEATURES
[REQUEST] requested_features FOR entity
RESULT result_parameter.
/* FOR LOCK method declaration */
METHODS lock_method FOR LOCK
[IMPORTING] lock_import_parameter FOR LOCK entity.
/* FOR READ method declaration */
METHODS read_method FOR READ
[IMPORTING] read_import_parameter FOR READ entity
RESULT read_export_parameter.
/* FOR READ by association method */
METHODS read_by_assoc_method_name FOR READ
[IMPORTING] read_ba_import_parameter FOR READ entity\_association
FULL full_read_import_parameter
RESULT read_result_parameter
LINK read_link_parameter.
ENDCLASS.
```
### Method Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;method&gt;</code> FOR MODIFY</td>
<td>Handles all changing operations (create, update, delete, and specific actions as they are specified in the behavior definition) of an entity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;method&gt;</code> FOR AUTHORIZATION</td>
<td>Implements authorization checks for accessing entities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;method&gt;</code> FOR FEATURES</td>
<td>Implements the dynamic feature control of entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;method&gt;</code> FOR GLOBAL FEATURES</td>
<td>Implements the global feature control of entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;method&gt;</code> FOR LOCK</td>
<td>Implements the locking of entities corresponding to the lock properties in the behavior definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;method&gt;</code> FOR READ</td>
<td>Handles the processing of reading requests</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Method Details

- `<method>` FOR MODIFY [page 928]
- `<method>` FOR LOCK [page 171]
- `<method>` FOR READ [page 933]
- Authorization Implementation [page 124]
- Global Feature Control Implementation [page 116]
- Instance Feature Control Implementation: Dynamic Feature Control [page 107]

#### 7.2.1.1.1 `<method>` FOR MODIFY

Handles all changing operations of an entity.

The `<method>` FOR MODIFY method implements the standard operations create, update, delete, and application-specific actions, as they are specified in the behavior definition.

> **Tip**

The `<method>` FOR MODIFY method can handle multiple entities (root, item, sub item) and multiple operations during one processing step. In some cases, it might be useful to split the handler implementation into separate methods. Then, multiple behavior handlers, that is, multiple local behavior classes within one global behavior pool or even in multiple global behavior pools, can be defined.
Declaration of `<method> FOR MODIFY`

The declaration of the `<method> FOR MODIFY` expresses what changing operations this method is responsible for. In extreme cases, this is the total number of all changing operations that are possible according to the behavior definition.

Each individual specification within the declaration of `modify_method FOR MODIFY` consists of a combination of an operation with an entity or an entity part. To refer to the entities, the alias given in behavior definition is used - if there is any.

Each operation type has an import parameter `<operation>_import_parameter` for the incoming instance data and. Its name is freely selectable. The method includes an export parameter `action_export_parameter` if the operation type expects one. Action, for example, can have export parameters for their results.

The import parameters for `CREATE, UPDATE and CREATE by association` include the control structure `%control` to identify which fields have been filled by the caller.

You can declare all operations in a single `<method> FOR MODIFY`:

```
METHODS modify_method FOR MODIFY
  IMPORTING
    create_import_parameter FOR CREATE entity
    update_import_parameter FOR UPDATE entity
    delete_import_parameter FOR DELETE entity
    action_import_parameter FOR ACTION entity~action_name
    [REQUEST requested-fields]
    [RESULT action_export_parameter]
    create_ba_import_parameter FOR CREATE entity\_association.
```

You can also declare a `<method> FOR MODIFY` for each operation. In many cases, it can be beneficial to implement the individual MODIFY operations in separate methods. This may be particularly the case if the implementations for the respective operations are more extensive.

```
METHODS:
  create_entity_method FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING
    create_import_parameter FOR CREATE entity,
  update_entity_method FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING
    update_import_parameter FOR UPDATE entity,
  delete_entity_method FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING
    delete_import_parameter FOR DELETE entity,
  action_method FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING
    action_import_parameter FOR ACTION entity~action_name,
  create_by_association FOR MODIFY
    IMPORTING
    create_ba_import_parameter FOR CREATE entity\_association.
```

For the sake of better readability, the keyword `IMPORTING` can be specified before the first import parameter.

The parameters can also be explicitly declared as `REFERENCE (...)`; However, the declaration as `VALUE (...)` is not allowed and therefore the importing parameters cannot be changed in the method.

**Note**

The data types with which the parameters are implicitly provided by the ABAP compiler are `derived types` resulting from the behavior definition. They usually contain at least the instance key according to the CDS definition, or even the full row type, as well as other components that result from the model (action...
parameter) or other features of the BO, such as \%pid in case of late numbering. For more information, see Declaration of Derived Data Types [page 941].

The method FOR MODIFY has three implicit changing parameters failed, mapped, and reported. These parameters can (but do not need to) be explicitly declared (developers may find this explicit declaration helpful), like this:

```abap
METHODS method_name FOR MODIFY
  [IMPORTING]
  create_import_parameter    FOR CREATE entity
  ...
  CHANGING   failed   TYPE DATA
             mapped   TYPE DATA
             reported TYPE DATA.
```

Since the derived types also come here into play, you cannot explicitly write them down. The ABAP compiler accepts the generic type DATA and replaces it with the respective derived types resulting from the behavior definition.

Each of FAILED, MAPPED, REPORTED is a structure type with one component per entity from the behavior definition (that is, per entity in a business object). The names of the components are the aliases defined in the behavior definition or else the original entity names.

All parameters and components of these structures are tables to allow mass processing. Together with the bundling of multiple operations in a method, it is possible to implement large modification requests in a single FOR MODIFY method call.

**Implementation of `<method>` FOR MODIFY**

**When is the FOR MODIFY Method Called?**

The FOR MODIFY method is called when the BO framework processes a change request that contains at least one of the operations defined in the method FOR MODIFY.

The FOR MODIFY method can determine which operations are specifically given, for example, in this way:

```abap
... parameter   IS [NOT] INITIAL.
```

**Example**

```abap
IF create_import_parameter IS NOT INITIAL.
...
  " code for creating entities
ENDIF.
```

**Sequence of Processing of Individual Operations**

The BO framework does not specify an order for the processing of individual operations within a FOR MODIFY call. It is therefore assumed that the application layer processes all the individual operations that are passed in a meaningful order for them. For example, it is usually useful to process create operations before update operations.
Retrieving Results from Operation Processing

To get the output of an action call with a defined `RESULT`, the named export parameter `action_export_parameter` must be filled.

There are no explicit return parameters to be filled for all other operations. However, the three returning structures `failed`, `reported`, and `mapped` must be filled when the corresponding events happen. Their construction results in a fairly readable pattern, for example, to report failed instances or to store messages for instances:

```
APPEND ... TO failed-Item.
APPEND ... TO reported-Root.
```

All derived types also contain components that do not originate from the line type of the entity and begin with the character `%` to avoid naming conflicts with original components. For example, the row type of a `failed` table contains a component `%fail` to store the symptom for a failed instance; Also, an include structure `%key` that summarizes the primary key fields of the entity. `%key` is part of almost all derived types, including operation parameters. An overview of all derived types is given in...
Thus, the above pattern can be as follows:

```abap
APPEND VALUE #( %KEY = <item>-%KEY %FAIL = IF_ABAP_BEHV=>CAUSE=... %CID = ...)
TO failed-Item.
```

**Related Information**

Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 7.2.1.1.2 <method> FOR LOCK

Implements the lock for entities in accordance with the lock properties specified in the behavior definition. The **FOR LOCK** method is automatically called by the orchestration framework [page 1032] framework before a changing (MODIFY) operation such as update is called.

**Declaration of** <method> FOR LOCK

In the behavior definition, you can determine which entities support direct locking by defining them as lock master.

**Note**

The definition of lock master is currently only supported for root nodes of business objects.

In addition, you can define entities as lock dependent. This status can be assigned to entities that depend on the locking status of a parent or root entity. The specification of lock dependent contains the association by which the runtime automatically determines the corresponding lock master whose method FOR LOCK is executed when change requests for the dependent entities occur.

The declaration of the predefined LOCK method in the behavior definition is the following:

```abap
METHODS lock_method FOR LOCK
  IMPORTING lock_import_parameter FOR LOCK entity.
```

The keyword IMPORTING can be specified before the import parameter. The name of the import parameter lock_import_parameter can be freely selected.

The placeholder entity refers to the name of the entity (such as a CDS view) or to the alias defined in the behavior definition.

**Import Parameters**

The row type of the import table provides the following data:

- ID fields
All elements that are specified as a key in the related CDS view.

**i Note**
The compiler-generated structures %CID, %CID_REF, and %PID are not relevant in the context of locking since locking only affects persisted (non-transient) instances.

**Changing Parameters**
The LOCK method also provides the implicit CHANGING parameters failed and reported.

- The failed parameter is used to log the causes when a lock fails.
- The reported parameter is used to store messages about the fail cause.

You have the option of explicitly declaring these parameters in the LOCK method as follows:

```abap
METHODS lock_method FOR LOCK
IMPORTING lock_import_parameter FOR LOCK entity
CHANGING failed   TYPE DATA
    reported TYPE DATA.
```

**Implementation of** method FOR LOCK

The RAP lock mechanism requires the instantiation of a lock object. A lock object is an ABAP dictionary object, with which you can enqueue and dequeue locking request. For tooling information about lock objects, see [here](#).

The enqueue method of the lock object writes an entry in the global lock tables and locks the required entity instances.

An example on how to implement the method FOR LOCK is given in Implementing the LOCK Operation [page 414].

**Related Information**

Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

**7.2.1.1.3 <method> FOR READ**

Implements a handler for processing reading requests.

The FOR READ method is used to return the data from the application buffer. If the buffer is empty, the data is read from the database (which typically populates the application buffer).

There are two options to read data from the application buffer:

- Direct READ, see Declaration of <method> FOR READ [page 934].
• READ by association, see Declaration of <method> FOR READ By Association [page 935].

Declaration of <method> FOR READ

Similar to <method> FOR MODIFY, the handler <method> FOR READ is also implemented to handle mass requests. It is also designed to bundle multiple operations.

METHODS method_name FOR READ
    [IMPORTING] read_import_parameter FOR READ entity
RESULT read_result_parameter.

Again, for the sake of better readability, the keyword IMPORTING can be specified before the import parameter. The name of the import parameter read_import_parameter can be freely selected. It imports the key(s) of the instance entity to be read and indicates which elements are requested.

The placeholder entity refers to the name of the entity (such as a CDS view) that you want to read from or to the alias defined in the behavior definition.

The parameter RESULT is a changing parameter. Its name can be freely selected.

Import Parameters

The row type of the import table read_import_parameter provides the following:

- ID fields
  All elements that are specified as a key in the related CDS view.
- %CONTROL
  The control structure reflects which elements are requested by the consumer.

Exporting Parameters

- read_result_parameter
  Returns the successfully read data.
  The row type of this table provides all elements that are specified in the element list of the entity that is read. Only the requested elements, which are indicated in the %control structure, must be filled.

Changing Parameters

In addition to the explicitly declared return parameter, the READ method also provides the implicit CHANGING parameters failed, mapped, and reported.

- The failed parameter is used to log the entries that could not be read. You can specify the fail cause for the READ, for example notfound.
- The mapped parameter must not be filled in READ implementations.
- The reported parameter must not be filled in READ implementations.

For more information about the implicitly declared parameters, see Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945].
Declaration of `<method>` FOR READ By Association

The syntax for the READ by association is similar to the one for the direct READ.

```abap
METHODS method_name FOR READ
  [IMPORTING] read_ba_import_parameter FOR READ entity\_association
  FULL full_read_import_parameter
  RESULT read_result_parameter
  LINK read_link_parameter.
```

As for the other operation implementations, the keyword IMPORTING can optionally be specified explicitly. All parameter names can be freely selected.

The importing parameter `read_ba_import_parameter` imports the key(s) of the entity instance whose associated entity instance shall be read. In addition, it indicates which elements from the associated entity shall be read.

The placeholder `entity` refers to the name of the entity (such as a CDS view) or to the alias defined in the behavior definition, which is the source of the association.

The placeholder `association` refers to the association along which you want to read data, for example `_booking` if you want to read all bookings associated to one travel instance.

The parameter `full_read_import_parameter` indicates whether the RESULT parameter must be filled or if only the LINK parameter must be filled. It has a boolean value.

The parameter RESULT is an exporting parameter. It returns the requested elements that are indicated in the importing parameter if the FULL parameter is set.

The parameter LINK is also an exporting parameter. It returns the key elements of the source and target entities no matter if the FULL parameter is set.

**Import Parameters**

- The row type of the import table `read_ba_import_parameter` provides the following data:
  - ID fields
    - All elements that are specified as a key in the related CDS view.
  - %CONTROL
    - The control structure reflects which elements of the associated entity are requested by the consumer.
- The type of the import parameter `full_read_import_parameter` is a character with boolean value.

**Exporting Parameters**

- `read_ba_import_parameter`: Returns the successfully read data from the associated entity if the FULL parameter is set.
  - The row type of this table provides all elements that are specified in the element list of the entity that is read. Only the requested elements, which are indicated in the %CONTROL structure, must be filled.
- `read_link_parameter`: Returns the source and target key of the successfully read entity instances.

For more information about the implicitly declared parameters, see Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945].

**Changing Parameters**

In addition to the explicitly declared parameters, the method for READ by association also provides the implicit CHANGING parameters `failed`, `mapped`, and `reported`. 
● read ba import parameter: Returns the successfully read data from the associated entity if the FULL parameter is set. The row type of this table provides all elements that are specified in the element list of the entity that is read. Only the requested elements, which are indicated in the %control structure, must be filled.

● read link parameter: Returns the source and target key of the successfully read entity instances.

● The failed parameter is used to log the entries that could not be read. You can specify the fail cause for the READ, for example not_found.

● The mapped parameter must not be filled in READ implementations.

● The reported parameter must not be filled in READ implementations.

For more information about the implicitly declared parameters, see Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945].

7.2.1.1.4 <method> FOR FEATURES

This method implements the dynamic feature control for entities.

Dynamic feature control can be used for the standard operations update, delete, and create_by_association, for actions and on field level. Depending on the feature conditions is the operation executable or not. The <method> FOR FEATURES is called by the orchestration framework for every operation or field that is dynamically controlled.

Declaration of <method> FOR FEATURES

The operations or fields that are dynamically controlled are defined in the behavior definition with features: instance.

The dynamic feature control for an entity is implemented in a handler class using the method feature_ctrl_method. The signature of this handler method is defined by the keyword FOR FEATURES, followed by the input parameters keys and the requested_features of the entity.

METHODS feature_ctrl_method FOR FEATURES
IMPORTING keys REQUEST requested_features FOR entity
RESULT result.

Again, for the sake of better readability, the keyword IMPORTING can be specified before the import parameter.

i Note

The name of the <method> FOR FEATURES can be freely chosen. Often get_features is used as method name.

Import Parameters

● keys
  The table type of keys includes all elements that are specified as a key for the related entity.

● requested_features
The structure type of `requested_features` reflects which elements (fields, standard operations and actions) of the entity are requested for dynamic feature control by the consumer.

**Export Parameters**

The export parameter `result` is used to return the feature control values. It includes, besides the key fields, all the fields of the entity, standard operations and actions for which the features control was defined in the behavior definition.

**Export Parameters**

In addition to the explicitly declared export parameter, the `FOR FEATURE` method also provides the implicit `CHANGING parameters failed and reported`.

**Related Information**

Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 7.2.1.2 Saver Classes

**Save Sequence**

The save sequence is called for each business object after at least one successful modification was performed using the BO behavior APIs in the current LUW.

As depicted in the figure below, the save sequence starts with `finalize()` performing the final calculations before data can be persisted. If the subsequent `check_before_save()` call is positive for all transactional changes, the `point-of-no-return` is reached. From now on, a successful `save()` is guaranteed by all involved BOS. After the point-of-no-return, the `adjust_numbers()` call can occur to take care of `late numbering` [page 1029]. The `save()` call persists all BO instance data from the transactional buffer in the database.
All transactional methods are implemented in the local saver class that is a part of a global behavior pool. Each local saver class of this type inherits from the base class `CL_ABAP_BEHAVIOR_SAVER`. This superclass provides the transactional methods that need to be redefined in the local saver class.

**Syntax: Definition of the Transactional Methods**

```abap
CLASS lcl_saver DEFINITION INHERITING FROM cl_abap_behavior_saver.
  PROTECTED SECTION.
  METHODS finalize        REDEFINITION.
  METHODS check_before_save REDEFINITION.
  METHODS adjust_numbers  REDEFINITION.
  METHODS save            REDEFINITION.
ENDCLASS.
```
Method Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FINALIZE</td>
<td>Finalizes data changes before they can be persisted on the database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHECK BEFORE SAVE</td>
<td>Checks the application buffer for consistency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJUST NUMBERS</td>
<td>Implements late numbering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAVE</td>
<td>Saves the data from the transactional buffer to the database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Method Details

- Method FINALIZE [page 939]
- Method CHECK BEFORE_SAVE [page 940]
- Method ADJUST_NUMBERS [page 940]
- Method SAVE [page 941]

7.2.1.2.1 Method FINALIZE

Finalizes data changes before they can be persisted on the database.

The implementation of finalize() is optional.

You can use this method to perform final calculations with determinations before data is persisted on the database with the save() call.

Example

Let us assume that a SalesOrder triggers the calculation of the Pricing, which is quite complex and time consuming to be called for each modification during the consumer-BO interaction (to be precise, pricing is called by default for each modify(), but the customer can configure it to be executed only in finalize() to optimize the performance).

Changing Parameters

- MAPPED
- FAILED
  - The parameter FAILED is filled to log the entities for which finalize went wrong.
- REPORTED
You can fill the parameter **REPORTED** to return messages in case of failure.

More on this: Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 7.2.1.2.2 Method CHECK BEFORE SAVE

Checks the application buffer for consistency.

The implementation of `check_before_save()` is optional.

To enable a successful `save()`, the BO runtime must provide feedback in `check_before_save()` based on all transactional changes. This is done by validations that are called within the `check_before_save` method.

If the `check_before_save()` of all involved BOs returns positive feedback, the **point-of-no-return** is reached. From now on, a successful `save()` is guaranteed for all involved BOs and the data is persisted.

If, on the other hand, errors are reported in the changing parameter **FAILED**, the save chain is canceled.

**Changing Parameters**

- **MAPPED**
- **FAILED**
  - The parameter **FAILED** is filled to log the entities for which there is no positive feedback.
- **REPORTED**
  - You can fill the parameter **REPORTED** to return messages in case of failure.

More on this: Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 7.2.1.2.3 Method ADJUST NUMBERS

Implements late numbering.

The implementation of `adjust_numbers()` is only required if late numbering is modeled in the behavior definition.

Late numbering is a common concept for drawing gap-free numbers. In some cases, it can be business critical that identifier numbers are gap-free, for example invoice numbers. The third phase of the save sequence is implemented in `adjust_numbers()`. The output is a link table which maps `%PIDS` to the related drawn numbers. These final IDs are provided by means of the **MAPPED** exporting parameter so that temporary numbers can be exchanged. The implementation of this method assigns the final keys for the remaining content IDs.

**Changing Parameter**

- **MAPPED**
- **REPORTED**

  Messages can be reported via the implicit returning parameter **REPORTED**. As consumer errors must not appear after `CHECK BEFORE SAVE`, **REPORTED** should only contain success or information messages, such as *Material stock is low.*
The method must not fail and thus does not return any failed keys since the exchange of temporary IDs takes place after the point-of-no-return. If the application needs to stop the transaction, it can only produce a short dump.

More on this: Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 7.2.1.2.4 Method SAVE

Saves the data from the transactional buffer to the database.

The implementation of `save()` is mandatory.

The actual `save()` implementation gets access to the link table of the content IDs ( `%CID` ) and their numbers. Often these numbers are used as foreign keys, so that they need to be replaced before the data is persisted.

After the data is persisted, it is expected that the transactional buffer is cleared, since the same ABAP session might be used for more than one LUW [page 1030] and any remaining changes in the transactional buffer could lead to inconsistencies. Of course, the persisted transactional changes can be transferred to a read cache, once they are successfully saved.

**Changing Parameter**

- **REPORTED**

  Messages can be reported via the implicit returning parameter `REPORTED`. As consumer errors must not appear after `CHECK_BEFORE_SAVE`, `REPORTED` should only contain success or information messages, such as *Booking has been saved*.

---

The method must not fail and thus does not return any failed keys since the exchange of temporary IDs takes place after the point-of-no-return. If the application needs to stop the transaction, it can only produce a short dump.

More on this: Implicit Returning Parameters [page 945]

### 7.2.1.3 Declaration of Derived Data Types

**What is a Derived Data Type?**

For the type-safe parameterization of the BO provider code, the ABAP compiler derives data types from the involved CDS views and the behavior definition. These are called derived types because they are implicitly derived by the compiler from CDS entity types and their behavior definition. Derived types usually contain at
least the instance key according to the CDS definition, or even the full row type, as well as other components that result from the model (such as action parameters).

When implementing a BO provider, you can use specific derived types in method signatures in the context of the behavior implementation. This means you have the option of creating both local and global derived data types by using a new syntax for declaring import or export parameters.

**Type Declaration for Import Parameters**

Each individual type declaration consists of a combination of an operation with an entity or an entity part, such as an action. To refer to the entities, the alias given in the behavior definition should be used (if one exists).

Note that the syntax of an action import parameter definition differs a little from the type definition of those of the standard operation-related parameters.

```plaintext
TYPES type_for_import_parameter TYPE TABLE FOR {OPERATION} entity_name.
TYPES type_for_action_import TYPE TABLE FOR ACTION IMPORT entity_name~action_name.
```

{OPERATION} is one of the following:

- CREATE
- UPDATE
- DELETE
- LOCK
- READ IMPORT

The name of the import parameter type `type_for_import_parameter` can be freely selected, for example `it_create_travel` or `it_read_travel_id`.

The placeholder `entity_name` refers to the name of the entity (such as a CDS view) as it is defined in the behavior definition.

**Type Declaration for Export Parameters**

Similarly, local and global types can be defined for export parameters:

```plaintext
TYPES type_for_action_result_parameter TYPE TABLE FOR ACTION RESULT entity_name~action_name.
```

{RESULT_PARAMETER} is one of the following:

- MAPPED [LATE] - The mapped result parameters provide the consumer with ID mapping information. By default, the mapping information is already available in the interaction phase (early mapped). The CID is then mapped to the real key or to the PID. Using the addition LATE, you specify that the mapping information is only available in the save sequence. This plays a role when providing the late numbering (see also: Method ADJUST_NUMBERS [page 940]) where the PID is mapped to the real key.
- FAILED [LATE] - The failed parameters include information for identifying the data set where an error occurred. (Early) FAILED is provided during the interaction phase and contains the CID or the KEY to
indicate instances for which an operation failed. FAILED with the additional specification LATE is only provided during the save sequence and contains the PID or the KEY, but not the CID.

- **REPORTED [LATE]** - The reported parameters are used to return messages in case of failure. (Early) REPORTED is provided during the interaction phase and contains the CID or the KEY to indicate instances for which an operation failed. REPORTED with the additional specification LATE is only provided during the save sequence and contains the PID or the KEY, but not the CID.

- **READ RESULT**

## Type Declaration for Changing Parameters

Similarly, local and global types can be defined for export parameters:

```plaintext
TYPES type_for_export_parameter TYPE TABLE FOR {RESULT PARAMETER} entity_name.
TYPES type_for_action_result_parameter TYPE TABLE FOR ACTION RESULT entity_name~action_name.
```

{RESULT_PARAMETER} is one of the following:

- **MAPPED [LATE]** - The mapped result parameters provide the consumer with ID mapping information. By default, the mapping information is already available in the interaction phase (early mapped). The CID is then mapped to the real key or to the PID. Using the addition LATE, you specify that the mapping information is only available in the save sequence. This plays a role when providing the late numbering (see also: Method ADJUST_NUMBERS [page 940]) where the PID is mapped to the real key.

- **FAILED [LATE]** - The failed parameters include information for identifying the data set where an error occurred. (Early) FAILED is provided during the interaction phase and contains the CID or the KEY to indicate instances for which an operation failed. FAILED with the additional specification LATE is only provided during the save sequence and contains the PID or the KEY, but not the CID.

- **REPORTED [LATE]** - The reported parameters are used to return messages in case of failure. (Early) REPORTED is provided during the interaction phase and contains the CID or the KEY to indicate instances for which an operation failed. REPORTED with the additional specification LATE is only provided during the save sequence and contains the PID or the KEY, but not the CID.

- **READ RESULT**

The name of the export parameter type `type_for_export_parameter` or
`type_for_action_result_parameter` can be freely selected, for example `et_create_travel` or `et_read_travel_id_out`.

`entity_name` refers to the name of the entity (such as a CDS view) or to the alias as it is defined in the behavior definition.

### Examples

```plaintext
TYPES:
et_travel_mapped TYPE TABLE FOR MAPPED travel_root,
et_travel_mapped_late TYPE TABLE FOR MAPPED LATE travel_root,
et_booking_failed TYPE TABLE FOR FAILED booking_item,
et_booking_reported_late TYPE TABLE FOR REPORTED LATE booking_item,
et_booking_read_out TYPE TABLE FOR READ RESULT booking_item,
et_travel_set_booked_out TYPE TABLE FOR ACTION RESULT travel_root~set_booked.
```
Derived Types for Key and the Data Structures

In addition to derived parameter types, you can also define specific derived data types for the IDs and data fields:

```abap
TYPES type_for_update TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE entity_name.
TYPES type_for_id     TYPE LINE OF type_for_update-%key.
TYPES type_for_data   TYPE LINE OF type_for_update-%data.
```

Examples

```abap
TYPES:
  it_booking_update        TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE  booking_item,
  ltype_for_update         TYPE LINE OF it_booking_update,
  ltype_for_key            TYPE ltyp_for_update-%key,
  ltype_for_data           TYPE ltyp_for_update-%data.
```

Explicit Usage of Derived Types

For modularization, it may be necessary to declare variables with derived types, even outside the reserved handler methods. For this purpose, there is an explicit syntax that is supported in the statements `TYPES`, `DATA`, and `CREATE DATA`. The syntax always has the form `... TYPE TABLE FOR....`

```abap
TYPES dtype TYPE TABLE FOR      {OPERATION | RESULT_PARAMETER | ACTION ...} entity_name.
DATA dtype TYPE TABLE FOR       {OPERATION | RESULT_PARAMETER | ACTION ...} entity_name.
CREATE DATA dref TYPE TABLE FOR {OPERATION | RESULT_PARAMETER | ACTION ...} entity_name.
```

In this case, only the `entity_name`, but not an alias, can be used to refer to the entity. This is because, unlike in the handler methods, no reference to a particular behavior definition is given.

Examples

```abap
TYPES       it_item_c     TYPE TABLE FOR CREATE SalesOrderItem.
DATA        it_root_u     TYPE TABLE FOR UPDATE SalesOrder.
CREATE DATA rt_item_ri    TYPE TABLE FOR READ IMPORT SalesOrderItem.
DATA        et_item_rr    TYPE TABLE FOR READ RESULT SalesOrderItem
TYPES       et_root_f     TYPE TABLE FOR FAILED SalesOrder.
TYPES       it_root_l     TYPE TABLE FOR LOCK SalesOrder.
TYPES       it_item_a_in  TYPE TABLE FOR ACTION IMPORT SalesOrderItem~add_supplement.
DATA        et_root_a_out TYPE TABLE FOR ACTION RESULT SalesOrder~set_final_status.
```
7.2.1.4 Implicit Returning Parameters

When implementing a BO contract, you make use of implicit returning parameters. These parameters do not have fixed data types and instead are assigned by the compiler with the types derived from behavior definition.

The implicit parameters can be declared explicitly as CHANGING parameters in the method signature of the handler classes by using the generic type DATA:

```
METHODS method_name FOR MODIFY | READ | LOCK
  [IMPORTING]
    <operation>_import_parameter FOR <OPERATION> entity
    ...
  CHANGING failed TYPE DATA
    [mapped TYPE DATA] "Relevant for CREATE only
    reported TYPE DATA.
```

The ABAP compiler replaces the type DATA with the respective derived types resulting from the concrete behavior definition.

Implicit Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| FAILED | This exporting parameter is defined as a nested table which contains one table for each entity defined in the behavior definition. The failed tables include information for identifying the data set where an error occurred:  
   - %CID and  
   - ID of the relevant BO instance.  
   The reason for the failure is specified by the predefined component:  
   - %FAIL, which stores the symptom of the failure. |

Accessing Element Information for Failed Parameter Type (F2)
### Parameter Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| REPORTED | This exporting parameter is used to return messages. It is defined as a nested table which contains one table for each entity defined in the behavior definition. The reported tables include data for instance-specific messages. The data set for which the message is relevant is identified by the following components:  
  - %CID  
  - ID of the relevant instance  
  - %MSG with an instance of the message interface IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE  
  - %ELEMENT which refers to all elements of an entity. |

### MAPPED

This mapped parameter is defined as a nested table which contains one table for each entity defined in the behavior definition. The mapped parameters provide the consumer with ID mapping information. They include the information about which key values were created by the application for given content IDs. The BO runtime passes the created key values in any subsequent calls in the same request and in the response. The relevant data set is identified by the following components:

- %CID
- %KEY

### Components of Derived Data Types

All derived data types in the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model also contain components that do not originate from the row type of the entity and begin with the character % to avoid naming conflicts with original components. For example, the row type of a failed table contains a component %fail to store the...
symptom for a failed instance and also an include structure `%key` that contains all primary key fields of the entity.

**EXAMPLE:** Usage of `...` components in a failed parameter

```
APPEND #VALUE(%KEY = ... %FAIL = ...) TO failed-entity.
```

The following list provides you with a description of the most common `%...` components:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>%CID</code></td>
<td>The content ID <code>%CID</code> is a temporary primary key for an instance, as long as no primary key was created by the BO runtime. The content ID is always provided by the SADL [page 1034] framework. It is only needed in case of internal numbering and/or late numbering. The content ID provides the reference between the related entity instances. A good example is a DEEP INSERT for multiple parent/child instances with internal numbering and/or late numbering. In this case, the references between the child and parent instances are established using the content ID <code>%CID</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%CID_REF</code></td>
<td>A reference to the content ID <code>%CID</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%tky</code></td>
<td>Contains all key elements of an entity (CDS view) including the derived key components, for example <code>%IS_DRAFT</code> in draft scenarios. <code>%tky</code> is part of almost all derived types, including trigger parameters in the for modify( ) method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%PID</code></td>
<td>Defines the preliminary ID, before the final key is set in the <code>ADJUST_NUMBERS</code> method. The preliminary ID is only available when <code>LATE_NUMBERING</code> is defined in the behavior definition without the addition <code>IN PLACE</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%CONTROL</code></td>
<td>Reflects which elements are requested by the consumer. The fields of the <code>%CONTROL</code> structure provide information, depending on the operation, about which elements of the entity are supplied in the request (for <code>CREATE</code> and <code>UPDATE</code> operations) or which elements are requested in the read request (for <code>READ</code> operations). For each entity element, this control structure contains a flag which indicates whether the corresponding field was provided/requested by the consumer or not. The element names of the entity have the uniform type <code>ABP_BEHV_FLAG</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The possible constants are defined in the basis handler interface `if_abap_behv=>mk-<...>`.

<p>| <code>%DATA</code> | Contains all data elements of an entity (CDS view). |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%FAIL</td>
<td>Stores the symptom for a failed data set (BO instance).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i Note</td>
<td>The possible values (unspecific, unauthorized, not_found, and so on) are defined by the ENUM type IF_ABAP_BEHV=&gt; T_FAIL_CAUSE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%MSG</td>
<td>Provides an instance of the message interface IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ Tip</td>
<td>The component %MSG of type REF TO IF_ABAP_BEHV_MESSAGE includes IF_T100_DYN_MSG. If you do not need your own implementation of this interface, then you can benefit from the provided standard implementation by using the inherited methods new_message() or new_message_with_text().</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%ELEMENT</td>
<td>Refers to all elements of an entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%PARAM</td>
<td>Holds the import/result type of actions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.2.2 Unmanaged Query API

In contrast to managed queries, in which a framework assumes the implementation tasks to select the requested data from the data source, the implementation of the unmanaged query must be done by the application developer. For this, all desired query capabilities (paging, filtering, sorting, counting, ...) must be implemented in a query implementation class, which is referenced in a CDS custom entity.

The following diagram illustrates the runtime of an unmanaged query:
The query request is delegated to the query implementation class which must implement the `select` method of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`. This API is described in following.

Interfaces

These interfaces define methods for the unmanaged query API.

- Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` [page 949]
  - Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST` [page 950]
  - Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER` [page 956]
  - Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING` [page 958]
  - Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION` [page 959]
  - Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` [page 961]

For more conceptual information about the unmanaged query, see `Query Runtime Implementation` [page 49].

For an example on how to implement an unmanaged query, see `Implementing an Unmanaged Query` [page 672].

For an example on how to implement the unmanaged query contract in a development scenario, see `Implementing the Query for Service Consumption` [page 556].

**Note**

Before SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment Release 1908, `IF_A4C_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` and the related interfaces was the API to implement an unmanaged query. This API is deprecated as of 1908, but still available in ABAP Environment. However, it is recommended to use only the new interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`.

The interfaces differ in some aspects, for example the handling of filter requests. The new interface offers some more methods to reflect the query requests in more detail, for example `get_aggregation` or `get_parameters`, which facilitates the implementation.

### 7.2.2.1 Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`

This interface defines a method that is used for requesting and responding to OData query requests in an unmanaged query.

**Method** `select`

The method `select` must be implemented in custom entity scenarios. It replaces the SQL-`SELECT` of a CDS view to retrieve and return data. The `select` method must be called by the query implementation class, which is referenced in the custom entity annotation `@ObjectModel.queryimplementedBy`.
Before SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment 1908 the annotation `@QueryImplementedBy` was in use, which is deprecated as of 1908.

The `select` imports an interface instance for the request data and one for the response data:

**Signature**

```abap
METHODS select IMPORTING io_request  TYPE REF TO if_rap_query_request [page 950]
   io_response TYPE REF TO if_rap_query_response [page 961]
   RAISING   cx_rap_query_provider.
```

Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST` [page 950]
Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE` [page 961]

**Parameter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>IO_REQUEST</code></td>
<td>Interface instance for gathering request information that are used as input for the select implementation. The request interface provides methods for implementing query options, like filtering or sorting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>IO_RESPONSE</code></td>
<td>Interface instance for the result output of the select implementation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exception**

`CX_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` Exception that can be raised if there is an error during the query execution.

**Example**

See Implementing an Unmanaged Query [page 672].

### 7.2.2.1.1 Interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST`

The interface defines methods to parametrize a query request in an unmanaged query. It is used to handle OData query options for data retrieval.

**Method** `get_entity_id`

This method returns the CDS entity name of the requested entity set of an OData request in an unmanaged query.

With this method, you can ensure that the query implementation is only executed if the correct entity for this query implementation set is called.
**Signature**

```plaintext
METHODS get_entity_id RETURNING VALUE(rv_entity_id) TYPE string.
```

**Example**

See [Returning Requested Entity in an Unmanaged Query](page 677).

**Method** `is_data_requested`

This method returns a boolean value to indicate if data is requested.

**Note**

If this method is used to indicate the request for data, the method [set_data](page 961) must be called.

**Signature**

```plaintext
METHODS is_data_requested RETURNING VALUE(rv_is_requested) TYPE abap_bool.
```

**Parameter**

```plaintext
rv_is_requested
```

If data needs to be returned, the value is `abap_true`. If no data needs to be returned, the value is `abap_false`.

**Example**

See [Requesting and Setting Data or Count in an Unmanaged Query](page 678).

**Method** `is_total_numb_of_rec_requested`

This method returns a boolean value to indicate if the total number of records is requested. The total number of records is requested by the query option `$inlinecount` or a `$count` request.

**Note**

If this method indicates the request for the total number of records, the total count needs to be returned by the method [set_total_number_of_records](page 961).

**Signature**

```plaintext
METHODS is_total_numb_of_rec_requested RETURNING VALUE(rv_is_requested) TYPE abap_bool.
```
Parameter

rv_is_requested

If the total number of records needs to be returned the value is abap_true. If the total number of records is not requested the value is abap_false.

Example

See Requesting and Setting Data or Count in an Unmanaged Query [page 678].

Method get_filter

This method returns a filter object. This filter object is an interface instance of IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER. If a filter is requested, its methods return the filter information. Only records that match this filter condition must be returned or counted.

Signature

METHODS get_filter RETURNING VALUE(ro_filter) TYPE REF TO if_rap_query_filter [page 956].

Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER [page 956]

Parameter

RO_FILTER

Contains the filter condition.

Example

See Implementing Filtering in an Unmanaged Query [page 679].

Method get_paging

This method returns an object with paging information. The paging object is an interface instance of IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING. It limits the number of records to be returned as response data with offset and page size.

Signature

METHODS get_paging RETURNING VALUE(ro_paging) TYPE REF TO if_rap_query_paging [page 958].

Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING [page 958]

Parameter

RO_PAGING

Contains the paging information.
Example
See Implementing Paging in an Unmanaged Query [page 685].

Method `get_sort_elements`

This method returns the sort order for the sort elements.

Signature

```
METHODS get_sort_elements RETURNING VALUE(rt_sort_elements) TYPE tt_sort_elements.
```

Parameter

- `rt_sort_elements` Contains the elements to be sorted with their sort direction. It is an ordered list to define the ranking order, the first element being the primary sort criteria. The table indicates the names of the sort element and the sort order with a boolean value in the column `descending`. The following table illustrates how the returning value looks like.
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELEMENT_NAME</th>
<th>DESCENDING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>abap_bool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

For a filter request like

```
<service_root_url>/<entity_set>?$orderby=Customer_ID desc
```

the method `get_sort_elements` returns the following entries in the returning table:

- `rt_sort_elements`:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ELEMENT_NAME</th>
<th>DESCENDING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CUSTOMER_ID</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

See Implementing Sorting in an Unmanaged Query [page 686].
Method get_parameters

This method returns a list of the entity parameters and their values.

Signature

METHODS get_parameters RETURNING VALUE(rt_parameters) TYPE tt_parameters.

Parameter

rt_parameters

Contains a list of parameters and their given values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAMETER_NAME</th>
<th>VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

For a filter request like

```
<service_root_url>/
<entity_set>({p_start_date=datetime'2016-07-08T12:34',p_end_date=datetime'2019-07-08T12:34'})/Set
```

the method get_parameters returns the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PARAMETER_NAME</th>
<th>VALUE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P_START_DATE</td>
<td>20160708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P_END_DATE</td>
<td>20190708</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

See Using Parameters in an Unmanaged Query [page 681].

Method get_aggregation

This method returns an aggregation object. This object is an interface instance of IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION which contains methods to indicate which elements need to be aggregated or grouped.

Signature

METHODS get_aggregation RETURNING VALUE(ro_aggregation) TYPE REF TO if_rap_query_aggregation [page 959].
Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION [page 959]

Parameter

ro_aggregation
Interface instance for information about aggregation and grouping.

Example
See Implementing Aggregations in an Unmanaged Query [page 689].

Method get_search_expression

This method returns the requested search string.

Signature

METHODS get_search_expression RETURNING VALUE(rv_search_expression) TYPE string.

Parameter

rv_search_expression
Contains a free search expression with unspecified format.

Example
See Implementing Search in an Unmanaged Query [page 683].

Method get_requested_elements

This method returns the requested elements, which need to be given to the response.

Signature

METHODS get_requested_elements RETURNING VALUE(rt_requested_elements) TYPE tt_requested_elements.

rt_requested_elements
Contains a list of the requested elements.

Example
See Considering Requested Elements in an Unmanaged Query [page 688].
7.2.2.1.1 Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_FILTER

This interface is a filter criteria provider for the unmanaged query. The methods provide different representations for the filter criteria.

Method get_as_ranges

This method returns the filter as a list of simultaneously applicable range tables. The table is initial if no filter is supplied.

Signature

METHODS get_as_ranges RETURNING VALUE(rt_ranges) TYPE tt_name_range_pairs RAISING cx_rap_query_filter_no_range.

Parameter

rt_ranges

Contains a list of filter conditions in name-range-table pairs. That means, every requested filter element is related to a ranges table that indicates the filter conditions. The returning value is in a ranges-table-compatible format. The following table illustrates the list of name and ranges table.

The columns of the ranges tables have the semantics of selection table criteria. They are defined as follows:

- **SIGN**: Contains the values \( I \) for inclusive or \( E \) for exclusive consideration of the defined range
- **OPTION**: Contains the operator values. Valid operators are \( EQ, NE, GE, GT, LE, LT, CP, \) and \( NP \), if the column high is initial, and \( BT, NB \), if column high is not initial.
- **LOW**: Contains the comparison value or the lower interval limitation.
- **HIGH**: Contains the upper interval limitation.

### tt_name_range_pairs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>RANGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>tt_range_option</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OP-TION</th>
<th>SIGN</th>
<th>LOW</th>
<th>HIGH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c(1)</td>
<td>c(2)</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

For a filter request like

```
<service_root_url>/<entity_set>?$filter= Agency_ID eq '070031'
  and (Begin_Date ge datetime 2019-01-01T00
  and Begin_Date le datetime 2019-12-31T00)
```
the method `get_as_ranges` returns the following entries in the range table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>RANGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AGENCY_ID</td>
<td>tt_range_option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGN</td>
<td>OPTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>EQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begin_Date</td>
<td>tt_range_option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGN</td>
<td>OPTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>BT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exception**

`cx_rap_query_filter_no_range`  
This exception is thrown if the filter cannot be converted into a ranges table.  
In this case the developer can try to use the method `get_as_sql_string` as a fall back or throw an error.

**Example**

See Implementing Filtering in an Unmanaged Query [page 679].

**Method** `get_as_sql_string`

This method returns the filter as an SQL string. The string is initial if no filter is supplied.

**Signature**

```plaintext
METHODS get_as_sql_string RETURNING VALUE(rv_string) TYPE string.
```

**Parameter**

`rv_string`  
Contains the filter conditions as an SQL string. The variable can be used directly in the WHERE clause of an SQL statement to select data.

**Example**

For a filter request like

```plaintext
<service_root_url>/<entity_set>?$filter= Agency_ID eq '070031'  
and (Begin_Date ge datetime 2019-01-01T00  
and Begin_Date le datetime 2019-12-31T00)
```
the method `get_as_sql_string` returns `BEGIN_DATE BETWEEN '20190101' AND '20191231' AND AGENCY_ID = '070031'`. This string has the correct syntax to be used in an SQL statement.

See [Implementing Filtering in an Unmanaged Query][1] [page 679].

### 7.2.2.1.1.2 Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_PAGING

This interface provides the information for paging requests. The methods provide the offset and the page size for one OData request.

**Method** `get_offset`

This method indicates the number of records to drop from the list of data records in the data source. In an OData query request, the offset is requested by the query option `$skip`.

**Signature**

```plaintext
METHODS get_offset RETURNING VALUE(rv_offset) TYPE int8.
```

**Parameter**

`rv_offset`

Contains the number of records that are dropped from the result list.

- **Example**
  - If `rv_offset` is 2, the first record in the result list is the data record on position 3.

See [Implementing Paging in an Unmanaged Query][2] [page 685].

**Method** `get_page_size`

This method indicates the maximum number of records that are to be returned. In an OData query request, the page size is requested by the query option `$top`.

**Signature**

```plaintext
METHODS get_page_size RETURNING VALUE(rv_page_size) TYPE int8.
```
Parameter

rv_page_size

Contains the number of records that are returned.

Note

rv_page_size if_rap_query_pagin=>page_size_unlimited if no limit is requested.

Example

See Implementing Paging in an Unmanaged Query [page 685].

7.2.2.1.1.3 Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_AGGREGATION

This interface provides methods to receive information about the requested aggregation and grouping requests.

Method get_aggregated_elements

This method returns the requested aggregated elements with their aggregation method and the output elements in a string table. These values can then be extracted and used in the query implementation.

Signature

```ABAP
METHODS get_aggregated_elements RETURNING VALUE(rt_aggregated_elements) TYPE tt_aggregation_elements.
```
Parameter

rt_aggregated_elements

Contains the aggregation method, the input element, and the output element.

The constants for the available predefined aggregation methods are:

- **COUNT**: for returning the number of values of the input element in the output element.
  
The constant `co_count_all_identifier` as value for `input_element` denotes the counting of all rows.
- **COUNT_DISTINCT**: for returning the number of unique values of the input element in the output element.
- **SUM**: for returning the sum of the input element in the output element.
- **MIN**: for returning the minimum of the input element in the output element.
- **MAX**: for returning the maximum of the input element in the output element.
- **AVG**: for returning the average of the input element in the output element.

The input element is the element whose values are aggregated and the output element is the element, which contains the aggregated value. The output element can be the same as the input element.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aggregation_method</th>
<th>input_element</th>
<th>result_element</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUM</td>
<td>BOOKING_FEE</td>
<td>TOTAL_BOOKING_FEE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Signature

Example

See Implementing Aggregations in an Unmanaged Query [page 689].

Method get_grouped_elements

This method returns the requested elements by which the result is to be grouped.

Signature

```graphql
METHODS get_grouped_elements RETURNING VALUE(rt_grouped_elements) TYPE tt_grouped_elements.
```

Parameter

rt_grouped_elements

Returns an ordered list of the elements by which the result is to be grouped. The elements are listed in the order of grouping priority.
7.2.2.1.2 Interface IF_RAP_QUERY_RESPONSE

This interface provides methods to return data and the count for the query response. The results of the methods of interface IF_RAP_QUERY_REQUEST are integrated in the response.

**Method set_data**

This method provides the response for the method if_rap_query_request~is_data_requested. If this method is called, the table of result data must be provided (empty if there is no result data).

**Signature**

```
METHODS set_data IMPORTING it_data TYPE STANDARD TABLE RAISING cx_rap_query_response_set_twic.
```

**Parameter**

`it_data` Contains a table of the data records for the query response.

Use the type of your custom entity for the response to be compatible with the request.

**Exception**

`cx_rap_query_response_set_twic` Exception is raised when the result table is set more than once.

**Example**

See Requesting and Setting Data or Count in an Unmanaged Query [page 678].

**Method set_total_number_of_records**

This method provides the response for the method if_rap_query_request~is_total_number_of_records. If this method is called, the count needs to be set for the response.
Signature

METHODS set_total_number_of_records IMPORTING iv_total_number_of_records TYPE int8 RAISING cx_rap_query_response_set_twic.

Parameter

iv_total_number_of_records Contains the total number of records. If no records match the given request criteria, the value zero must be passed.

Exception

cx_rap_query_response_set_twic Exception is raised when the number of records is set more than once.

Example

See Requesting and Setting Data or Count in an Unmanaged Query [page 678].

7.2.3 API for Virtual Elements

Virtual elements are defined in CDS projection views and implemented in related ABAP classes that calculate their values and transform filtering and sorting requests. For this calculation and transformation, the generic orchestration framework calls the ABAP classes that implement the methods of the virtual elements API.

- Calculation: Interface IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ [page 962]

For more information about virtual elements, see Using Virtual Elements in CDS Projection Views [page 620].

7.2.3.1 Interface IF_SADL_EXIT_CALC_ELEMENT_READ

Interface that must be implemented by calculation classes for virtual elements that are referenced at the level of the CDS projection view element with the annotation @ObjectModel.virtualElementCalculatedBy.

This interface defines the following methods for implementing the field calculation:

Method get_calculation_info

This method provides a list of all elements that are required for calculating the values of the virtual elements in the requested entity.

This method is called during runtime before the retrieval of data from the database to ensure that all necessary elements for calculation are filled with data.
Signature

```
TYPES tt_elements TYPE SORTED TABLE OF string WITH UNIQUE DEFAULT KEY .
METHODS get_calculation_info IMPORTING !it_requested_calc_elements TYPE tt_elements
  !iv_entity TYPE string EXPORTING !et_requested_orig_elements TYPE tt_elements
  RAISING cx_sadl_exit.
```

Parameter

- **importing**
  - `it_requested_calc_elements` List of the virtual elements that are requested by the client and intended for calculation. The names of the virtual elements are listed as upper case strings.

- **iv_entity** Name of the CDS entity that contains the requested virtual elements in `it_requested_calc_elements`. The name of the CDS entity is a string in upper case.

- **exporting**
  - `et_requested_orig_elements` List of the CDS elements that are needed for the calculation. The CDS elements are listed as upper case strings.

- **raising**
  - `cx_sadl_exit` Abstract exception class that can be used to raise exceptions and return messages related to the processing of the virtual element calculation.

**i Note**

Only elements of the requested entity that are needed for the calculation of the virtual elements. `iv_entity` can be appended for data retrieval.

**Example**

See Implementing the Calculation of Virtual Elements [page 623].

Method **calculate**

Executes the value calculation for the virtual element.

This method is called during runtime after data is retrieved from the database. The elements needed for the calculation of the virtual elements are already inside the data table passed to this method. The method returns a table that contains the values of the requested virtual elements.

Signature

```
TYPES tt_elements TYPE SORTED TABLE OF string WITH UNIQUE DEFAULT KEY .
METHODS calculate IMPORTING !it_original_data TYPE STANDARD TABLE
  !it_requested_calc_elements TYPE tt_elements
  CHANGING !ct_calculated_data TYPE STANDARD TABLE
```
RAISING cx_sadl_exit.

importing

  it_original_data 
  Result table of the retrieved values for the elements requested by the client, in addition to the elements that are needed for calculation, which are requested for data retrieval by the method get_calculation_info.

  it_requested_calc_elements 
  List of virtual elements that are requested by the client and are intended for calculation.
  The names of the virtual elements are listed as upper case strings.

exporting

  ct_calculated_data 
  Table of the virtual element for each entity instance corresponding to the table it_original_data by index.

raising

  cx_sadl_exit 
  Abstract exception class that can be used to raise exceptions and return messages related to the processing of virtual element calculation.

With this method you ensure that the virtual element is calculated and that its values are passed to the runtime engine to process the data in the requested entity.

Example

See Implementing the Calculation of Virtual Elements [page 623].

7.3 Tool Reference

The following chapter provides information about specific tools and features that are enabled for the ABAP RESTful programming model in ABAP Development Tools (ADT):

- Exploring Business Objects [page 965]
- Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966]
- Working with Business Services [page 974]
- Creating Projection Views [page 983]

In accordance with the relevant ABAP development scenario, you can find further information about ABAP development using ADT features in the following development user guides:

- 
- 
- 
-
7.3.1 Exploring Business Objects

Context

You have a business object containing several nodes that are represented as CDS entities and stored in DDL sources. The corresponding behavior is distributed among the behavior definition and several behavior implementation classes.

Now, you want to understand the entire structure of this business object at a glance and explore the operations of each business object node.

To get an overview of the business object, proceed as follows.

Procedure

1. In the Editor, open the root entity or any other object that is related to the business object such as behavior definition or behavior implementation class.

2. From the context menu, select Show in Relation Explorer. Alternatively, use Alt + Shift + W.

The Relation Explorer displays a composition tree of the business object in the Business Object context. In the details section, you can view the operations of the selected entity. On each entity in the object’s composition tree and on each operation in the details section, you can trigger the context menu.

Changing the Context

You can select other contexts using from the toolbar.
Select the **Core Data Services** context to display CDS-specific related objects such as access controls.

**New Relation Explorer**

If you want to see both contexts at once, instead of switching between them, . For example, if you have the object opened in the **Business Object** context, you can create a new instance of the **Relation Explorer** to display the CDS-specific related objects for the same business object in the **Core Data Services** context.

**7.3.2 Working with Behavior Definitions**

Based on the existing CDS data model, you can create and edit behavior definitions to define the behavior of business objects in the ABAP RESTful programming model. To implement the behavior, create a behavior implementation class.
To define the behavior of business objects in the ABAP RESTful programming model, create a behavior definition as the corresponding ABAP repository object. You create a behavior definition as follows:

1. In the Project Explorer, select the relevant node for the data definition that contains the CDS root entity for which you want to create a behavior definition.
2. Open the context menu and select New Behavior Definition to launch the creation wizard.
3. The Project and Package are inserted automatically. You can change them if needed.

   **i Note**
   
   The Name of the behavior definition is the same as the name of its root entity. It is automatically inserted and cannot be modified.

4. Enter a Description for the behavior definition.
5. The Root Entity that you selected in Project Explorer is automatically inserted.

   **i Note**
   
   If you triggered the New Behavior Definition wizard not from the referenced CDS view, the Root Entity is not filled in automatically. In this case, select the Root Entity manually by using the Browse button.
6. From the drop-down list of the Implementation Type field, select Managed or Unmanaged implementation type.

**Note**
If you create a Behavior Definition from a projection root entity, the implementation type Projection is inserted automatically.

7. Select Next.
8. Assign a transport request.

**Result**

The created behavior definition object represents the root node of a new business object in ABAP RESTful programming model.

In the Project Explorer, the new behavior definition is added to the Core Data Services folder.

In the editor, a new behavior definition is created with a basic structure. You can now start editing or refining the behavior definition using predefined language elements.
7.3.2.2 Editor Features

You can define and edit the behavior of the business object in the created behavior definition.

The following table gives you an overview of the supported features.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Types</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Key Shortcuts</th>
<th>Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Activation</td>
<td>Ctrl + F3</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deleting</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Duplicating</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Editing</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Where-Used Search</td>
<td>Ctrl + Shift + G</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Source Search</td>
<td>Ctrl + H</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convenience</td>
<td>Formatting</td>
<td>Shift + F1</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>F3</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Outline</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quick Outline</td>
<td>Ctrl + O</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Feature Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Types</th>
<th>Features</th>
<th>Key Shortcuts</th>
<th>Availability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quick Assists</strong></td>
<td>Ctrl + 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Code Completion</strong></td>
<td>Ctrl + Space</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syntax Highlighting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Automatic Syntax Check</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Element Information</strong></td>
<td>F2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Others</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Comparing Source Code</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Version History</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Share Link</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Related Information

- Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966]
- Creating Behavior Definitions [page 967]
- Creating Behavior Implementations [page 970]

## 7.3.2.3 Creating Behavior Implementations

### Prerequisites

You created a behavior definition object. The object is activated.
**Context**

To implement the behavior of business objects defined in the behavior definition, create a behavior implementation class.

**Procedure**

1. In the *Project Explorer*, select the relevant behavior definition for which you want to create a behavior implementation class.
2. Open the context menu and select *New Behavior Implementation* to launch the creation wizard.
   
   The *Project* and *Package* are automatically inserted. If needed you can change them.
3. Enter a *Name* and *Description* for the behavior implementation class.
   
   The name of the *Behavior Definition* is automatically inserted. If needed you can change it.
4. Select *Next*.
5. Assign a transport request.
6. Select *Finish*. 
Results

The behavior implementation class is created. In Project Explorer, the new behavior implementation is added to the corresponding folder.

The Local Types tab is automatically opened. In the tab, local lcl_handler and lcl_saver classes are created. These local classes are used to implement the interaction phase and the save sequence in an unmanaged transactional scenario.

You can now start implementing the behavior using predefined language elements.

Related Information

Working with Behavior Definitions [page 966]
Creating Behavior Definitions [page 967]
Editor Features [page 969]
Business Object [page 54]

7.3.2.3.1 Quick Fixes For Creating Behavior Implementations

In case of missing implementation classes or missing methods, corresponding warnings are displayed in the Behavior Definition Editor and in the Problems View. You can apply Quick Fixes to generate the entire implementation class or missing methods.
Quick Fixes to Generate Missing Methods

To trigger the *Quick Fix* proposals, you can:
- Click the lightbulb icon in the left marker bar
- Press `Ctrl` + `1` on the underlined source code position
- Use context menu in the *Problems View*.

### 7.3.2.4 Documenting Behavior Definitions

You can document behavior definitions as follows:

1. From the Project Explorer, select the behavior definition you want to document. Use the context menu to.
   The created document is opened in the *Knowledge Transfer Document* Editor.
2. The behavior definition is displayed with its elements, such as actions, functions, associations, and standard operations, structured as a tree in the *Object Structure* section. In the *Documentation* section, you can.
7.3.3 Working with Business Services

In the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model, a business service is a RESTful service which can be called by a consumer. It is defined by exposing its data model together with the associated behavior. A business service consists of a service definition and a service binding.

7.3.3.1 Creating Service Definitions

A service definition provides the CDS entities that are part of the data model to be exposed as a business service.

Prerequisites

You need the standard developer authorization profile to create ABAP development objects.

Context

You want to define the data to be exposed as a business service by one or more service bindings.
Procedure

1. In your ABAP project, select the relevant package node in the Project Explorer.
2. Open the context menu and choose New Other ABAP Repository Object Business Services Service Definition to launch the creation wizard.
3. In addition to the Project and Package, enter the Name and the Description for the service definition to be created.
4. [Optional:] If you want to create a service definition that exposes another CDS entity, enter the relevant entity name as Exposed Entity.

   i Note
   You can only expose another CDS entity.

   5. Choose Next.
6. Assign a transport request.
7. Choose Next.
8. Choose a template which you want to base your service definition.

Results

In the selected package, the ABAP back-end system creates an inactive version of a service definition and stores it in the ABAP Repository.

In the Project Explorer, the new service definition is added to the Business Services folder of the corresponding package node. As a result of this creation procedure, the source editor will be opened. Here, you can start enter the CDS entities to be exposed as a business service.

7.3.3.2 Creating Service Binding

Using a service binding you can enable a service definition to create a business service with a protocol of your choice.

Prerequisites

- You need the standard developer authorization profile to create ABAP development objects.
- You have created the relevant Service Definition [page 974].
**Context**

You can use an existing service definition to create a business service with an OData V2, OData V4, or InA protocol.

**Procedure**

1. In your ABAP project, select the relevant package node in the Project Explorer.
2. Open the context menu and choose New Other ABAP Repository Object Business Services Service Binding to launch the creation wizard.
3. In addition to the Project and Package, enter the Name and the Description for the service binding to be created.
   
   **i Note**
   
   The maximum length for names of a service binding is 26 characters.

4. Select the Binding Type.
   
   **i Note**
   
   The binding types are OData V2, OData V4, and InA. The available categories are UI and Web API. A UI-based OData V2, and OData V4 services can be consumed by any SAPUI5 application. A Web API-based OData V2 and OData V4 service can be used for providing APIs and not UI-based applications.

5. If not yet specified, search for the Service Definition that you want to use as a base for your service binding.
6. Choose Next.
7. Choose **Next**.
8. Assign a transport request.
9. Choose **Finish**.

---

**Restriction**

CDS view with parameters that have simple types are not supported.

---

**Restriction**

After successful import of abapGit repository, all imported objects are part of mass activation list. Before triggering mass activation, de-select Service Bindings. After the Service Definition is activated, activate the Service Bindings separately.

---

**Related Information**

- Business Service [page 192]
- Service Binding [page 204]
7.3.3.2.1 Using Service Binding Editor for OData V2 Service

You can expose a RAP business service as an ODataV2 service. Use the Service Binding editor to work with an OData V2 service.

After you create a service binding, the editor is displayed. The following actions can be done here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OData V2 (UI)</td>
<td>• The Service Versions section shows the service version and the associated service definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can add a new service version for an active service definition by clicking Add.... Similarly, choose Remove to remove a service version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Service Version Details section shows the local service endpoint and lists the entity sets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can click Service URL to view the service document. Select an entity set and click Preview to open a preview of the SAP Fiori elements app in an external browser. Alternately, you can do this by right-clicking an entity set and selecting Open Fiori Elements App Preview. For each entity set, the navigation shown represents the association with another entity set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the Publish button to see the service details for each service version. After you’ve published the service, you can choose Unpublish to revert to the unpublished state. The service information doesn’t appear for a service that is unpublished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For each service version, an authorization value is generated. Choose Default Authorization Values to open the Authorization Default Values editor. For maintaining default authorization values, see SAP Cloud Platform - ABAP Development User Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OData V2 (Web API)</td>
<td>• The Service Versions section shows the service version, API state, and the associated service definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can add a new service version for an active service definition by clicking Add.... Similarly, choose Remove to remove a service version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You can change the API state for a service version using the context menu under API State and selecting API State. For more information, see Released APIs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Service Version Details section shows the service information and lists the entity sets. For each entity set, the navigation shown represents the association with another entity set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the Publish button to see the service details for each service version. After you’ve published the service, you can choose Unpublish to revert to the unpublished state. The service details don’t appear for a service that is unpublished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For each service version, an authorization value is generated. Choose Default Authorization Values to open the Authorization Default Values editor. For maintaining default authorization values, see SAP Cloud Platform - ABAP Development User Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Class Generation</td>
<td>You can generate automated tests for the OData service you’ve created using service binding. The test provides guidance on how to access the OData service using ABAP Units and provides the test code for performing CRUD operations on an entity set. Perform the following steps to generate a test class for a selected entity set:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Choose Publish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Select an entity set, right click and then, choose New ABAP Test Class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Provide a name and description for the test class.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Choose Next and then, Finish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A test class is generated in which local test classes for each CRUD operation in the selected entity set can be viewed. You can either create a separate test class for each entity set or copy and paste the generated code, then change the name of the entity set accordingly for writing ABAP Units for other entity sets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the selected package, the ABAP back-end system creates a service binding and an OData V2 service.
In the *Project Explorer*, the new service binding is added to the *Business Services* folder of the corresponding package node. As a result of this creation procedure, the form editor is opened.

7.3.3.2.2  Using Service Binding Editor for OData V4 Service

You can expose a RAP business service as an OData V4 service. Use the Service Binding editor to work with an OData V4 service.

After you create a service binding, the editor is displayed. The following actions can be done here:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| OData V4 (UI)            | - The **Services** section displays multiple services and the service versions under each service. Every service version is associated to a service definition.  
- You can add a new service by clicking on **Add Service...**. When the service is added, a service version is also automatically added. The service version points to the service definition that you provided in the **Add Service** dialog.  
- You can add a new service version for an active service definition by right-clicking on a service or version and choosing **Add Service Version...**. Choose **Remove** to remove a service or service version. You can select the **Service Version** to view the service URL and the entity sets.  
- You can select service to view the **Service Name**. You can change the service name if the **Local Service Endpoint** is unpublished. When you change the **Service Name**, you can see the change on the **Service URL** for each service versions under that service. The change can be seen in the **Service URL (Preview)** field.  
- You can choose a service version to view the service URL and entity sets with associations. You can click **Service URL** to view the service document. Select an entity set and click **Preview** to open a preview of the SAP Fiori elements app in an external browser. Alternately, you can do this by right-clicking an entity set and selecting **Open Fiori Elements App Preview**. For each entity set, the navigation shown represents the association with another entity set.  
- Choose the **Publish** button to see the service details for each service version. After you’ve published the service, you can choose **Unpublish** to revert to the unpublished state. The service information doesn’t appear for a service that is unpublished. |
| OData V4 (Web API)       | - The **Services** section displays multiple services and service versions under each service, API state, and the associated service definition.  
- You can add a new service by clicking on **Add Service...**. When the service is added, a service version is also automatically added. The service version points to the service definition that you provided in the **Add Service** dialog.  
- You can add a new service version for an active service definition by right-clicking on a service or version and choosing **Add Service Version...**. Choose **Remove** to remove a service or service version. You can select the **Service Version** to view the service URL and the entity sets.  
- You can select service to view the **Service Name**. You can change the service name if the **Local Service Endpoint** is unpublished. When you change the **Service Name**, you can see the change on the **Service URL** for each service versions under that service. The change can be seen in the service URL **Preview** field.  
- You can choose a service version to view the service URL and entity sets with associations. You can click **Service URL** to view the service document. For each entity set, the navigation shown represents the association with another entity set.  
- You can change the API state for a service version using the context menu under API State and selecting **API State**. For more information, see **Released APIs**.  
- Use the **Publish** button to see the service details for each service version. After you’ve published the service, you can choose **Unpublish** to revert to the unpublished state. The service details do not appear for a service that is unpublished. |
You can expose CDS Analytical Queries via Information Access (InA) service. Use the service binding editor to work with Information Access (InA) service.

After you create a service binding, the editor is displayed. The following actions can be done here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Service section shows the service name and the associated service definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The Service Details section shows the external service name for your query. The external service name gets generated only after activating the service binding.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**i Note**

- The query should not be exposed through other service bindings.
- The service definition should expose only one query.
Documenting Service Binding

You can document development objects in the Knowledge Transfer Document Editor.

**Context**

You can document service binding as follows:

**Procedure**

1. In the *Project Explorer*, select the service binding you want to document. Use the context menu to create a knowledge transfer document. For more information, see *Creating Knowledge Transfer Documents*.
   
   The created document opens in the *Knowledge Transfer Document Editor*.
   
   The service binding is displayed with its elements, such as *service name* and *service version*, in a tree structure in the *Object Structure* section.

2. In the *Documentation* section, you can document at the service and version level. For more information, see *Editing Knowledge Transfer Documents*.
7.3.4 Creating Projection Views

A projection view enables you to expose a subset of data from an underlying data model, for example in an OData service.

Prerequisites

You need the standard developer authorization profile to create development objects.

Context

In a transactional scenario, you want to create and define, for example, a consumption-specific OData service that only exposes relevant data of an underlying data model using a service definition and service binding.

Note

A projection view can be used in one or more service definitions.

Procedure

1. In your ABAP cloud project, select a package node in the Project Explorer.
2. To launch the creation wizard, open the context menu and choose New Other Core Data Services Data Definition.
3. In addition to the Project and Package, enter a Name and Description for the data definition you want to create.

Note

The maximum length for names of data definitions is 30 characters.

4. Choose Next.
5. Assign a transport request.
6. Choose Next.
7. Select the Define Projection View template.

Note

By default, ABAP Development Tools uses the last selected template for creation.

Results

In the selected package, the ABAP cloud system creates an inactive version of a data definition, and stores it in the ABAP repository.

In the Project Explorer, the new data definition is added to the Core Data Services folder of the corresponding package node. As a result of this creation procedure, the source editor is opened, where you can start completing the template.

You can now define the elements from a datasource from which you want to expose data, for example, in an OData service.

7.4 ABAP Flight Reference Scenario

The ABAP Flight Reference Scenario helps you to get started with development in the context of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model. It contains demo content that you can play around with and use to build your own sample applications.

The reference scenario is based on multiple database tables which you can use to build your application. These tables are also used in the development guides in the Develop [page 214] section.
The database table `/DMO/AGENCY` stores general data about the travel agency that operates travels for customers.
The database table has the following fields:

- agency_id (key)
- name
- street
- postal_code
- city
- country_code
- phone_number
- email_address
- web_address

The key field is the unique ID for the travel.

/DMO/TRAVEL

The database table /DMO/TRAVEL stores general travel data. In addition, it includes administrative data about the creation and changing of instances.

The database table has the following fields:

- travel_id (key)
- agency_id
- customer_id
- begin_date
- end_date
- booking_fee
- total_price
- currency_code
- description
- status
- createdby
- createdat
- lastchangedby
- lastchangedat

The key field is the unique ID for the travel.

/DMO/CUSTOMER

The database table /DMO/CUSTOMER stores general data about customers. In addition, it stores administrative data about the creation and changing of instances.

The database table has the following fields:

- customer_id
- first_name
- last_name
- title
- street
- postal_code
The key field is the unique ID for the customer.

/DMO/BOOKING
The database table /DMO/BOOKING stores data about a booked flight for a certain travel instance. Apart from general flight and booking data, it includes the customer ID for whom the flight is booked as well as the travel ID to which the booking belongs.

The database table has the following fields:
- travel_id (key)
- booking_id (key)
- booking_date
- customer_id
- carrier_id
- connection_id
- flight_date
- flight_price
- currency_code

The key fields are the travel ID for the travel it belongs to and the booking ID, which are unique in combination.

/DMO/FLIGHT
The database table /DMO/FLIGHT stores general data about flights.

The database table has the following fields:
- carrier_id (key)
- connection_id (key)
- flight_date (key)
- price
- currency_code
- plane_type_id
- seats_max
- seats_occupied

The key fields are the IDs for carrier and connection as well as the flight date, which makes the flight unique.

/DMO/BOOK_SUPPL
The database table /DMO/BOOK_SUPPL stores data of booking supplements that can be booked for flights, for example meals or insurances.
The database table has the following fields:

- `travel_id` (key)
- `booking_id` (key)
- `booking_supplement_id` (key)
- `supplement_id`
- `price`
- `currency_code`

The key fields are the travel ID, the booking ID and the booking supplement ID, which are unique in combination.

/DMO/CONNECTION

The database table /DMO/CONNECTION stores general data about flight connections.

The database table has the following fields:

- `carrier_id` (key)
- `connection_id` (key)
- `airport_from_id`
- `airport_to_id`
- `departure_time`
- `arrival_time`
- `distance`
- `distance_unit`

The key fields are the IDs of carrier and connection, which are unique in combination.

/DMO/CARRIER

The database table /DMO/CARRIER stores data about flight carriers.

The database table has the following fields:

- `carrier_id` (key)
- `name`
- `currency_code`

The key field is the unique ID of a carrier.

/DMO/AIRPORT

The database table /DMO/AIRPORT stores data about airports.

The database table has the following fields:

- `airport_id` (key)
- `name`
- `city`
- `country`

The key field is the unique airport ID.
The database table `/DMO/SUPPLEMENT` stores general data about the supplement, which can be booked for flights.

The database table has the following fields:

- `supplement_id` (key)
- `price`
- `currency_code`

The key field is the unique ID for the supplement.

The database table `/DMO/SUPPL_TEXT` stores the readable texts for the supplements in different languages.

The database table has the following fields:

- `supplement_id` (key)
- `language_code` (key)
- `description`

The key fields are the IDs of the supplement and the language, which are unique in combination.

**Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario from GitHub**

You can download the complete ABAP Flight Reference Scenario for the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model from GitHub.


The steps to include the development objects in your ADT are described in the `README.md` file.

→ Remember

The namespace `/DMO/` is reserved for the demo content. Apart from the downloaded ABAP Flight Scenario, do not use the namespace `/DMO/` and do not create any development objects in the downloaded packages. You can access the development objects in `/DMO/` from your own namespace.
7.5 Naming Conventions for Development Objects

Naming conventions facilitate the development. An addition to the name of development objects conveys standardized meaning and generates consistency in your development.

General Rules

→ Remember
The general guideline for development objects is the following: \[/<\text{namespace}>/\]
\[<\text{prefix}>\text{_<object_name>_}<\text{suffix}>\].

- Use your own namespace that is reserved for your organization.

i Note
Consider that the namespace /DMO/ is reserved for demo purposes. Do not use this namespace in your productive development.

- A prefix is used for cases when there are generically different types of one development object. Then, this prefix states the semantic difference that cannot be conveyed through the object type. For example, a service binding can expose an OData service for UI purposes and as a Web API [page 1039]. That is why, for service bindings we introduce the prefixes UI_ and API_ to differentiate the semantics of service bindings.

- A suffix is used for additional differentiation between different types of development objects. It helps to recognize more subtle or secondary differences in development objects. For example, a UI service can be bound against the OData protocol [page 1031] OData, version 2 and OData, version 4. This difference can also be manifested by suffixing the name with _O2 or _O4.

i Note
In the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario we use another suffixed character (_R, _M, _D, _U, _C). This character identifies the development object to belong to one specific development guide (read-only, managed, draft, unmanaged, service consumption).

The following list provides an overview of the prefixing and suffixing guidelines on naming specific development objects.

**ABAP Dictionary Objects**

**Database Tables**
Use a prefix for database tables in scenarios, in which multiple technical representations of the same semantic data is necessary, for example in draft scenarios.

Use the prefix
- \texttt{A} for the persistent database table, the table that contains the active data.
- \texttt{D} for the draft database table.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/A\_TRAVEL\_D}

**SQL View (Database View of CDS view)**

The SQL view of a CDS view must be defined in the data definition [page 1025] of a CDS view. It cannot have the same name as the CDS view itself. Use the prefix

- \texttt{I} (without underscore) for SQL views of CDS interface views.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/I\_TRAVEL\_U}

**CDS Objects**

**CDS Entity**

Use the prefix

- \texttt{I} for an interface view.
- \texttt{C} for a projection view. The character \texttt{C} represents the consumption layer. If there are multiple projections of one CDS entity, the object name should semantically represent the projection role.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/I\_Travel\_U}, \texttt{/DMO/C\_Travel\_Processor\_M}

**Behavior Definition**

A behavior definition has always the same name as the root entity of the business object.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/I\_Travel\_U}, \texttt{/DMO/C\_Travel\_M}

**Metadata Extension**

A metadata extension has the same name as the CDS entity it relates to. If you use more than one metadata extension for one CDS entity, you can add a numbered suffix.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/C\_TRAVEL\_U}, \texttt{/DMO/C\_BOOKING\_U\_M2}

**Business Services**

**Service Definition**

Since a service definition [page 1021] - as a part of a business service - does not have different types or different specifications, there is (in general) no need for a prefix or suffix to differentiate meaning.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/TRAVEL\_U}

However, in use cases where no reuse of the same service definition is planned for UI and API services, the prefix may follow the rules of the service binding.

Example: \texttt{/DMO/UI\_TRAVEL\_U}
**Service Binding**

Use the prefix

- **UI** if the service is exposed as a UI service.
- **API** if the service is exposed as Web API [page 1039].

Use the suffix

- **_O2** if the service is bound to OData protocol version 2.
- **_O4** if the service is bound to OData protocol version 4.

Example: `/DMO/UI_TRAVEL_U_O2`

**Source Code Objects**

**Behavior Pool**

Use the prefix

- **BP** for an ABAP class that implements the behavior of a business object.

Example: `/DMO/BP_TRAVEL_U`

**Handler and Saver Classes**

Use the prefix

- **LHC** for a local handler class.
- **LSC** for a local saver class.

Depending on the modularization of your behavior implementation, you can provide the semantics of the coding in the name of the classes.

Example: `LHC_TRAVEL_CREATE`

Example: `LHC_BOOKING_CUD`
8 What's New

Here are descriptions of some of the changes of interest (delta information) to developers made to ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model:

- Version 2011 [page 993]
- Version 2008 [page 995]
- Version 2005 [page 998]
- Version 2008 [page 998]
- Version 2002 [page 1001]
- Version 1911 [page 1003]
- Version 1908 [page 1006]
- Version 1905 [page 1011]
- Version 1902 [page 1013]
- Version 1811 [page 1016]

8.1 ☁ Version 2011

8.1.1 ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model

☁ Using Service Binding Editor for InA Service

You can now expose CDS Analytical Queries via Information Access (InA) service using service binding. The binding type must be chosen while creating the service binding for the service. To expose CDS Analytical Query as an InA service, the CDS view must be added to the service definition. This service definition must be used to create the service binding.

For more information, see Using Service Binding Editor for InA Service [page 981].

☁ Nested Determinations on modify

It is now possible to trigger a determination on modify by another determination on modify.
Always Flag in Determine Actions

You can now use the flag always for determinations and validations that are assigned to a determine action. When the determine action is called, determinations and validations with this flag are executed regardless of their trigger conditions.

For more information, see Actions [page 140] > Determine Action.

Global Feature Control

You can now define global feature control for feature control that is independent of a business object instance.

For more information, see Global Feature Control Definition [page 115].

Global Authorization Control

You can now define global authorization control to check authorization for incoming requests, in particular for static operations.

For more information, see Authorization Control [page 118].

Augmenting Incoming Requests

You can now define augmentation in your projection behavior definition to enhance incoming requests with custom implementation, for example with default values.

For more information, see Operations [page 128] > Augmentation for Modify Operations.

Possibly Incompatible Changes for ABAP RESTful Application Programming

You can find an overview of possibly incompatible changes for the ABAP RESTful Application Programming in SAP Note 2943761.
Quick Fixes For Creating Behavior Implementations

In case of missing implementation classes or missing methods, corresponding warnings are now displayed in the Behavior Definition Editor and in the Problems View. You can apply Quick Fixes to generate the entire implementation class or missing methods.

Quick Fixes to Generate Missing Methods

For more information, see Quick Fixes For Creating Behavior Implementations. [page 972]

8.2  Cloud Version 2008

Draft Support for RAP Business Services

The ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model now provides draft support for your business services. Draft-enabled business objects ensure that transactional data does not get lost, even if work is interrupted or continued from a different device.

You draft-enable your business object by using the keyword with draft in the behavior definition. Draft capabilities can be included for both business object implementation types, managed and unmanaged.

For more information, see Draft [page 60].
Draft Scenario on GitHub

You can now download a RAP managed business service with draft from GitHub. The development objects are now available as part of the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario that you can download directly into your ABAP system.

For more information, see Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].

Controlling Active Data Access in Draft Business Objects

You can now define a designated field, the total ETag field, that controls concurrent access on active data in draft business objects. The RAP runtime framework checks its value on every transition from draft to active data to prevent concurrent BO consumers from overwriting each other without any information.

The total ETag is defined in the behavior definition and is updated by the RAP runtime framework automatically if annotated with the annotation @Semantics.systemDateTime.lastChangedAt: true in the corresponding CDS view.

For more information, see Total ETag [page 66].

Working with Determinations and Validations

Determinations and validations are now processed by the determinations-validations-machine (DVM). You can now define determinations and validations with all three standard operation triggers { create | update | delete}, and in combination with field triggers. In addition, the method declaration in the behavior pool uses different syntax:

METHODS method_name FOR VALIDATE ON SAVE
  IMPORTING keys FOR AliasedEntityName~ValidationName.
METHODS method_name FOR DETERMINE ON MODIFY|SAVE
  IMPORTING keys FOR AliasedEntityName~ValidationName.

For more information, see Validations [page 157] or Determinations [page 152].

Executing Determinations and Validations on Request

New determine actions allow the business object consumer to execute determinations and validations without fulfilling the trigger conditions. You can now assign determinations and validations to a determine action that is called by a consumer’s trigger, just like any other actions.

For more information, see Action Definition [page 140] > Determine Action
Prechecking Modify Operations

You can now prevent illegal changes from reaching the application buffer by prechecking modify operations. The precheck method is called during runtime before the assigned modify operation and removes all input from the modifying request for which the condition in the precheck is not fulfilled.

For more information, see Operations [page 128] > Precheck for Modify Operations

Authorization Control

Consumer hints in the OData service metadata now include authorization control by a path expression on the respective operation. That means, if you define authorization control for your business object, the authorization-relevant entity sets receive a path description instead of a static information about their ability to be updated or deleted. In addition, the corresponding properties are included in the property list of the entity type.

For more information, see Be prepared for the Upgrade 2008! Clean Up your RAP Implementation to Pass the Reinforced RAP Contract Checks.

RAP Runtime Checks

With SAP Cloud Platform ABAP environment 2008 and the ABAP Platform on premise release 2020, stricter RAP runtime checks are introduced to help you make your RAP implementation consistent, user-friendly, and compatible to further RAP features. These runtime checks affect:

- creating and updating read only fields via EML,
- executing modify calls in a late save phase,
- consuming actions or functions with parameters exceeding the defined length.

For more information, see Be prepared for the Upgrade 2008! Clean Up your RAP Implementation to Pass the Reinforced RAP Contract Checks.

Documenting Service Binding

You can now provide documentation using knowledge transfer documents (KTD) for service binding.
Feature Control

You can now use mandatory:create to assure that a field is filled in during a create operation and readonly:update to assure that the field value isn’t changed during modify operations.

Possibly Incompatible Changes for ABAP RESTful Application Programming

You can find an overview of possibly incompatible changes for the ABAP RESTful Application Programming in SAP Note 2943761.

8.3 ☁ Version 2005

Implementing Own Locking Logic for Managed Business Objects

You can now define an unmanaged lock in a managed scenario. The unmanaged lock mechanism must be defined in the behavior definition with the syntax lock master unmanaged and implemented in the behavior pool in the method FOR LOCK, just like in an unmanaged scenario. The method is then invoked during runtime.

For more information, see Pessimistic Concurrency Control (Locking) [page 166].
Using dependent by _Association in Behavior Definition

You can now use the syntax dependent by _Association for lock, ETag, or authorization dependent entities. The association to the respective master entity must be explicitly specified in the behavior definition and implemented when using the unmanaged scenario.

For more information, see Defining Elementary Behavior for Ready-to-Run Business Object [page 258] or Adding Behavior to the Business Object [page 373].

Using Client-Independent Tables in Managed Scenarios

The RAP managed BO runtime now supports client-independent database tables.

For more information, see Using Client-Independent Database Tables in Managed Transactional Apps [page 252].

Dynamic Operation Control for Create By Association

You can now dynamically control the create by association operation. The syntax for defining dynamic feature control is the following:

```_association {create (features: instance); }```

Like other feature controls, the control for the create by association must be implemented in the behavior pool with the method FOR FEATURES.

For more information, see Dynamic Feature Control: Operations [page 111].

New Read-Only Associations in CDS Projection Views

It is now possible to define new read-only associations in the projection view. These associations can be reused to display additional information in a UI service, for example analytical data which is not part of the transactional basic business object. With associations in projection views, you can model new service-specific relationships.

The syntax for the association definition is the same as in CDS views:

```association [min..max] to TargetEntity [as _Alias] on OnCondition```

For more information, see CDS Projection View [page 197].
Filtering for Null Values in OData V2 Services

OData does not foresee initial values for the following EDM data types:

- Boolean
- GUID
- Time
- DateTime
- DateTimeOffset.

Fiori Elements UIs offer the `empty` operator in filter bars for these fields. Although they appear as visually empty in the UIs, the actual value sent to the client is `null`.

To be able to select records with empty values for these data types, the client filters null values and the filter is transformed to filter for initial values for the backend. Real null values cannot be retrieved from the database by filtering for them in OData V2.

For more information, see https://www.odata.org/documentation/odata-version-2-0/.

Understanding Runtime Processes

The concepts section in the ABAP RESTful Application Programming Model has been enhanced with interactive diagrams so you can get a better understanding of the runtime processes for OData requests.

For more information, see

- Query Runtime [page 53]
- Create Operation [page 130]
- Update Operation [page 132]
- Delete Operation [page 134]
- Create by Association Operation [page 136]
- Action Runtime [page 147]
- Save Sequence [page 150].

Control Structure for Import Parameter in CREATE Operations

The control structure `%control for import parameters of CREATE and CREATE by Association operations` is now filled according to the elements that were sent by the OData client or were marked in the EML call. In particular this means that the application developer knows which elements are relevant for the create.

Example

In the following example the elements `agencyid`, `customerid`, `begindate`, and `enddate` were filled by the OData client and thus are marked in the control structure, while the other elements are not.
Provided Elements in Create for Travel

For more information, see <method> FOR MODIFY [page 928].

8.4 雱 Version 2002

Automatically Drawing Primary Key Values for Managed Business Objects

The managed runtime framework can now automatically generate key values in scenarios with UUID keys if managed numbering is defined in the behavior definition.
Syntax for defining managed numbering in the behavior definition:

```plaintext
[implementation] managed [implementation in class ABAP_CLASS [unique]];  
define behavior for Entity [alias AliasedName]  
  lock {master|dependent()}  
  {  
    field ( [read only,] numbering:managed ) KeyField1, [KeyField2];  
  }  
```

For more information, see Automatically Drawing Primary Key Values in Managed BOs [page 626].

**New Options for Action and Function Results**

The BO runtime framework now supports results for actions and functions other than $self. The results can be entities of the same BO the action is defined for, entities of other BOs, or result structures. To differentiate between result entities and result structures the syntax element `entity` has been introduced.

In addition, you can now create actions, for which the action consumer can decide whether the result shall be returned completely or only parts of it, for example the keys only. Such an action must be marked with the keyword `selective` in the behavior definition.

```plaintext
define behavior for CDSEntity  
  ...  
  ** Action with result entity  
    action ActionName result [cardinality] entity OutputEntity  
  ** Action with result structure  
    action ActionName result [cardinality] OutputStructure  
  ** Action with selective result  
    action ActionName result selective [cardinality] entity OutputEntity  
  ...  
```

For more information, see Actions [page 138].

**Reporting Messages in ADJUST_NUMBERS and SAVE**

The implicit returning parameter `REPORTED` is now available for the methods `adjust_numbers` and `save`. By filling this parameter you can report information or success messages after the point of no return in the save sequence.

For more information, see Method ADJUST_NUMBERS [page 940] and Method SAVE [page 941].

**Documenting Behavior Definitions**

Now you can document behavior definitions in the Knowledge Transfer Document editor.
From the *Project Explorer*, select the behavior definition you want to document. Use the context menu to create a knowledge transfer document.

For more information, see *Documenting Behavior Definitions* [page 973].

### 8.5  ⛅ Version 1911

#### Defining the Service Namespace for OData Services

You can now define the OData service namespace in service definitions with the annotation `@OData.schema.name`.

For more information, see *OData Annotations* [page 767].

#### Filling the Result Parameter for Actions

SAP Cloud Platform, ABAP Environment 1911 enforces the proper assignment of result values in action implementations when result parameters are declared in the corresponding action definition. Whereas actions returned the input entity if the result parameter was not filled in the action implementation before 1911, they
now return the value of the result parameter as specified in the action definition and exactly according to its implementation.

To avoid that a Fiori UI shows initial values, if nothing is returned, you must fill the result parameter for all actions.

For more information, see Developing Actions [page 272] and Implementing the SET_STATUS_BOOKED Action [page 417].

**Navigating More Than One Step in OData Requests**

It is now possible to navigate to associated entities using more than one navigation for both, V2 and V4 services.

**Example**

To request the booking supplements for the booking entity with BookingID 5 of the travel with TravelID 1, use the following syntax.

\[
<service_URL>/Travel('1')/to_Booking('5')/to_BookingSupplement
\]

You can link an unlimited number of entities in one OData request.

**Outsourcing UI Metadata in Metadata Extensions**

You can now use metadata extensions to define CDS annotations outside of the corresponding data definition of the CDS projection view. The use of metadata extensions allows the separation of concerns by separating the data model from domain-specific semantics, such as UI-related information for UI consumption.

For more information, see Adding UI Metadata to the Data Model [page 368].

**Using Type and Control Mapping**

You can now define a mapping contract for applications that include unmanaged or managed business objects based on CDS entities on the one hand, and legacy data types that are generally older and implement the behavior or parts of it.

The general syntax for field and control (information) mapping in a behavior definition is the following:

\[
\text{mapping for} \quad \text{LegacyType} \quad \text{control} \quad \text{ControlType} \quad \text{corresponding} \\
\begin{align*}
\{ \\
\quad \text{EntityField1} &= \text{LegacyField1}; \\
\quad \text{EntityField2} &= \text{LegacyField2}; \\
\quad \ldots \\
\}\end{align*}
\]

For more information, see Using Type and Control Mapping [page 630].
Integrating Additional Save in Managed Business Objects

You can now integrate Additional Save for each entity of a given business object with managed implementation type. This is done in the behavior definition of the business object by adding the keyword `with additional save`. The actual implementation of Additional Save takes place in a local saver class as part of the behavior pool.

For more information, see Integrating Additional Save in Managed Business Objects [page 303].

Integrating Unmanaged Save in Managed Business Objects

You can now integrate Unmanaged Save within the transactional life cycle of managed business objects. In order to integrate Unmanaged Save into the save sequence as a part of the managed runtime, you must first add the corresponding syntax (`with unmanaged save`) to the behavior definition and then implement the saver handler method as a part of the behavior pool.

For more information, see Integrating Unmanaged Save in Managed Business Objects [page 313].

Using Groups for Large Implementations

Until now, the implementation of business object entity's operations and actions had to be done in the `Local Types` include of the behavior pool associated with that entity. Since the `Local Types` include can only be changed by one developer at a time, the efficiency of development would be significantly reduced in case of larger implementations. As a solution, the groups can be now used to divide operations, actions and other implementation-relevant parts of the business logic into several groups for behavior implementation.

For more information, see Using Groups in Large Development Projects [page 634].

Using Virtual Elements

You can now define elements in CDS projection views that are not persisted on the database. These virtual elements are defined with the new syntax element `virtual`. Their calculation is done in a separate ABAP class, which is called during runtime via an ABAP code exit for virtual elements.

For more information, see Using Virtual Elements in CDS Projection Views [page 620].

Using Service Binding Editor

Previewing Fiori Elements App

In the Service Binding editor, the preview of the Fiori elements app now automatically opens in the logon language.
For more information, see Using Service Binding Editor for OData V2 Service [page 978].

8.6  Version 1908

New URL for the Documentation of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model in SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment

The documentation of the ABAP RESTful Programming Model for SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment on the SAP Help Portal has been moved.


Developing New Managed Transactional Apps

The ABAP RESTful Programming Model now supports the managed implementation type for developing new transactional apps. This scenario aims at use cases to develop new transactional apps from scratch. All required standard operations must only be specified in the behavior definition to obtain a ready-to-run business object. The business logic is implemented using actions, validations and determinations.

For more information, see Developing Managed Transactional Apps [page 237].

Business Object Projection

You can now use the ABAP-native approach to project and to alias a subset of the business object for a specific business service. The projection enables flexible service consumption as well as role-based service designs.

With projections, it is possible to project one business object for different role-based UIs. An example is given in Developing a Projection Layer for Flexible Service Consumption [page 323]. The travel business object is exposed for a processor Fiori UI and for an approver Fiori UI.
Implementing an Unmanaged Query

A new API is available to implement an unmanaged query in a query implementation class. In an unmanaged query, the request is delegated to the query implementation class, which must implement the `select` method of the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`. The new interface provides methods to implement query capabilities, such as paging, filtering, sorting, or counting. It replaces the interface `IF_A4C_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER`, which is deprecated as of 1908.

For more information about the new API, see Unmanaged Query API [page 948].

The implementation of an unmanaged query with the interface `IF_RAP_QUERY_PROVIDER` is described in a new topic in the common task section.

For more information, see Implementing an Unmanaged Query [page 672].

Server-Side Paging

Server-side paging has now been implemented to improve performance for OData calls. If the OData client does not provide paging query options, the default paging restricts the response to 100 data records. If `$top` is set to values greater than 5000, the response is reduced to 5000 data records.
Following from this, unmanaged queries require at least the implementation for paging. If the corresponding methods are not implemented and the unmanaged query does not return the respective information, there will be a dump during runtime.

For more information, see Implementing an Unmanaged Query [page 672].

Additions to the Unmanaged Reference Scenario

The sources for the unmanaged reference scenario has been updated with the latest features. You can explore the new features in the sources that you can download from GitHub and in the related description in the guide on how to develop unmanaged transactional apps based on existing application logic.

- **Mapping CDS names to database field names**
  By defining a mapping specification in the behavior definition, you can use the mapping operator in the behavior implementation to write records to the database that have a discrepancy between the names of the database table fields and the CDS view field names.
  For more information, see the information for mapping in Adding Behavior to the Business Object [page 373] and the implementation in Implementing the CREATE Operation for Travel Instances [page 389].

- **Message handling**
  The behavior processing framework provides a message object that can be used for message handling in the behavior pool. New message handling has been added to the unmanaged scenario. The corresponding methods are implemented in an auxiliary class that inherits from `cl_abap_behv` and called from the behavior handler.
  For more information, see the information about message handling in Implementing the CREATE Operation for Travel Instances [page 389].

Authorization Checks for Modifying Operations in Managed Business Objects

To protect data from unauthorized read access, the ABAP CDS provides its own authorization concept based on a data control language (DCL). The authorization checks for read operations allow you to limit the results returned by an entity to those results you authorize a user to see.

For business objects that are implemented for managed contract, also modifying operations in such as standard operations create, update, delete, create by associations, and actions must be checked against unauthorized access. With the current release, the instance-based authorization control is supported.

For more information, see Authorization Control [page 118].

Adding Dynamic Feature Control

Apart from static feature control, you can now also use dynamic feature control. In this case, it depends on a state of the node instance if certain elements or actions are available.
Dynamic feature control is defined in the behavior definition:

```plaintext
... 
define behavior for /DMO/I_TRAVEL_M
  field (features : instance ) travel_id;
  action ( features: instance ) acceptedTravel result [1] $self;
... 
```

The implementation for the control must then be implemented in the respective methods in the behavior pool. For example, for this behavior definition, you can implement that the field `travel_id` is mandatory on create, but read-only on the update operation. The action can be implemented as disabled if the travel entity is already set to accepted, but enabled if it is not yet accepted.

For more information, see...

**Exploring Business Objects**

A business object consists of hierarchical connected entities. The behavior for each entity is defined in the behavior definition object and implemented in the behavior classes. In the Relation Explorer, you can see structure and behavior of a certain business object independent of the technical location. You can navigate to all the entities and the corresponding behavior (definition and implementation).

Sometimes you might be interested in more CDS-specific aspects and want to see access control lists or test classes. You can achieve this by switching the context from Business Object to Core Data Services context, as you can see in the following animation.
Relation Explorer provides much more features such as further contexts, for example, to display used or using objects for a certain class.

For further information, see Exploring Business Objects [page 965].

Service Consumption Model Wizard

In the service consumption model creation wizard:

1. ETag support can now be selected for any entity set. If ETag support is marked in your edmx file, the Etag support checkbox is selected by default.

2. An entity set can now be selected for the generation. You can only edit the ABAP artifact name for the entity set that you've selected for generation.

3. Issues in an entity set are displayed and these entity sets cannot be selected for generation.
For further information, see .

8.7 .uniqueVersion 1905

Understanding Concepts

As an application developer, you may not only be interested on how you can implement different scenarios and use cases for your business applications by following the stateless programming paradigm of the ABAP RESTful programming model. It may also be important for you to understand the main concepts behind it.

The concepts section provides you with background information of ABAP RESTful programming model and helps you to understand main concepts from both, the design time, and runtime perspective.

For further information, see Concepts [page 42].

Test Class Generation for Service Binding

You can now generate automated tests for an OData service that you’ve created using service binding. The test class provides guidance on how to access the OData service using ABAP Units and provides the test code for performing CRUD operations on an entity set.

For more information, see Using Service Binding Editor for OData V2 Service [page 978].
Remote OData Access for Service Consumption Model

You can now view the code sample for performing the CRUD operations on an entity set belonging to a remote OData service.

Defining Names for OData Entity Sets and Entity Types

You can now define external names for OData entity sets and entity types that are then used in the OData service metadata. The annotations @OData.entitySet.name and @OData.entityType.name can now be used in any CDS entity.

For more information, see ObjectModel Annotations [page 764].
8.8  🌲 Version 1902

Download the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario

You can now download the relevant development objects that are used in the course of the development guides via GitHub. This enables you to import a complete OData service into your system, which you can use and reuse for learning purposes.

**Limitation:** The import of a service binding artifact is not possible. To complete the OData service, you need to create service binding in your own package.

For further information, see Downloading the ABAP Flight Reference Scenario [page 12].

Entity Manipulation Language (EML)

Entity Manipulation Language (in short: EML) is a part of the ABAP language that is used to implement the business object’s behavior in the context of ABAP RESTful programming model. It provides a type-save read and modifying access to data in transactional development scenarios.

For further information, see Entity Manipulation Language (EML) [page 209].

Extension of Transactional Development Guide

The development guide Developing Unmanaged Transactional Apps [page 348] was extended with a 3-tier entity hierarchy. Booking Supplements are now part of the business object.

For further information, see Adding Another Layer to the Transactional Data Model [page 439].

In addition, the travel business object can now be consumed using EML syntax.

For further information, see Consuming Business Objects with EML [page 640].

Service Binding UI

The service binding tools come with a new UI design:

1. The binding type does not have a value populated by default.
2. The Publish and Unpublish buttons have been renamed to Activate and Deactivate.
3. Entity Set and Association was displayed with the service URL as the root node. Now, the fields are separate and it is displayed only if the local service endpoint has been activated.
4. The Preview button is now available on the interface for previewing the SAP Fiori Elements App. This is applicable for OData V2 UI service only.

5. The local service endpoint information now displays the service URL when it is in the activated state.

For further information, see Service Binding [page 204].

**Consuming Services**

The service consumption model replaces the OData client proxy to generate service artifacts for an OData service. It comes with a new wizard and an editor to work on the generated artifacts. The service consumption model artifact provides an overview of all abstract entities and generated behavior and service definitions that belong to the imported service.

For further information, see .
**Transactional Behavior for the Service Consumption Scenario**

The guide on how to consume a remote service has been extended with transactional capabilities for additional data. The use case of maintaining discount data in a local database is exemplified in this scenario.

For further information, see *Adding Transactional Behavior to the Business Object* [page 571].

**Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps**

Aggregate functions, such as sum, maximum, minimum and average, as well as a counting option are now available in the ABAP environment to be implemented in CDS and displayed in your SAP Fiori App. Annotations are used to mark the elements as measures, whose values can be aggregated.

For further information, see *Using Aggregate Data in SAP Fiori Apps* [page 612].

**Adding Static Feature Control in SAP Fiori Apps**

In a typical transactional scenario, you have to specify which operations should be provided by the whole entity or you must specify which fields of an entity have specific access restrictions (read-only or mandatory fields).

For further information, see *Static Feature Control Examples: Fields* [page 100].

**Freely Selectable Name for Handler Methods in Behavior Pools**

The method name in handler classes is now freely selectable. What kind of method it is, is expressed by the FOR clause.

The old syntax `METHODS modify FOR BEHAVIOR ... becomes now: METHODS FreeMethod Name FOR MODIFY ....`

The old syntax `METHODS read FOR BEHAVIOR ... becomes now: METHODS FreeMethod Name FOR READ ....`

The old syntax `METHODS lock FOR BEHAVIOR ... becomes now: METHODS FreeMethod Name FOR LOCK ....`

**Note** that the old syntax remains valid but is no longer recommended!

For further information, see *Handler Classes* [page 926].
8.9  Cloud Version 1811

Defining Service Versions

The service binding tools come with a new UI design and some additional functions for versioning of (business) services.

For further information, look at Service Binding [page 204].

Support for Compositions

The current version of the ABAP RESTful programming model supports compositions: A business object consists of a tree of nodes where the nodes are linked by means of a special kind of associations, the compositions. A composition is specialized association that defines a whole-part relationship. A composite part only exists together with its parent entity (whole).

For further information, look at Providing CDS Data Model with Business Object Structure [page 354].

Developing an A2X Service

It is possible to publish an OData service as an application-to-cross application (A2X) service. That means the service is published without information relevant for a UI service (for example Value Helps or annotation to define a UI). An A2X service facilitates the exchange of business information between an application and any client, including from a different system or server.

For more information, look at Developing a Web API [page 534].

Developing a UI Service with Access to a Remote Service

With the help of the service consumption model it is now possible to consume a Web API service and build a new SAP Fiori application by consuming the remote service. This development guide includes the definition of a custom entity and implementing an custom query.

For more information, look at Developing a UI Service with Access to a Remote Service [page 539]
9 Glossary

ABAP Compiler

ABAP compiler creates a byte code as interim code when generating a program from the ABAP source code. This interim code is stored in the database as a load program and is loaded to Program Execution Area (memory for managing the fixed data of an ABAP program while it is being executed) when required.

ABAP Development Tools (ADT)

An ABAP-integrated development environment built on top of the Eclipse platform. Its main objective is to support developers by offering state-of-the-art ABAP development tools. These tools include strong and proven ABAP life-cycle management on the open Eclipse platform with powerful UI capabilities.

ABAP Dictionary

Persistent storage for data types that are visible in all repository objects. In addition, the database tables of the central database, views, and lock objects are managed in the ABAP Dictionary - among other things.

ABAP Flight Reference Scenario (in short: Flight Scenario)

SAP’s reference scenario based on an updated flight data model. It is intended to be used for demonstration and learning purposes in the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model.

ABAP RESTful Programming Model

An ABAP programming model for browser-based applications that are optimized for SAP HANA.
ABAP Runtime Environment (Virtual Machine)

Processes of the ABAP runtime environment control the execution of an ABAP program by calling the processing blocks of the program. The ABAP runtime environment is provided by the Application Server ABAP.

ABAP SQL

A subset of SQL realized using ABAP statements. ABAP SQL is used to read (SELECT) and modify (INSERT, UPDATE, MODIFY, or DELETE) data in database tables defined in ABAP Dictionary. Database tables, views, and all non-abstract CDS entities can be accessed directly.

Action

A modify operation [page 1031] that is a part of the behavior of a business object. Actions can be related to the instances of a business object [page 1021] (default) or are static. Actions can have input parameters and a result with a cardinality.

(draft) Activate Action (the ACTIVATE)

A draft action that saves a draft instance on the active database table. It invokes the prepare action and the update operation in case of an edit-draft, or the create operation in case of a new-draft. Once the active instance is successfully created the draft instance is discarded.

Additional Save

A processing step within the transactional life cycle of a managed business object [page 1031]. It allows an external functionality to be invoked during the save sequence (after the managed runtime has written the changed data of the business object’s instances to the database, but before the final commit work is executed). Additional save is defined in the behavior definition [page 1020] of a managed business object and implemented in the related behavior pool.

Association

A relationship between two entities of a business object’s data model [page 1025]. An association is a directed connection between two nodes (source and target) of BO structures.
Association Path

An association path is a sequence of associations [page 1018] connecting entities with each other.

Before Image

The before image denotes a data set (data image) without transactional changes in the current LUW.

Behavior Definition Language (in short: BDL)

Declarative language for behavior modeling of business objects in the context of ABAP RESTful programming model. The language is syntactically oriented to CDS. Technically however, BDL artifacts are not managed by the ABAP Dictionary [page 1017], but by the ABAP compiler [page 1017].

The corresponding source code artifact in ABAP repository is the (business object) behavior definition [page 1020].

Behavior Characteristic

A part of the business object’s behavior that specifies general properties of an entity such as late numbering, ETag, draft handling, or feature control.

Behavior Pool

A special ABAP class pool that implements the business object’s behavior [page 1020] specified in the behavior definition [page 1020].

The real substance of a behavior pool is located in Local Types. Here, the ABAP developer can define two types of special local classes, namely handler classes for the operations within the interaction phase and saver classes for the operations within the save sequence. These classes can be instantiated or invoked only by the kernel.

Business Object (in short: BO)

In the ABAP RESTful programming model, a business object provides the following:

- A data model [page 1025] which explicitly defines the structure of the data (the relationships within the data, the semantics of the data and the data constraints)
- The behavior [page 1020] which defines the
  - capabilities of the data (create, update, or delete)
  - An association is a directed connection between two nodes (source and target) of BO operations which can be performed on the data (actions, determinations, or validations)
  - transactional properties of the data model (such as draft enabled, or the implementation type).
- The runtime Implementation

The ABAP RESTful programming model uses ABAP CDS to define the data model for business objects. Each BO contains one distinguished root node which is the leading entity within the BO. Furthermore, nodes within a BO are connected by compositions [page 1022]. All entities which can be reached by the transitive tree of compositions starting at the root entities belong to the BO structure.

The data model's behavior [page 1020] is defined and implemented in a behavior definition [page 1020] and behavior implementation [page 1020] respectively.

**(Business Object) Behavior**

A behavior characterizes a business object in the ABAP RESTful programming model.

It includes a behavior characteristic [page 1019] an and a set of operations [page 1032] for each entity [page 1020] of the BO. To specify the business object's behavior, the behavior definition [page 1020] as the corresponding development object is used.

**(Business Object) Behavior Definition**

The behavior definition is an ABAP repository object that is used to specify the business object's behavior [page 1020].

**(Business Object) Behavior Implementation**

The behavior implementation is an ABAP class that implements the business object's behavior [page 1020].

**(Business Object) Entity**

A node in a business object's [page 1019] structure. In the ABAP RESTful programming model, an entity is used as the composition [page 1022] unit of a business object structure.

An entity can be a root, parent, child, or a leaf entity.
(Business Object) Instance

A concrete occurrence of an entity [page 1020].

(Business Object) Metadata

Meta information about an entity of a business object [page 1020].
For example: what actions belong to a certain entity (BO)?

Business Object Projection

A subset of a business object data model and/or business object behavior. A business object that is designed for general purpose can be restricted for a specific business service in a BO projection. One of the most prominent examples is the Business Partner, which can be projected as Customer, Supplier, or Vendor.

Business Object Runtime

The period of time during which requests for a business object are processed.

Business Service

A business service is a RESTful service which can be called by a client. It consists of a service definition [page 1021] and a service binding [page 1021].

(Business) Service Binding

A service binding is an ABAP repository object used to bind a service definition [page 1021] to a client server communication protocol such as OData (HTTP).

(Business) Service Definition

A service definition is an ABAP repository object defining the CDS entities [page 1023] that are exposed for an OData service, including their behavior [page 1020].
Child Entity

In ABAP CDS, entities are connected using compositions. A child entity is a CDS entity which is the target of a composition.

Composition

A specialized association that has a whole-part relationship. A composite part only exists together with its parent entity (whole). Compositions are defined in CDS entities using the keyword COMPOSITION OF.

Composition Path

The composition path is a sequence of compositions connecting nodes with each other.

Composition Tree

A composition tree represents the hierarchy of nodes in a business object’s structure. Each node of a composition hierarchy has entities that are modeled in the ABAP RESTful programming model using structure where the nodes are linked by the composition relationship. CDS entities where the root is the top node in the business object’s structure.

Core Data Services (CDS)

CDS provides an infrastructure for defining and consuming semantically rich data models in SAP HANA.

In particular, ABAP CDS provides a framework for defining and consuming semantic data models on the central database of the application server AS ABAP. The specified data models are based on the data definition language (DDL) and the data control language (DCL).

CDS Abstract Entity

A CDS entity defined using the keyword DEFINE ABSTRACT ENTITY in a CDS data definition.

An abstract entity defined the type attributes of a CDS entity without creating an instance of a database object.
**CDS Access Control**

Concept for implicit restrictions on access to CDS entities.

CDS access control can be applied to CDS entities and is enabled by default for every CDS entity. It can be disabled for individual entities using an entity annotation.

**CDS Annotations**

CDS annotations describe semantics related to business data.

An annotation enriches a definition of a CDS [page 1022] object with metadata going beyond the syntactical features offered by SQL. It can be specified for specific scopes of a CDS object, namely specific places in a piece of CDS source code.

**CDS Custom Entity**

A CDS entity [page 1023] defined using the keyword `DEFINE CUSTOM ENTITY` in a CDS data definition [page 1025]. A CDS custom entity is a non-SQL CDS entity with an unmanaged query [page 1038] runtime implemented in ABAP.

**CDS Entities**

ABAP CDS entities (also referred to as CDS entities) are structured objects based on the DDL (Data Definition Language) specification and are managed by ABAP Dictionary.

Currently, the following types of ABAP CDS entities are supported:

- CDS view entities [page 1024]
- CDS projection views [page 1024]
- CDS table functions
- CDS hierarchies
- CDS abstract entities [page 1022]
- CDS custom entities [page 1023]
- CDS DDIC-based views

**CDS Metadata Extension**

A CDS object (of the ABAP CDS) defined in a piece of DDL source code using language elements in CDS DDL. In a metadata extension (MDE), CDS annotations [page 1023] are specified for a CDS entity outside of the
corresponding data definition. A CDS metadata extension is always assigned to a layer such as industry, partner or customer and can be joined using a CDS variant, in order to control its evaluation.

**CDS Projection View**

Result of CDS view projection. A CDS projection is defined in a data definition in which you can define the service-specific projected data model, a subset of the data model of the general business object.

**CDS View Entity**

An ABAP CDS view entity (also referred to as a CDS view entity) is defined for existing database tables, database views, or for other non-abstract CDS entities by using the ABAP CDS statement `DEFINE VIEW ENTITY` within a DDL source.

**Create Operation**

A create operation is an operation [page 1032] that implements the creation of persistent instances of entities (BOs).

**Create-by-Association Operation**

A modify operation [page 1031] that is used to create instances of the associated (child) entity by the source of the association (parent entity).

**CSDL XML File**

The Common Schema Definition Language (CSDL) defines specific representations of the entity data model (EDM) exposed by an OData service, for example in an XML format.

**Consumer Hint**

A marker for OData Consumers, that is defined in the backend, for example field control (read-only or mandatory).

These consumer hints are exposed in the OData metadata and interpreted in a Fiori Elements UI, for example with an asterisk for mandatory fields.
**Data Control Language (DCL)**

A subset of SQL statements for executing authorization and consistency checks in relational databases. The Application Server ABAP maps the functions of the data control language onto constructs such as authorizations objects and locks.

**Data Definition**

ABAP development object used to define an ABAP CDS entity [page 1023] (for example, a CDS view).

After creating a data definition, the developer is able to use the standard functions of the ABAP Workbench - such as syntax check, activation, or connecting to the Transport Organizer. The developer creates a data definition using a wizard in ABAP Development Tools.

**Data Model**

Set of entities that represents a specific self-contained business object and is used to define a people-centric view of respective business information.

**Delete Operation**

A delete operation is an operation [page 1032] that implements the deletion of persisted instances of entities (BOs).

**Derived (Data) Type**

The ABAP compiler allows the creation of derived types for the type-save parametrization of the BO provider code. Such data types are referred to as derived types because they are implicitly derived by the compiler from CDS entity types and their behavior definition [page 1020].

**Determine Action**

An action that invokes the determinations and validations that are defined for it in the behavior definition.
Determination

An optional part of the business object behavior that modifies instances of business objects based on trigger conditions.

(draft) Discard Action (the DISCARD)

A draft action [page 1026] that deleted the draft instance from the draft database table.

Draft Action

An action that is implicitly available for draft business objects. A draft action can also be declared explicitly in the behavior definition. For some draft actions, an implementation exit for application specific business logic exists.

Draft-Enabled Association

An association that retrieves active data if it is followed from an active instance and draft data if it is followed from a draft source instance.

Draft Indicator

A component in modify and read requests to determine whether the request is aimed at active or draft instances.

In OData the draft indicator is IsActiveEntity =true / false. ABAP/ ABAP EML uses %IS_DRAFT = if_abap_behv=>mk-on/off .

Early Numbering

A numbering concept by which newly created entity instances are given a definitive key value during the interaction phase [page 1029] on the create operation [page 1024].
**Edit-Draft**

A draft instance that is created based on an already existing active instance.

**(draft) Edit Action (the EDIT)**

A draft action that copied an active instance to the draft database table.

**Element**

An integral part of an entity [page 1020]. An element can be a field [page 1028] or an association [page 1018].

**EML**

Entity Manipulation Language (in short: EML) is a part of the ABAP language that is used to implement the business object's behavior [page 1020] in the context of ABAP RESTful programming model. It provides a type-save read and modifying access to data in transactional development scenarios.

**ETag (Entity Tag)**

An ETag is a field [page 1028] that is used to determine changes to the requested resource. Usually, fields like last changed timestamp, hash values, or version counters are used as ETags.

An ETag can be used for optimistic concurrency control in the OData protocol to help prevent simultaneous updates of a resource from overwriting each other. An ETag check is used to determine whether two representations of a business entity [page 1020], are the same. Whenever the representation of the entity changes, a new and different ETag value is assigned.

**External Numbering**

A numbering concept by which newly created entity instances are given their values by external BO consumers, e.g. a Fiori [page 1035] UI.
Factory action

A special action that is used for creating new instances.

Feature Control

A functionality that provides property settings for fields [page 1028], entities [page 1020], actions [page 1018], or associations [page 1018] of a given business object [page 1019].

These settings control the behavior of a business object [page 1020] when it is in a certain state.

On the user interface, these settings control, for example, the following:
- Make fields mandatory, read only, editable, and/or invisible
- Enable/disable buttons

The feature control is either static (valid for all instances of an entity) or dynamic (depends on the state of the node instances).

Field

An element [page 1027] of an entity [page 1020] (business object), which represents a data object.

Fields are either persistent [page 1032] or virtual [page 1039].

Full Text Searching

Full text searching (or just text search) provides the capability to identify natural-language terms that satisfy a query and, optionally, to sort them by relevance (ranking) to the query.

Function

A read operation [page 1033] that is a part of a business object’s behavior. Functions are defined similarly to actions [page 1018], but they do not cause any side effects.
**Fuzzy Search**

Fuzzy search is a fast and fault-tolerant search feature of SAP HANA. The concept behind the fault-tolerant search means that a database query returns records even if the search term (user input) contains additional or missing characters, or other types of spelling errors.

**Instance Action**

An action that operates on a specific instance of a BO entity.

**Interaction Phase**

A part of the BO runtime where a consumer calls the business object’s operations to modify or read business data in a transactional context.

A user triggers the interaction phase by clicking the *EDIT* button on UI. The interaction phase ends when the user clicks the *SAVE* button on UI.

**Internal Action**

An action that can only be executed from the business logic inside the same business object the action is assigned to, such as from a determination or another action.

**Internal Numbering**

A numbering concept by which newly created entity instances are given their values by BO internal logic, e.g. by the managed runtime framework.

**Late Numbering**

Late numbering is a concept by which new entity instances are given a definitive key just before they are saved on the database.
**Leaf Entity**

The leaf entity is an entity [page 1020] in a business object’s structure without any child entities [page 1022]. A leaf entity is a CDS entity which is the target of a composition [page 1022] (a child entity) but does not connect further entities (does not contain a composition definition).

**Lock**

The ability to protect data of entities from concurrent accesses by multiple users. An entity [page 1020] is locked using the enqueue mechanism.

**Lock Master**

A lock master defines the property of entities to be locked on their own. This is currently only supported for root entities [page 1034] of business objects [page 1019].

**Lock Dependent**

A lock dependent is an entity [page 1020] that depends on the locking status of a parent [page 1032] or root [page 1034] entity.

**LUW (Logical Unit of Work)**

When data in database tables is modified by application programs, it must be ensured that the data is consistent after the changes have been made. This is particularly important when data is edited in the database. The time span in which a consistent data state is transferred to another consistent state is known as an LUW (Logical Unit of Work).

**Managed**

The managed property defines an implementation type of a business object [page 1019] or a query [page 1033] provider in the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model. See also: unmanaged [page 1037]

For the implementation type managed, the generic runtime framework assumes standard implementation tasks. The business logic is implemented by the application developer via validation, determinations and actions.
Managed Business Object

Business object with implementation type managed [page 1030].

Managed Runtime Framework

RAP runtime framework that processes business objects with implementation type managed [page 1030].

Managed Save

A processing step within the save sequence of a managed business object [page 1031].

Modify Operations

Umbrella term for operations [page 1032] causing business data changes in the context of behavior implementation [page 1019]. It includes standard operations (create, update and delete) and action [page 1018] execution. implementation.

New-Draft

A draft instance that is created from scratch without having a corresponding active instance yet.

OData

The Open Data (in short: OData) protocol is a Web protocol for querying and updating data. It applies several Web technologies, such as HTTP, Atom Publishing Protocol, and JSON to provide access to information from a variety of applications.

OData is based on industry standards and offers database-like access to business data using a REST-based (Representational State Transfer) architecture.

OData Client Proxy

A proxy for an OData client that acts as an intermediary to forward and transform requests from one service to another one.
**OData Service**

A service that is implemented in accordance with OData [page 1031] protocol. OData services are used to expose data to consumers.

**Operation**

A procedure performed on an entity [page 1020] (or a set of entities). Example are changing operations create, update, delete that are performed within a transactional life cycle of a business object [page 1019].

**Orchestration Framework**

Runtime framework for request dispatching and runtime checks within the ABAP RESTful programming model. The technical term for this framework is SADL [page 1034].

**Parent Entity**

The parent entity is an entity [page 1020] in a business object’s [page 1019] structure that is directly connected to another entity when moving towards the root node.

In ABAP CDS, entities are connected using compositions [page 1022]. A parent entity is a CDS entity which contains a composition definition (keyword COMPOSITION OF).

**Persistent Field**

A field [page 1028] of a CDS entity that is persisted in a database table.

**(draft determine) Prepare Action (the PREPARE)**

A draft action [page 1026] that invokes the determinations and validations that are defined in the prepare in the behavior definition. It is invoked by the invoked by the Activate action [page 1018].
**Projected Entity**

CDS entity whose elements are projected in a projection view. The projected entity is specified in the `PROJECTION ON` clause of the CDS projection view.

**Projection**

Building a subset of a BO data model or BO behavior.

**Query**

In the ABAP RESTful programming model, a query provides the following:

- A CDS data model [page 1025]
- Capabilities that are either explicitly modeled via CDS annotations [page 1023] (search, aggregation, ...) or generally applicable (paging, sorting, filtering)
- A runtime that is either managed by the query framework or unmanaged, which means implemented by the developer

In contrast to the BO [page 1019] transactional capabilities, query capabilities are always read-only and do not modify data on the database.

**Query Implementation Class**

The query implementation class is the class that is referenced by a custom entity [page 1023] to implement its query [page 1033].

**RAP runtime framework**

The framework that orchestrates and processes each operation within RAP business objects. It includes the SAP Gateway framework, the orchestration framework and the frameworks that process business objects regarding their implementation type.

**Read Operation**

Umbrella term for operations [page 1032] that do not change any business data in the context of business object behavior implementation [page 1020]. It included operations such as read, read by association, and functions.
(draft) Resume Action (the RESUME)

A draft action [page 1026] that recreates the lock for a draft instance whose exclusive lock is already expired.

Create-by-Association Operation

A read operation [page 1033] that is used used to read instance data of the associated (child) entity by the source of the association (parent entity).

Root Entity

The root entity is the top entity [page 1020] in a business object’s [page 1019] structure. In ABAP CDS, a root entity is defined using the keyword ROOT in the data definition [page 1025].

SADL

Service Adaptation Description Language (in short: SADL) is an ABAP technology that enables the consumption of entity relationship-like data models [page 1025] in ABAP based on a model-driven approach.

In the context of SAP HANA, SADL enables fast read access to database data for scenarios on mobile and desktop applications using query push-down.

SAP Cloud Platform

SAP Cloud Platform is an open platform as a service (PaaS) that provides customers and partners with in-memory capabilities, core platform services, and unique business services for building and extending personalized, collaborative, mobile-enabled cloud applications.

SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment

SAP Cloud Platform ABAP Environment is part of the SAP Cloud Platform [page 1034] and offered as Platform as a Service (PaaS). ABAP Environment provides a special variant of the ABAP platform and supports a subset of the ABAP language.
SAP Fiori (UX)

SAP Fiori is a new user experience (UX) for SAP software that applies modern design principles. SAP solutions, such as the SAP Business Suite powered by SAP HANA, use the SAP Fiori UX to provide a personalized, responsive, and simple user experience.

SAP Gateway

An ABAP infrastructure that exposes back-end services to consumer applications.

SAP Web IDE

A browser-based development tool set for modeling and developing Fiori UIs.

Save Sequence

Part of the BO runtime when data is persisted after all changes were performed.

Service Consumption Model

A set of artifacts that are generated in ABAP Development Tools on the basis of an entity data model XML (CSDL) file and are used to provide a generic client for remote OData service consumption.

Service Definition Language (SDL)

Declarative language for defining service definition objects. The language is syntactically oriented to CDS.

Service Proxy API

An ABAP API using the service consumption model to consume remote OData services.
State Message

A message type that is used for message that relates to the state of an instance.

Static Action

An action [page 1018] that operates independent of a specific instance of an entity.

To-Parent Association

A to-parent association in ABAP CDS is a specialized association [page 1018] which can be defined to model the parent-child relationship between two CDS entities [page 1023]. Compositions [page 1022] and to-parent associations are used to define the structure of a business object [page 1019] which can be used in the ABAP RESTful Programming model.

Total Etag

A designated field in a draft business object to enable optimistic concurrency checks during the transition from draft to active data.

When resuming a draft instance, the RAP draft runtime framework checks if the value of the total ETag field on the active persistence matches the value on the draft persistence. If the values do not correspond, the resume action is rejected.

Transactional Buffer

Temporary storage for data that is used in one logical unit of work (luw) during the interaction phase [page 1029] for modifying and read operations (in a transactional context) and which can be persisted during the save sequence [page 1035]. After every LUW, the buffer must be emptied. The state of the buffer is either saved to a database table or must be rolled back to achieve the state the data had before the LUW.

Transaction-Enabled Association

An association that is explicitly mentioned in the behavior definition. A transaction-enabled association considers the changes that are done in the current transaction.
Transition Message

A message type that is used for messages that arise on the transition of a BO-instance from one state to another.

Trigger Condition

The condition that needs to be fulfilled to execute a validation [page 1039] or a determination [page 1026].
A trigger condition consists of a trigger operation [page 1037] (create, update, create by association) and a list of entity fields (trigger elements [page 1037]) belonging to the same entity the validation/determination is assigned to.

Trigger Element

Elements of the assigned entity that trigger the validation [page 1039]/determination [page 1026] when affected by the trigger operations [page 1037].

Trigger Operation

Operations on which a validation [page 1039]/determination [page 1026] is executed, for example create or update.

Trigger Time

The point in time when the validation [page 1039]/determination [page 1026] is executed during the BO [page 1019] lifecycle. The trigger time is declared in the definition of the validation [page 1039]/determination [page 1026].

Unmanaged

The unmanaged property defines an implementation type of a business object [page 1019] or a query [page 1033] provider in the context of the ABAP RESTful programming model.
For the implementation type unmanaged, the application developer must implement essential components of the REST contract itself.
In this case, all required BO operations [page 1032] (create, update, delete, or application-specific actions) must be specified in the corresponding behavior definition [page 1020] for a BO before they are implemented
in ABAP. In managed implementation types, on the other hand, a behavior definition is already sufficient to obtain a ready-to-run business object [page 1019].

### Unmanaged Business Object

Business object with implementation type unmanaged [page 1037].

### Unmanaged Query

An implementation type for the runtime of a query [page 1033]. In an unmanaged query, the query contract must be implemented by the application developer and is not managed by the query framework.

### Unmanaged Lock

A feature of a managed business object [page 1038] with which you can implement the lock mechanism manually. Like, in the unmanaged [page 1038] scenario, the method FOR LOCK is called during runtime.

### Unmanaged Runtime Framework

RAP runtime framework for processing business objects with implementation type unmanaged [page 1037].

### Unmanaged Save

A processing step within the transactional life cycle of a managed business object [page 1038] that prevents the business object's managed runtime from saving business data (changes) during the save sequence [page 1035]. In this case, the function modules (for update task) are called to save data changes of the relevant business object.

Unmanaged save is defined in the behavior definition [page 1020] of a managed business object and implemented in the related behavior pool.

### Update Operation

An update operation is an operation [page 1032] that implements the update of instance data of entities (BOs).
**Validation**

An optional part of the business object behavior that checks the consistency of business object instances based on trigger conditions.

**Virtual Element**

Element that is not persisted on the database but calculated during runtime.

A virtual element is declared with the statement `VIRTUAL` in CDS projection views [page 1024].

**Web API**

An OData service [page 1032] that is published without any UI specific metadata. It is not exposed for a UI context. Instead it provides an API to access the service by another client, including from a different system or server.
Important Disclaimers and Legal Information

Hyperlinks

Some links are classified by an icon and/or a mouseover text. These links provide additional information.
About the icons:

- Links with the icon 🌐: You are entering a Web site that is not hosted by SAP. By using such links, you agree (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) to this:
  - The content of the linked-to site is not SAP documentation. You may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.
  - SAP does not agree or disagree with the content on the linked-to site, nor does SAP warrant the availability and correctness. SAP shall not be liable for any damages caused by the use of such content unless damages have been caused by SAP’s gross negligence or willful misconduct.

- Links with the icon 🏡: You are leaving the documentation for that particular SAP product or service and are entering a SAP-hosted Web site. By using such links, you agree that (unless expressly stated otherwise in your agreements with SAP) you may not infer any product claims against SAP based on this information.

Videos Hosted on External Platforms

Some videos may point to third-party video hosting platforms. SAP cannot guarantee the future availability of videos stored on these platforms. Furthermore, any advertisements or other content hosted on these platforms (for example, suggested videos or by navigating to other videos hosted on the same site), are not within the control or responsibility of SAP.

Beta and Other Experimental Features

Experimental features are not part of the officially delivered scope that SAP guarantees for future releases. This means that experimental features may be changed by SAP at any time for any reason without notice. Experimental features are not for productive use. You may not demonstrate, test, examine, evaluate or otherwise use the experimental features in a live operating environment or with data that has not been sufficiently backed up.

The purpose of experimental features is to get feedback early on, allowing customers and partners to influence the future product accordingly. By providing your feedback (e.g., in the SAP Community), you accept that intellectual property rights of the contributions or derivative works shall remain the exclusive property of SAP.

Example Code

Any software coding and/or code snippets are examples. They are not for productive use. The example code is only intended to better explain and visualize the syntax and phrasing rules. SAP does not warrant the correctness and completeness of the example code. SAP shall not be liable for errors or damages caused by the use of example code unless damages have been caused by SAP’s gross negligence or willful misconduct.

Gender-Related Language

We try not to use gender-specific word forms and formulations. As appropriate for context and readability, SAP may use masculine word forms to refer to all genders.